CONTENTS

SECTION 1 GENERAL

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

1. STRUCTURE

This service manual has been prepared as an aid to improve the quality of repairs by giving the serviceman an accurate understanding of the product and by showing him the correct way to perform repairs and make judgements. Make sure you understand the contents of this manual and use it to full effect at every opportunity.
This service manual mainly contains the necessary technical information for operations performed in a service workshop.
For ease of understanding, the manual is divided into the following sections.

SECTION 1 GENERAL
This section explains the safety hints and gives the specification of the machine and major components.

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION
This section explains the structure and function of each component. It serves not only to give an understanding of the structure, but also serves as reference material for troubleshooting.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM
This section explains the hydraulic circuit, single and combined operation.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM
This section explains the electrical circuit, monitoring system and each component. It serves not only to give an understanding electrical system, but also serves as reference material for trouble shooting.

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM
This section explains the computer aided power optimization system and each component.

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING
This section explains the troubleshooting charts correlating problems to causes.

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD
This section gives the judgement standards when inspecting disassembled parts.

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY
This section explains the order to be followed when removing, installing, disassembling or assembling each component, as well as precautions to be taken for these operations.

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE
This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.

The specifications contained in this shop manual are subject to change at any time and without any advance notice. Contact your HYUNDAI distributor for the latest information.

2. HOW TO READ THE SERVICE MANUAL

Distribution and updating

Any additions, amendments or other changes will be sent to HYUNDAI distributors.

Get the most up-to-date information before you start any work.

Filing method

1. See the page number on the bottom of the page.
   File the pages in correct order.
2. Following examples shows how to read the page number.
   Example 1
   2 - 3
   - 2: Item number(2. Structure and Function)
   - 3: Consecutive page number for each item.
3. Additional pages : Additional pages are indicated by a hyphen(-) and number after the page number. File as in the example.

   10 - 4
   10 - 4 - 1 ┐
   10 - 4 - 2 ┘ Added pages
   10 - 5

Revised edition mark(①②③…)

When a manual is revised, an edition mark is recorded on the bottom outside corner of the pages.

Revisions

Revised pages are shown at the list of revised pages on the between the contents page and section 1 page.

Symbols

So that the shop manual can be of ample practical use, important places for safety and quality are marked with the following symbols.

Symbol	Item	Remarks
⚠	Safety	Special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work.
		Extra special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work because it is under internal pressure.
※	Caution	Special technical precautions or other precautions for preserving standards are necessary when performing the work.

3. CONVERSION TABLE

Method of using the Conversion Table
The Conversion Table in this section is provided to enable simple conversion of figures. For details of the method of using the Conversion Table, see the example given below.

Example

1. **Method of using the Conversion Table to convert from millimeters to inches**
   Convert 55mm into inches.
   (1) Locate the number 50in the vertical column at the left side, take this as ⓐ, then draw a horizontal line from ⓐ.
   (2) Locate the number 5in the row across the top, take this as ⓑ, then draw a perpendicular line down from ⓑ.
   (3) Take the point where the two lines cross as ⓒ. This point ⓒ gives the value when converting from millimeters to inches. Therefore, 55mm = 2.165 inches.

2. Convert 550mm into inches.
   (1) The number 550 does not appear in the table, so divide by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the left) to convert it to 55mm.
   (2) Carry out the same procedure as above to convert 55mm to 2.165 inches.
   (3) The original value(550mm) was divided by 10, so multiply 2.165 inches by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the right) to return to the original value.
   This gives 550mm = 21.65 inches.

Millimeters to inches

ⓑ

1mm = 0.03937 in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
ⓐ 50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	ⓒ 2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Millimeters to inches

1mm = 0.03937in

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Kilogram to Pound

1kg = 2.2046lb

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		2.20	4.41	6.61	8.82	11.02	13.23	15.43	17.64	19.84
10	22.05	24.25	26.46	28.66	30.86	33.07	35.27	37.48	39.68	41.89
20	44.09	46.30	48.50	50.71	51.91	55.12	57.32	59.5.	61.73	63.93
30	66.14	68.34	70.55	72.75	74.96	77.16	79.37	81.57	83.78	85.98
40	88.18	90.39	92.59	94.80	97.00	99.21	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26

Liter to U.S. Gallon

1 l = 0.2642 U.S.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.264	0.528	0.793	1.057	1.321	1.585	1.849	2.113	2.378
10	2.642	2.906	3.170	3.434	3.698	3.963	4.227	4.491	4.755	5.019
20	5.283	5.548	5.812	6.6076	6.340	6.604	6.869	7.133	7.397	7.661
30	7.925	8.189	8.454	8.718	8.982	9.246	9.510	9.774	10.039	10.303
40	10.567	10.831	11.095	11.359	11.624	11.888	12.152	12.416	12.680	12.944
50	13.209	13.473	13.737	14.001	14.265	14.529	14.795	15.058	15.322	15.586
60	15.850	16.115	16.379	16.643	16.907	17.171	17.435	17.700	17.964	18.228
70	18.492	18.756	19.020	19.285	19.549	19.813	20.077	20.341	20.605	20.870
80	21.134	21.398	21.662	21.926	22.190	22.455	22.719	22.983	23.247	23.511
90	23.775	24.040	24.304	24.568	24.832	25.096	25.631	25.625	25.889	26.153

Liter to U.K. Gallon

1 l = 0.21997 U.K.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.950	4.179
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.969	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778
50	10.998	11.281	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.528	12.758	12.978
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777

kgf · m to lbf · ft

1kgf · m = 7.233lbf · ft

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		7.2	14.5	21.7	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
10	72.3	79.6	86.8	94.0	101.3	108.5	115.7	123.0	130.2	137.4
20	144.7	151.9	159.1	166.4	173.6	180.8	188.1	195.3	202.5	209.8
30	217.0	224.2	231.5	238.7	245.9	253.2	260.4	267.6	274.9	282.1
40	289.3	396.6	303.8	311.0	318.3	325.5	332.7	340.0	347.2	354.4
50	361.7	368.9	376.1	383.4	390.6	397.8	405.1	412.3	419.5	426.8
60	434.0	441.2	448.5	455.7	462.9	470.2	477.4	484.6	491.8	499.1
70	506.3	513.5	520.8	528.0	535.2	542.5	549.7	556.9	564.2	571.4
80	578.6	585.9	593.1	600.3	607.6	614.8	622.0	629.3	636.5	643.7
90	651.0	658.2	665.4	672.7	679.9	687.1	694.4	701.6	708.8	716.1
100	723.3	730.5	737.8	745.0	752.2	759.5	766.7	773.9	781.2	788.4
110	795.6	802.9	810.1	817.3	824.6	831.8	839.0	846.3	853.5	860.7
120	868.0	875.2	882.4	889.7	896.9	904.1	911.4	918.6	925.8	933.1
130	940.3	947.5	954.8	962.0	969.2	976.5	983.7	990.9	998.2	10005.4
140	1012.6	1019.9	1027.1	1034.3	1041.5	1048.8	1056.0	1063.2	1070.5	1077.7
150	1084.9	1092.2	1099.4	1106.6	1113.9	1121.1	1128.3	1135.6	1142.8	1150.0
160	1157.3	1164.5	1171.7	1179.0	1186.2	1193.4	1200.7	1207.9	1215.1	1222.4
170	1129.6	1236.8	1244.1	1251.3	1258.5	1265.8	1273.0	1280.1	1287.5	1294.7
180	1301.9	1309.2	1316.4	1323.6	1330.9	1338.1	1345.3	1352.6	1359.8	1367.0
190	1374.3	1381.5	1388.7	1396.0	1403.2	1410.4	1417.7	1424.9	1432.1	1439.4

kgf/cm² to lbf/in²

1kgf / cm² = 14.2233lbf / in²

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		14.2	28.4	42.7	56.9	71.1	85.3	99.6	113.8	128.0
10	142.2	156.5	170.7	184.9	199.1	213.4	227.6	241.8	256.0	270.2
20	284.5	298.7	312.9	327.1	341.4	355.6	369.8	384.0	398.3	412.5
30	426.7	440.9	455.1	469.4	483.6	497.8	512.0	526.3	540.5	554.7
40	568.9	583.2	597.4	611.6	625.8	640.1	654.3	668.5	682.7	696.9
50	711.2	725.4	739.6	753.8	768.1	782.3	796.5	810.7	825.0	839.2
60	853.4	867.6	881.8	896.1	910.3	924.5	938.7	953.0	967.2	981.4
70	995.6	1010	1024	1038	1053	1067	1081	1095	1109	1124
80	1138	1152	1166	1181	1195	1209	1223	1237	1252	1266
90	1280	1294	1309	1323	1337	1351	1365	1380	1394	1408
100	1422	1437	1451	1465	1479	1493	1508	1522	1536	1550
110	1565	1579	1593	1607	1621	1636	1650	1664	1678	1693
120	1707	1721	1735	1749	1764	1778	1792	1806	1821	1835
130	1849	2863	1877	1892	1906	1920	1934	1949	1963	1977
140	1991	2005	2020	2034	2048	2062	2077	2091	2105	2119
150	2134	2148	2162	2176	2190	2205	2219	2233	2247	2262
160	2276	2290	2304	2318	2333	2347	2361	2375	2389	2404
170	2418	2432	2446	2460	2475	2489	2503	2518	2532	2546
180	2560	2574	2589	5603	2617	2631	2646	2660	2674	2688
200	2845	2859	2873	2887	2901	2916	2930	2944	2958	2973
210	2987	3001	3015	3030	3044	3058	3072	3086	3101	3115
220	3129	3143	3158	3172	3186	3200	3214	3229	3243	3257
230	3271	3286	3300	3314	3328	3343	3357	3371	3385	3399
240	3414	3428	3442	3456	3470	3485	3499	3513	3527	3542

TEMPERATURE

Fahrenheit-Centigrade Conversion.

A simple way to convert a fahrenheit temperature reading into a centigrade temperature reading or vice verse is to enter the accompanying table in the center or boldface column of figures.

These figures refer to the temperature in either Fahrenheit or Centigrade degrees.

If it is desired to convert from Fahrenheit to Centigrade degrees, consider the center column as a table of Fahrenheit temperatures and read the corresponding Centigrade temperature in the column at the left.

If it is desired to convert from Centigrade to Fahrenheit degrees, consider the center column as a table of Centigrade values, and read the corresponding Fahrenheit temperature on the right.

˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F	˚C		˚F
-40.4	-40	-40.0	-11.7	11	51.8	7.8	46	114.8	27.2	81	117.8
-37.2	-35	-31.0	-11.1	12	53.6	8.3	47	116.6	27.8	82	179.6
-34.4	-30	-22.0	-10.6	13	55.4	8.9	48	118.4	28.3	83	181.4
-31.7	-25	-13.0	-10.0	14	57.2	9.4	49	120.2	28.9	84	183.2
-28.9	-20	-4.0	-9.4	15	59.0	10.0	50	122.0	29.4	85	185.0
-28.3	-19	-2.2	-8.9	16	60.8	10.6	51	123.8	30.0	86	186.8
-27.8	-18	-0.4	-8.3	17	62.6	11.1	52	125.6	30.6	87	188.6
-27.2	-17	1.4	-7.8	18	64.4	11.7	53	127.4	31.1	88	190.4
-26.7	-16	3.2	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-26.1	-15	5.0	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-25.6	-14	6.8	-6.1	21	69.8	13.3	56	132.8	32.8	91	195.8
-25.0	-13	8.6	-5.6	22	71.6	13.9	57	134.6	33.3	92	197.6
-24.4	-12	10.4	-5.0	23	73.4	14.4	58	136.4	33.9	93	199.4
-23.9	-11	12.2	-4.4	24	75.2	15.0	59	138.2	34.4	94	201.2
-23.3	-10	14.0	-3.9	25	77.0	15.6	60	140.0	35.0	95	203.0
-22.8	-9	15.8	-3.3	26	78.8	16.1	61	141.8	35.6	96	204.8
-22.2	-8	17.6	-2.8	27	80.6	16.7	62	143.6	36.1	97	206.6
-21.7	-7	19.4	-2.2	28	82.4	17.2	63	145.4	36.7	98	208.4
-21.1	-6	21.2	-1.7	29	84.2	17.8	64	147.2	37.2	99	210.2
-20.6	-5	23.0	-1.1	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-20.0	-4	24.8	-0.6	31	87.8	18.9	66	150.8	40.6	105	221.0
-19.4	-3	26.6	0	32	89.6	19.4	67	152.6	43.3	110	230.0
-18.9	-2	28.4	0.6	33	91.4	20.0	68	154.4	46.1	115	239.0
-18.3	-1	30.2	1.1	34	93.2	20.6	69	156.2	48.9	120	248.0
-17.8	0	32.0	1.7	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-17.2	1	33.8	2.2	36	96.8	21.7	71	159.8	54.4	130	266.0
-16.7	2	35.6	2.8	37	98.6	22.2	72	161.6	57.2	135	275.0
-16.1	3	37.4	3.3	38	100.4	22.8	73	163.4	60.0	140	284.0
-15.6	4	39.2	3.9	39	102.2	23.3	74	165.2	62.7	145	293.0
-15.0	5	41.0	4.4	40	104.0	23.9	75	167.0	65.6	150	302.0
-14.4	6	42.8	5.0	41	105.8	24.4	76	168.8	68.3	155	311.0
-13.9	7	44.6	5.6	42	107.6	25.0	77	170.6	71.1	160	320.0
-13.3	8	46.4	6.1	43	109.4	25.6	78	172.4	73.9	165	329.0
-12.8	9	48.2	6.7	44	111.2	26.1	79	174.2	76.7	170	338.0
-12.2	10	50.0	7.2	45	113.0	26.7	80	176.0	79.4	172	347.0

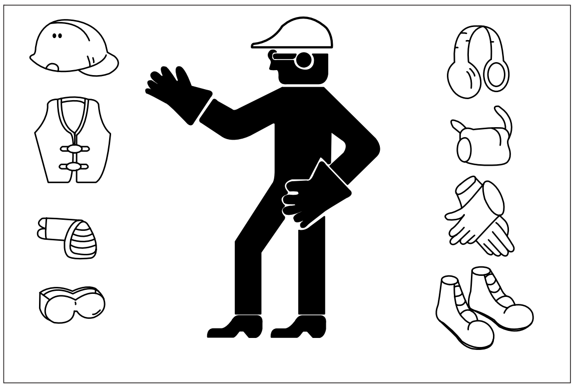
SECTION 1 GENERAL

GROUP 1 SAFETY

FOLLOW SAFE PROCEDURE

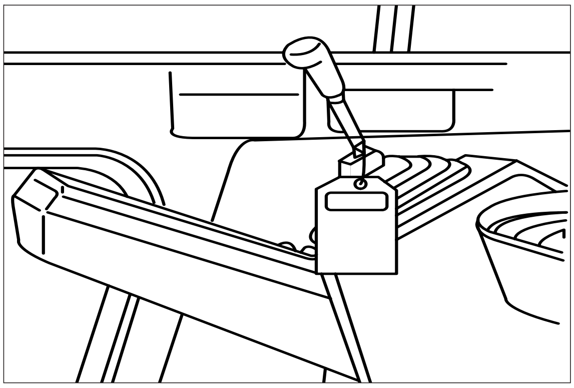
Unsafe work practices are dangerous. Understand service procedure before doing work; Do not attempt shortcuts.

WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING



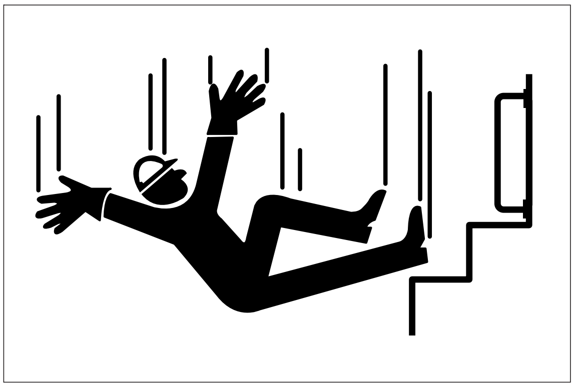
Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK



Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
Before performing any work on the excavator, attach a 「**Do Not Operate**」 tag on the right side control lever.

USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS



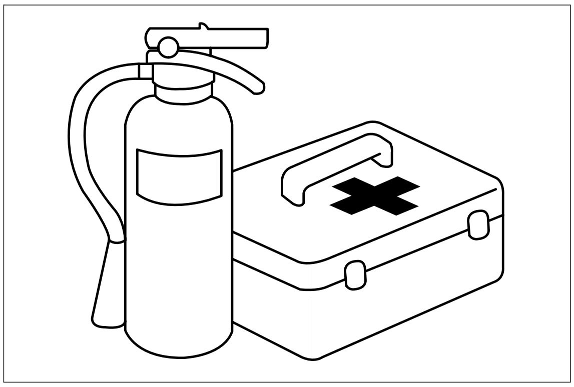
Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
When you get on and off the machine, always maintain a three point contact with the steps and handrails and face the machine. Do not use any controls as handholds.
Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.

PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

Be prepared if a fire starts.

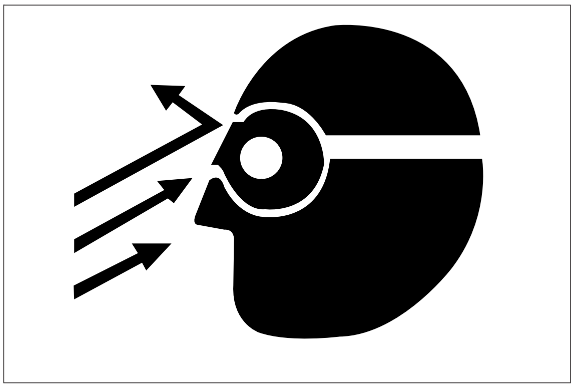
Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

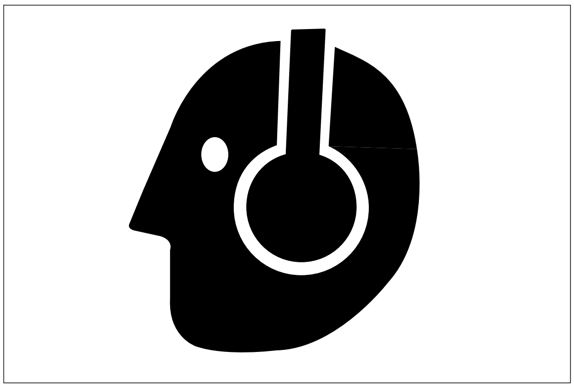
Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; Wear goggles or safety glasses.



PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

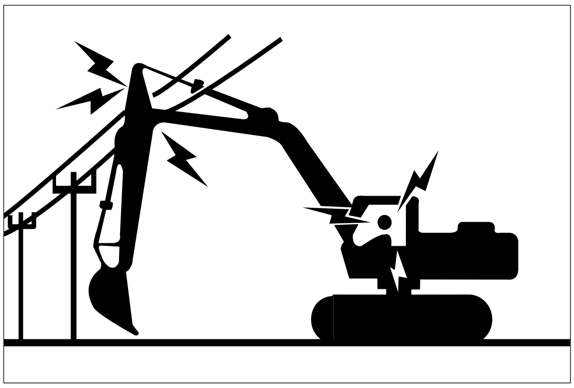
Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.



AVOID POWER LINES

Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.

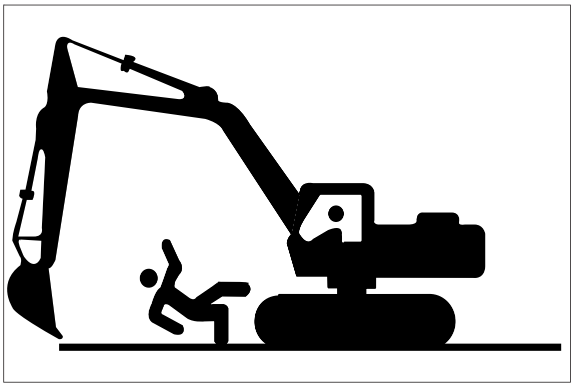
Never move any part of the machine or load closer to electric line than 3m(10ft) plus twice the line insulator length.



KEEP RIDERS OFF EXCAVATOR

Only allow the operator on the excavator. Keep riders off.

Riders on excavator are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the excavator. Riders also obstruct the operator's view resulting in the excavator being operated in an unsafe manner.

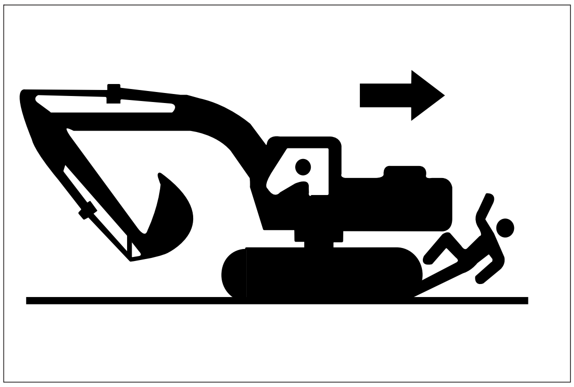


MOVE AND OPERATE MACHINE SAFELY

Bystanders can be run over. Know the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.

Always keep the travel alarm in working condition. It warns people when the excavator starts to move.

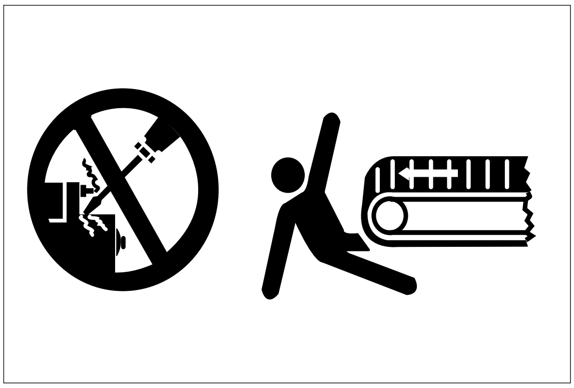
Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the excavator.



OPERATE ONLY FORM OPERATOR'S SEAT

Avoid possible injury machine damage. Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.

NEVER start engine while standing on ground. Start engine only from operator's seat.



PARK MACHINE SAFELY

Before working on the machine:

- Park machine on a level surface.
- Lower bucket to the ground.
- Turn auto idle switch off.
- Run engine at 1/2 speed without load for 2 minutes.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine. Remove key from switch.
- Move pilot control shutoff lever to locked position.
- Allow engine to cool.

SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY

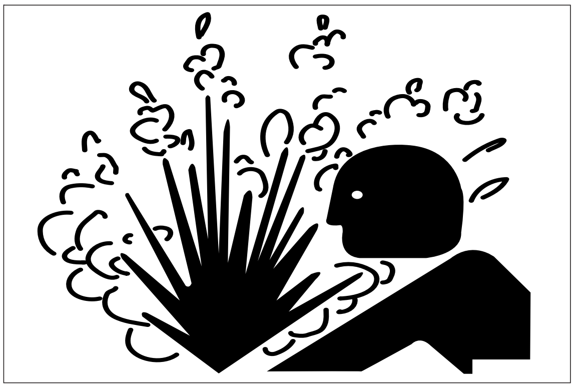
Always lower the attachment or implement to the ground before you work on the machine. If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment.

Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tiles, or props that may crumble under continuous load.
Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack. Follow recommended procedures in this manual.

SERVICE COOLING SYSTEM SAFELY

Explosive release of fluids from pressurized cooling system can cause serious burns.

Shut off engine. Only remove filler cap when cool enough to touch with bare hands.



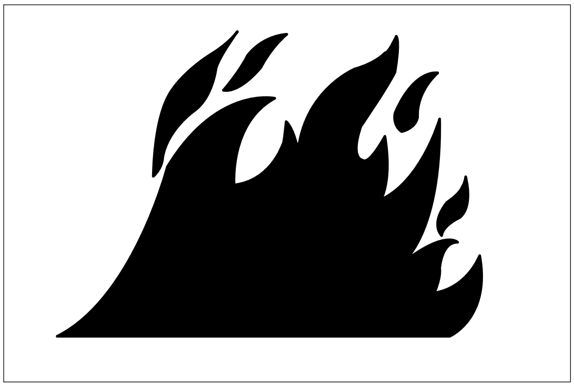
HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY-AVOID FIRES

Handle fuel with care; It is highly flammable. Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks. Always stop engine before refueling machine.
Fill fuel tank outdoors.

Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.

Make sure machine is clean of trash, grease, and debris.

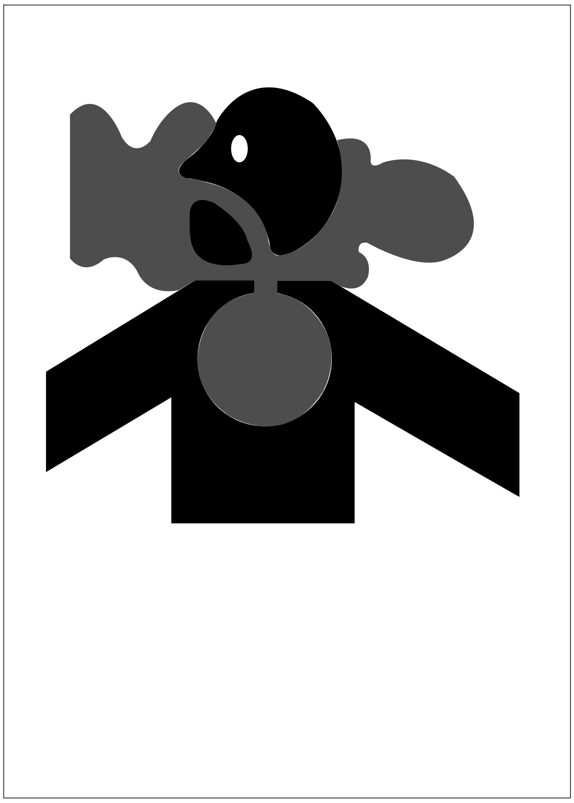
Do not store oily rags; They can ignite and burn spontaneously.



BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES

Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.

If you must operate in a building, be positive there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.



REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING

Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

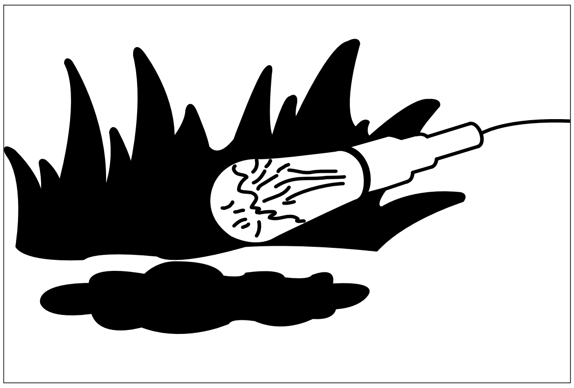
Do all work outside or in a well ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

Remove paint before welding or heating:

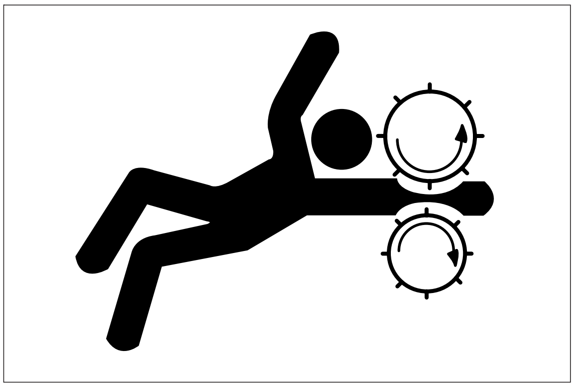
- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust.
  Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

ILLUMINATE WORK AREA SAFELY

Illuminate your work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the machine. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.



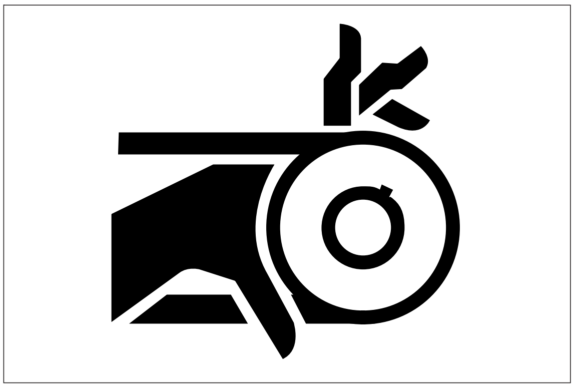
SERVICE MACHINE SAFELY



Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.

STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS



Entanglements in moving parts can cause serious injury.

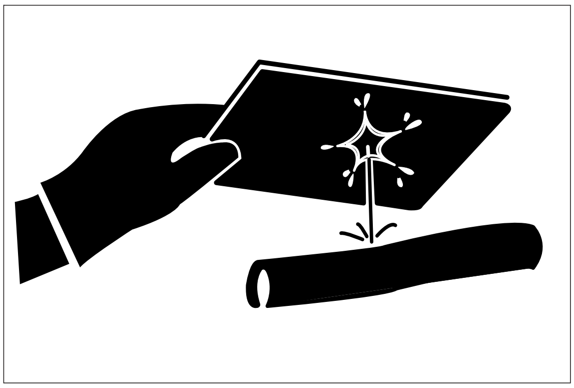
To prevent accidents, use care when working around rotating parts.

AVOID HIGH PRESSURE FLUIDS

Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.



If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.

AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.

Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install fire resisting guards to protect hoses or other materials.

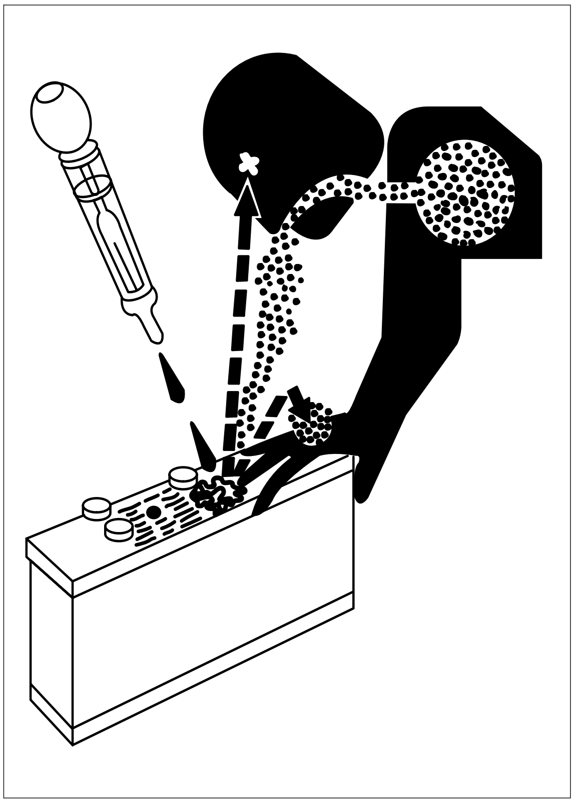
PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery. Battery gas can explode.

Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a volt-meter or hydrometer.

Do not charge a frozen battery; It may explode. Warm battery to 16˚C (60˚F).

PREVENT ACID BURNS



Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into eyes.

Avoid the hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling of dripping electrolyte.
5. Use proper jump start procedure.

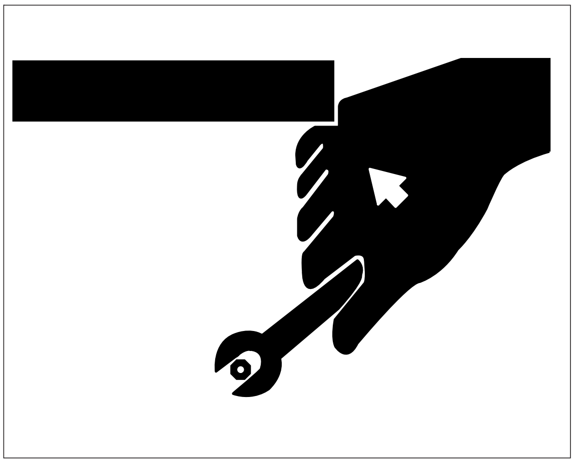
If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. Flush your eyes with water for 10-15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

If acid is swallowed:

1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
3. Get medical attention immediately.

USE TOOLS PROPERLY



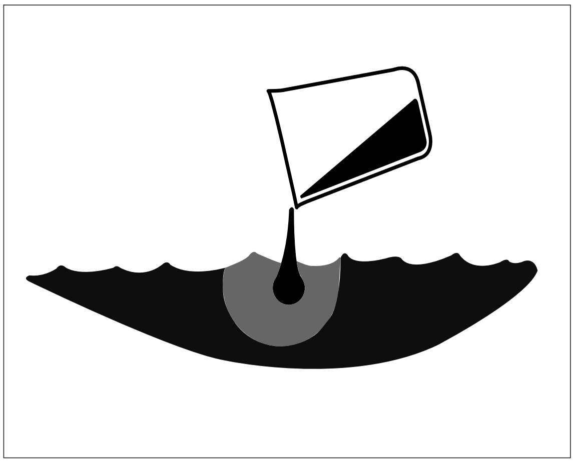
Use tools appropriate to the work. Makeshift tools, parts, and procedures can create safety hazards.

Use power tools only to loosen threaded tools and fasteners.

For loosening and tightening hardware, use the correct size tools. DO NOT use U.S. measurement tools on metric fasteners. Avoid bodily injury caused by slipping wrenches.

Use only recommended replacement parts. (See Parts catalogue.)

DISPOSE OF FLUIDS PROPERLY

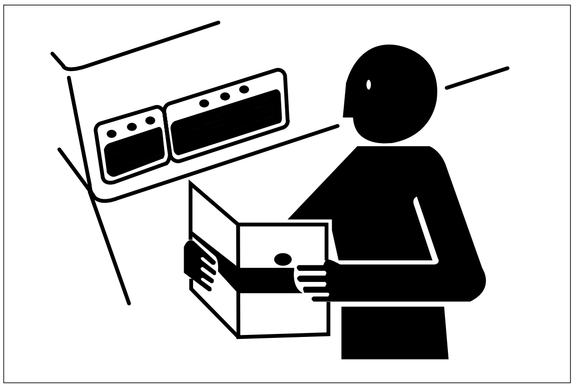


Improperly disposing of fluids can harm the environment and ecology. Before draining any fluids, find out the proper way to dispose of waste from your local environmental agency.

Use proper containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

DO NOT pour oil into the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Observe relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, batteries, and other harmful waste.

REPLACE SAFETY SIGNS



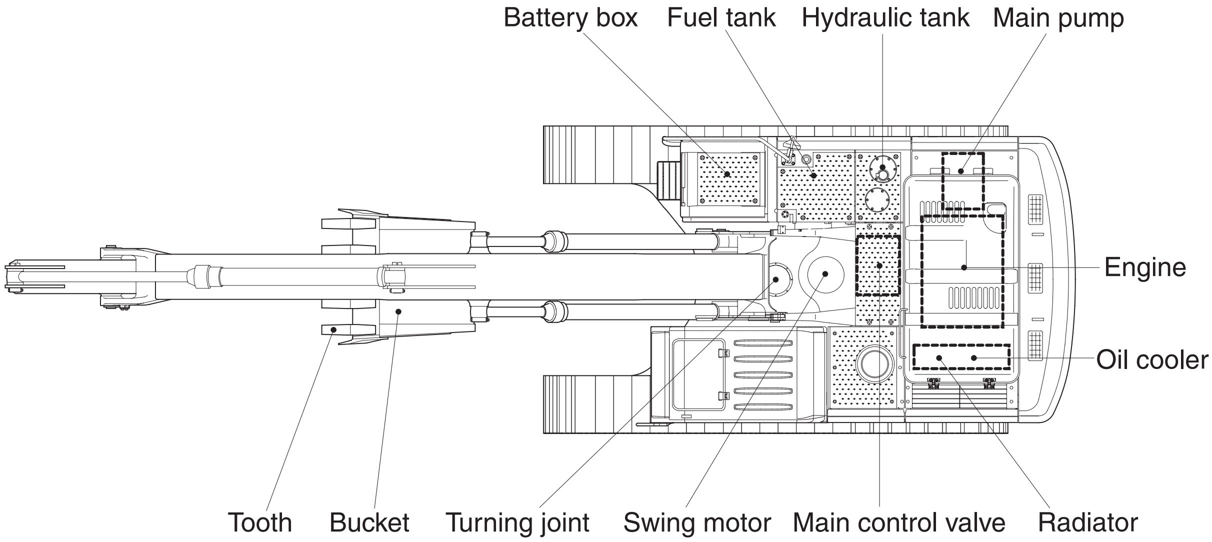
Replace missing or damaged safety signs. See the machine operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.

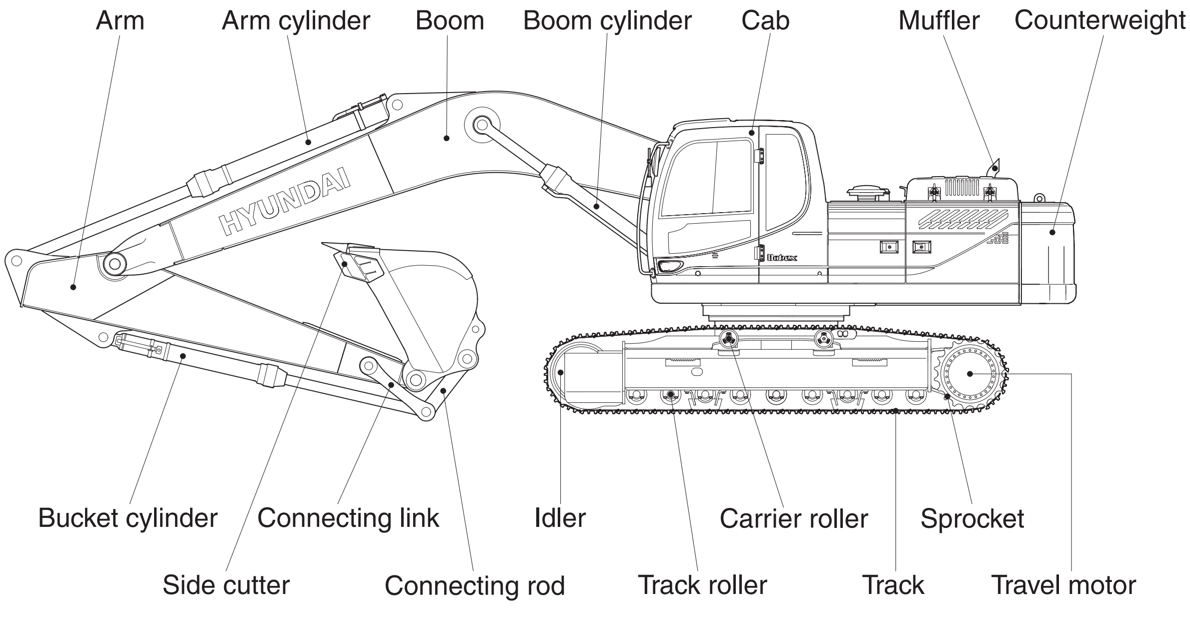
LIVE WITH SAFETY

Before returning machine to customer, make sure machine is functioning properly, especially the safety systems. Install all guards and shields.

GROUP 2 SPECIFICATIONS

1. MAJOR COMPONENT

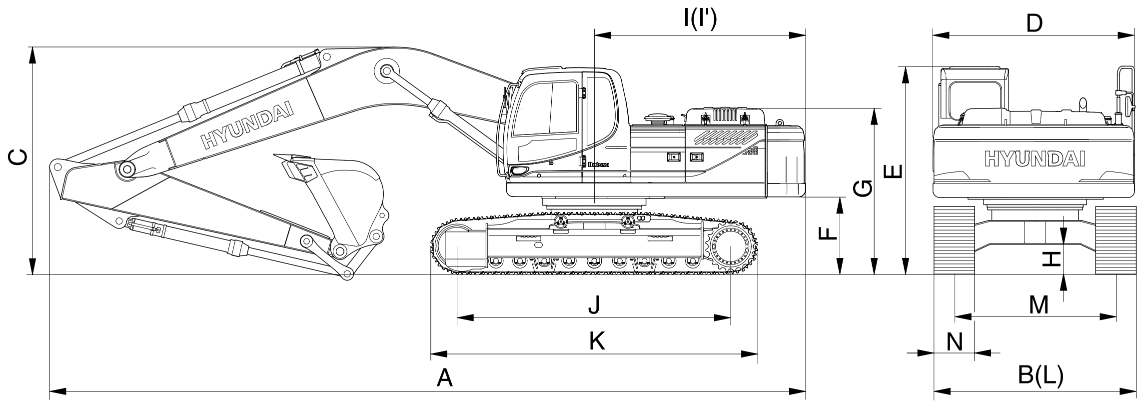




2. SPECIFICATIONS

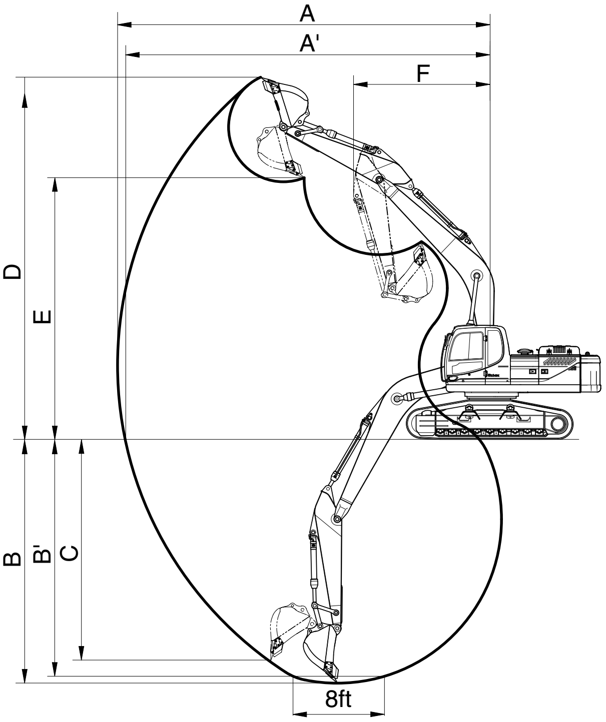
1) R350LVS

· **6.45 m (21' 2") BOOM and 2.85 m(9' 4") ARM**



Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	33200 (73190)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m^3 (yd^3)	1.60 (2.09)
Overall length	A	mm (ft-in)	10990 (36' 1")
Overall width, with 600 mm shoe	B		3280 (10' 9")
Overall height	C		3460 (11' 4")
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")
Overall height of cab	E		3090 (10' 2")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1200 (3' 11")
Engine cover height	G		2580 (8' 6")
Minimum ground clearance	H		500 (1' 8")
Rear-end distance	I		3265 (10' 9")
Rear-end swing radius	I'		3330 (10' 11")
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")
Undercarriage width	L		3280 (10' 9")
Track gauge	M		2680 (8' 10")
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.3/5.5 (2.1/3.4)
Swing speed		rpm	9.2
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm^2(psi)	0.64 (9.10)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	29500 (65040)

2) R350L VS WORKING RANGE



Description		2.85m (9' 4") Arm	※3.20m (10' 6") Arm	
Max digging reach	A	10920mm(35' 10")	11140mm(36' 7")	
Max digging reach on ground	A'	10710mm(35' 2")	10940mm(35' 11")	
Max digging depth	B	6970 mm (22 10")	7370 mm (24' 2")	
Max digging depth (8 ft level)	B'	6800 mm (22' 4")	7210 mm (23' 8")	
Max vertical wall digging depth	C	6270 mm (20' 7")	6360 mm (20' 10")	
Max digging height	D	10510mm(34' 7")	10310mm(33' 10")	
Max dumping height	E	7380 mm (24' 3")	7240 mm (23' 9")	
Min swing radius	F	4520 mm (14' 10")	4470 mm (14' 8")	
Bucket digging force	SAE	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	
		19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	
		42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	
	ISO	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	
		21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	
		47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	
Arm digging force	SAE	151.5 [164.5] kN	143.2 [155.5] kN	
		15450 [16770] kgf	14600 [15850] kgf	
		34060 [36980] lbf	32190 [34950] lbf	
	ISO	156.9 [170.4] kN	147.1 [159.7] kN	
		16000 [17400] kgf	15000 [16290] kgf	
		35270 [38290] lbf	33070 [35900] lbf	

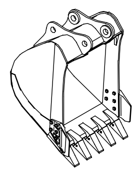
[ ] : Power boost ※ : STD

3. WEIGHT

Item	R350LVS	
	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly	14310	31550
Main frame weld assembly	2963	6533
Engine assembly	920	2028
Main pump assembly	200	440
Main control valve assembly	220	490
Swing motor assembly	370	820
Hydraulic oil tank assembly	230	490
Fuel tank assembly	210	450
Counterweight	6200	13670
Cab assembly	310	680
Radiator total assy	280	620
Lower chassis assembly	11500	25770
Track frame weld assembly	3970	8750
Swing bearing	470	1036
Travel motor assembly	360	800
Turning joint	50	110
Tension cylinder	215.5	573
Idler	260	540
Sprocket	83.2	183.4
Carrier roller	35	77
Track roller	56.4	124
Track-chain assembly (600 mm standard triple grouser shoe)	1879	4142
Front attachment assembly (6.45 m boom, 2.85m arm, 1.60 m^3 SAE heaped bucket)	6560	14460
6.45 m boom assembly	2705	5960
2.85m arm assembly	1185	2610
1.60 m^3 SAE heaped bucket	1530	3373
Boom cylinder assembly	300	660
Arm cylinder assembly	380	840
Bucket cylinder assembly	270	570
Bucket control linkage assembly	370	820

4. BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE

1) GENERAL BUCKET



※1.60 m^3 SAE
heaped bucket

Capacity		Width		Weight	Recommendation
					6.45 m (21' 2") boom
SAE heaped	CECE heaped	Without side cutter	With side cutter		2.85m arm (9' 4")
※1.60 m^3 (2.09 yd^3)	1.40 m^3 (1.83 yd^3)	1535 mm (60.4")	—	1530 kg (3370 lb)	

※ : Standard bucket

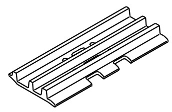
- Applicable for materials with density of 2000 kg/m^3 (3370 lb/yd^3) or less
- Applicable for materials with density of 1600 kg/m^3 (2700 lb/yd^3) or less
- Applicable for materials with density of 1100 kg/m^3 (1850 lb/yd^3) or less

5. UNDERCARRIAGE

1) TRACKS

X-leg type center frame is integrally welded with reinforced box-section track frames. The design includes dry tracks, lubricated rollers, idlers, sprockets, hydraulic track adjusters with shock absorbing springs and assembled track-type tractor shoes with triple grousers.

2) TYPES OF SHOES

Model	Shapes		Triple grouser
			
R350LVS	Shoe width	mm (in)	※ 600(24)
	Operating weight	kg (lb)	33200(73190)
	Ground pressure	kgf/cm^2 (psi)	0.64(9.10)
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	3280(10' 9")

※ : Standard bucket

3) NUMBER OF ROLLERS AND SHOES ON EACH SIDE

Item	Quantity
Carrier rollers	2EA
Track rollers	9EA
Track shoes	48EA

4) SELECTION OF TRACK SHOE

Suitable track shoes should be selected according to operating conditions.

Method of selecting shoes

Confirm the category from the list of applications in **table 2**, then use **table 1** to select the shoe. Wide shoes (categories B and C) have limitations on applications. Before using wide shoes, check the precautions, then investigate and study the operating conditions to confirm if these shoes are suitable.

Select the narrowest shoe possible to meet the required flotation and ground pressure. Application of wider shoes than recommendations will cause unexpected problem such as bending of shoes, crack of link, breakage of pin, loosening of shoe bolts and the other various problems.

※ Table 1

Track shoe	Specification	Category
600 mm triple grouser	Standard	A

※ Table 2

Category	Applications	Applications
A	Rocky ground, river beds, normal soil	· Travel at low speed on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees

6. SPECIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

1) ENGINE

Item	Specification
Model	HYUNDAI HE8.9
Type	4-cycle turbocharged charger air cooled diesel engine
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	114× 145 mm (4.49" × 5.7")
Piston displacement	8900cc (540 cu in)
Compression ratio	17.8 : 1
Rated gross horse power (SAE J1995)	280 Hp at 2000 rpm (209 kW at 2000 rpm)
Maximum torque	148 kgf · m (1070 lbf· ft) at 1400 rpm
Engine oil quantity	31.7 l (8.4 U.S. gal)
Dry weight	740 kg (1630 lb)
High idling speed	1700±50 rpm
Low idling speed	800± 50 rpm
Rated fuel consumption	164.8 g/Hp · hr at 1850 rpm
Starting motor	Denso (24V-7.5 kW)
Alternator	Delco Remy 24V-90A
Battery	2 × 12V × 160Ah

2) MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement tandem axis piston pumps
Capacity	2 × 175 cc/rev
Rated oil flow	2 × 315 l /min (83.2 U.S. gpm / 69.3 U.K. gpm)
Rated speed	1850 rpm

3) GEAR PUMP

Item	Specification
Type	Fixed displacement gear pump single stage
Capacity	15cc/rev
Maximum pressure	40 kgf/cm^2 (570 psi)
Rated oil flow	27 l /min (7.1 U.S. gpm/5.9 U.K. gpm)

4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item	Specification
Type	10 spools
Operating method	Hydraulic pilot system
Main relief valve pressure	350 kgf/cm^2 (4980 psi) [380 kgf/cm^2 (5400 psi)]
Overload relief valve pressure	400 kgf/cm^2 (5690 psi)

[ ]: Power boost

5) SWING MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Axial piston motor
Capacity	156.9 cc/rev
Relief pressure	300 kgf/cm^2 (4270 psi)
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Braking torque	2143 kgf · m (15500 lbf · ft)
Brake release pressure	22 kgf/cm^2 (316 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 - stage planetary

6) TRAVEL MOTOR

Item	Specification
Type	Variable displacement bent-axis axial piston motor
Relief pressure	350 kgf/cm^2 (4980 psi)
Capacity (max / min)	156.9/282.6 cc/rev
Reduction gear type	3-stage planetary
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Brake release pressure	17kgf/cm^2 (242 psi)
Braking torque	5356 kgf · m (38740lbf · ft)

7) REMOTE CONTROL VALVE

Item		Specification
Type		Pressure reducing type
Operating pressure	Minimum	6.5 kg/cm² (92 psi)
	Maximum	26 kg/cm² (370 psi)
Single operation stroke	Lever	61 mm (2.4 in)
	Pedal	123 mm (4.84 in)

8) CYLINDER

Item		Specification
Boom cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 150 × ø 105 × 1480 mm
	Cushion	Extend only
Arm cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 160 × ø 110 × 1685 mm
	Cushion	Extend and retract
Bucket cylinder	Bore dia × Rod dia × Stroke	ø 140 × ø 100 × 1285 mm
	Cushion	Extend only

※ **Discoloration of cylinder rod can occur when the friction reduction additive of lubrication oil spreads on the rod surface.**

※ **Discoloration does not cause any harmful effect on the cylinder performance.**

9) SHOE

Item		Width	Ground pressure	Link quantity	Overall width
R350LVS	Standard	600 mm (24")	0.64 kgf/cm² (9.10 psi)	48	3280 mm (10' 9")

7. RECOMMENDED OILS

Use only oils listed below. Do not mix different brand oil.
Please use HYUNDAI genuine oil and grease.

Service point	Kind of fluid	Capacity ℓ (U.S. gal)	Ambient temperature °C(°F): -50 (-58), -30 (-22), -20 (-4), -10 (14), 0 (32), 10 (50), 20 (68), 30 (86), 40 (104)
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	31.7(8.4)	★SAE 5W-40 SAE 30 SAE 10W SAE 10W-30 SAE 15W-40
Swing drive	Gear oil	11 (2.9)	★SAE 75W-90
Final drive	Gear oil	7.8×2 (2.1×2)	SAE 80W-90
Hydraulic tank	Hydraulic oil	Tank: 190 (50) System: 330 (87)	★ISO VG 15 ISO VG 32 ISO VG 46 ISO VG 68
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel	560 (148)	★ASTM D975 NO.1 ASTM D975 NO.2
Fitting (grease nipple)	Grease	As required	★NLGI NO.1 NLGI NO.2
Radiator (reservoir tank)	Mixture of antifreeze and water	50 (13.2)	Ethylene glycol base permanent type (50 : 50) ★Ethylene glycol base permanent type (60 : 40)

SAE : Society of Automotive Engineers
API : American Petroleum Institute
ISO : International Organization for Standardization
NLGI : National Lubricating Grease Institute
ASTM : American Society of Testing and Material

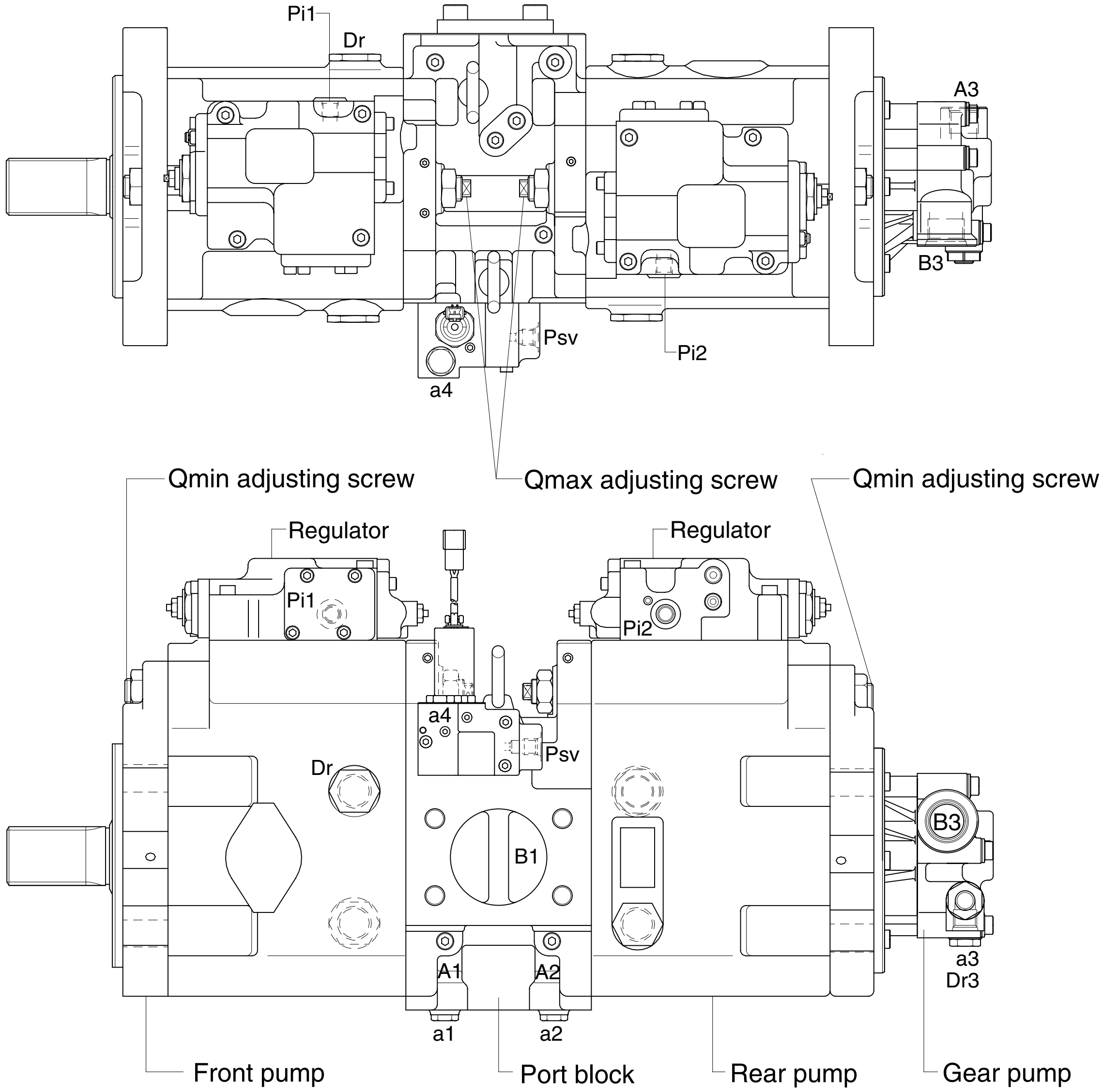
★ : Cold region
Russia, CIS, Mongolia

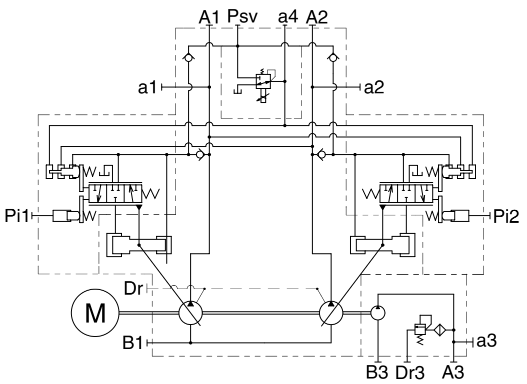
SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

GROUP 1 PUMP DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

The pump device consists of main pump, regulator and gear pump.

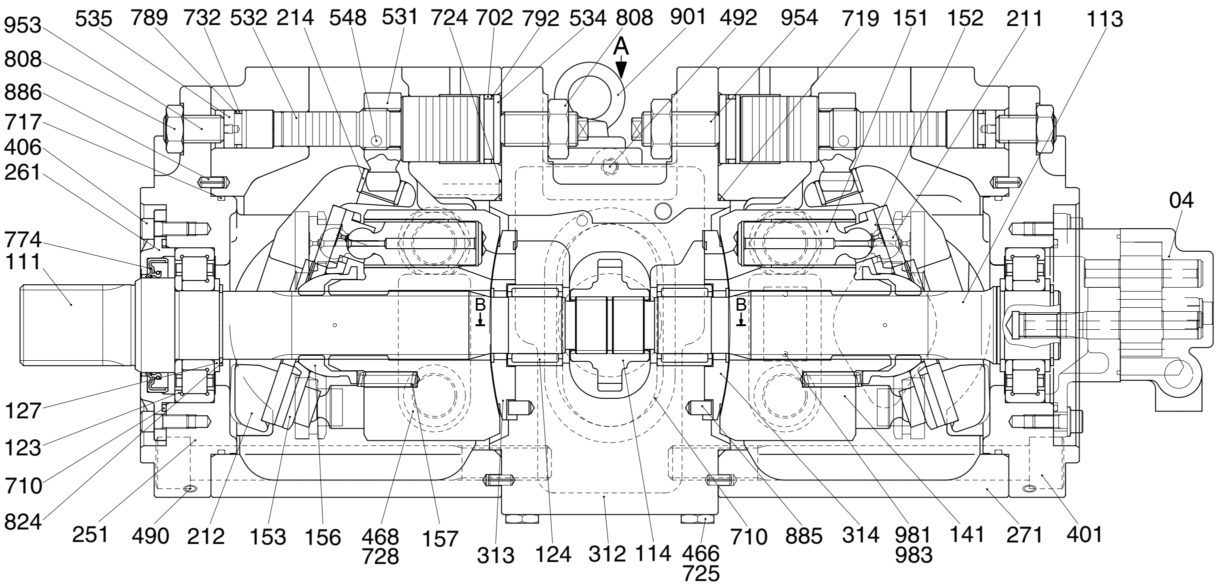


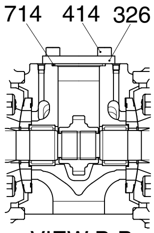


Port	Port name	Port size
A1, 2	Delivery port	SAE6000psi 1"
B1	Suction port	SAE2000psi 3"
Dr	Drain port	PF 3/4 - 23
Pi1, i2	Pilot port	PF 1/4 - 15
Psv	Servo assist port	PF 1/4 - 15
a1, 2, 4	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 15
a3	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 14
A3	Gear pump delivery port	PF 1/2 - 19
B3	Gear pump suction port	PF 3/4 - 20.5
Dr3	Gear pump drain port	PF 3/8 - 15

1) MAIN PUMP(1/2)

The main pump consists of two piston pumps (front & rear) and valve block.

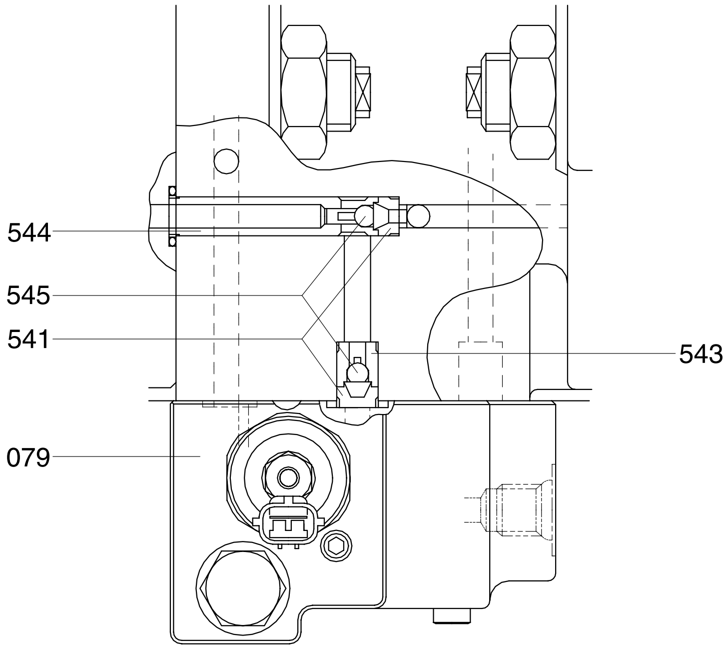




VIEW B-B

04	Gear pump	312	Valve block	717	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	313	Valve plate (R)	719	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	314	Valve plate (L)	724	O-ring
114	Gear	326	Cover	725	O-ring
123	Roller bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	406	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	414	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
141	Cylinder block	466	VP plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	VP plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	VP plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Pin	954	Set screw
251	Swash plate support	702	O-ring	981	Name plate
261	Seal cover (F)	710	O-ring	983	Pin
271	Pump casing	714	O-ring		

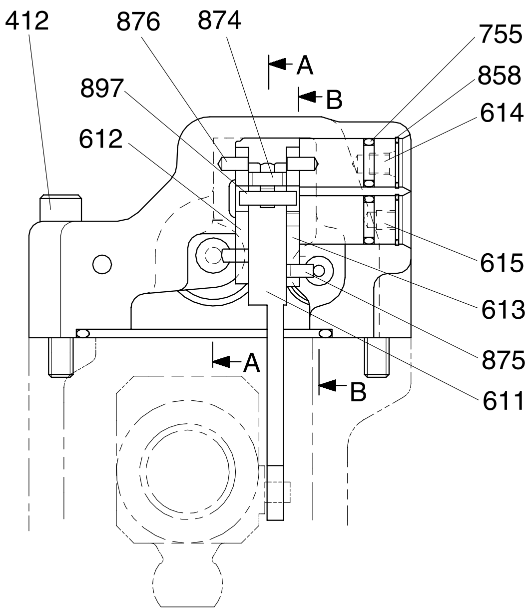
MAIN PUMP (2/2)

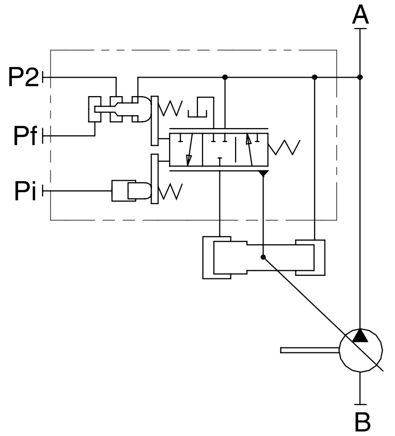


VIEW A

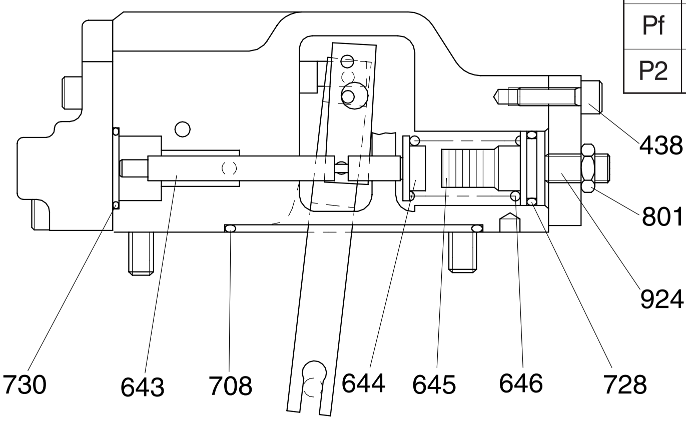
079	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) REGULATOR (1/2)

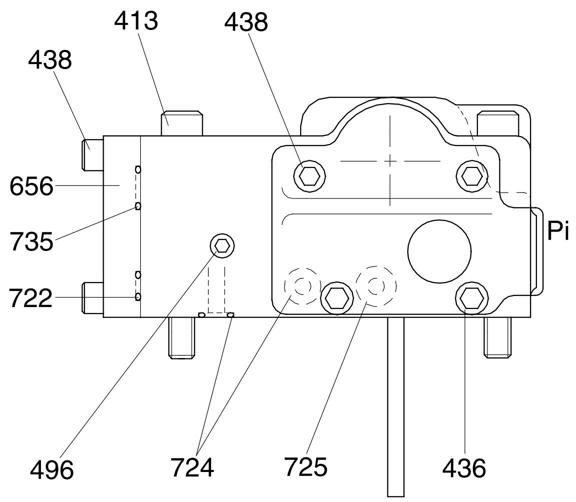




Port	Port name	Port size
A	Delivery port	1"
B	Suction port	3"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-

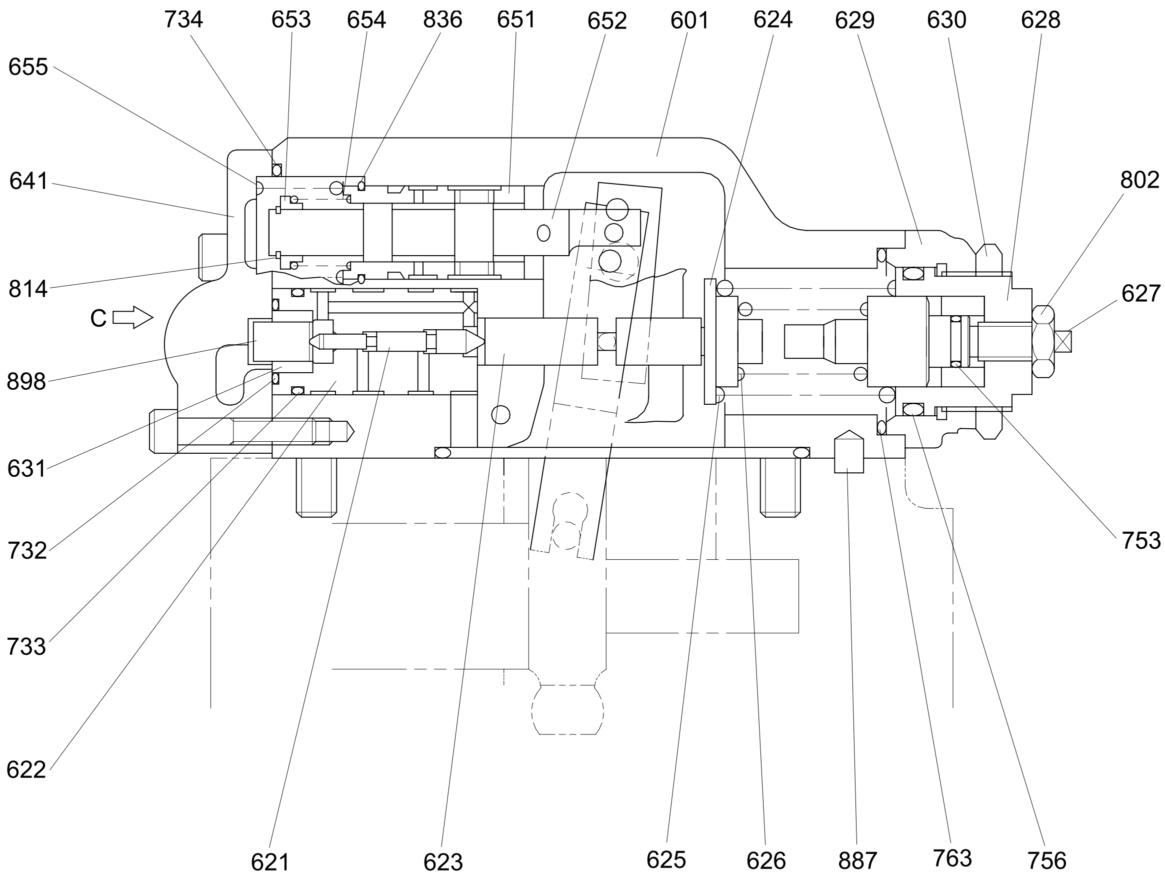


SECTION B-B



VIEW C

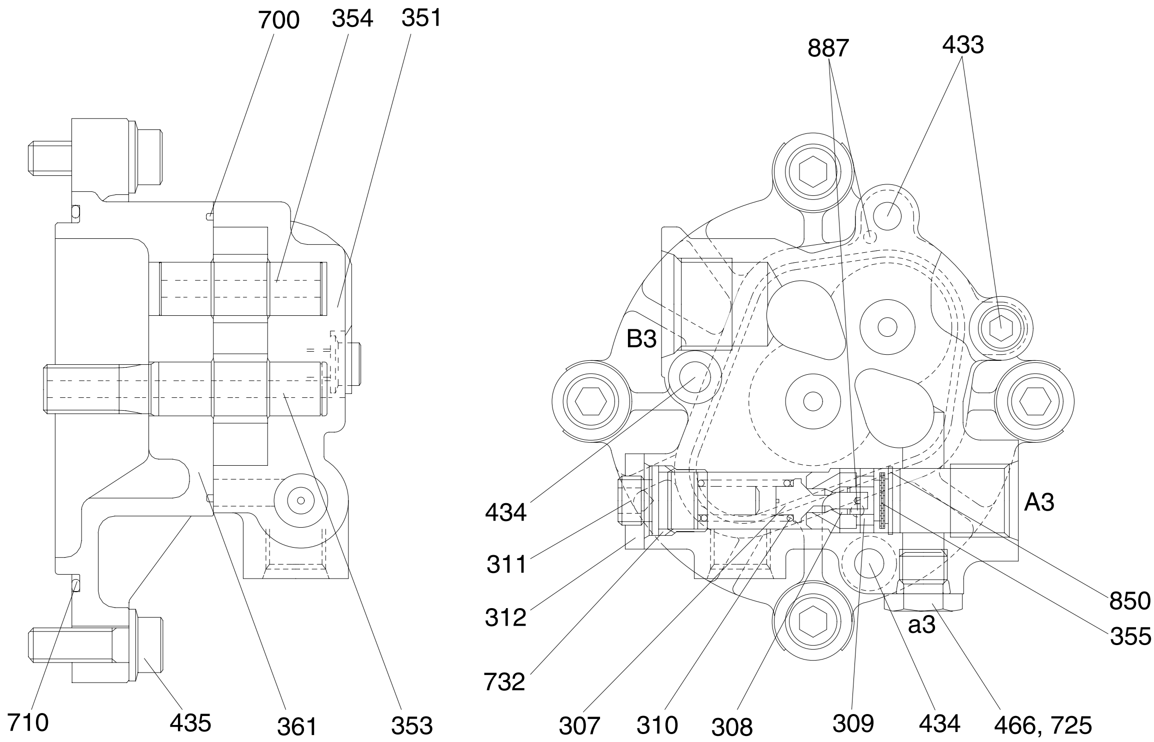
REGULATOR (2/2)



SECTION A-A

412	Hexagon socket screw	630	Lock nut	733	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket screw	631	Sleeve, pf	734	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket screw	641	Pilot cover	735	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket screw	643	Pilot piston	753	O-ring
496	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	755	O-ring
601	Casing	645	Adjust stem (Q)	756	O-ring
611	Feed back lever	646	Pilot spring	763	O-ring
612	Lever (1)	651	Sleeve	801	Nut
613	Lever (2)	652	Spool	802	Nut
614	Fulcrum plug	653	Spring seat	814	Snap ring
615	Adjust plug	654	Return spring	836	Snap ring
621	Compensator piston	655	Set spring	858	Snap ring
622	Piston case	656	Block cover	874	Pin
623	Compensator rod	708	O-ring	875	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	722	O-ring	876	Pin
625	Outer spring	724	O-ring	887	Pin
626	Inner spring	725	O-ring	897	Pin
627	Adjust stem (C)	728	O-ring	898	Pin
628	Adjust screw (C)	730	O-ring	924	Set screw
629	Cover (C)	732	O-ring		

3) GEAR PUMP



307	Poppet	353	Drive gear	466	Plug
308	Seat	354	Driven gear	700	Ring
309	Ring	355	Filter	710	O-ring
310	Spring	361	Front case	725	O-ring
311	Screw	433	Flange socket	732	O-ring
312	Nut	434	Flange socket	850	Snap ring
351	Gear case	435	Flange socket	887	Pin

2. FUNCTION

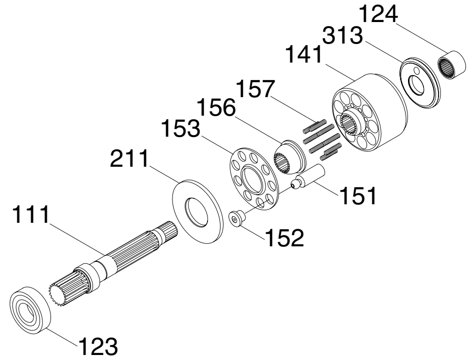
1) MAIN PUMP

The pumps may classified roughly into the rotary group performing a rotary motion and working as the major part of the whole pump function: the swash plate group that varies the delivery rates: and the valve cover group that changes over oil suction and discharge.

(1) Rotary group

The rotary group consists of drive shaft (F)(111), cylinder block (141), piston shoes (151,152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156), and cylinder spring (157). The drive shaft is supported by bearing (123,124) at its both ends.

The shoe is caulked to the piston to from a spherical coupling. It has a pocket to relieve thrust force generated by loading pressure and the take hydraulic balance so that it slides lightly over the shoe plate (211). The sub group composed by a piston and a shoe is pressed against the shoe plate by the action of the cylinder spring via a retainer and a spherical bush. Similarly, the cylinder block is pressed against valve plate (313) by the action of the cylinder spring.

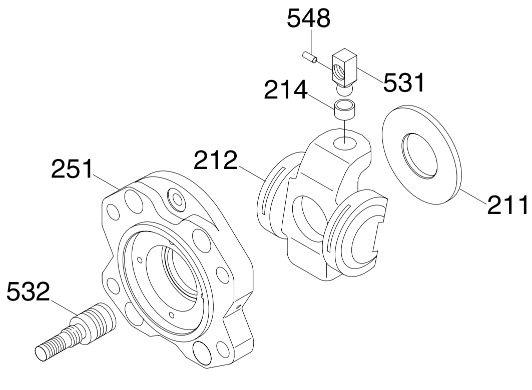


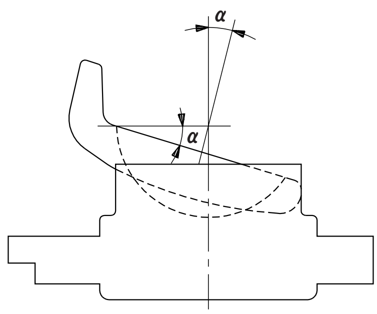
(2) Swash plate group

The swash plate group consists of swash plate (212), shoe plate (211), swash plate support (251), tilting bush (214), tilting pin (531) and servo piston (532).

The swash plate is a cylindrical part formed on the opposite side of the sliding surface of the shoe and is supported by the swash support.

If the servo piston moves to the right and left as hydraulic force controlled by the regulator is admitted to hydraulic chamber located on both sides of the servo piston, the swash plate slides over the swash plate support via the spherical part of the tilting pin to change the tilting angle (α)





(3) Valve block group

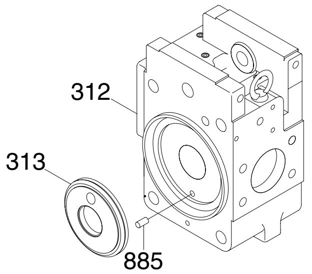
The valve block group consists of valve block (312), valve plate (313) and valve plate pin (885).

The valve plate having two melon-shaped ports is fixed to the valve block and feeds and collects oil to and from the cylinder block.

The oil changed over by the valve plate is connected to an external pipeline by way of the valve block.

Now, if the drive shaft is driven by a prime mover (electric motor, engine, etc), it rotates the cylinder block via a spline linkage at the same time. If the swash plate is tilted as in Fig (previous page) the pistons arranged in the cylinder block make a reciprocating motion with respect to the cylinder block, while they revolve with the cylinder block.

If you pay attention to a single piston, it performs a motion away from the valve plate (oil sucking process) within 180 degrees, and makes a motion towards the valve plate (or oil discharging process) in the rest of 180 degrees. When the swash plate has a tilting angle of zero, the piston makes no stroke and discharges no oil.



2) REGULATOR

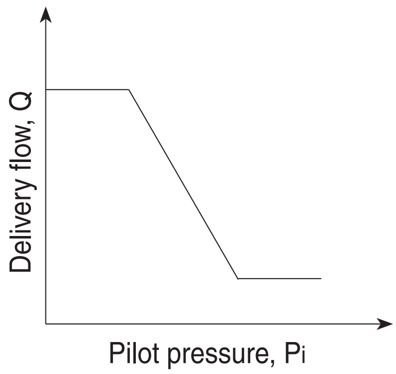
Regulator consists of the negative flow control, total horse power control and power shift control function.

(1) Negative flow control

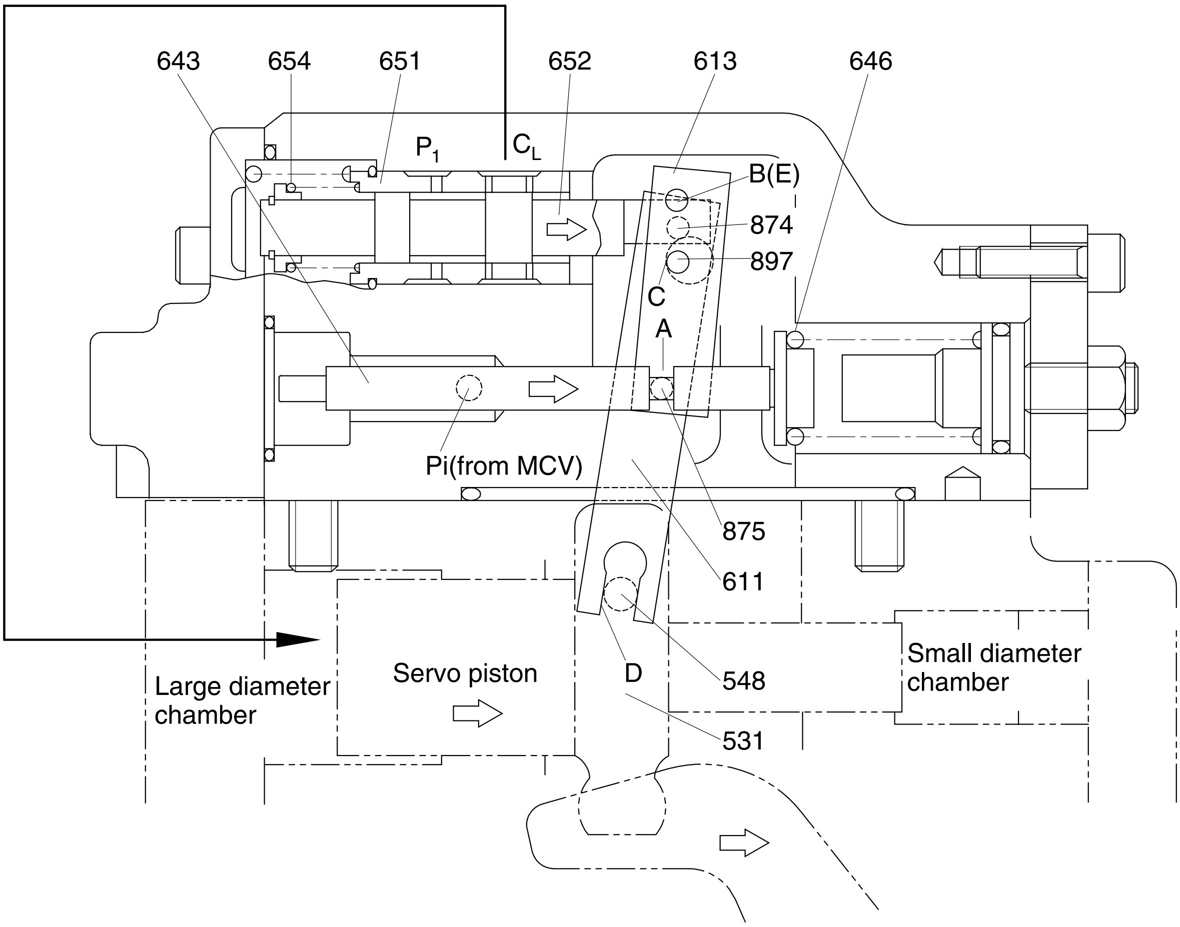
By changing the pilot pressure Pi, the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) is regulated arbitrarily, as shown in the figure.

This regulator is of the negative flow control in which the delivery flow Q decreases as the pilot pressure Pi rises.

With this mechanism, when the pilot pressure corresponding to the flow required for the work is commanded, the pump discharges the required flow only, and so it does not consume the power uselessly.



① Flow reducing function



As the pilot pressure Pi rises, the pilot piston (643) moves to the right to a position where the force of the pilot spring (646) balances with the hydraulic force.

The groove (A) in the pilot piston is fitted with the pin (875) that is fixed to lever 2 (613). Therefore, when the pilot piston moves, lever 2 rotates around the fulcrum of point B [Fixed by the fulcrum plug (614) and pin (875)]. Since the large hole section (C) of lever 2 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the pin (897) moves to the right as lever 2 rotates. Since the opposing-flat section (D) of the feedback lever is fitted with the pin (548) fixed by the tilting pin (531) that swings the swash plate, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D, as the pin (897) moves.

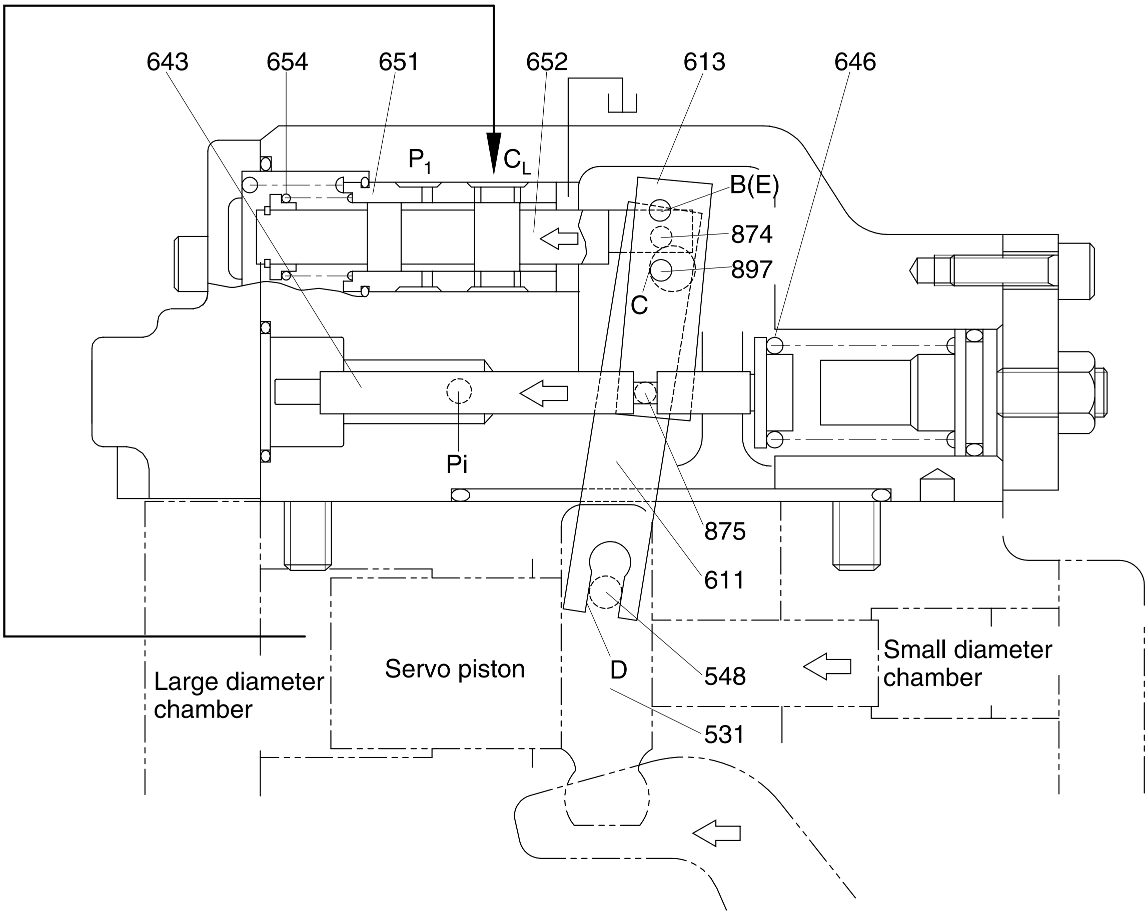
Since the feedback lever is connected with the spool (652) via the pin (874), the spool moves to the right.

The movement of the spool causes the delivery pressure P1 to connect to port CL through the spool and to be admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston. The delivery pressure P1 that is constantly admitted to the small diameter section of the servo piston moves the servo piston to the right due to the area difference, resulting in decrease of the tilting angle.

When the servo piston moves to the right, point D also moves to the right. The spool is fitted with the return spring (654) and is tensioned to the left at all times, and so the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2.

Therefore, as point D moves, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool is shifted to the left. This causes the opening between the sleeve (651) and spool (652) to close slowly, and the servo piston comes to a complete stop when it closes completely.

② Flow increasing function



As the pilot pressure Pi decreases, the pilot piston (643) moves to the left by the action of the pilot spring (646) and causes lever 2 (613) to rotate around the fulcrum of point B. Since the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2 by the action of the return spring (654) via the spool (652), pin (874), and feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 2 rotates, and shifts the spool to the left. Port CL opens a way to the tank port as the spool moves. This deprives the large diameter section of the servo piston of pressure, and shifts the servo piston to the left by the discharge pressure P1 in the small diameter section, resulting in an increase in the flow rate.

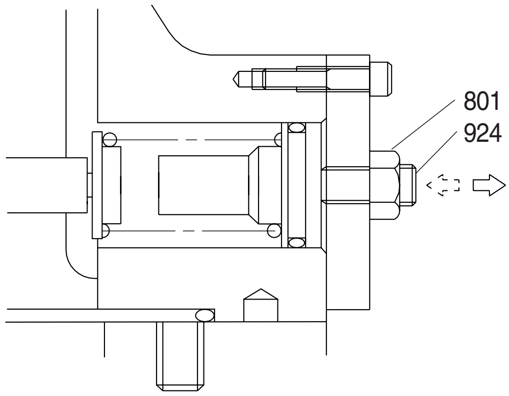
As the servo piston moves, point D also moves to the left, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool moves to the right till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ **Adjustment of flow control characteristic**

The flow control characteristic can be adjusted with the adjusting screw.

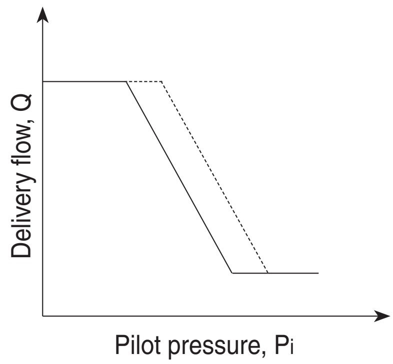
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (801) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head screw (924).

Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right as shown in the figure.



※ **Adjusting values are shown in table.**

Speed	Adjustment of flow control characteristic		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (924)	Flow control starting pressure change amount	Flow change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(kgf/cm ^{2})	(l /min)
1750	+1/4	+1.5	+18.4



(2) Total horsepower control

The regulator decreases the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) automatically to limit the input torque within a certain value with a rise in the delivery pressure P1 of the self pump and the delivery pressure P2 of the companion pump.

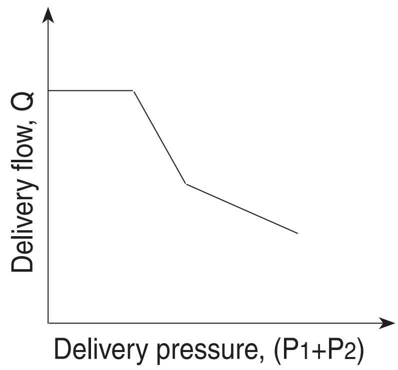
(The input horsepower is constant when the speed is constant.)

Since the regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type that operates by the sum of load pressures of the two pumps in the tandem double-pump system, the prime mover is automatically prevented from being overloaded, irrespective of the load condition of the two pumps, when horsepower control is under way.

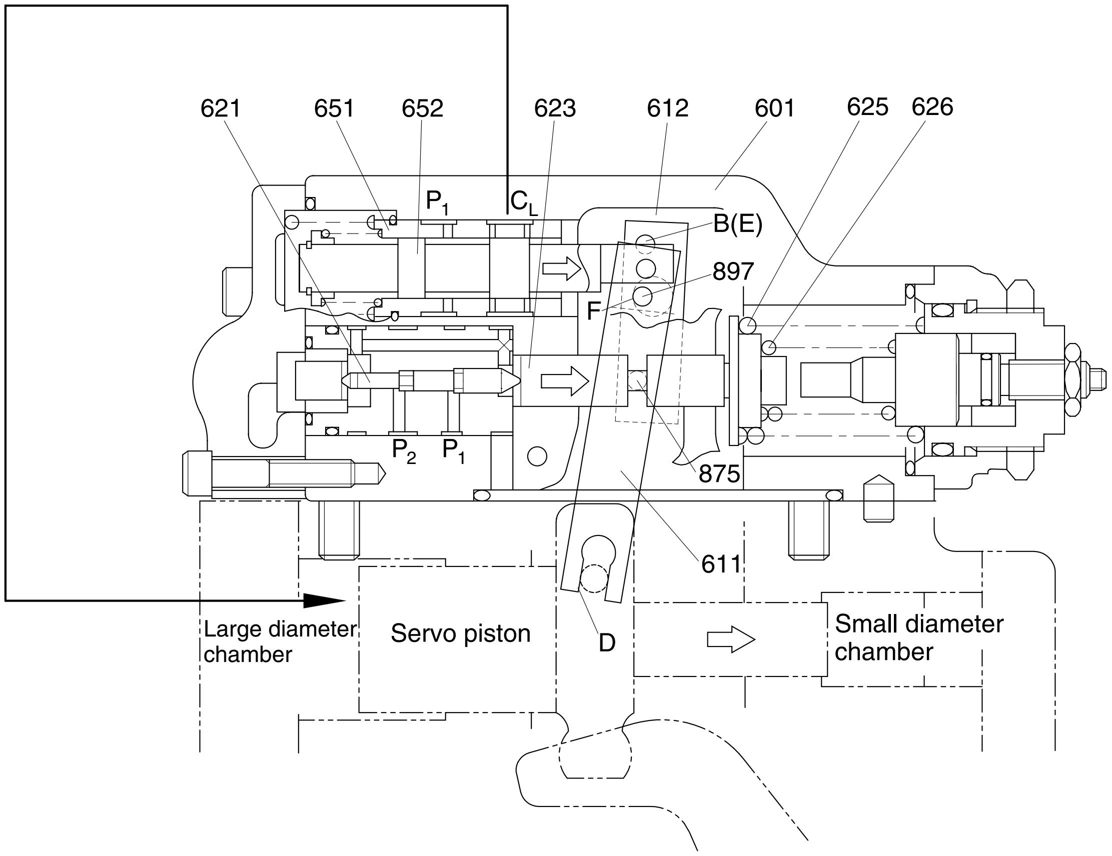
Since this regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type, it controls the tilting angles (displacement volumes) of the two pumps to the same value as represented by the following equation :

$$Tin = P1 \times q / 2\pi + P2 \times q / 2\pi$$
$$= (P1+P2) \times q / 2\pi$$

The horsepower control function is the same as the flow control function and is summarized in the following. (for detailed behaviors of respective parts, refer to the section of flow control).



① Overload preventive function

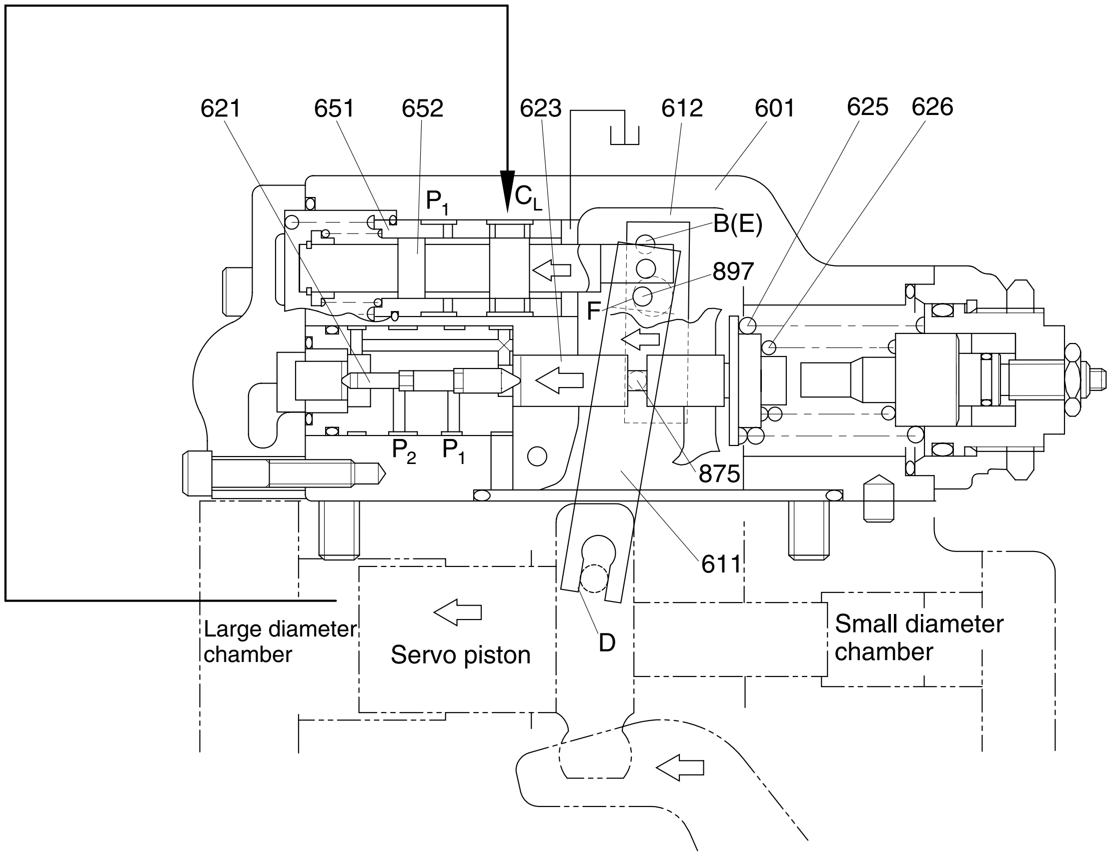


When the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 rises, it acts on the stepped part of the compensating piston (621). It presses the compensating rod (623) to the right till the force of the outer spring (625) and inner spring (626) balances with the hydraulic force. The movement of the compensating rod is transmitted to lever 1 (612) via pin (875).

Lever 1 rotates around the pin (875) (E) fixed to the casing (601).

Since the large hole section (F) of lever 1 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 1 rotates, and then the spool(652) is shifted to the right. As the spool moves, the delivery pressure P1 is admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston via port CL, causes the servo piston move to the right, reduces the pump delivery, flow rate, and prevents the prime mover from being overloaded. The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the feedback lever via point D. Then the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point F and the spool is shifted to the left. The spool moves till the opening between the spool (652) and sleeve (651) is closed.

② Flow reset function



As the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 decreases, the compensating rod (623) is pushed back by the action of the springs (625 & 626) to rotate lever 1 (612) around point E. Rotating of lever 1 causes the feedback lever (611) to rotate around the fulcrum of point D and then the spool (652) to move to the left. As a result, port CL opens a way to the tank port.

This causes the servo piston to move to the left and the pump's delivery rate to increase.

The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the spool by the action of the feedback mechanism to move it till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

③ Low tilting angle (low flow) command preferential function

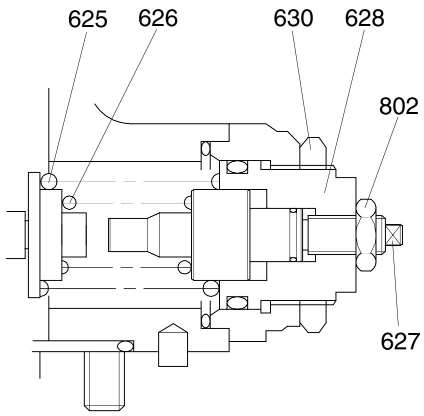
As mentioned above, flow control and horsepower control tilting angle commands are transmitted to the feedback lever and spool via the large-hole sections (C & F) of levers 1 and 2. However, since sections C and F have the pins (ø4) protruding from the large hole (ø8), only the lever lessening the tilting angle contacts the pin (897) ; the hole (ø8) in the lever of a larger tilting angle command is freed without contacting the pin (897). Such a mechanical selection method permits preference of the lower tilting angle command of the flow control and horsepower control.

④ Adjustment of input horsepower

Since the regulator is of total cumulative horsepower type, adjust the adjusting screws of both the front and rear pumps, when changing the horsepower set values. The pressure change values by adjustment are based on two pumps pressurized at the same time, and the values will be doubled when only one pump is loaded.

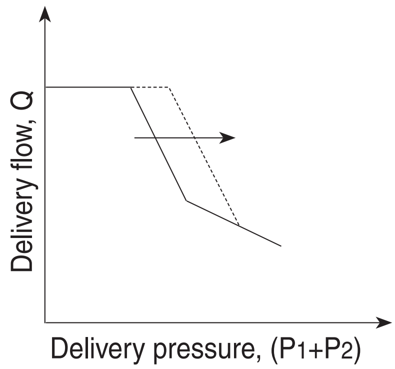
a. Adjustment of outer spring

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (630) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw C (628). Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right and increases the input horsepower as shown in the figure. Since turning the adjusting screw C by N turns changes the setting of the inner spring (626), return the adjusting screw QI (627) by N×A turns at first. (A=1.9)



※ Adjusting values are shown in table.

Speed	Adjustment of outer spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (C) (627)	Compensating control starting pressure change amount	Input torque change amount
(min $^{-1}$)	(Turn)	(kgf/cm^2)	(kgf · m)
1750	+1/4	+19.2	+8.5



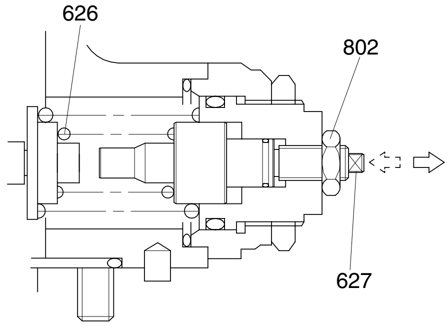
b. Adjustment of inner spring

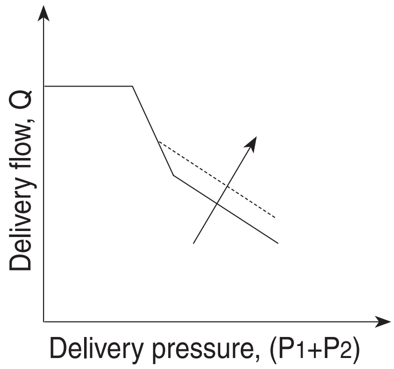
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (802) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw QI (627).

Tightening the screw increases the flow and then the input horsepower as shown in the figure.

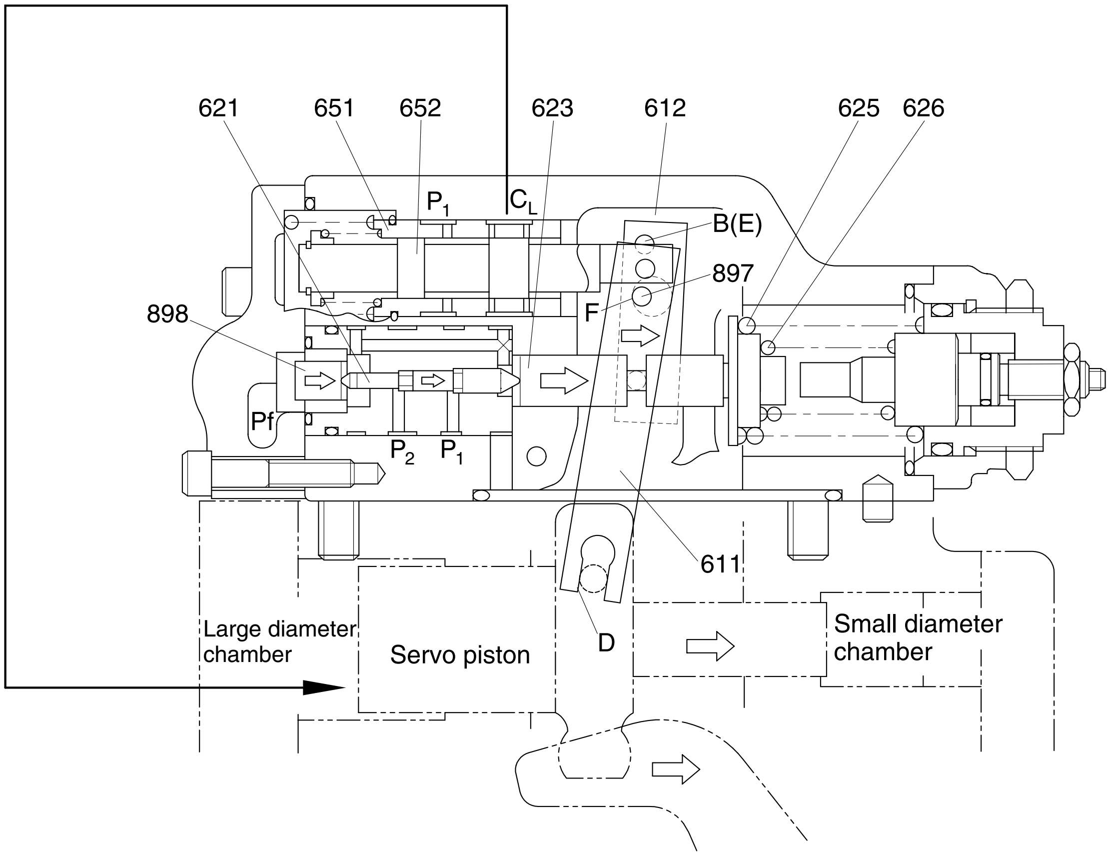
※ Adjusting valves are shown in table.

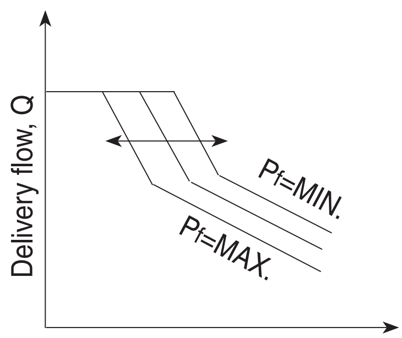
Speed	Adjustment of inner spring		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (QI) (627)	Flow change amount (rpm)	Input torque change amount
(min^{-1})	(Turn)	(l /min)	(kgf · m)
1750	+1/4	+15.9	+8.7





(3) Power shift control





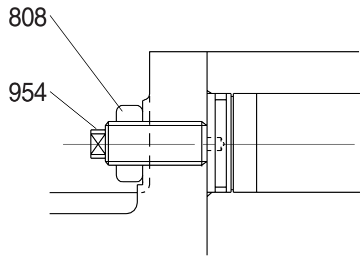
The set horsepower valve is shifted by varying the command current level of the proportional pressure reducing valve attached to the pump.
Only one proportional pressure reducing valve is provided.
However, the secondary pressure Pf (power shift pressure) is admitted to the horsepower control section of each pump regulator through the pump's internal path to shift it to the same set horsepower level.
This function permits arbitrary setting of the pump output power, thereby providing the optimum power level according to the operating condition.
The power shift pressure Pf controls the set horsepower of the pump to a desired level, as shown in the figure.
As the power shift pressure Pf rises, the compensating rod (623) moves to the right via the pin (898) and compensating piston (621).
This decreases the pump tilting angle and then the set horsepower in the same way as explained in the overload preventive function of the horsepower control. On the contrary, the set horsepower rises as the power shift pressure Pf falls.

(4) Adjustment of maximum and minimum flows

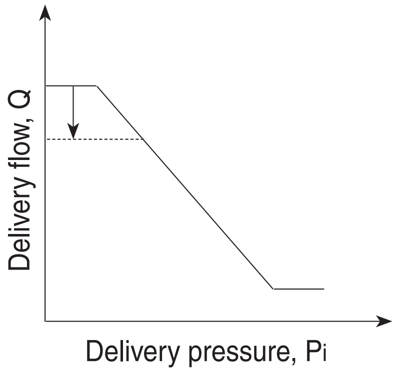
① **Adjustment of maximum flow**

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the set screw (954).

The maximum flow only is adjusted without changing other control characteristics.



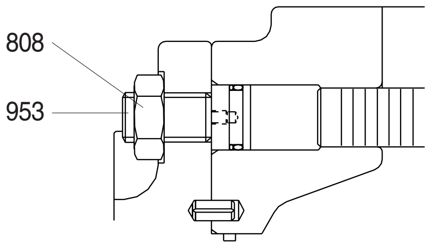
Speed	Adjustment of max flow	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (954)	Flow change amount
(min -1)	(Turn)	(l/min)
1750	+1/4	-6.7



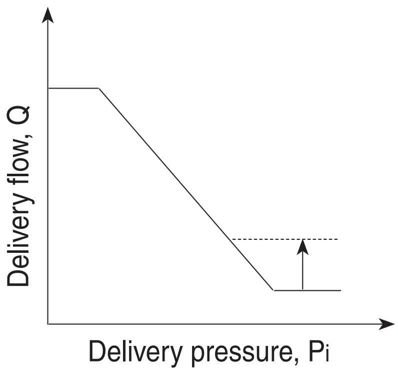
② **Adjustment of minimum flow**

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head set screw (953). Similarly to the adjustment of the maximum flow, other characteristics are not changed.

However, remember that, if tightened too much, the required horsepower during the maximum delivery pressure (or during relieving) may increase.

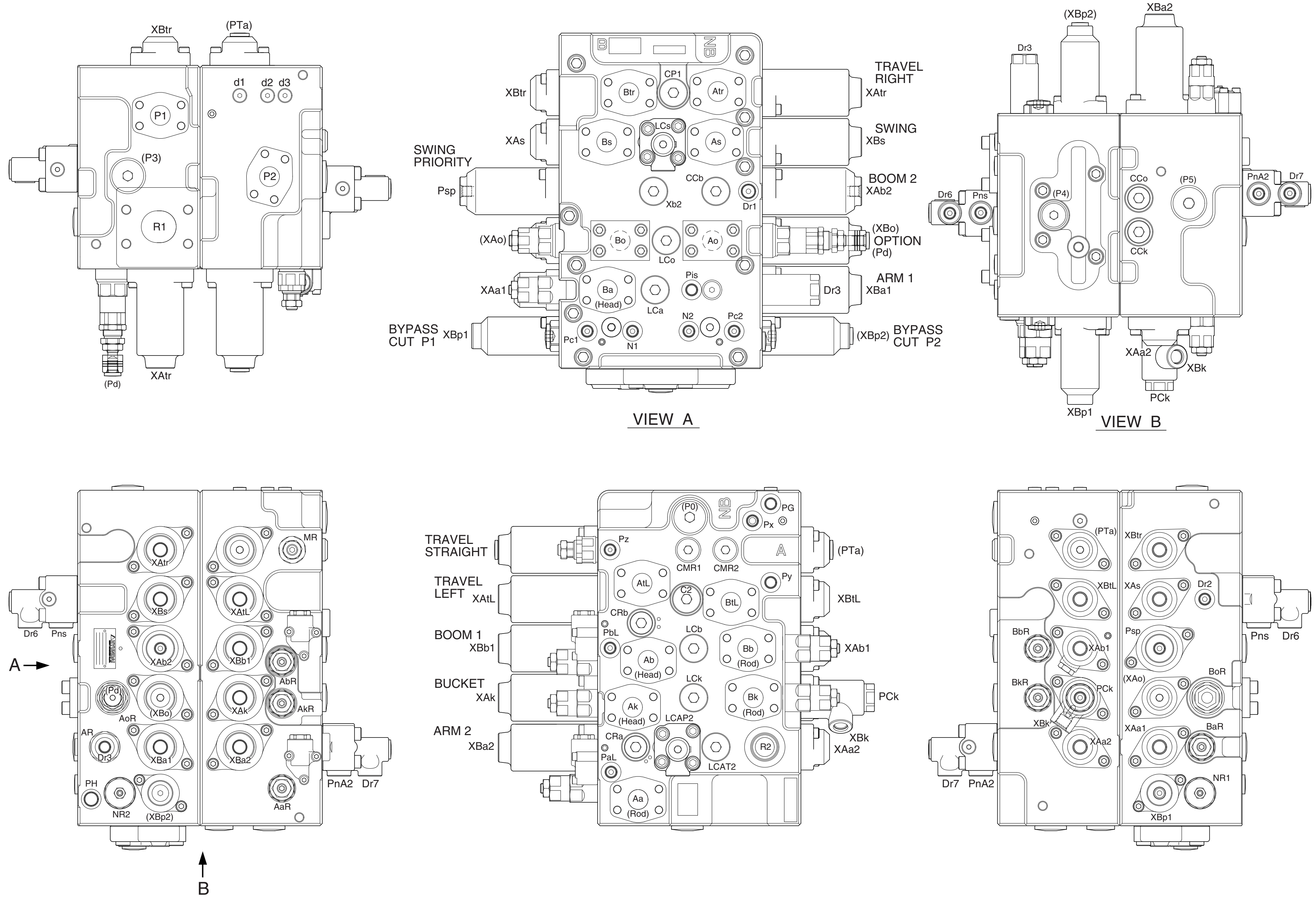


Speed	Adjustment of min flow	
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (953)	Flow change amount
(min -1)	(Turn)	(l/min)
1750	+1/4	+6.7

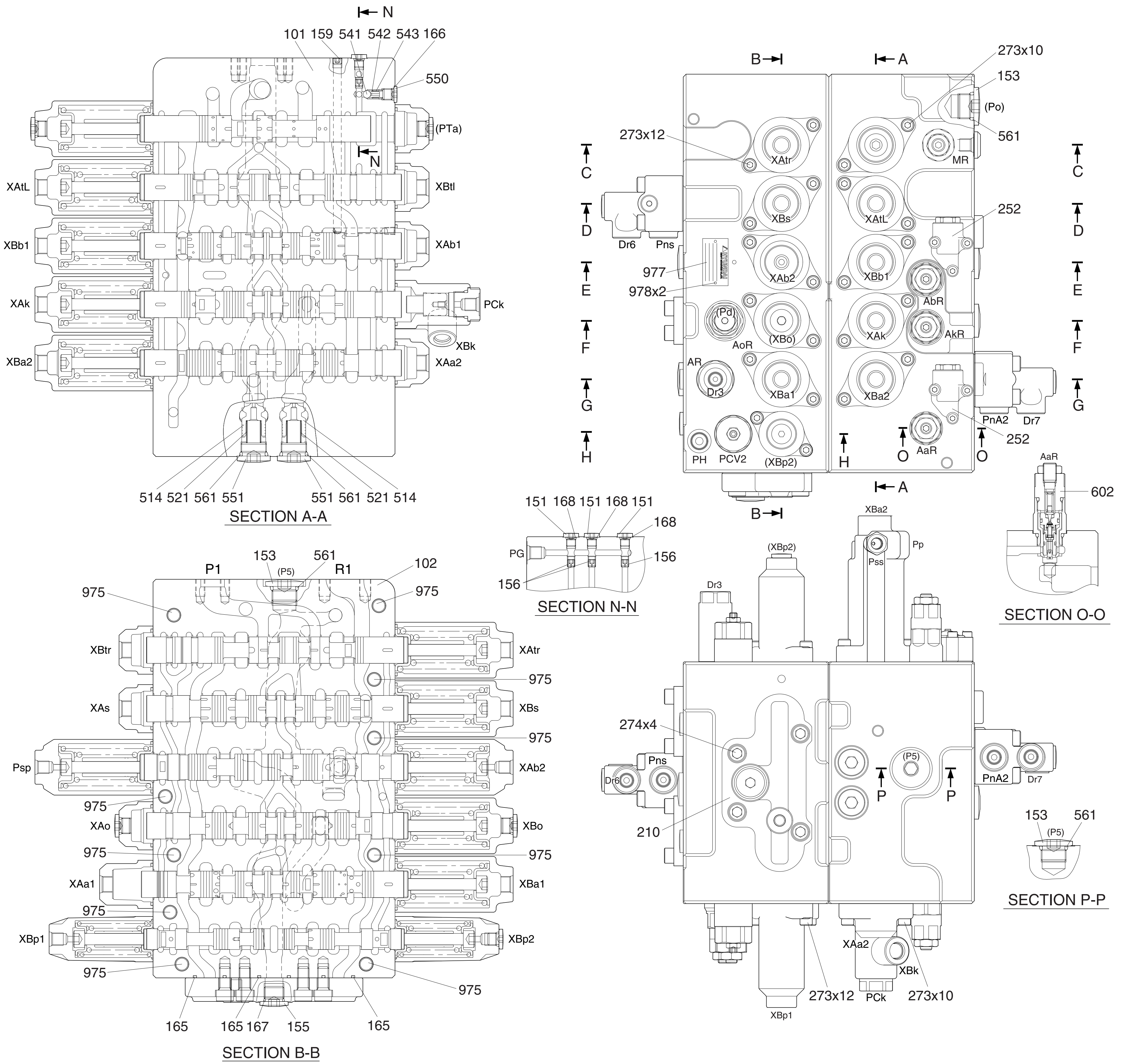


GROUP 2 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

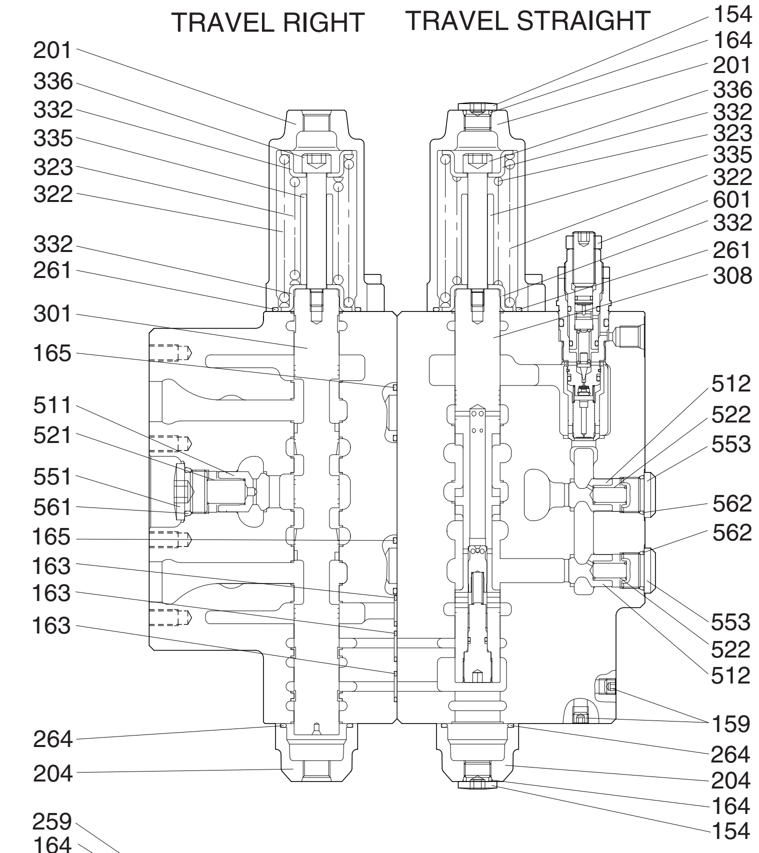
1. STRUCTURE



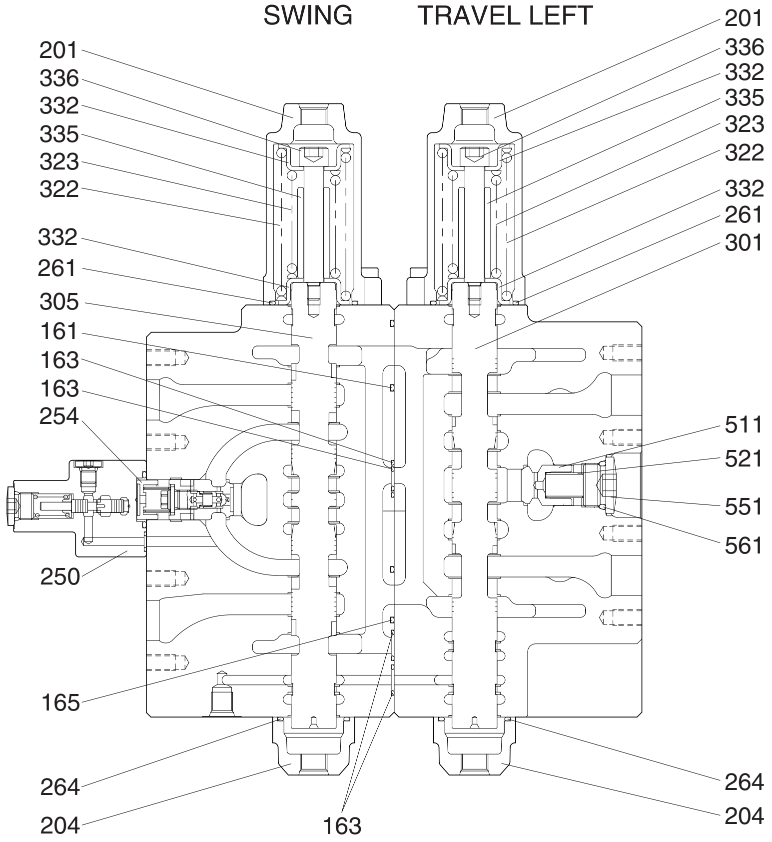
Mark	Port name	Port size	Tightening torque
R2	Make up port for swing	PF 1	20~25 kgf · m (115~180 lbf · ft)
XAtr	Travel right (reverse) pilot port	PF 3/8	7~8 kgf · m (50.6~57.8 lbf · ft)
XBtr	Travel right (forward) pilot port		
(XAo)	Optional pilot port		
(XBo)	Optional pilot port		
XAk	Bucket in pilot port		
XBk	Bucket out pilot port		
XAb1	Boom up pilot port		
XBb1	Boom down pilot port		
XAa2	Arm out confluence pilot port		
XBa2	Arm in confluence pilot port		
XAtL	Travel left (reverse) pilot port		
XBtL	Travel left (forward) pilot port		
XAs	Swing left pilot port		
XBs	Swing right pilot port		
XAa1	Arm out pilot port		
XBa1	Arm in pilot port		
(PH)	Pilot pressure port		
Dr1	Drain port		
Px	Pressure port for attachment	PF 1/4	3.5~3.9 kgf · m (25.3~28.2 lbf · ft)
Py	Pressure port for travel		
Pz	Main relief pilot pressure port		
PG	Pilot pressure port		
Dr2	Drain port		
Dr3	Drain port		
Dr6	Drain port		
Dr7	Drain port		
Pns	Swing logic valve pilot port		
PaL	Lock valve pilot port (arm rod side)		
PbL	Lock valve pilot port (boom head side)		
XAb2	Boom up confluence pilot port		
Psp	Swing priority pilot port		
XBp1	Bypass cut spool pilot port (P1 side)		
(XBp2)	Bypass cut spool pilot port (P2 side)		
(Pd)	Breaker high pressure pilot lamp		
Pc1	Posi-nega pressure port (P1 side)		
Pc2	Posi-nega pressure port (P2 side)		
PCk	Bucket in stroke limiter pilot port		
Pis	Arm regeneration cut pilot port		
N1	Arm1 Nega-con pressure port		
N2	Boom1 Nega-con pressure port		
PnA2	Arm2 logic valve pilot port		
Atr	Travel motor right side (reverse) port	M10	5~6.6 kgf · m (36.1~47.7 lbf · ft)
Btr	Travel motor right side (forward) port		
(Ao)	Optional port		
(Bo)	Optional port		
Ak	Bucket cylinder head side port		
Bk	Bucket cylinder rod side port		
Ab	Boom cylinder head side port		
Bb	Boom cylinder rod side port		
AtL	Travel motor left side (reverse) port		
BtL	Travel motor left side (forward) port		
As	Swing motor left port		
Bs	Swing motor right port		
Aa	Arm cylinder rod side port		
Ba	Arm cylinder head side port		
P1	Pump port (P1 side)		
P2	Pump port (P2 side)		
R1	Return port	M12	8.5~11.2 kgf · m (61.5~81.1 lbf · ft)



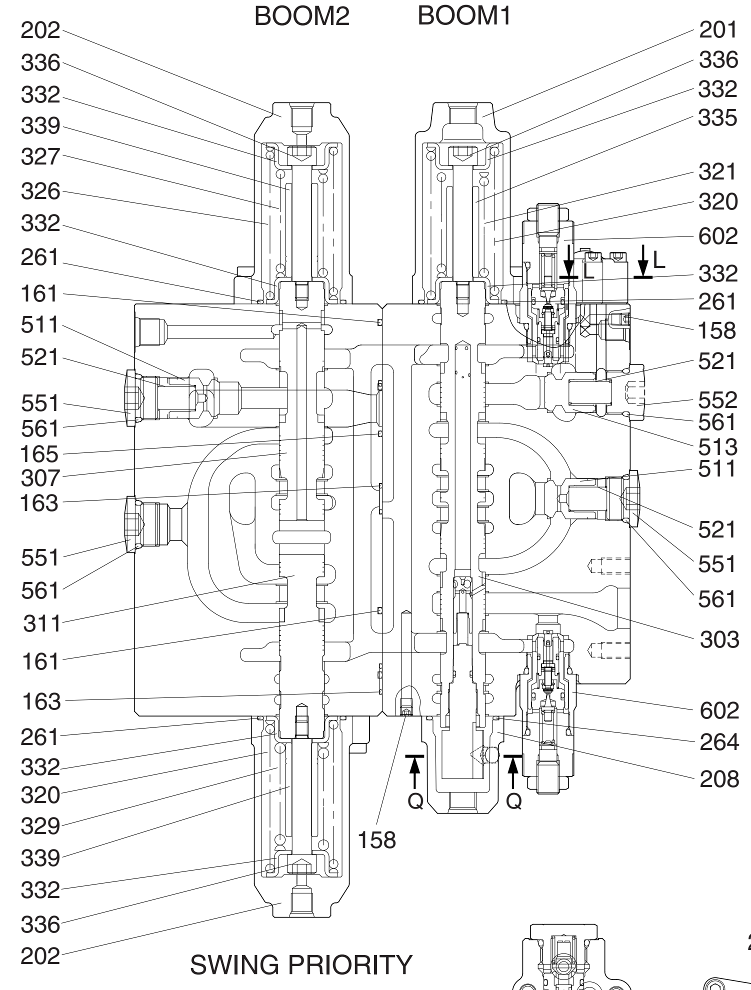
101	Casing A (P2 housing)	308	Straight travel spool sub assy
102	Casing B (P1 housing)	309	Spool (option)
151	Plug	310	Bypass cut spool
152	Plug	311	Swing priority spool
153	Plug	313	Bypass cut spool
154	Plug	320	Spring
155	Plug	321	Spring
156	Orifice	322	Spring
158	Plug	323	Spring
159	Plug	326	Spring
161	O-ring	327	Spring
162	O-ring	329	Spring
163	O-ring	331	Spring seat
164	O-ring	332	Spring seat
165	O-ring	333	Bolt-spacer
166	O-ring	335	Stopper
167	O-ring	336	Bolt-spacer
168	O-ring	337	Stopper
201	Cover	339	Stopper
202	Cover	370	Spring
203	Cover	371	Spring
204	Cover	372	Spring
205	Cover	373	Spring
206	Cover	511	Poppet
208	Cover	512	Poppet
209	Flange	513	Poppet
210	Plate	514	Poppet
211	Piston	521	Spring
250	Logic control valve assy	522	Spring
251	Logic control valve assy	523	Spring
252	Lock valve selector sub assy	541	Steel ball
254	Logic poppet assy	542	Spring seat
256	Logic poppet assy	543	Spring
257	Arm regeneration cut sub assy	550	Plug
258	Plug	551	Plug
259	Plug	552	Plug
260	Plug	553	Plug
261	O-ring	561	O-ring
262	O-ring	562	O-ring
264	O-ring	601	Main relief valve assy
273	Socket bolt	602	Port relief valve assy
274	Socket bolt	603	Port relief valve assy
301	Travel spool	604	Port relief valve assy
302	Arm 1 spool sub assy	610	Nega-con relief valve
303	Boom 1 spool sub assy	971	Bolt
304	Bucket spool	975	Bolt
305	Swing spool	977	Name plate
306	Arm 2 spool	978	Pin
307	Boom 2 spool		



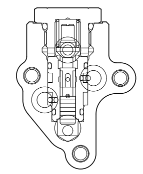
SECTION C-C



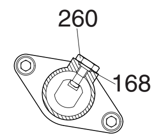
SECTION D-D



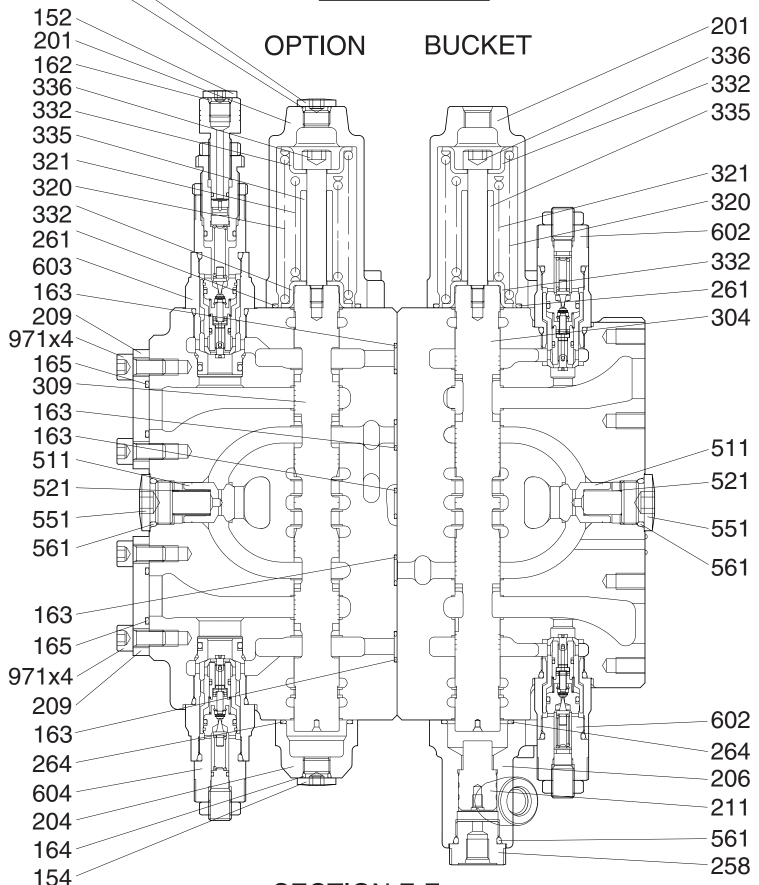
SECTION E-E



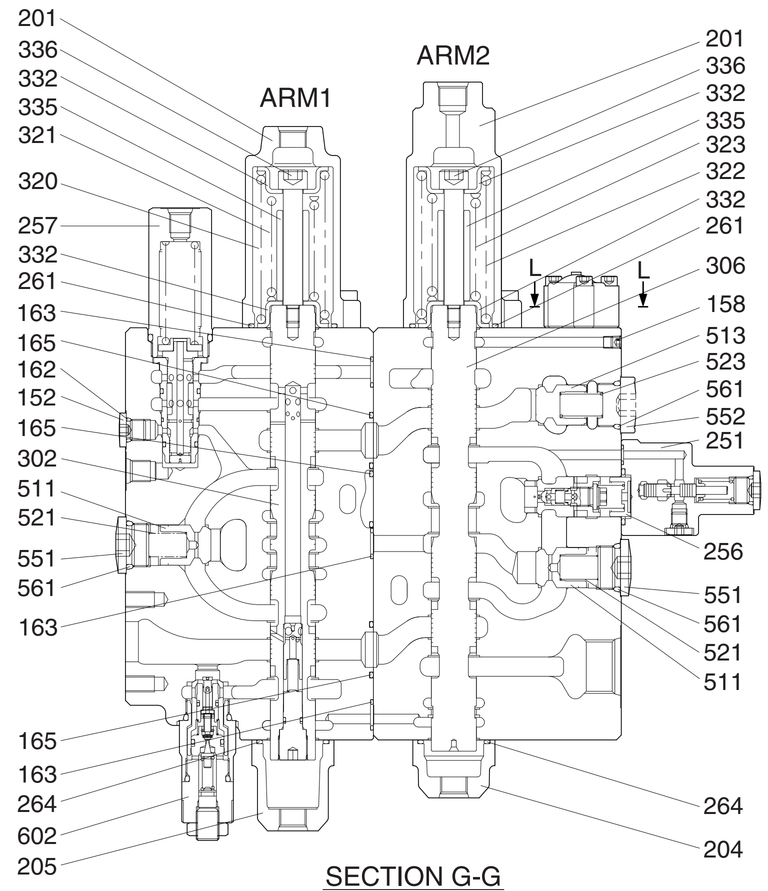
SECTION L-L



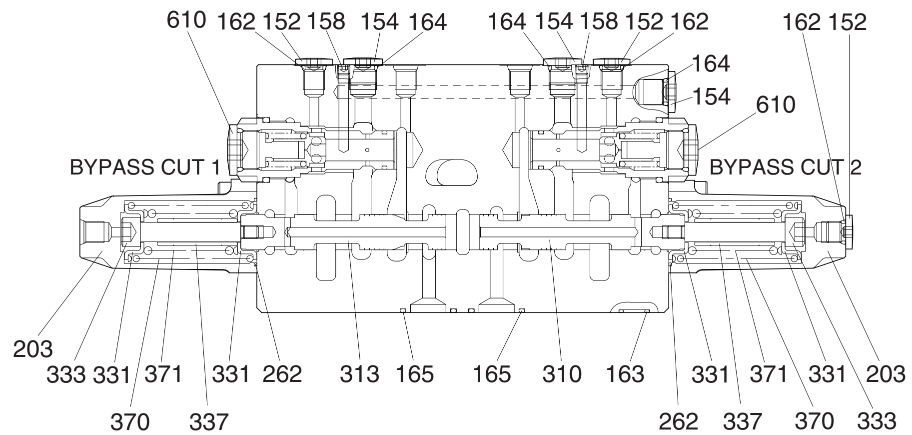
SECTION Q-Q



SECTION F-F

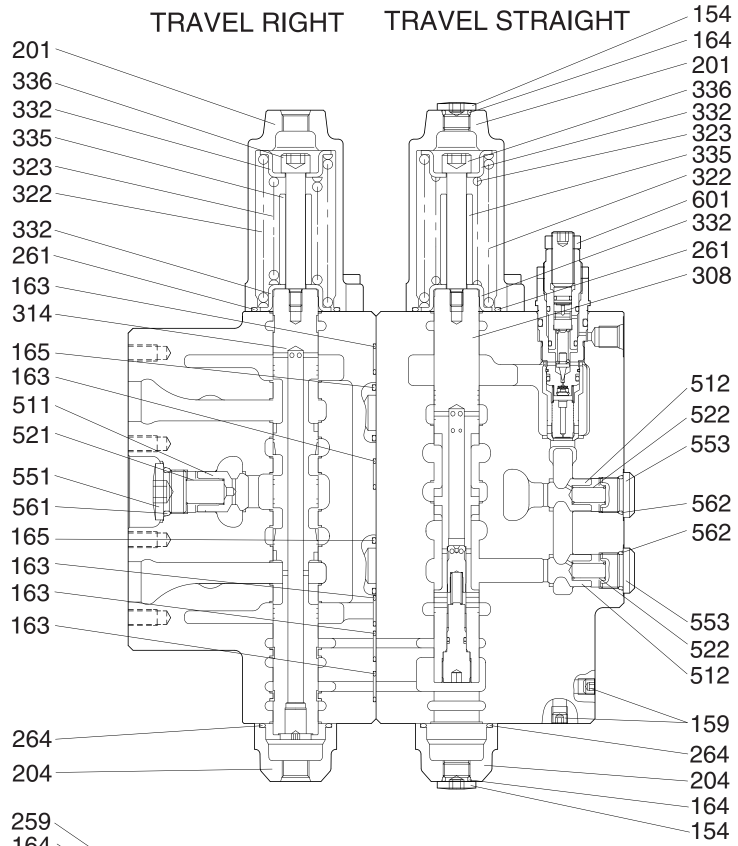


SECTION G-G

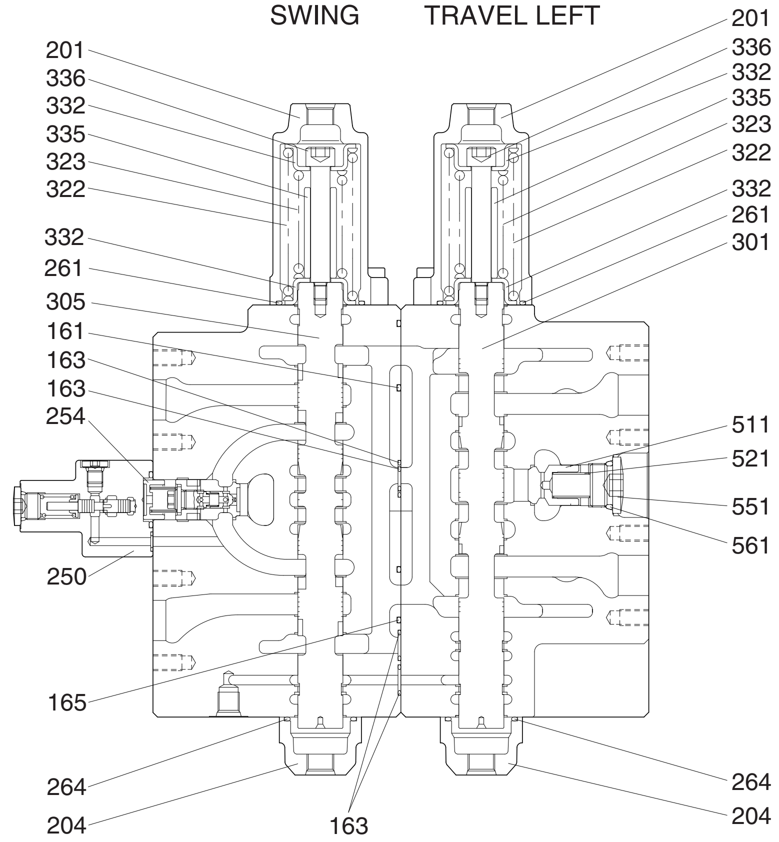


SECTION H-H

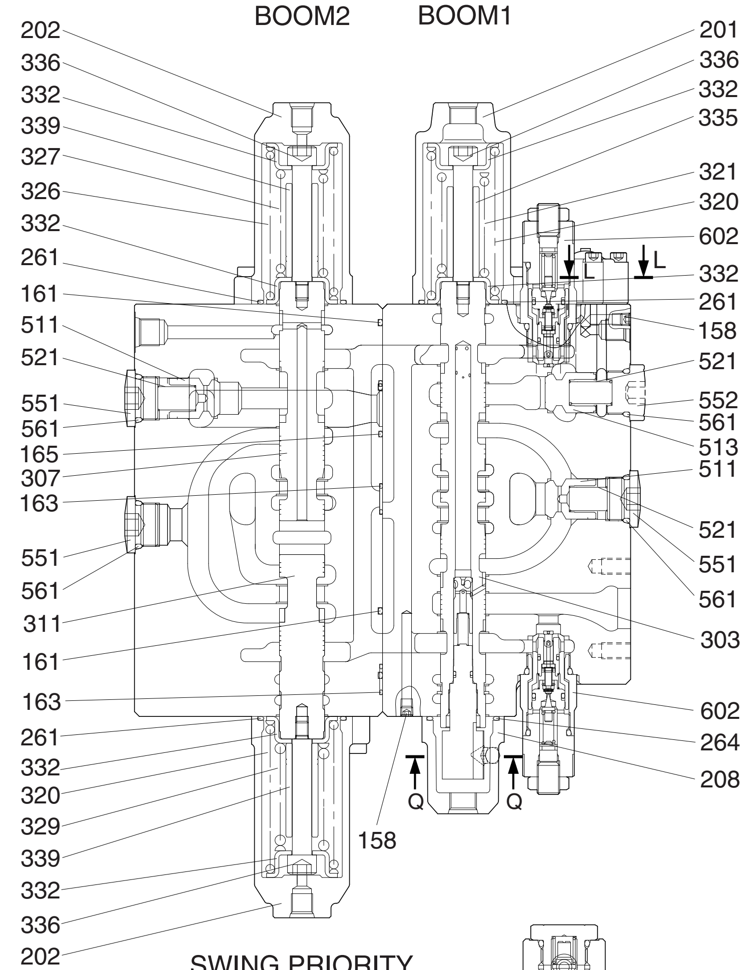
· SERIAL NO. : #0422-



SECTION C-C

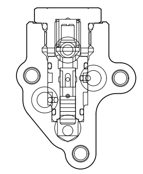


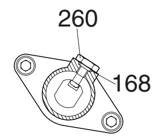
SECTION D-D



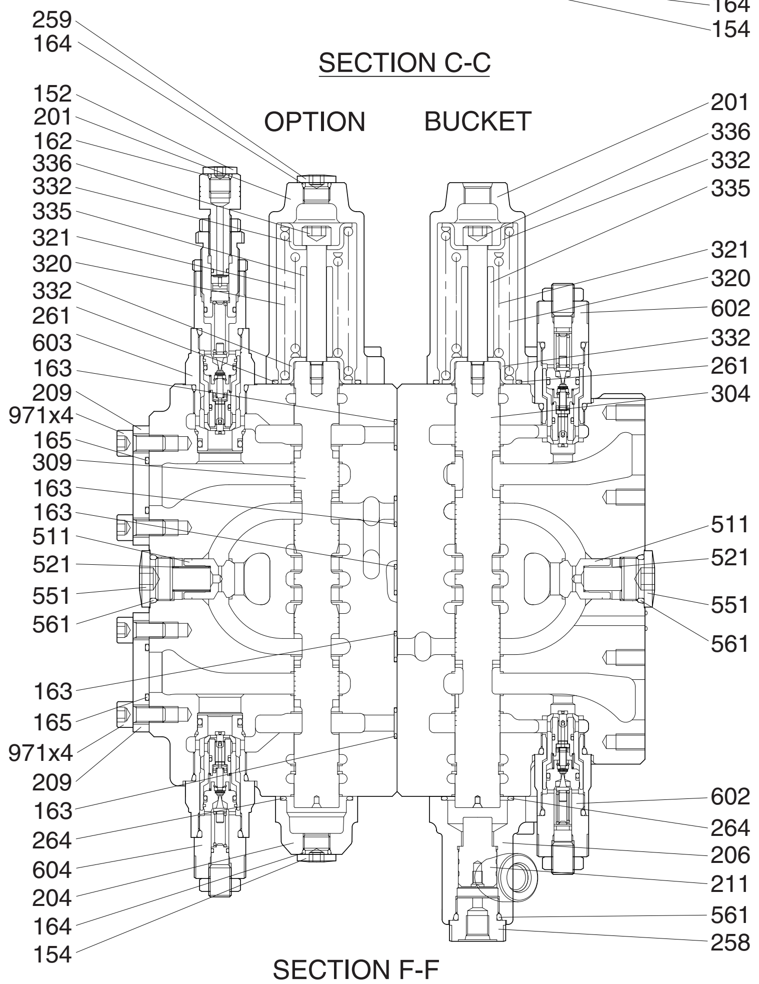
SWING PRIORITY

SECTION E-E

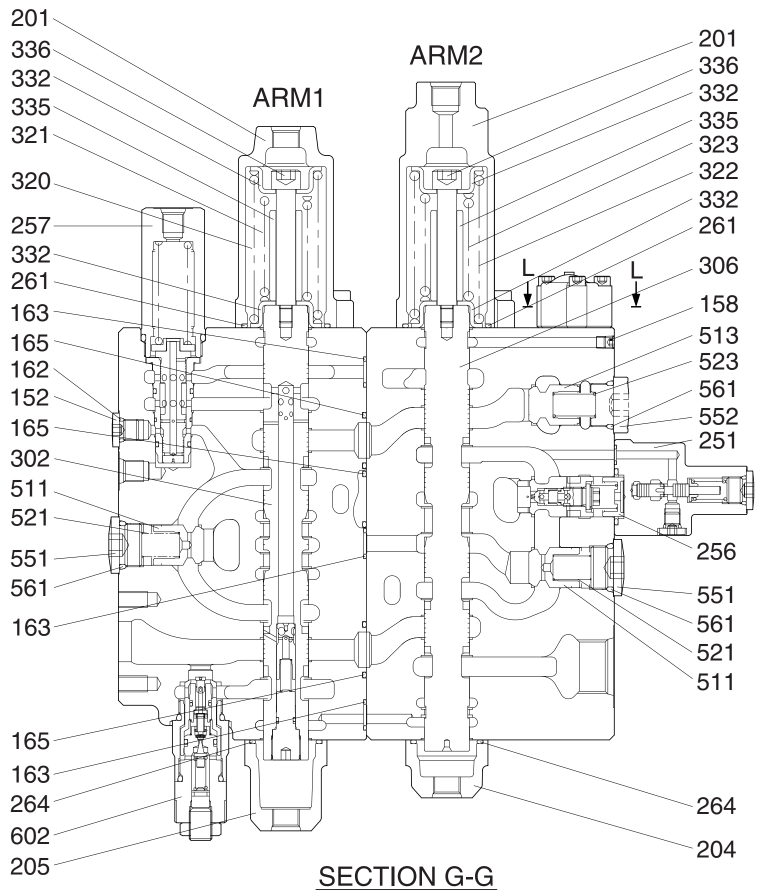

SECTION L-L



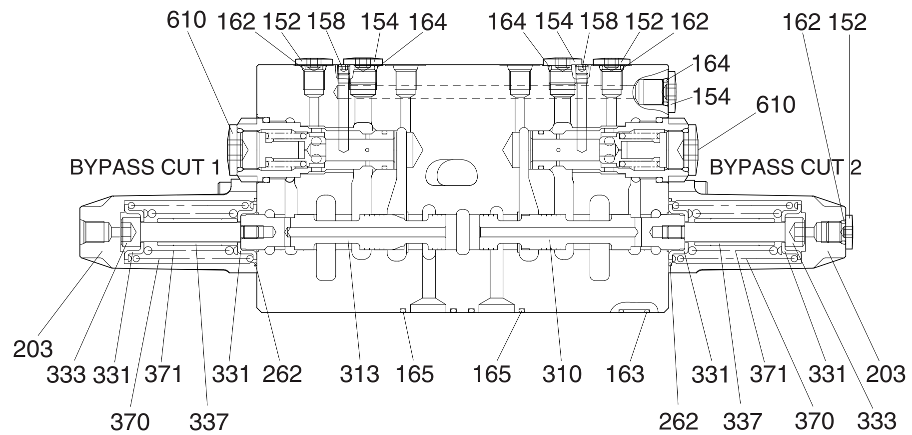
SECTION Q-Q



SECTION F-F

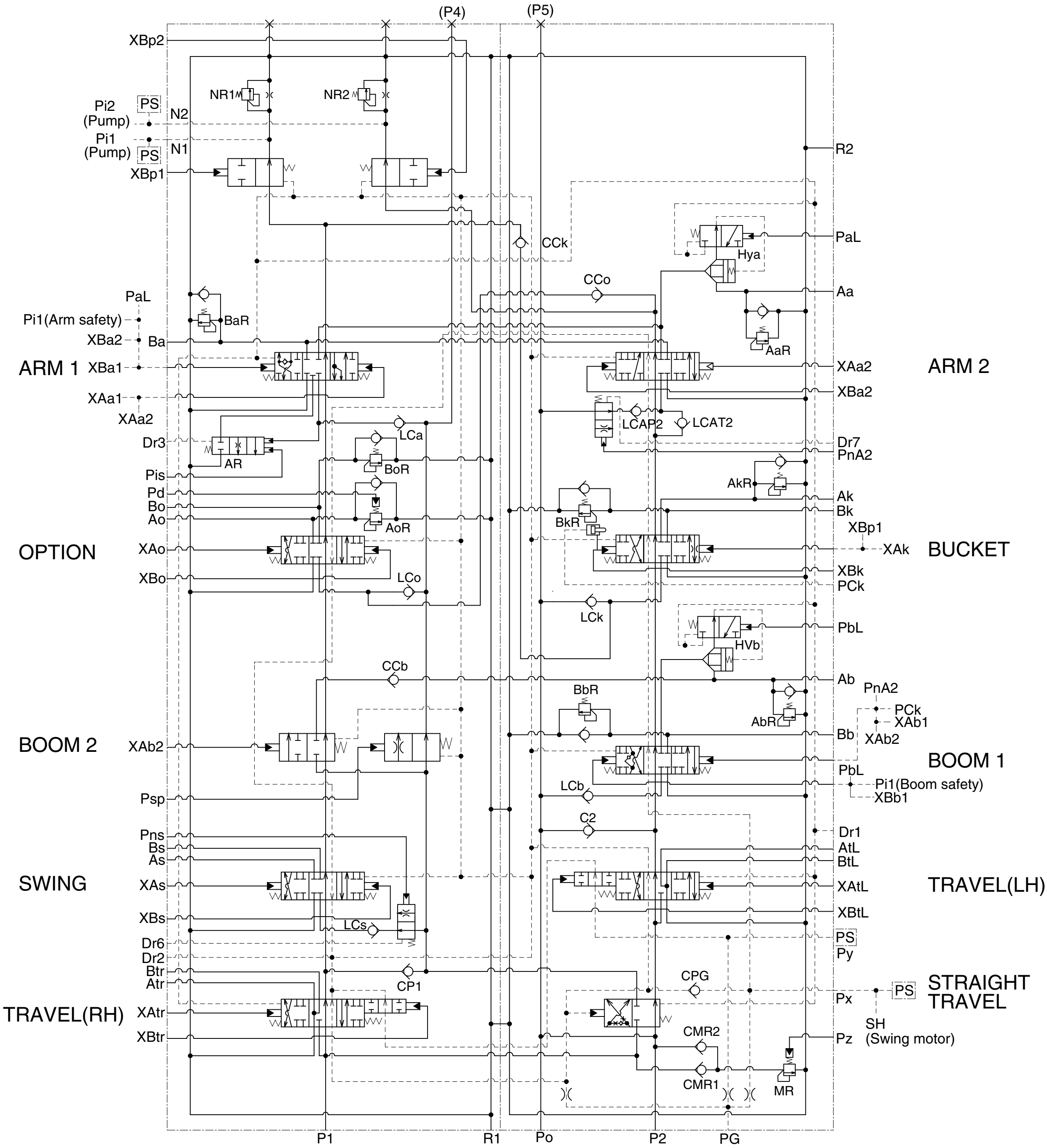


SECTION G-G



SECTION H-H

2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



3. FUNCTION

1) CONTROL IN NEUTRAL POSITION

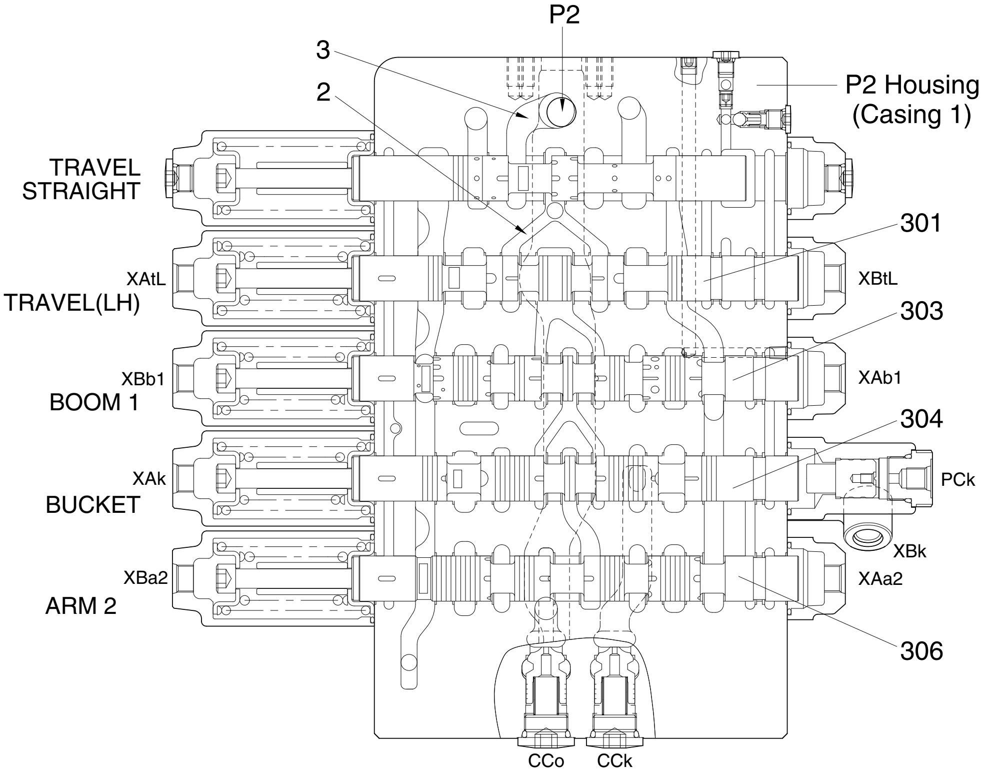
Main circuit

When all spools are in the neutral positions, the pressurized oil discharged from the hydraulic pump (A1) passes through Port P1, the main path (1), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for travel right (301, 314), swing (305), boom confluence (boom 2; 307), option (309) and arm 1 (302), and the arm 1 side negative control relief valve (610), and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

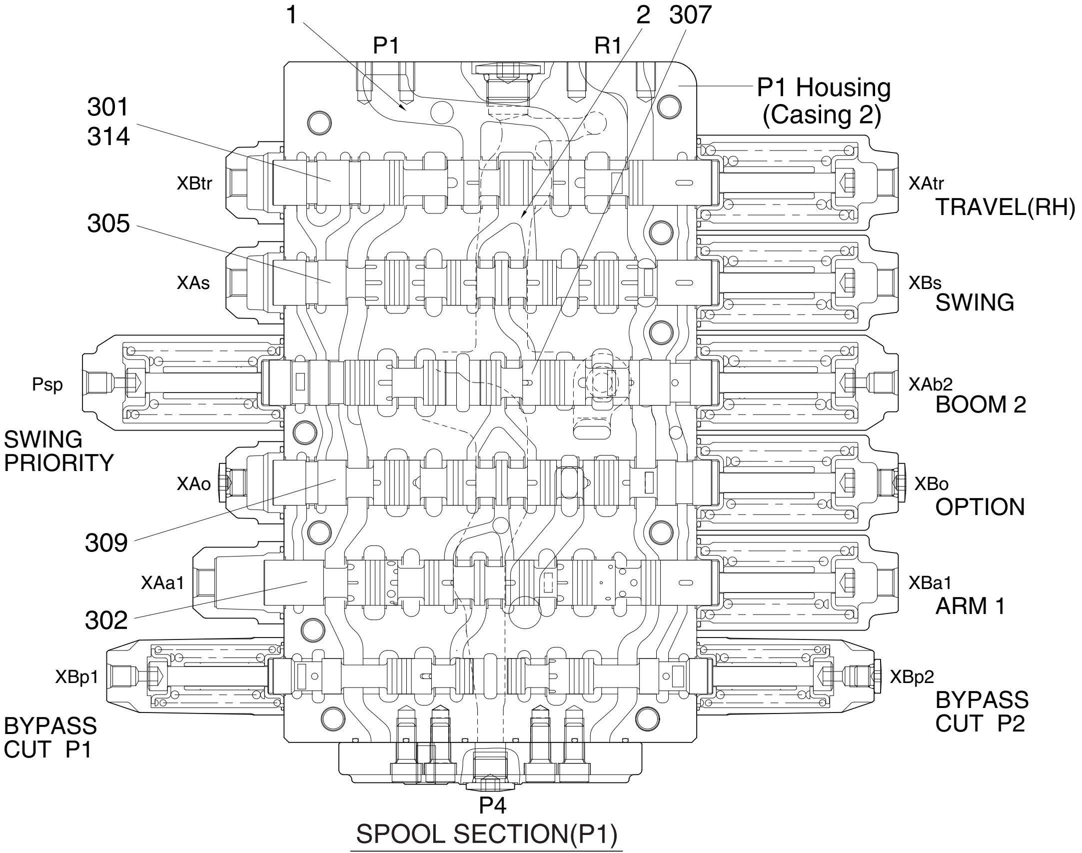
The negative control signal pressure of the arm 1 side negative control relief valve (610) is led from Port N1 to the regulator on the hydraulic pump (A1) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.

The oil discharged from the hydraulic pump (A2) passes through Port P2, the main path (3), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for travel left (301), boom 1 (303), bucket (304) and arm 2 (306), and the boom1 side negative control relief valve (610), and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

The negative control signal pressure of the boom 1 side negative control relief valve (610) is led from Port N2 to the regulator on the hydraulic pump (A2) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.
When any of nine main spools is changed over, the bypass circuit (2) is cut off and the hydraulic oil at Port N1 or N2 in the negative control circuit is shut off.



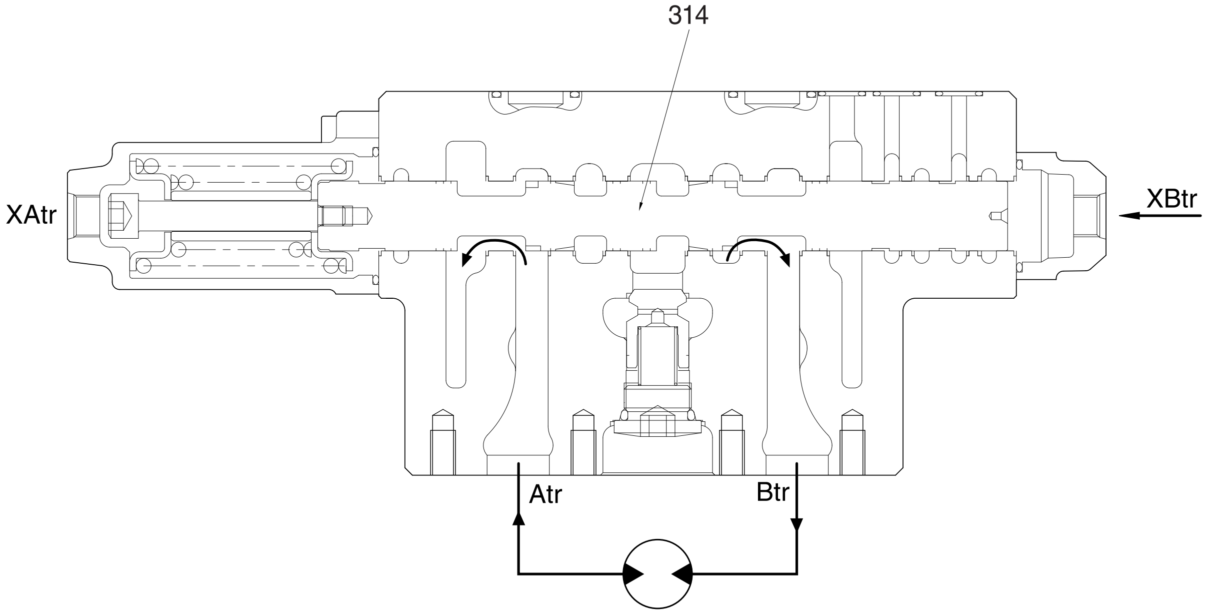
SPOOL SECTION(P2)



SPOOL SECTION(P1)

2) EACH SPOOL OPERATION

(1) Travel control



Pilot circuit

Since any of the travel spools (314, 301) on the left or right transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Py increases.

Main circuit

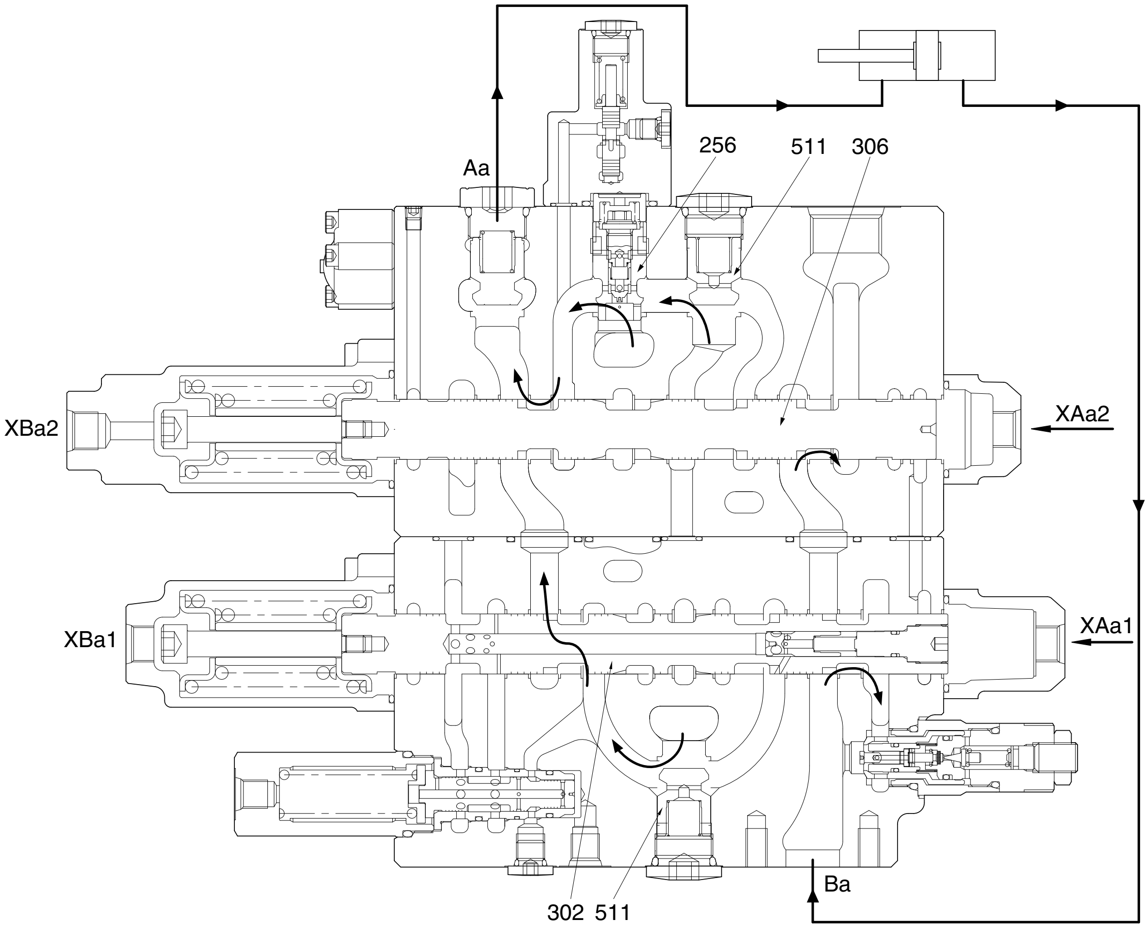
When Pilot Port XBtr of the travel right spool (301, 314) is pressurized, the bypass circuit (2) in the arm 1 side is shut off and the working fluid discharged from the hydraulic pump (A1) through Port Btr and flows to the travel right motor.

When Pilot Port XBtL of the travel left spool (301) is pressurized, the bypass circuit (2) in the boom 1 side is shut off and the working fluid discharged from the hydraulic pump (A2), similarly to that from the hydraulic pump (A1), through Port BtL and flows to the travel left motor.

On the other hand, the return oil from the right and left travel motor passes flows from Port Atr (AtL) to the travel right (left) spools (314, 301) and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).
In the case of the opposite operation (when the pilot pressure is applied to Ports XAtr and XAtL of the control valve), the operation is similar.

(2) Arm control

① Arm out operation



Pilot circuit

Since the arm 2 spool (306) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

During the arm out operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XAa1 and XAa2. When the pressure enters through Port XAa1 and XAa2, the spools transfer in the left direction. The hydraulic oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool (302).

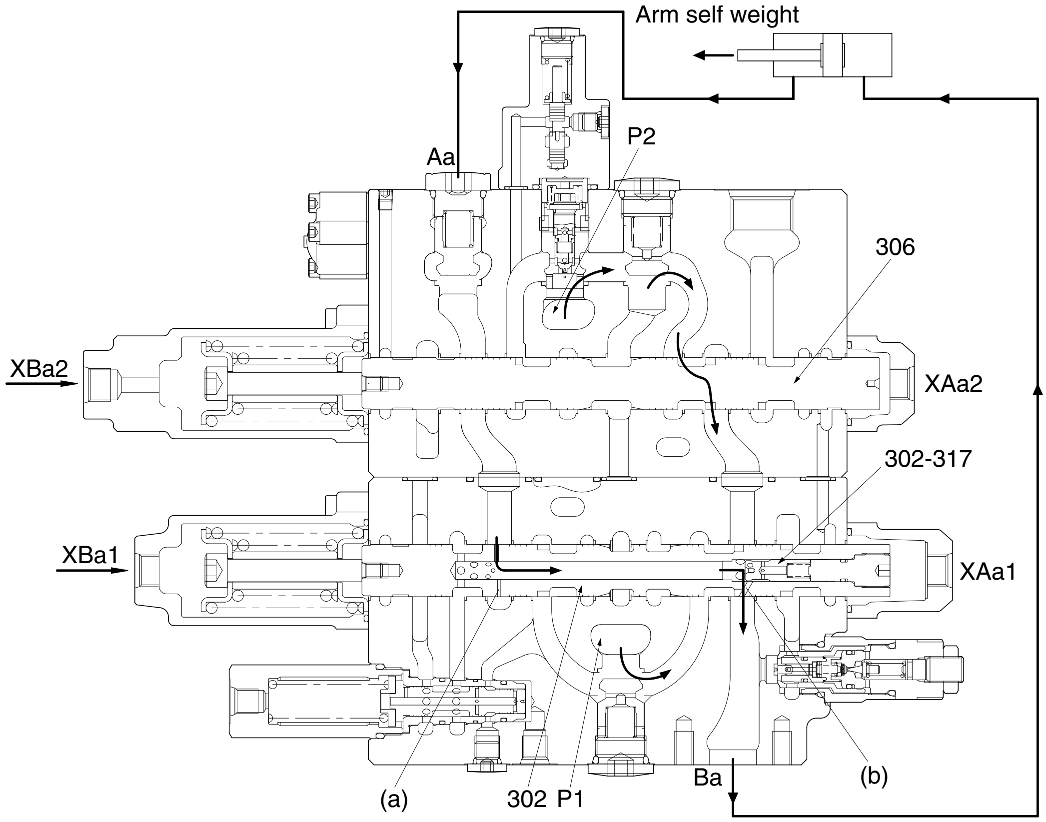
Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 1 spool (302) and the arm 2 spool (306) to Port Aa, and is supplied to the arm cylinder rod side.

On the other hand, the hydraulic oil entering through Port P2 passes in the main path (3), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (306). The hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the logic poppet (256) and the hydraulic oil from the bypass circuit (2) pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (306). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 2 spool (306) in the inside path and joins into Port Aa.

Besides, the return oil from the arm cylinder head side passes through Port Ba, flows into tank line in arm 1 side and in arm 2 side, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

② Arm in operation

· During light load only



Pilot circuit

Since the arm 2 spool (306) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port PaL and the release signal is sent to the lock valve (252).

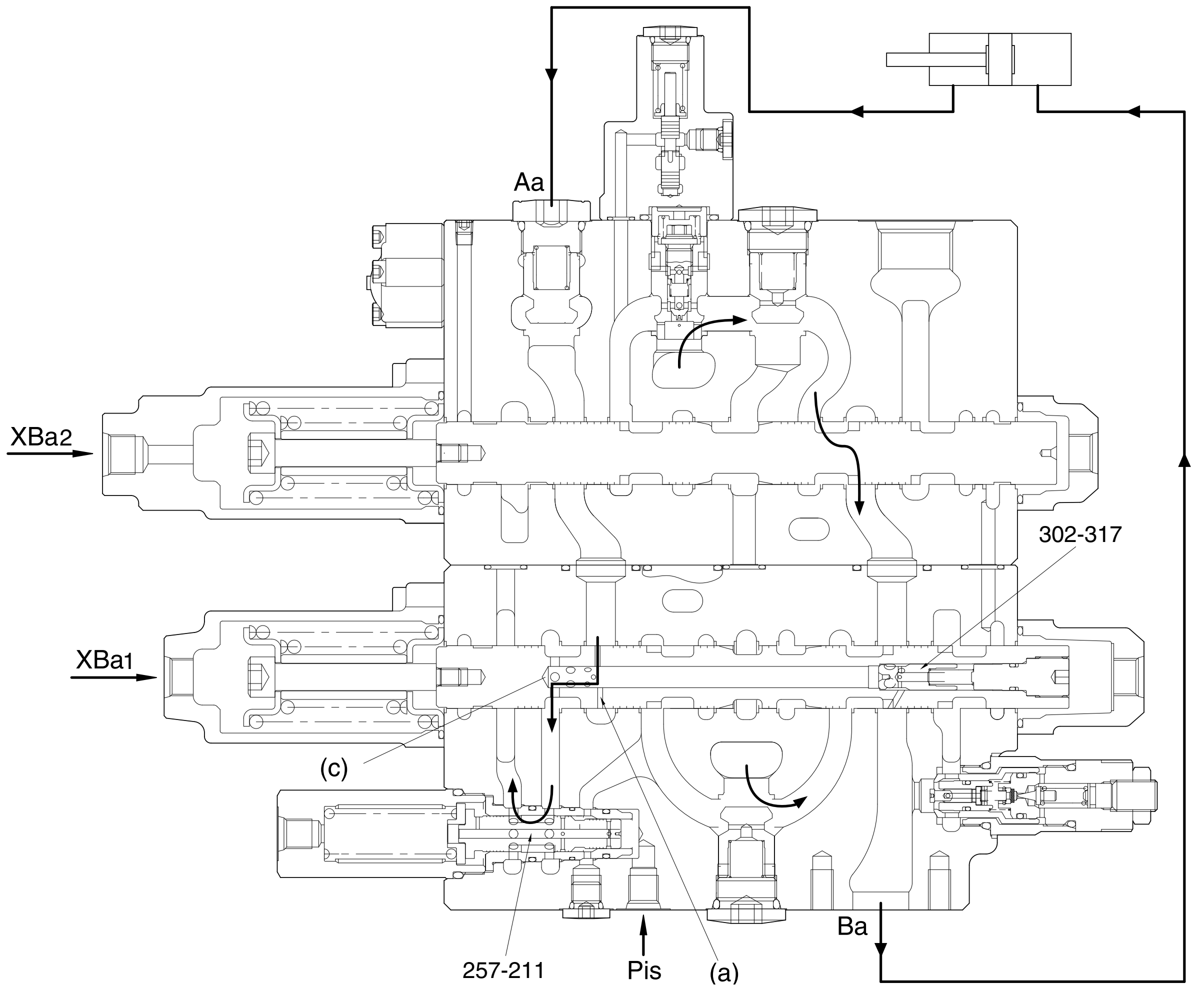
Main circuit

During the arm in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBa1 and XBa2. When the pressure enters through Port XBa1 and Port XBa2, the spools transfer in the right direction Fig. MC14. The hydraulic oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool (302). Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 1 spool (302) to Port Ba, and is supplied to the arm cylinder head side.

On the other hand, the hydraulic oil entering through Port P2 passes in the main path (3), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (306). The hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the logic poppet (256) and the hydraulic oil from the bypass circuit (2) pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (306). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 2 spool (306) and the arm 1 spool (302) in the inside path and joins into Port Ba.

Besides, the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side is pressurized by self-weight of the arms and so on, and returns to Port Aa. The pressurized oil returning to Port Aa enters into the spool through the periphery hole (a) of the arm 1 spool (302). During a light load only, it pushes open the check valve (302-317) and joins into Port Ba from the spool hole (b). The rest of oil returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1). This is called the arm regeneration function.

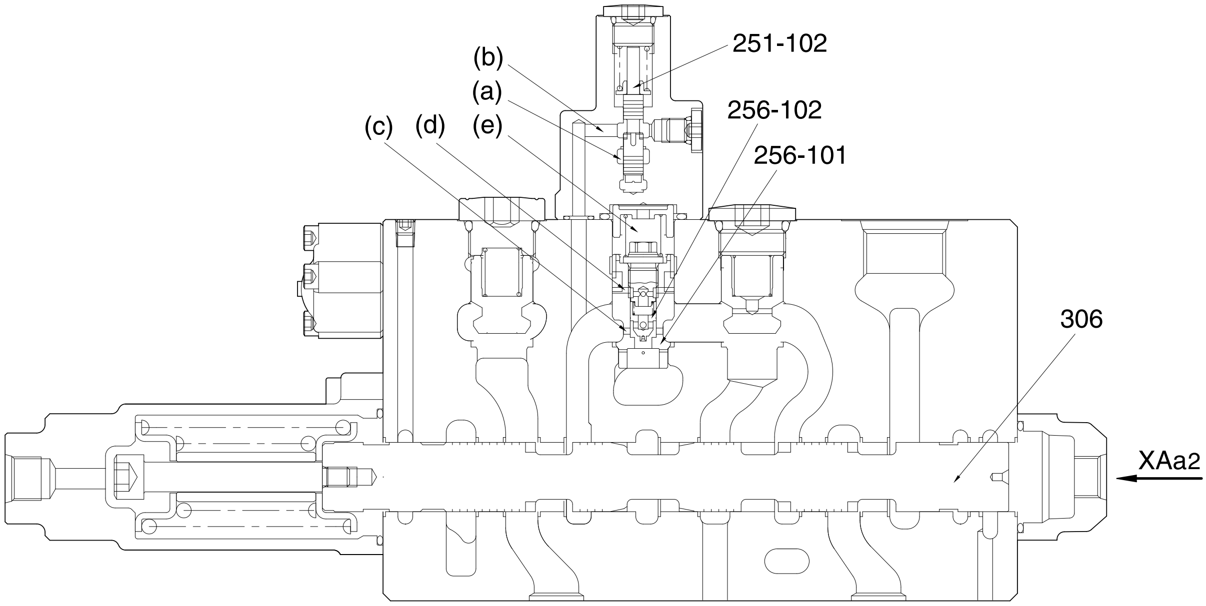
· The pressure in the arm cylinder head side increases



When the pressure in the arm cylinder head side and the U-shaped path increases, the arm regeneration cut spool (257-211) is transferred in the left direction, and at the same time the check valve (302-317) is closed by its backpressure. This shuts off the arm regeneration function, and the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side enters from Port Aa through the periphery hole (a) of the arm 1 spool (302) into the spool, flows to the arm regeneration cut valve (257) through the periphery hole (c) of the arm 1 spool (302), and returns through the tank port (R1) to the hydraulic oil tank.

When the Pilot Port Pis of the arm regeneration cut spool (257-211) is pressurized, a part of the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side flows to the arm regeneration cut valve (257) and returns through the tank port (R1) to the hydraulic oil tank. (Variable arm regeneration)

③ Arm 2 logic control valve operation

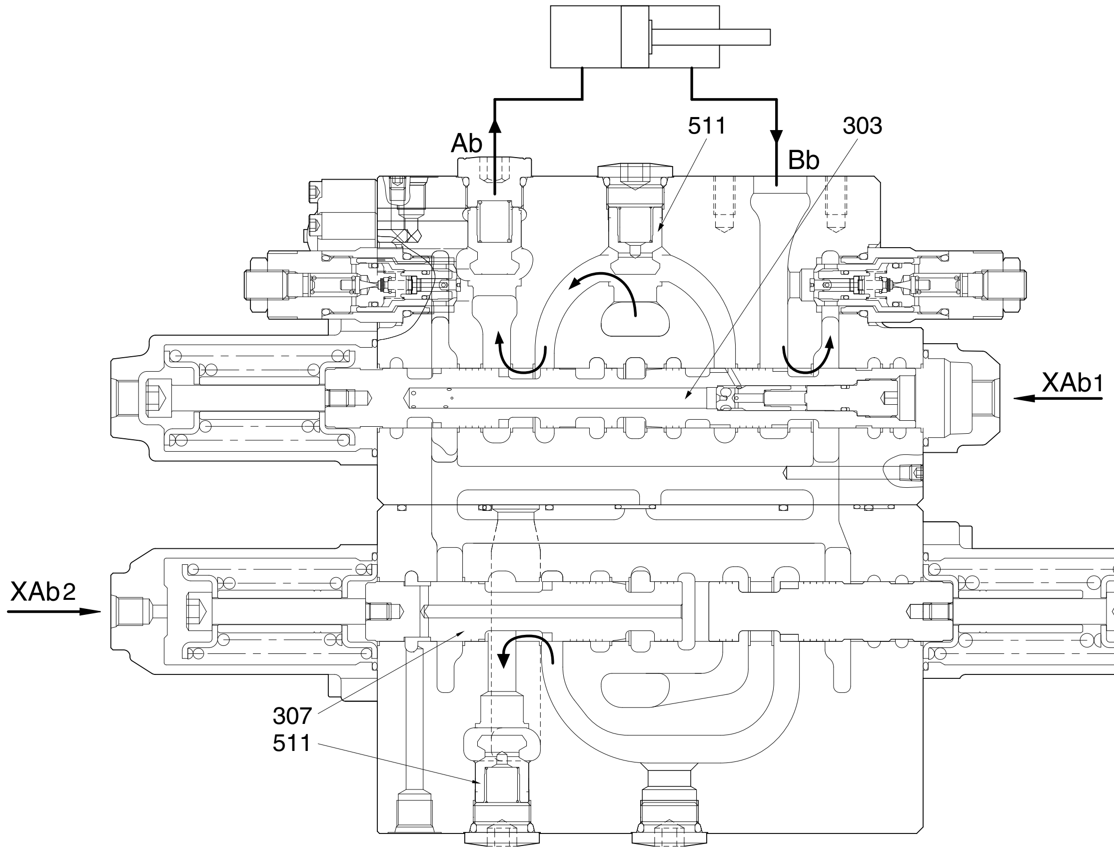


During both the arm in operation and the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBa1, XBa2, XAb1, XAb2, PaL and PnA2. The pressure PnA2 transfers the spool (251-102) in the arm 2 logic control valve to the top direction, and the path from (a) to (b) is closed. Hereby, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (256-102), passes in the path (c) and (d), enters into the chamber (e), and the poppet (256-101) is pushed to the casing seat. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to the boom 1 spool (303) than the arm 2 spool (306) to make the boom hoisting operation most preferential.

On the other hand, in the independent arm in operation, the pilot pressure does not enter through Ports PnA2, and the path from (a) to (b) is not closed, and the hydraulic oil of the chamber (e) flows to the path (a) and (b). The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 pushes open the poppet (256-101) and flows to the arm 2 spool (306).

(3) Boom control

① Boom up operation



Pilot circuit

Since the boom 1 spool (303) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

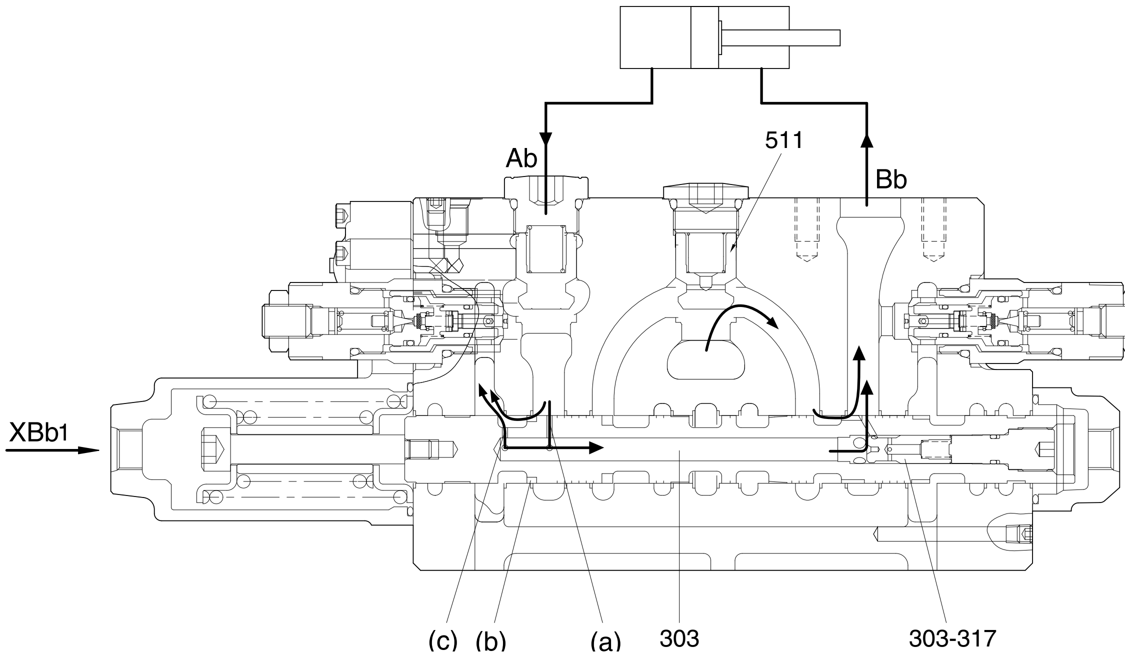
Main circuit

During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAb1 and moves the boom 1 spool (303) in the left direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool (303). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 1 spool (303). Then, it flows around the periphery of the boom 1 spool (303) to Port Ab, and is supplied to the boom cylinder head side.

At the same time, the pilot pressure enters also through Port XAb2 to transfer the boom 2 spool (307) in the right direction. Though the pressurized oil enters into Port P1, the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 2 spool (307). Therefore, the hydraulic oil flows in the parallel circuit and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 2 spool (307). Then, the hydraulic oil passes through the periphery of the boom 2 spool (307), pushes open the check valve (511), joins into Port Ab in the inside path, and is supplied to the boom cylinder head side. (Boom confluent flow)

On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder rod side enters through Port Bb and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

② Boom down operation



Pilot circuit

Since the boom 1 spool (303) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port PbL and the release signal is sent to the lock valve (252).

Main circuit

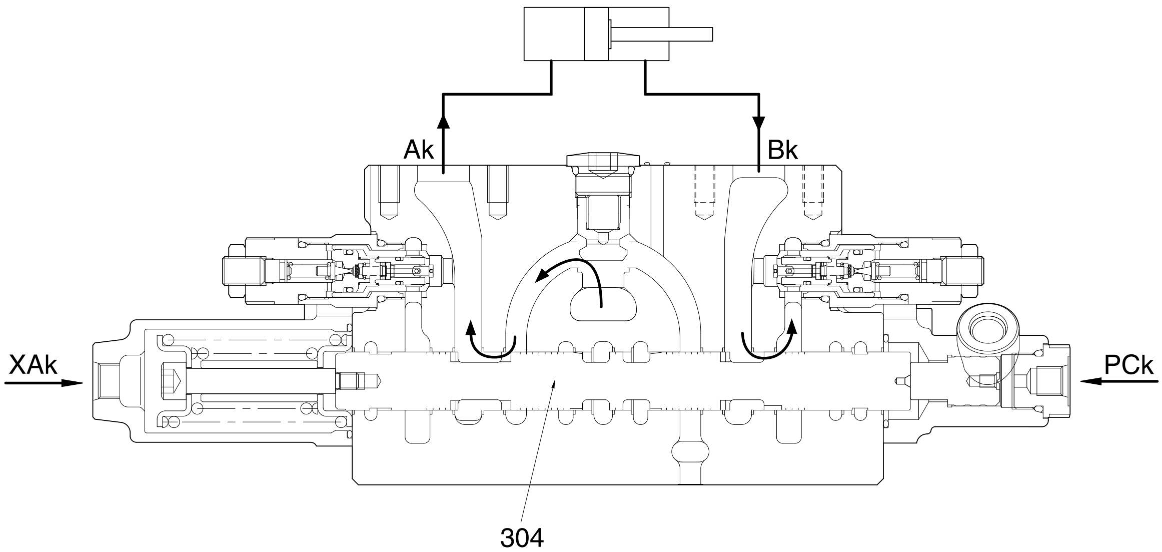
During the boom down operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XBb1 and transfers the boom 1 spool (303) in the right direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool (303). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 1 spool (303). Then, it flows around the periphery of the boom 1 spool (303) to Port Bb and is supplied to the boom cylinder rod side.

On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder head side passes to the holes (a) and the notches (b) of the boom 1 spool (303).

Since this return oil has a sufficient pressure caused by the weight of the boom, it passes through the path inside the spool, pushes the poppet (303-317) in the spool in the right direction, flows around the outside of the spool. Then, it is supplied again to the boom cylinder rod side as hydraulic oil to lower the boom. (Boom regeneration)
Besides, a part of the return oil from the boom cylinder flows from the hole (c) into the tank.

(4) Bucket control

① Bucket in operation



Pilot circuit

Since the bucket spool (304) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port XBp1.

Main circuit

During the bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAk and transfers the bucket spool (304) in the right direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool (304). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port Ak and is supplied to the bucket cylinder head side.

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder rod side enters through Port Bk, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

During both the boom up operation and bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port PCk and the bucket spool transfers in the half stroke not full stroke. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to the boom 1 spool (303) than the bucket spool (304) to make the boom up operation most preferential.

② Bucket out operation

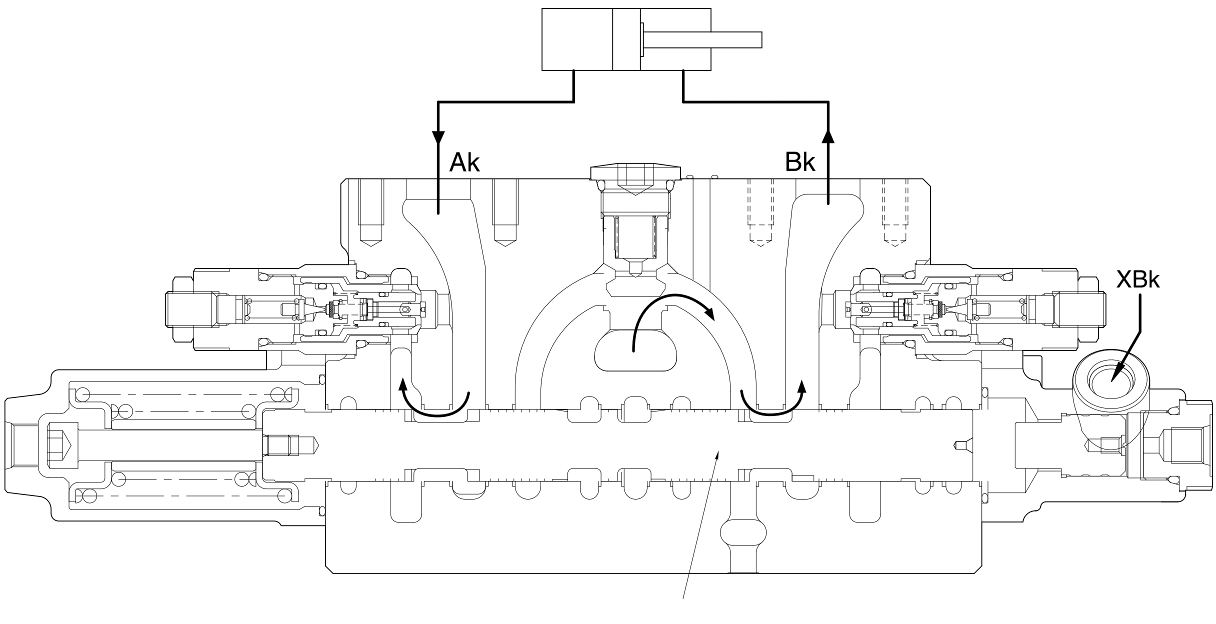
Pilot circuit

Since the bucket spool (304) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

During the bucket out operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XBk and transfers the bucket spool (304) in the left direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool (304). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port Bk and is supplied to the bucket cylinder rod side.

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder head side enters through Port Ak, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).



③ Bucket in confluence

During the bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters also through Port XBp1 and transfers the bypass-cut spool (313). The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bypass-cut spool (313). Therefore, the pressurized oil pushes open the check valve CCk (514), and flows through inside path and the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304).

(5) Swing control

① Swing operation

Pilot circuit

Since the swing spool (305) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

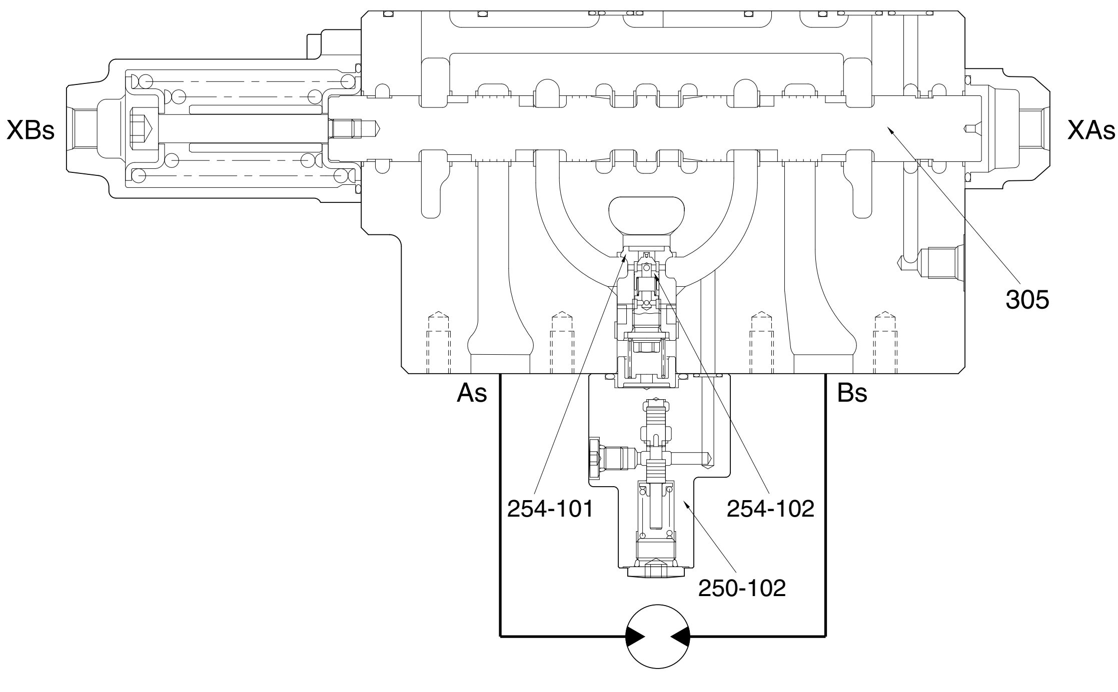
During the swing operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAs (or XBs) and transfers the swing spool (305). The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the swing spool (305). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the swing spool (305). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port As (or Bs) and is supplied to the swing motor.

On the other hand, the return oil from the swing motor enters Port Bs (or As) and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

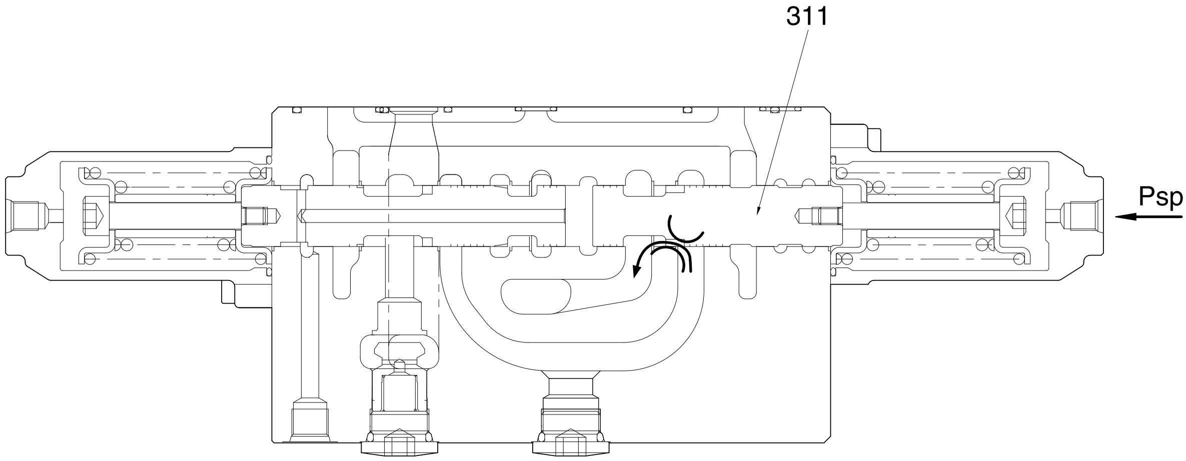
② Swing logic control valve operation

During both the swing operation and the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBs (or XAs), XAb1, XAb2 and Pns. The pressure Pns transfers the spool (250-102) in swing logic control valve. Hereby, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (254-102), and the poppet (254-101) is pushed to the casing seat. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P1 flows to the boom 2 spool (307) than the swing spool (305) to make the boom up operation most preferential.

On the other hand, in the independent swing operation, the pilot pressure does not enter through Ports Pns. The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 pushes open the poppet (254-101) and flows to the swing spool (305).



③ Swing operation preference function



Pilot circuit

The pilot pressure enters through Port Psp to transfer the swing priority spool (311).

Main circuit

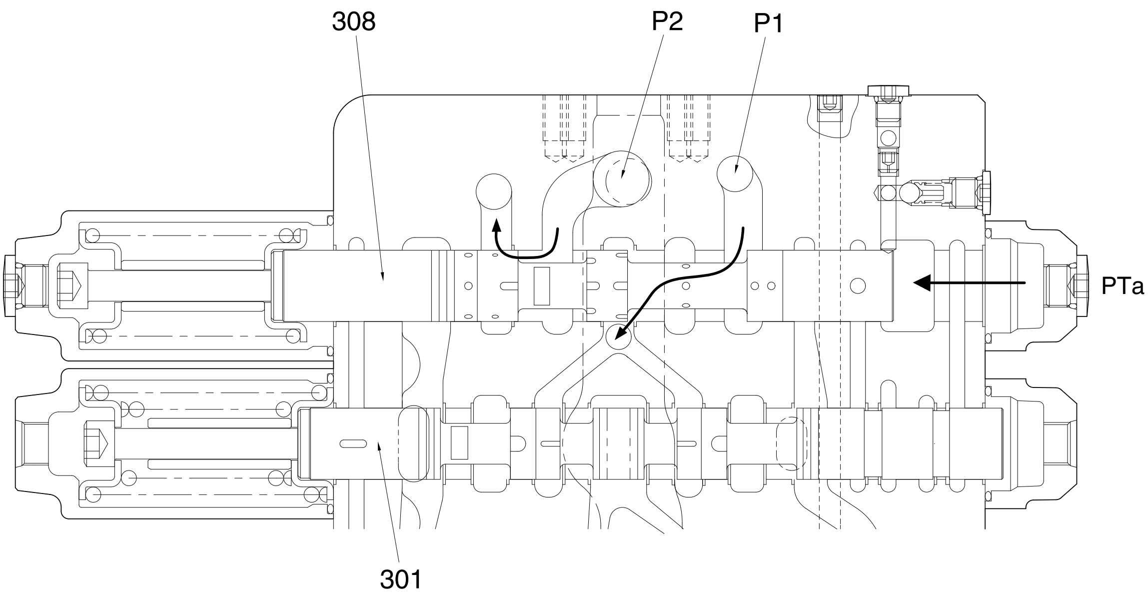
Due to transfer of the swing priority spool (311), the open area of the swing priority spool decreases, and the most of the pressurized oil entering through Port P1 flows to the swing side to make the swing operation most preferential.

(6) **Travel straight operation**

Simultaneous operating of both travel spools (301, 314) and other spool.

A case where both travel spools (301, 314) and swing spool (305) are changed over will be considered.

(The pilot Ports XAtL, XAtr and XAs are pressurized.)



Pilot circuit

Since the side bypass sections of both travel spools (301, 314) close and the side bypass section of the downstream-side swing closes, the pilot pressure from the port PG enters through the port PTa to transfer the travel straight spool (308).

Main circuit

After changeover of the travel straight spool (308), the port P1 and both travel spools (301, 314) are connected preferentially and the port P2 and the parallel paths of swing, boom 2, option and arm 1 / boom 1, bucket and arm 2 are connected preferentially. Therefore, the pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through mainly ports AtL and Atr, and flows to both travel motors separately.

On the other hand, the pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to Port As and is supplied to the swing motor.

When the pressure of Port P1 is lower than the pressure of Port P2, the part of oil entering through Port P2 flows into Port P1 side. Therefore, it prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

3) FUNCTION OF LOCK VALVE

The lock valve (252) is fitted between the arm cylinder rod side and the arm 2 spool (306). It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.

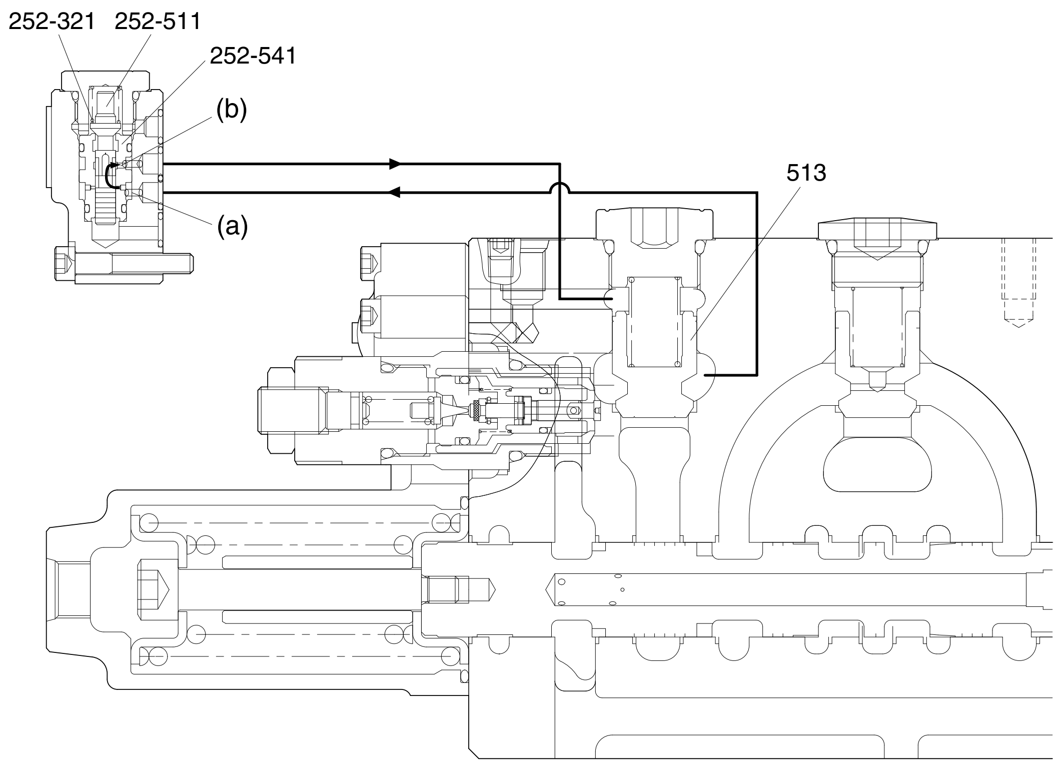
Another lock valve (252) is similarly fitted between the boom cylinder head side and the boom 1 spool (303). It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.

(1) Neutral positions of spools

The following is the case of the boom 1 spool (303). (The case of the arm 2 spool (306) is in the same way.)

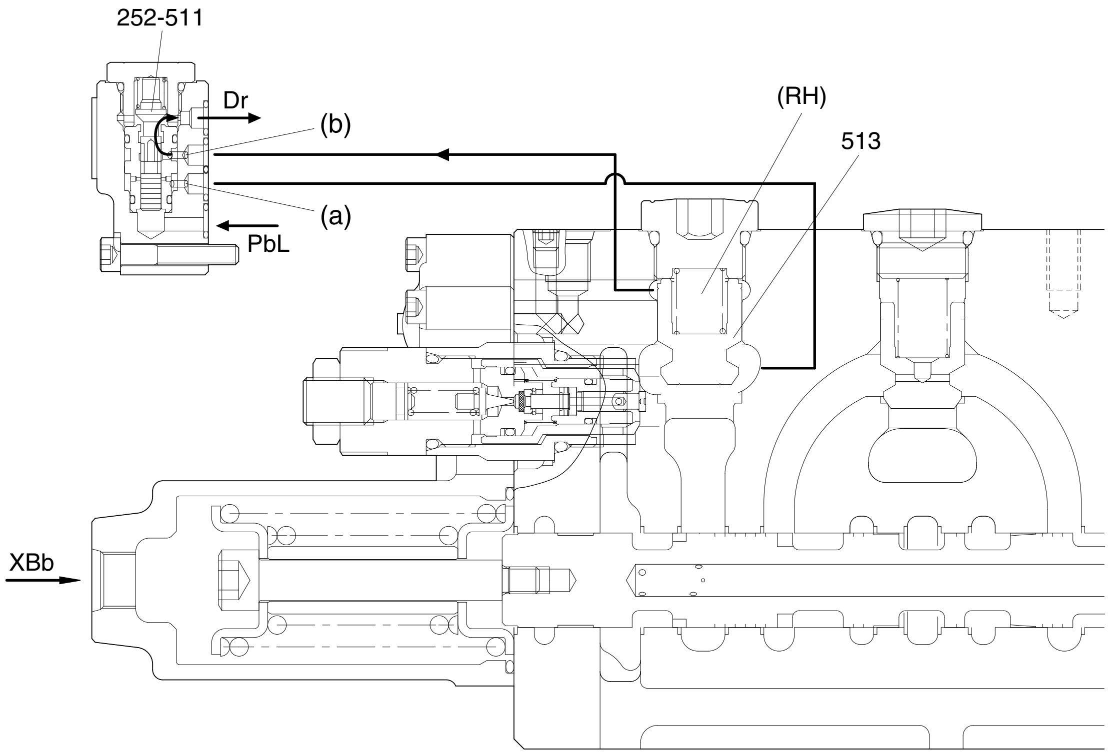
During the boom 1 spool (303) is in the neutral position, the lock valve (252) is kept in the position shown in figure. The spool (252-511) in the lock valve is pushed to the seat of the sleeve (252-541) by the force of the spring (252-321).

In this position, the pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side enters through the hole (a), the periphery of the spool (252-511) in the lock valve and the hole (b), and it pushes the poppet (513) to the casing seat, and the leakage is decreased.



(2) Boom down operation

During the boom down operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port PbL and XBb1. The pilot pressure transfers the spool (252-511) in the lock valve assy in the top direction. By the transfer of the spool (252-511), firstly the hole (a) is blocked and the pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side does not enter to the spring chamber (RH). Secondly, the oil in the spring chamber (RH) enters through the hole (b) and flows to drain circuit. Therefore, the poppet (513) is lifted by the pressure of the boom cylinder head side and the function of the lock valve (252) is released.



(3) Boom up operation

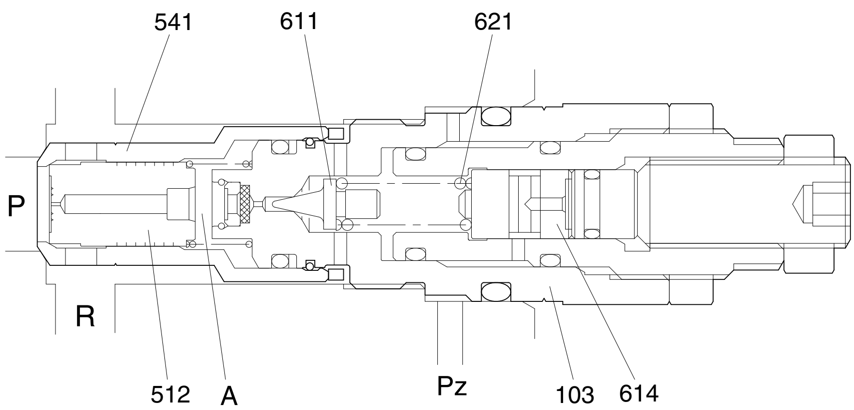
During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAb1. The oil flowing from the boom 1 spool pushes open the poppet (513) and flows to Port Ab.

5) CIRCUIT PRESSURE PROTECTION

The control valve has two kinds of relief valve to limit the pressure in a circuit.

(1) Main relief valve

The main relief valve is fitted in the casing A and functions as follows.



① The hydraulic oil is filled up in the inside space chamber (A) from the path (P) through a hole of the seat (541) and a restriction of the plunger (512), and seats the plunger (512) against the seat (541) securely.

② When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set load of the spring (621), the poppet (611) opens to make the hydraulic oil flow through a hole of the plug (103), around the poppet (611) and into the low pressure path (R).

③ Opening of the poppet (611) causes the pressure in the chamber (A) to fall and the plunger (512) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.

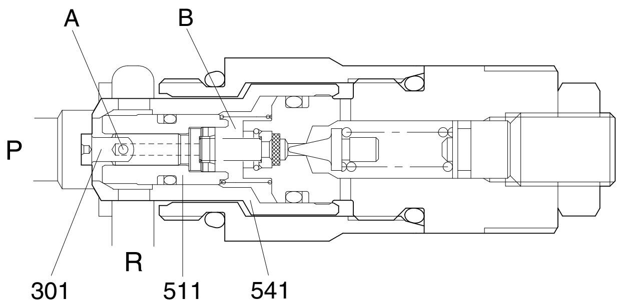
④ When the pressurized oil higher than pressure 30 kgf/cm^2 enters through the port Pz, it pushes the piston (614) to change the relief set pressure of the spring (621) to the high pressure.

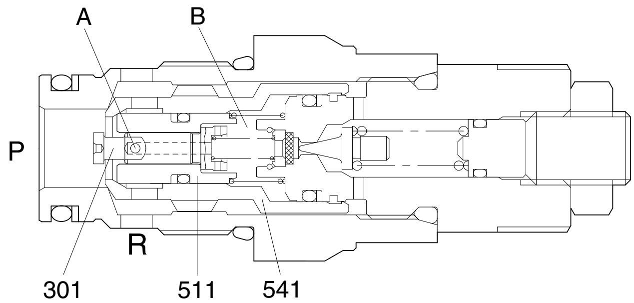
(2) Port relief valve

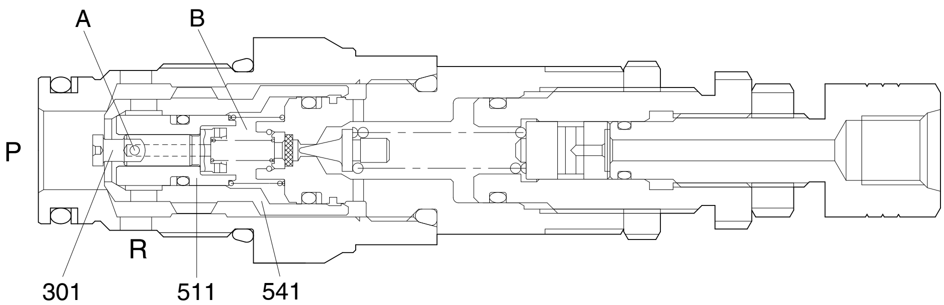
The port relief valve is fitted between the cylinder port and low-pressure path. In addition to the relief valve, this serves also as an anti-cavitation check valve, and functions as follows:

① Function as relief valve

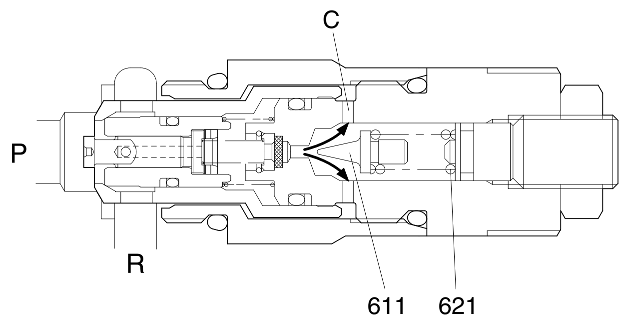
a. The pressurized oil passes through Hole A of the piston (301), is filled up in Chamber B of the inside space, and seat the plunger (511) against the seat (541) securely.

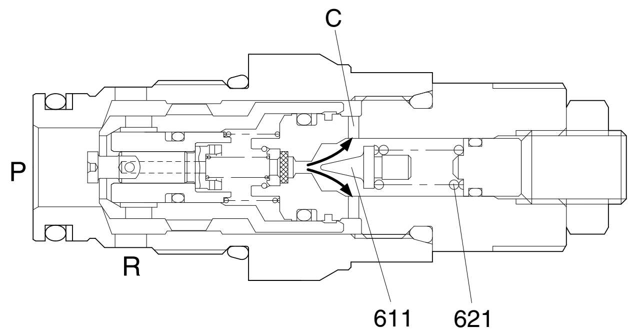


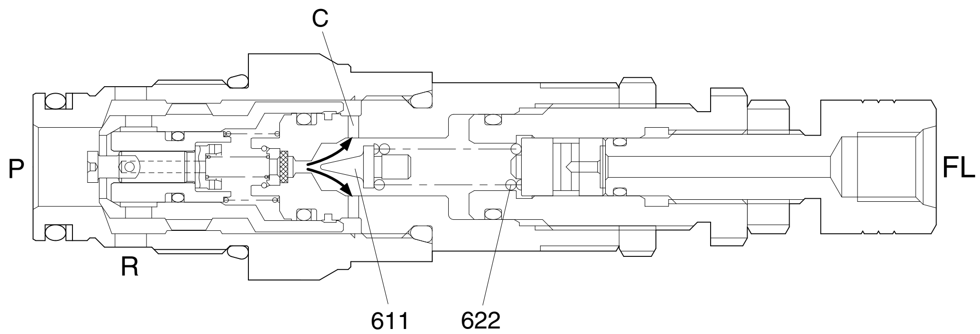




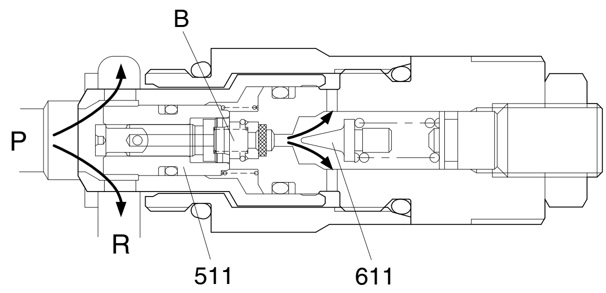
b. When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set pressure of the spring (621 or 622), the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (611), flows around it, and flows to the low pressure path (R) through hole C.

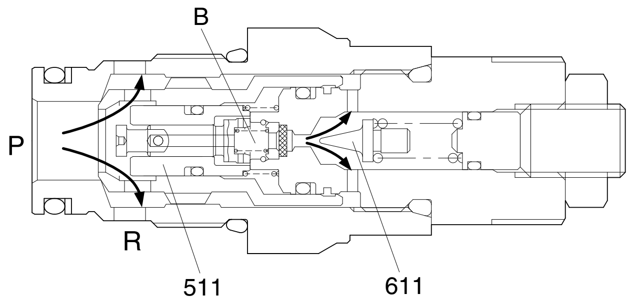


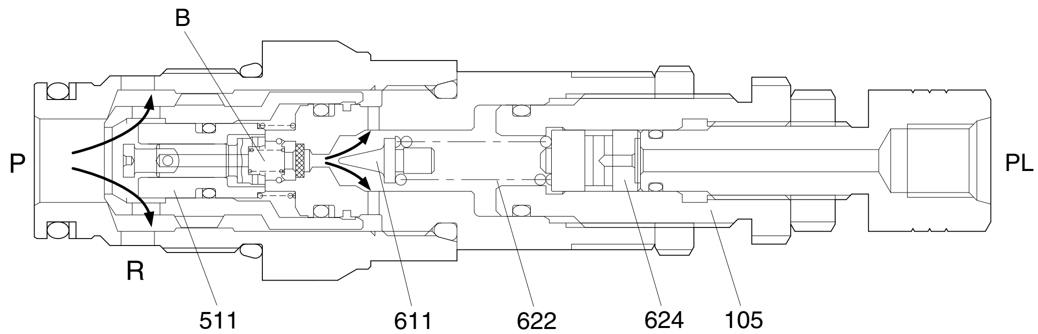




c. Opening of the poppet (611) causes the pressure in Chamber B to fall and the plunger (511) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.



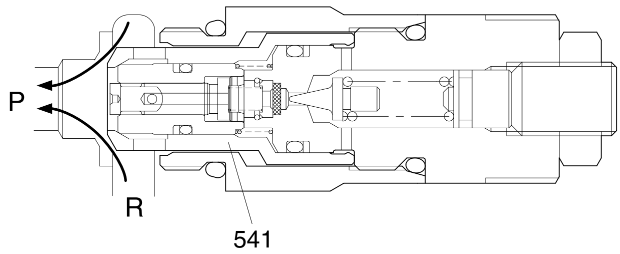


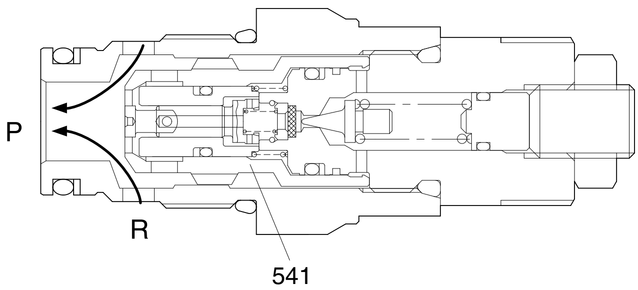


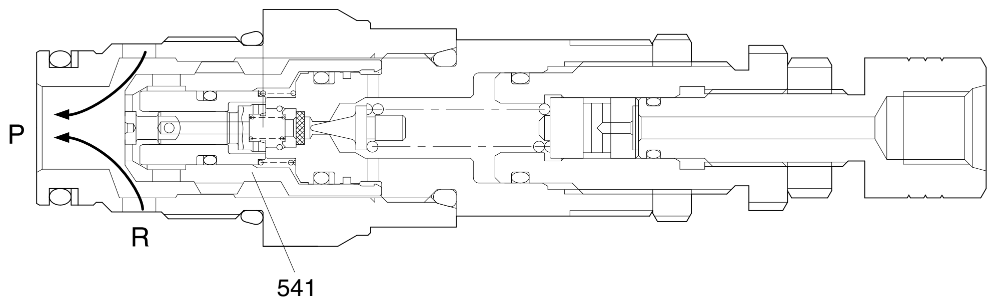
d. When the pressurized oil higher than pressure 25 kgf/cm^2 enters through the port PL, it pushes the piston (624) to change the relief set pressure of the spring (622) to the high pressure.

② **Function as Anti-Cavitation Check Valve**

When any negative pressure exists in the path (P), the oil is supplied through the path (R). When the pressure at (R) becomes higher than that in the path (P), the seat (541) moves in the right direction. Then, sufficient oil passes around the seat (541) from the path (R) to the path (P) and prevents cavitation.



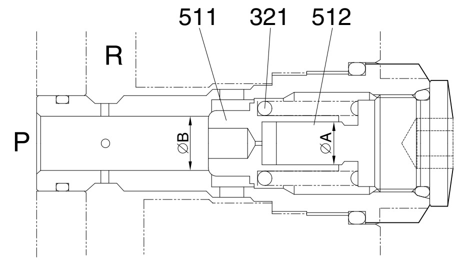




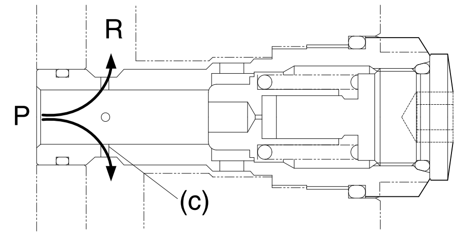
(3) Negative control relief valve

The negative control relief valve is fitted between tne downstream of the center bypass path and low-pressure path, and functions as follows.

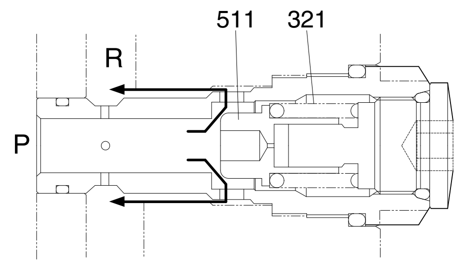
① When the pressure in the path (P) falls below the set level of the spring (321), the poppet (511) is in the condition shown in the figure. The pressure acting area of the poppet (511) is reduced to (ϕ B - ϕ A), as the area ϕ B is cancelled by the area ϕ A of the damping rod (512).



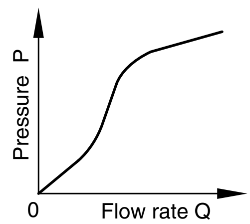
② In this condition, the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs out to the path (R) through the orifice (c).



③ When the pressure in the path (P) goes over the set P pressure of the spring (321), the poppet (511) opens. Then, the pressurized oil in the path (P) passes around the outside of the poppet (511) and flows to the low-pressure path (R).



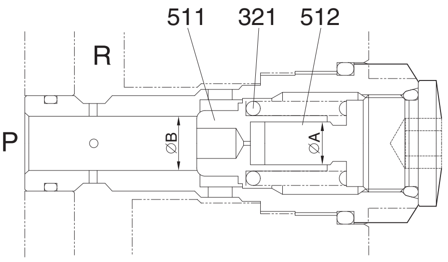
The relation between the flow rate Q and pressure P of the hydraulic oil that flows from the path (P) to the low-pressure path (R) is as shown in the diagram.



(3) Negative control relief valve

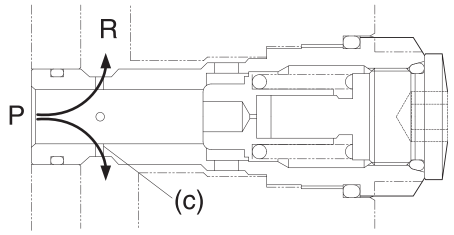
The negative control relief valve is fitted between tne downstream of the center bypass path and low-pressure path, and functions as follows.

① When the pressure in the path (P) falls below the set level of the spring (321), the poppet (511) is in the condition shown in the figure. The pressure acting area of the poppet (511) is reduced to (ϕ B - ϕ A), as the area ϕ B is cancelled by the area ϕ A of the damping rod (512).



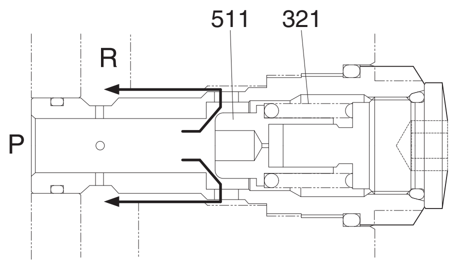
32092MC07

② In this condition, the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs out to the path (R) through the orifice (c).



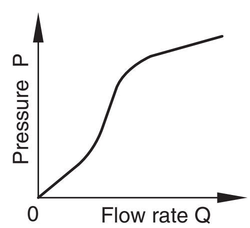
32092MC08A

③ When the pressure in the path (P) goes over the set P pressure of the spring (321), the poppet (511) opens. Then, the pressurized oil in the path (P) passes around the outside of the poppet (511) and flows to the low-pressure path (R).



32092MC09A

The relation between the flow rate Q and pressure P of the hydraulic oil that flows from the path (P) to the low-pressure path (R) is as shown in the diagram.



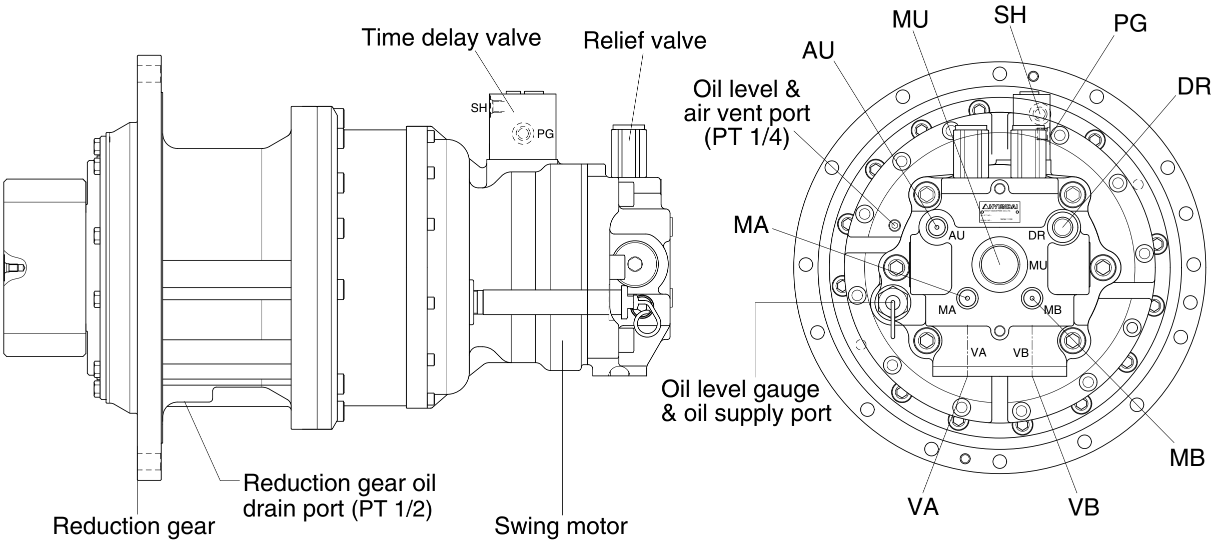
32092MC10

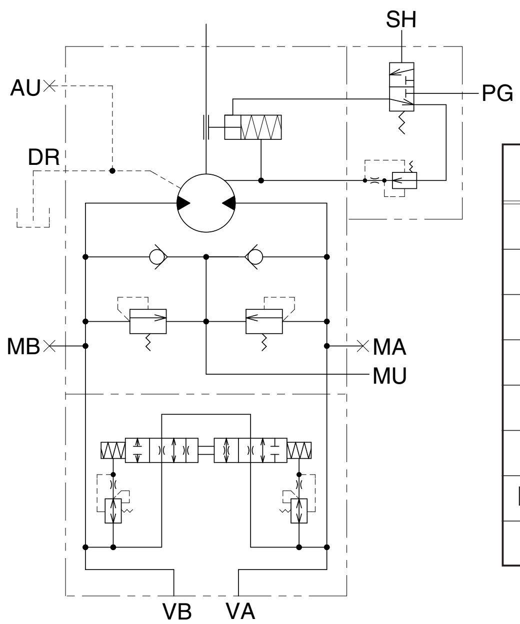
GROUP 3 SWING DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

Swing device consists swing motor, swing reduction gear.

Swing motor include mechanical parking valve, relief valve, make up valve and time delay valve.



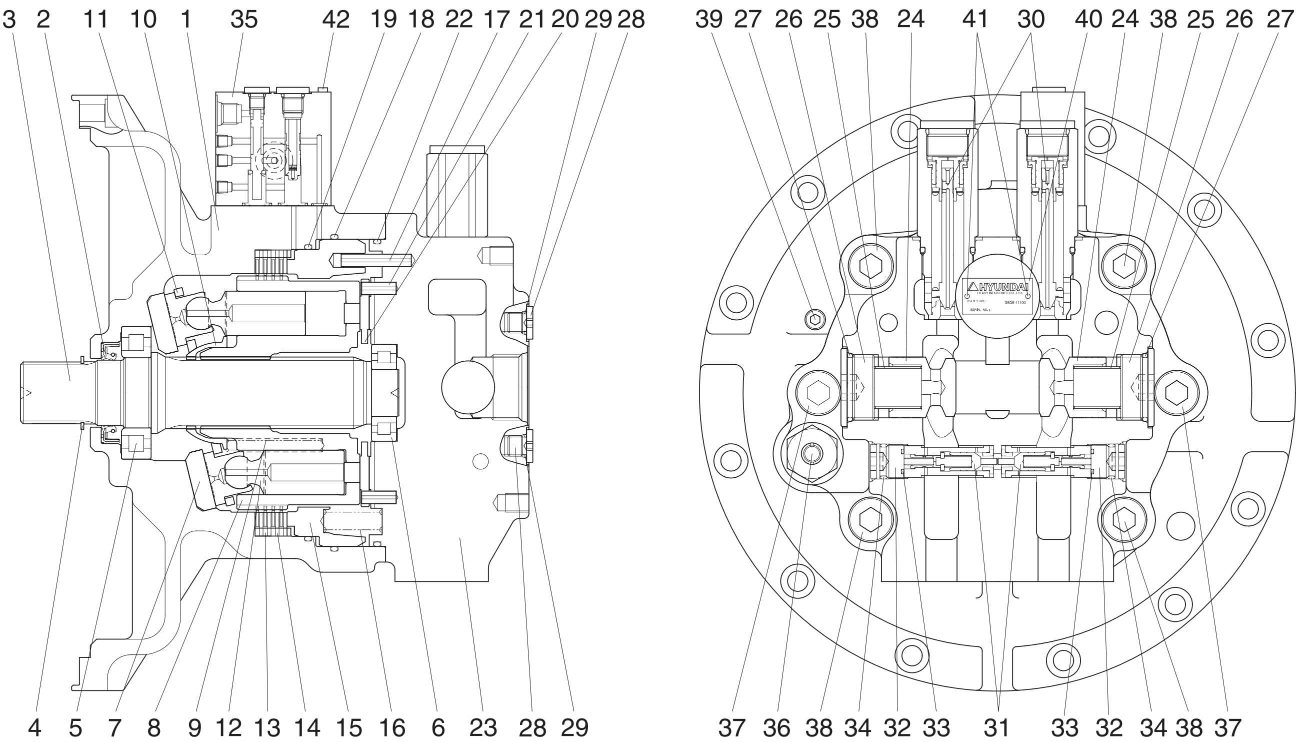


Hydraulic circuit

Port	Port name	Port size
VA	Main port	ø 20
VB	Main port	ø 20
DR	Drain port	PF 1/2
MU	Make up port	PF 1 1/4
PG	Brake release stand by port	PF 1/4
SH	Brake release port	PF 1/4
MA, MB	Gauge port	PF 1/4
AU	Air vent port	PF 1/4

300L2SM01

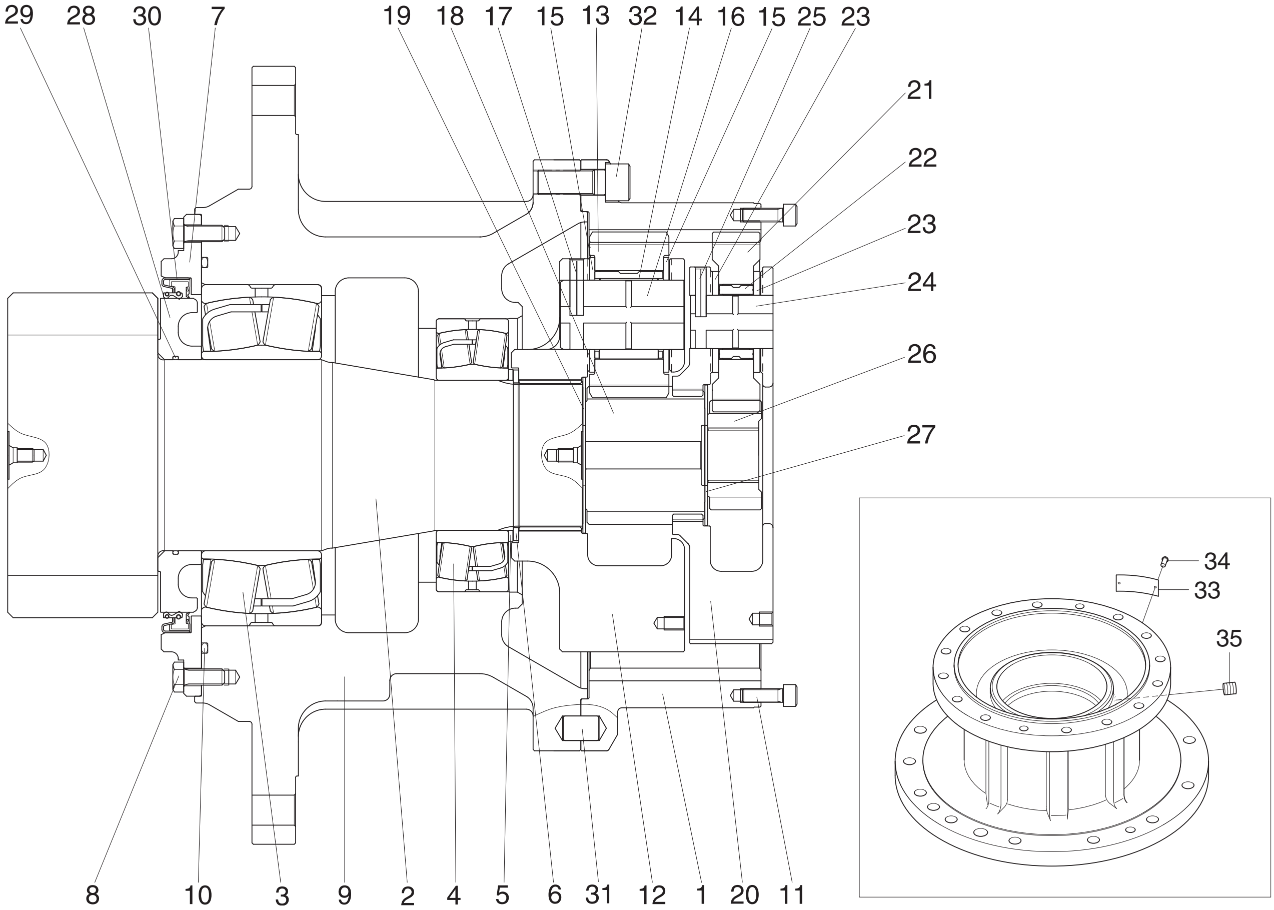
1) SWING MOTOR



300L2SM02

1	Casing	15	Parking piston	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Brake spring	30	Relief valve assy
3	Shaft	17	Spring pin	31	Reactionless valve assy
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Plug
5	Roller bearing	19	O-ring	33	O-ring
6	Needle bearing	20	Valve plate	34	O-ring
7	Swash plate	21	Spring pin	35	Time delay valve assy
8	Cylinder block	22	O-ring	36	Level gauge
9	Spring	23	Valve casing	37	Socket bolt
10	Ball guide	24	Check valve	38	Socket bolt
11	Retainer plate	25	Spring	39	Plug
12	Piston assy	26	Plug	40	Name plate
13	Friction plate	27	O-ring	41	Rivet
14	Separate plate	28	Plug	42	Socket bolt

2) REDUCTION GEAR



300L2SM03

1 Ring gear
2 Drive shaft
3 Bearing
4 Bearing
5 Thrust plate
6 Snap ring
7 Cover
8 Hex head bolt
9 Casing
10 O-ring
11 Hex socket head bolt
12 Carrier 2
13 Planetary gear 2
14 Needle bearing 2
15 Thrust washer 2
16 Carrier pin 2
17 Spring pin 2
18 Sun gear 2
19 Thrust plate 2
20 Carrier 1
21 Planetary gear 1
22 Needle bearing 1
23 Thrust washer 1
24 Carrier pin 1
25 Spring pin 1
26 Sun gear 1
27 Thrust plate 1
28 Sleeve
29 O-ring
30 Oil seal
31 Parallel pin
32 Hex socket head bolt
33 Name plate
34 Rivet
35 Plug

2. PRINCIPLE OF DRIVING

2.1 Generating the turning force

The high hydraulic supplied from a hydraulic pump flows into a cylinder block (8) through valve casing of motor (1), and valve plate (20).

The high hydraulic is built as flowing on one side of Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of piston (12).

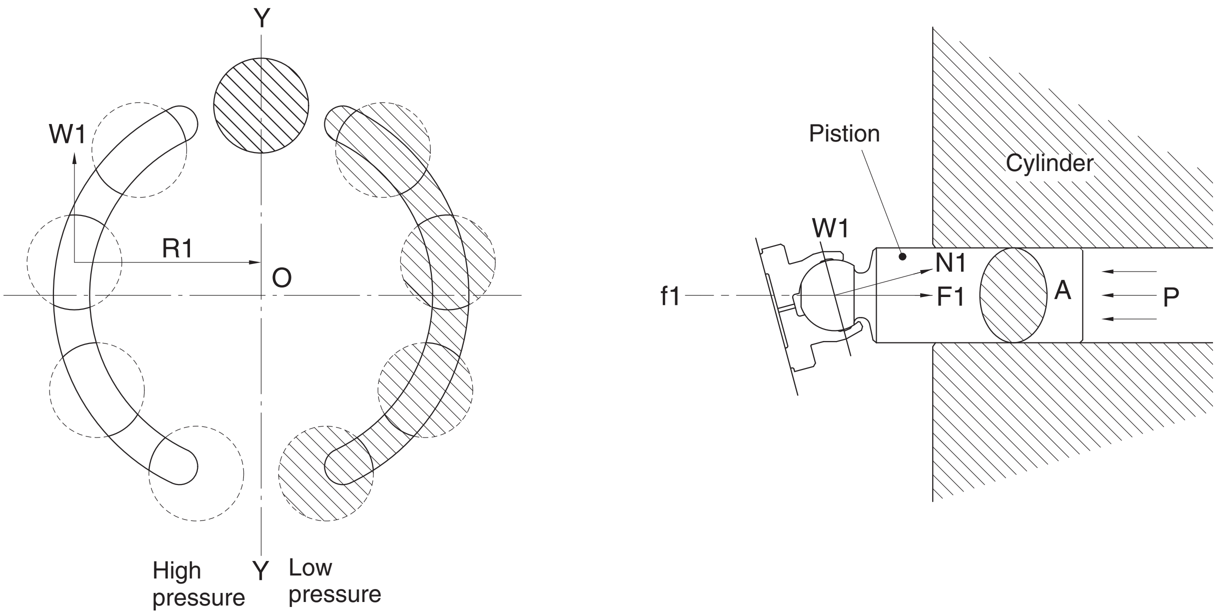
The high hydraulic can generate the force, $F1=P \times A$ (P : supplied pressure, A : water pressure area), like following pictures, working on a piston.

This force, F1, is divided as N1 thrust partial pressure and W1 radial partial pressure, in case of the plate of a tilt angle, α .

W1 generates torque, $T=W1 \times R1$, for Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of the piston as following pictures.

The sum of torque ($\Sigma W1 \times R1$), generated from each piston (4~5 pieces) on the side of a high hydraulic, generates the turning force.

This torque transfers the turning force to a cylinder (8) through a piston; because a cylinder is combined with a turning axis and spline, a turning axis rotates and a turning force is sent.



21078TM05

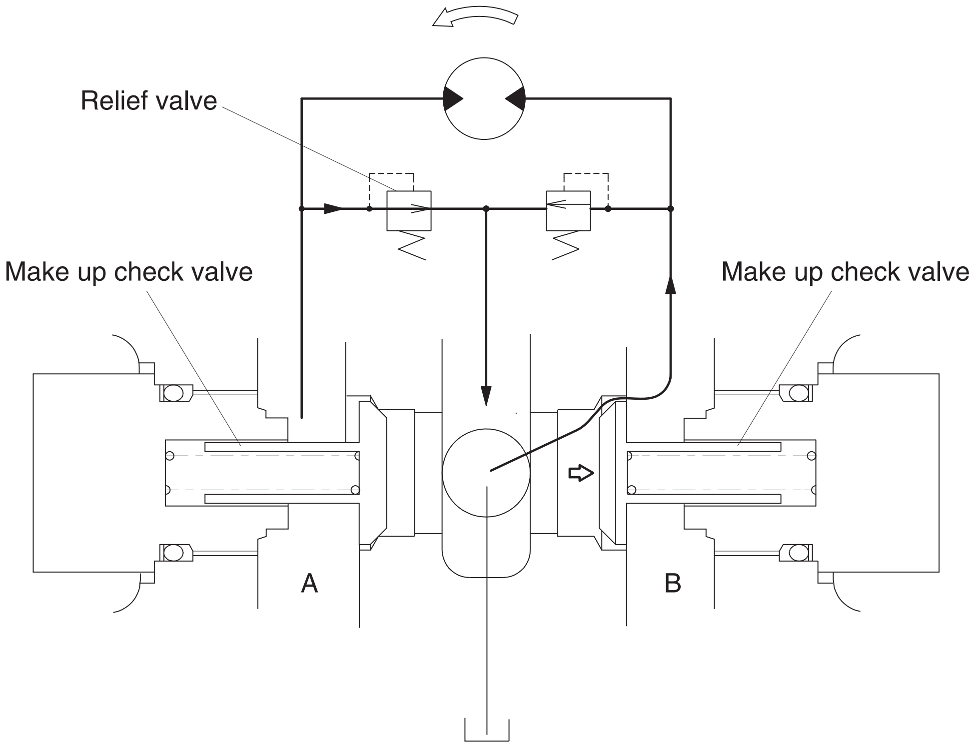
2) MAKE UP VALVE

In the system using this type of motor, there is no counter balance functioning valve and there happens the case of revolution exceeding hydraulic supply of motor. To prevent the cavitation caused by insufficient oil flow there is a make up valve to fill up the oil insufficiency.

A make up valve is provided immediately before the port leading to the hydraulic oil tank to secure feed pressure required when the hydraulic motor makes a pumping action. The boost pressure acts on the hydraulic motor's feed port via the make up valve.

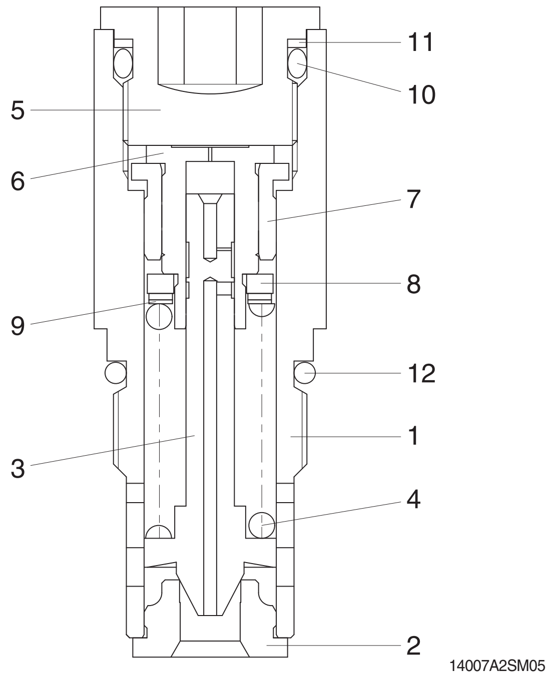
Pressurized oil into the port B, the motor rotate counterclockwise.

If the plunger of MCV moves neutral position, the oil in the motor is drain via left relief valve, the drain oil run into motor via right make up valve, which prevent the cavitation of motor.



21092SM04

3) RELIEF VALVE



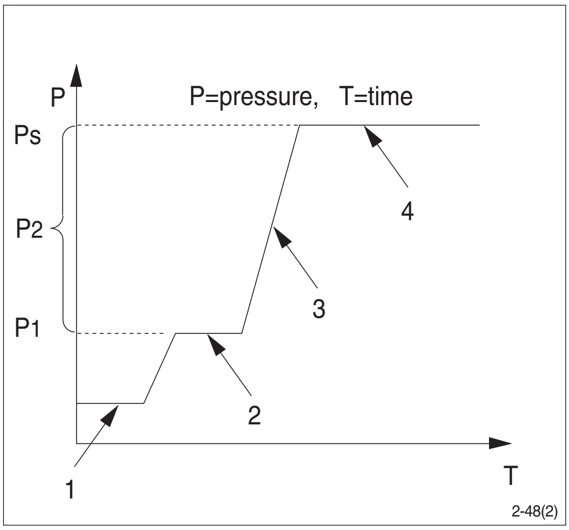
1	Body
2	Seat
3	Plunger
4	Spring
5	Adjusting screw
6	Piston
7	Bushing
8	Spring seat
9	Shim
10	O-ring
11	Back up ring
12	O-ring

(1) Construction of relief valve

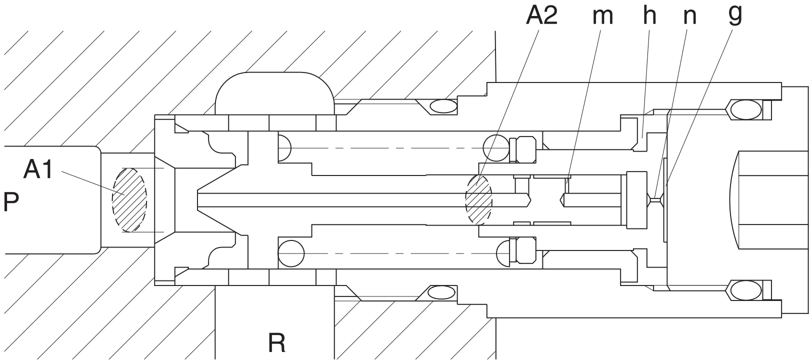
The valve casing contains two cartridge type relief valves that stop the regular and reverse rotations of the hydraulic motor. The relief valves relieve high pressure at start or at stop of swing motion and can control the relief pressure in two steps, high and low, in order to insure smooth operation.

(2) Function of relief valve

Figure illustrates how the pressure acting on the relief valve is related to its rising process. Here is given the function, referring to the figure following page.



① Ports (P,R) at tank pressure.

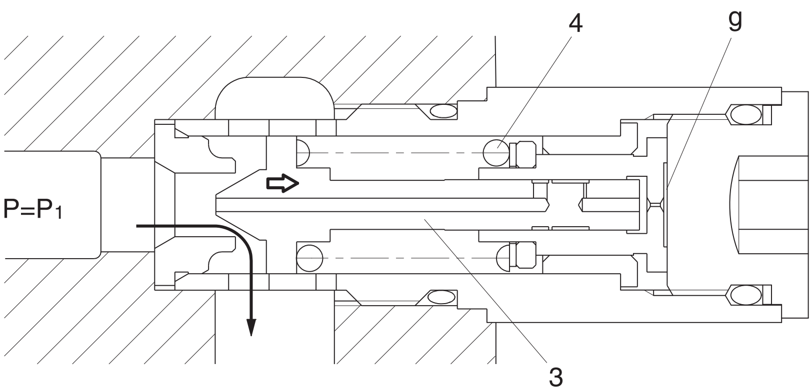


14007A2SM06

② When hydraulic oil pressure ($P \times A_1$) reaches the preset force (F_{SP}) of spring (4), the plunger (3) moves to the right as shown.

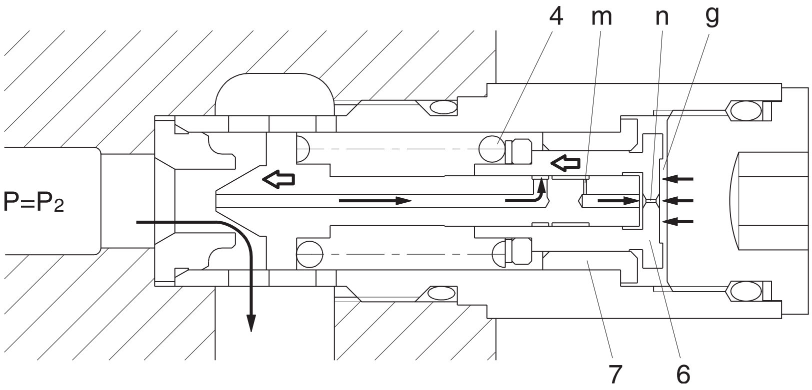
$P_1 \times A_1 = F_{sp} + P_g \times A_2$

$$P_1 = \frac{F_{sp} + P_g \times A_2}{A_1}$$



14007A2SM07

③ The oil flow chamber g via orifice m and n. When the pressure of chamber g reaches the preset force (F_{SP}) of spring (4), the piston (6) moves left and stop the piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7).

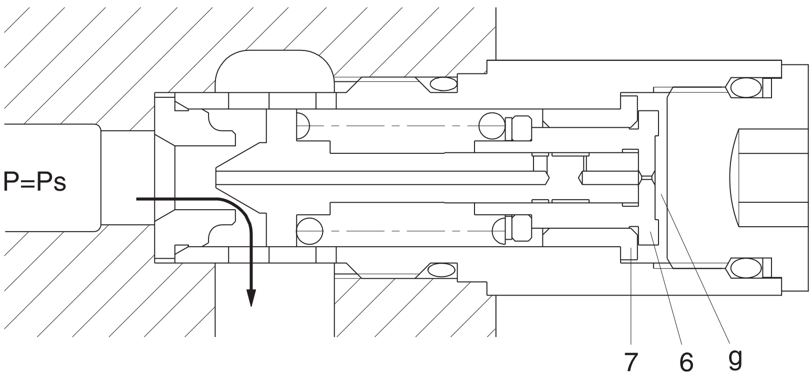


14007A2SM08

④ When piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7), it stops moving to the left any further. As the result, the pressure in chamber (g) equals (Ps).

$Ps \times A_1 = Fsp + Ps \times A_2$

$$Ps = \frac{Fsp}{A_1 - A_2}$$



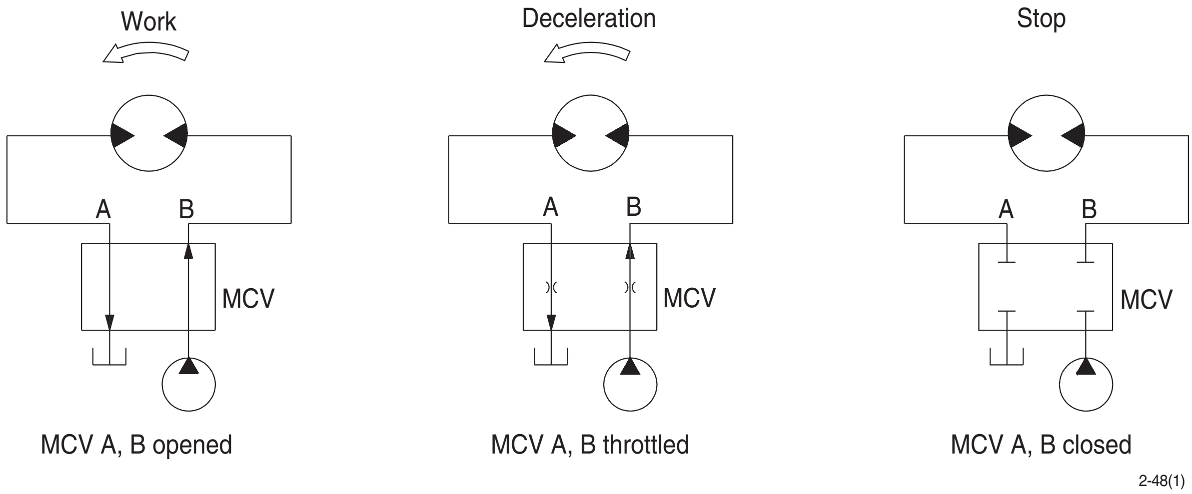
14007A2SM09

4) BRAKE SYSTEM

(1) Control valve swing brake system

This is the brake system to stop the swing motion of the excavator during operation.

In this system, the hydraulic circuit is throttled by the swing control valve, and the resistance created by this throttling works as a brake force to slow down the swing motion.



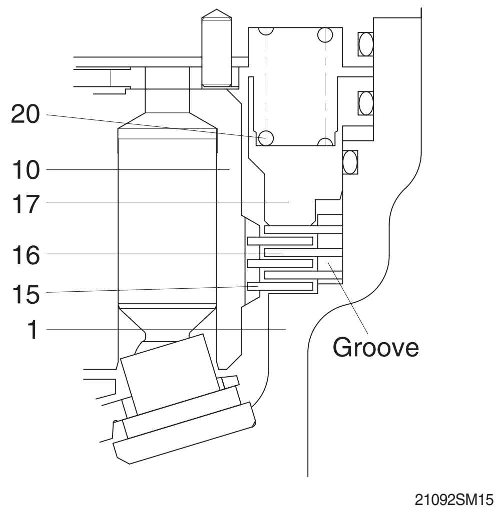
(2) Mechanical swing parking brake system

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

① Brake assembly

Circumferential rotation of separate plate (16) is constrained by the groove located at housing (1). When housing is pressed down by brake spring (20) through friction plate (15), separate plate (16) and brake piston (17), friction force occurs there.

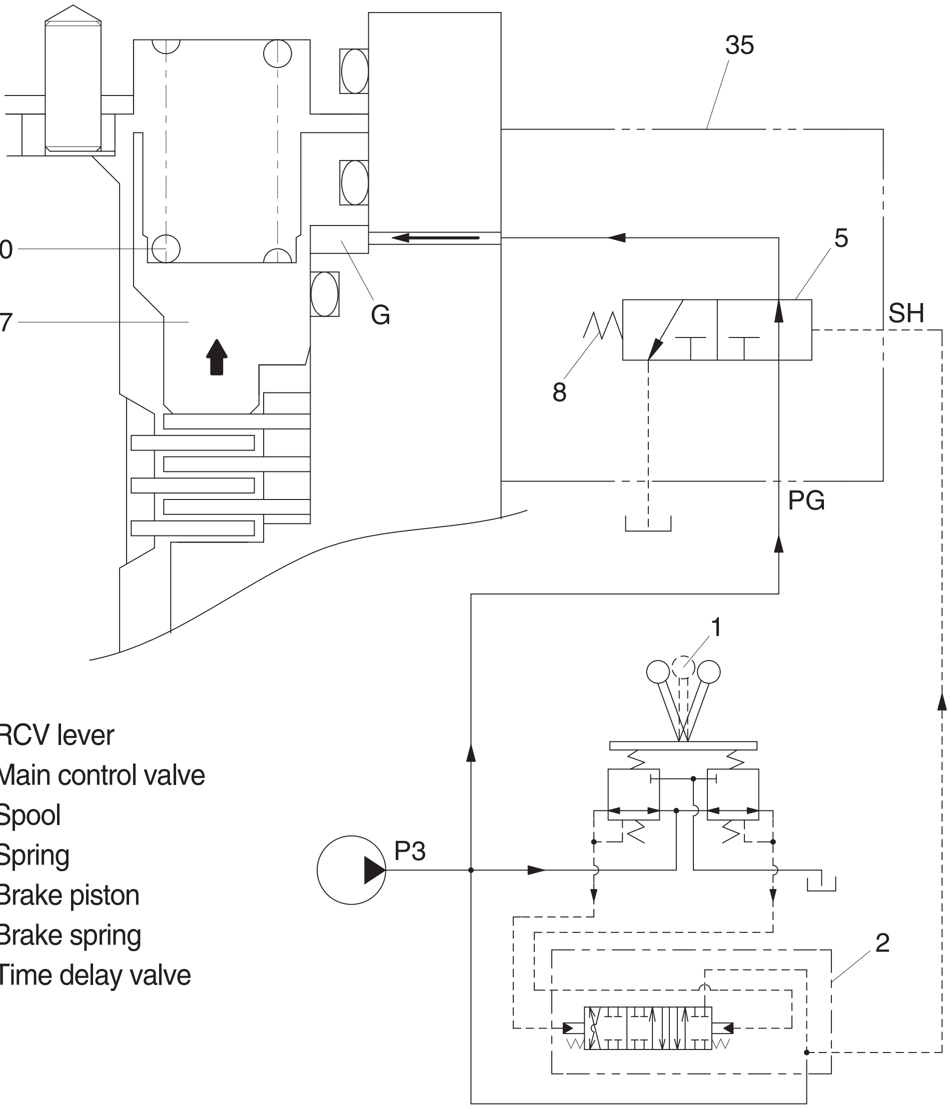
Cylinder block (10) is constrained by this friction force and brake acts, while brake releases when hydraulic force exceeds spring force.



1	Housing	16	Separate plate
10	Cylinder block	17	Brake piston
15	Friction plate	20	Spring

② Operating principle

a. When one of the RCV lever (1) is set to the operation position, the each spool is shifted to left or right and the pilot oil flow is blocked. Then the pilot oil go to SH of the time delay valve (35). This pressure moves spool (5) to the leftward against the force of the spring(8), so pilot pump charged oil (P3) goes to the chamber G through port PG.
This pressure is applied to move the piston (17) to the upward against the force of the spring (20). Thus, it releases the brake force.



1	RCV lever
2	Main control valve
5	Spool
8	Spring
17	Brake piston
20	Brake spring
35	Time delay valve

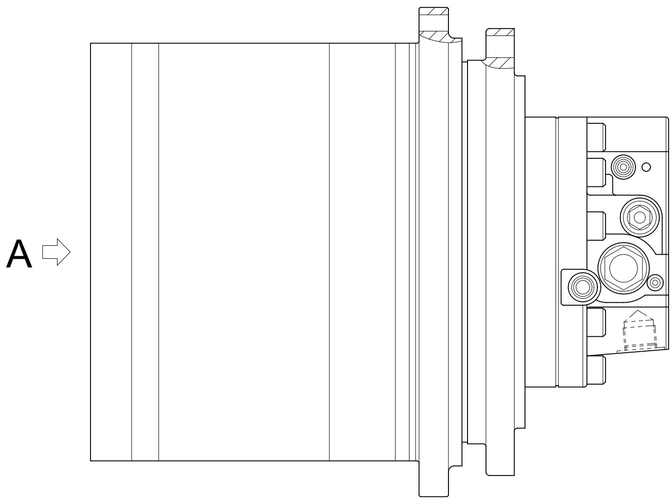
21092SM16

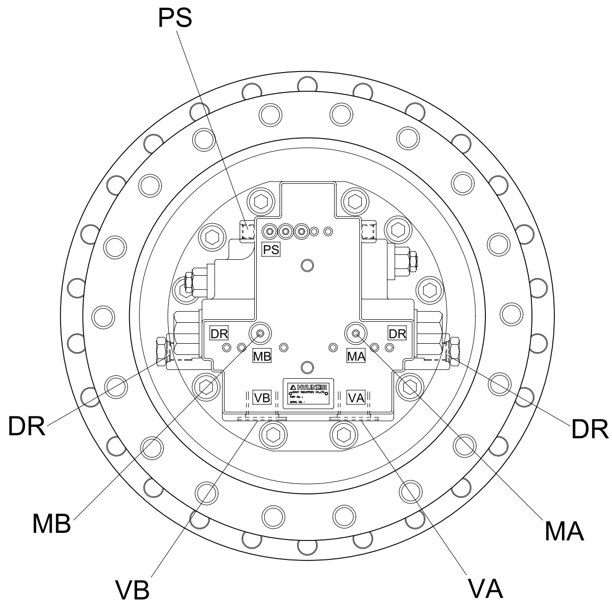
GROUP 4 TRAVEL DEVICE

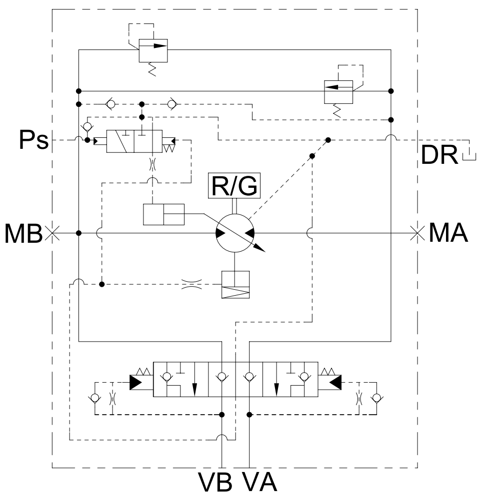
1. CONSTRUCTION

Travel device consists travel motor and gear box.

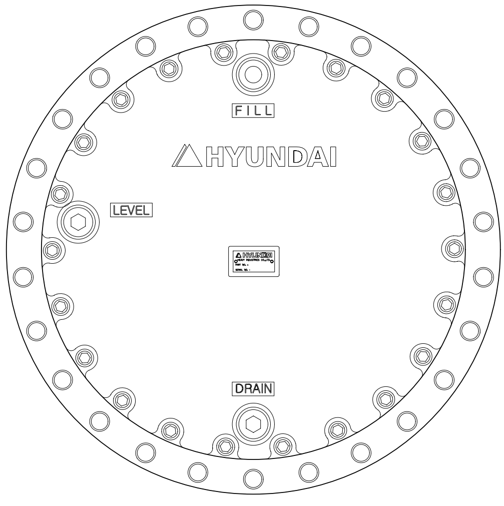
Travel motor includes brake valve, parking brake and high/low speed changeover mechanism.







HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

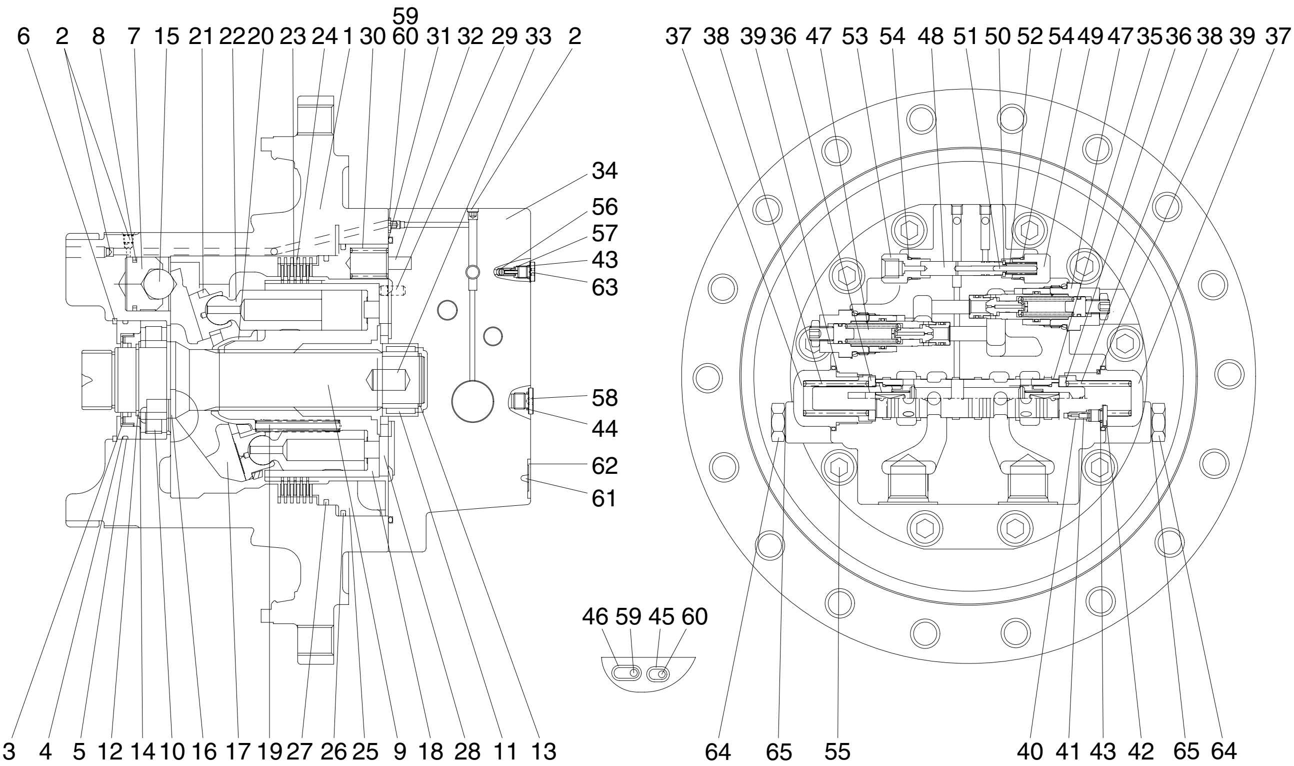


VIEW A

Port	Port name	Port size
VA, VB	Valve port	PF 1
Ps	Pilot port	PF 1/4
DR	Drain port	PF 1/2
MA, MB	Gauge port	PF 1/4

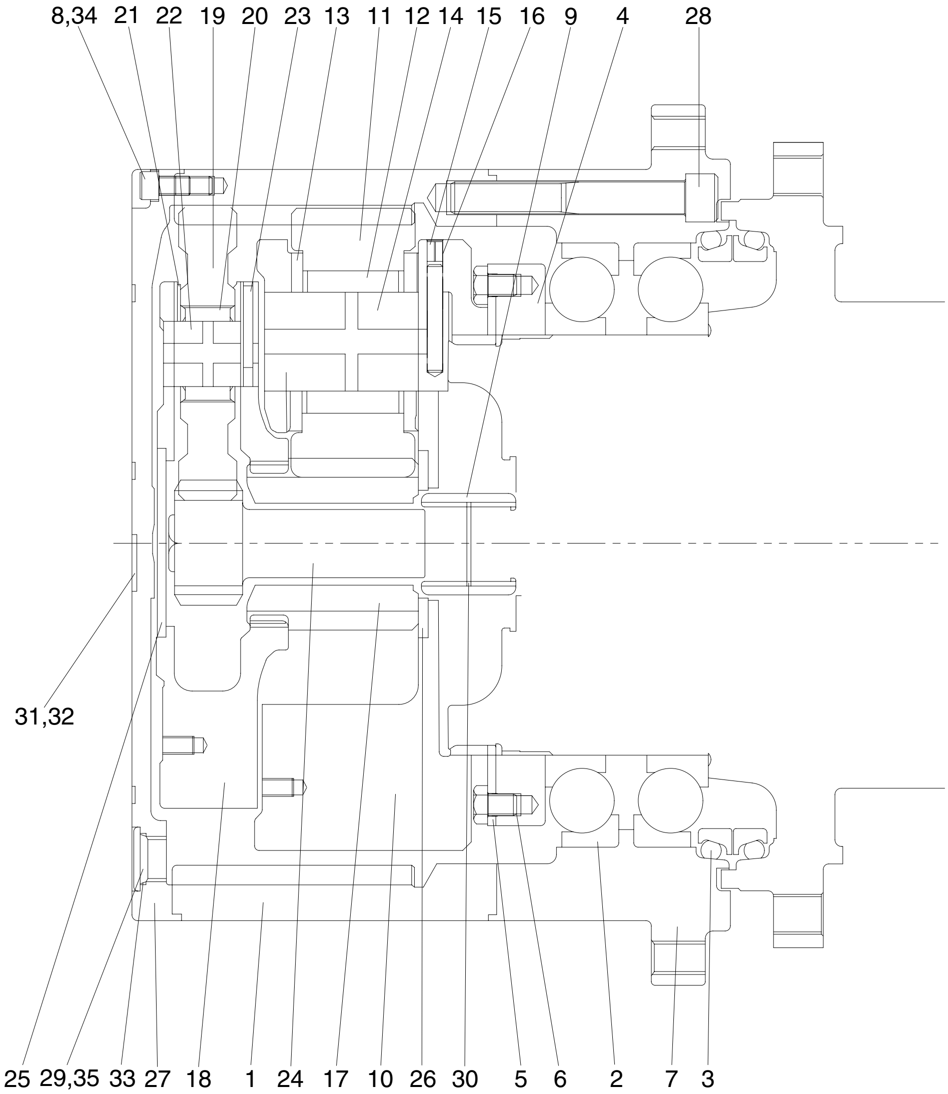
2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR



1	Casing	23	Friction plate	45	O-ring
2	Plug	24	Separate plate	46	O-ring
3	Oil seal	25	Parking piston	47	Relief valve assy
4	Thrust block	26	D-ring	48	Spool
5	O-ring	27	D-ring	49	Plug
6	Retainer ring	28	Valve plate	50	Spring seat
7	Piston	29	Parallel pin	51	Parallel pin
8	Piston seal	30	Spring	52	Spring
9	Shaft	31	O-ring	53	Connector
10	Cylinder roller bearing	32	Spring pin	54	O-ring
11	Needle bearing	33	Parallel pin	55	Hexagon socket head bolt
12	Retainer ring	34	Rear cover	56	Check valve
13	Retainer ring	35	Main spool kit	57	Spring
14	Thrust plate	36	Spring seat	58	Plug
15	Steel ball	37	Plug	59	Restrictor
16	Pivot	38	Spring	60	Restrictor
17	Swash plate	39	O-ring	61	Name plate
18	Rotary block	40	Restrictor	62	Rivet
19	Spring	41	Spring	63	Plug
20	Ball guide	42	Plug	64	Plug
21	Retainer plate	43	O-ring	65	O-ring
22	Piston assy	44	O-ring		

2) TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR

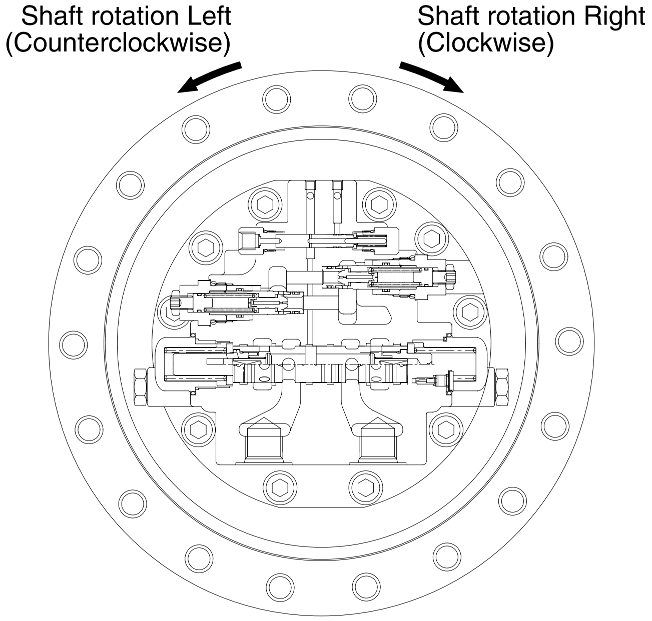


1	Ring gear	13	Thrust washer 2	25	Thrust plate
2	Ball bearing	14	Carrier pin 2	26	Thrust plate
3	Floating seal assy	15	Spring pin 2	27	Cover
4	Ring nut	16	Solid pin 2	28	Hexagon socket head bolt
5	Lock plate	17	Sun gear 2	29	Plug
6	Hexagon socket head bolt	18	Carrier 1	30	Retainer ring
7	Housing	19	Planetary gear 1	31	Name plate
8	Hexagon socket head bolt	20	Needle bearing 1	32	Rivet
9	Coupling	21	Thrust washer 1	33	O-ring
10	Carrier 2	22	Carrier pin 1	34	Rubber cap
11	Planetary gear 2	23	Spring pin 1	35	Rubber cap
12	Needle bearing 2	24	Sun gear 1		

3. OPERATION

1) MOTOR

High pressure oil delivered form hydraulic pump is led to inlet port that is provided in the brake valve portion and, through the rear cover (34) and valve plate (28), led to cylinder block (18).
The oil flow and direction of shaft rotation are indicated in table.



Inlet port	Outlet port	Direction of shaft rotation (viewing from rear cover)
VB	VA	Right (clockwise)
VA	VB	Left (counterclock wise)

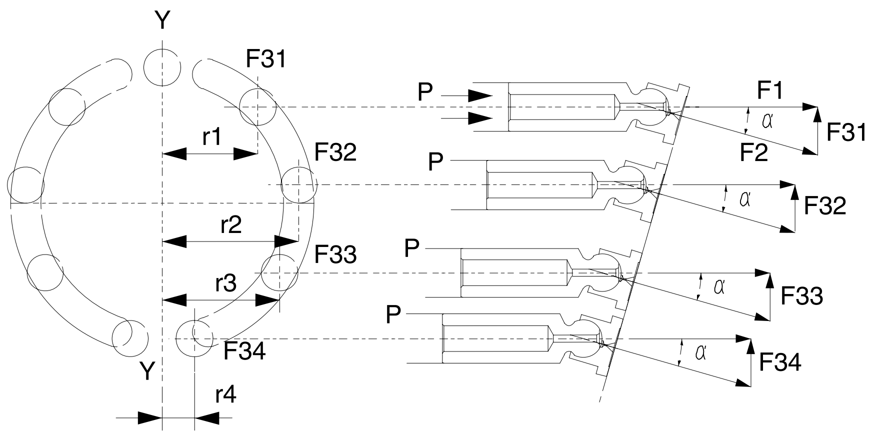
As shown in below figure, high pressure oil is supplied to the pistons which are on one side of the line Y-Y that connects upper and lower dead points and produces force F1.

F1 = P × A (P : pressure, A : area of piston section)

The swash plate (17) with inclined angle of α divides this force F1 into thrust force F2 and radial force F31-34.
This radial force is applied to axis Y-Y as turning force and generate drive torque of T.

$T = r_1 \cdot F31 + r_2 \cdot F32 + r_3 \cdot F33 + r_4 \cdot F34$

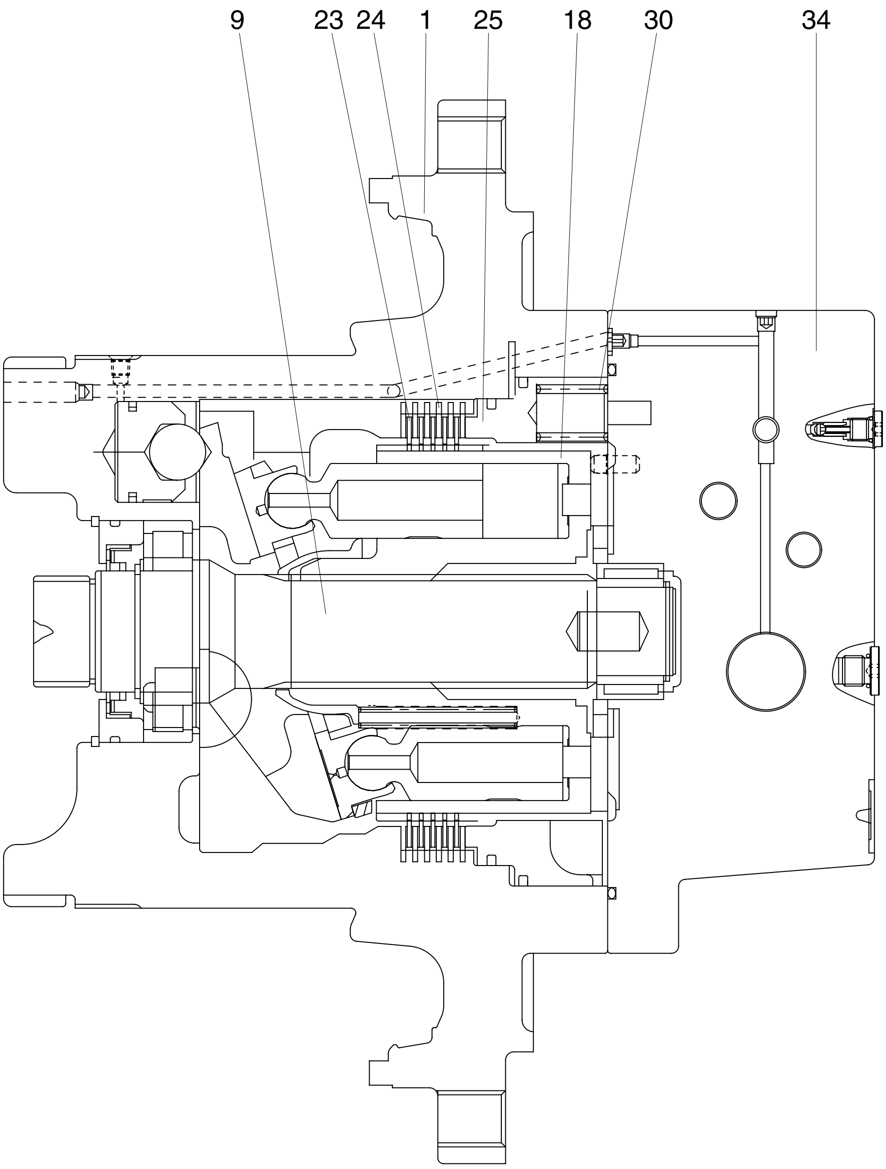
This drive torque is transmitted via cylinder block (18) to driving shaft (9).



2) PARKING BRAKE

Parking brake is released when high pressure oil selected by the brake valve portion that is connected directly to the rear cover (34), is applied to the parking piston (25).
Otherwise the braking torque is always applied.

This braking torque is generated by the friction between the separated plates (24), inserted into the casing (1), and friction plates (23), coupled to cylinder block (18) by the outer splines.
When no pressure is activated on the parking piston (25), it is pushed by the brake springs (30) and it pushes friction plates (23) and separated plates (24) towards casing (1) and generates the friction force which brakes the rotation of cylinder block (18) and hence the shaft (9).



3) CAPACITY CONTROL MECHANISM

Figure typically shows the capacity control mechanism.

When high speed pilot line is charged with the pressure P_A that overcome the spring (52), the spring (52) is compressed and spool (48) shifts to the right to connect the port P and port C.

Then, the highest pressure is selected by the check valve (56) from inlet and outlet pressure of the motor and high speed pilot line pressure and pushes shifter piston (7). As a result, swash plate (17) turns around the line L which connect the two pivots (16) as shown by dotted lines. The turn stops at the stopper (1-1) of casing and swash plate (17) keeps the position.

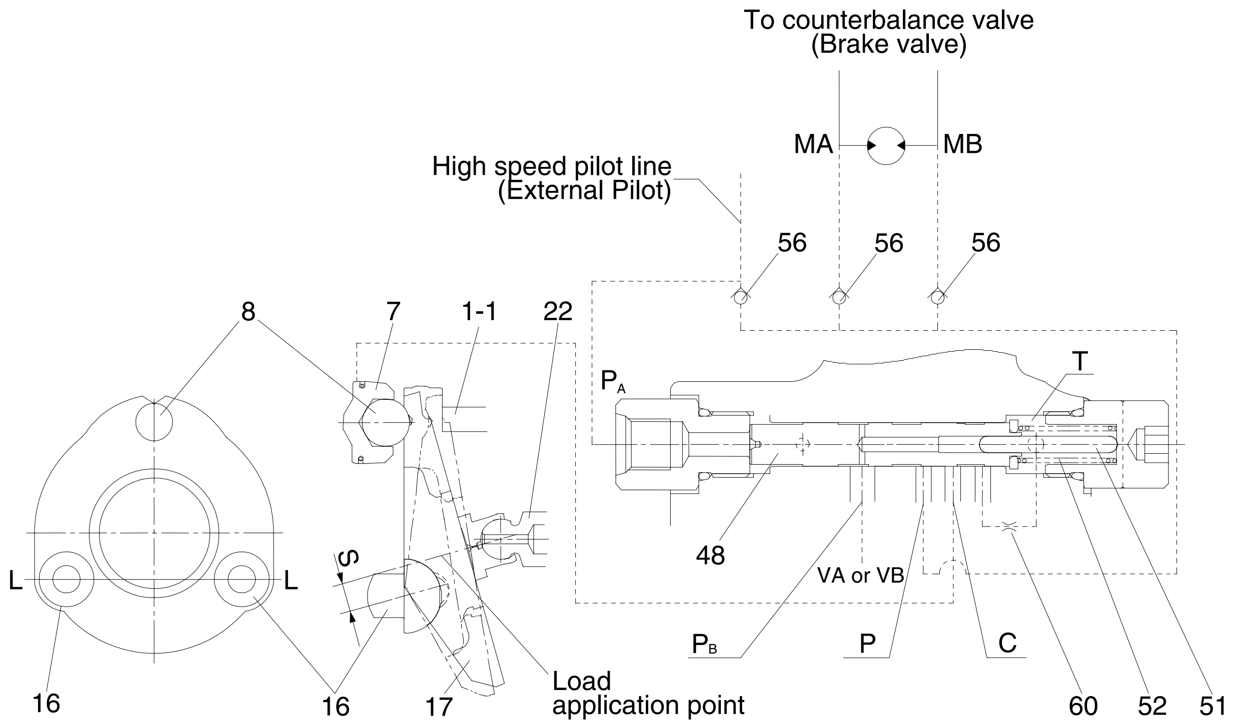
In this case, the piston stroke become shorter and motor capacity become smaller and motor rotates faster, around 1.60 times, by the same volume of oil.

When no pressure is in the high speed pilot line P_A, spool (35) is pushed back by the spring (52) and pressure that pressed the shifter piston (7) is released to the hydraulic tank through restrictor (60).

Here, nine pistons are there and they equally spaced on the swash plate (17). The force that summed up those of pistons comes to almost the center of the swash plate (17) as shown. Since the pivots (16) are off-set by S from the center, the rotating force of product S and the force moves swash plate (17) to the former position and the speed returns to low.

When the power demand exceeds the engine power, such as in steep slope climbing or turning at high speed mode, the system step down to the low speed automatically. The mechanism is that: pump pressure is led to the port P_B and this pressure activate on pin (51). When the pressure at P_B exceeds predetermined value, spool (48) returns to the left by the counter-pressure against pin (51) and the pressure on the shifter piston (7) through port C is released to the tank and the motor comes to low speed.

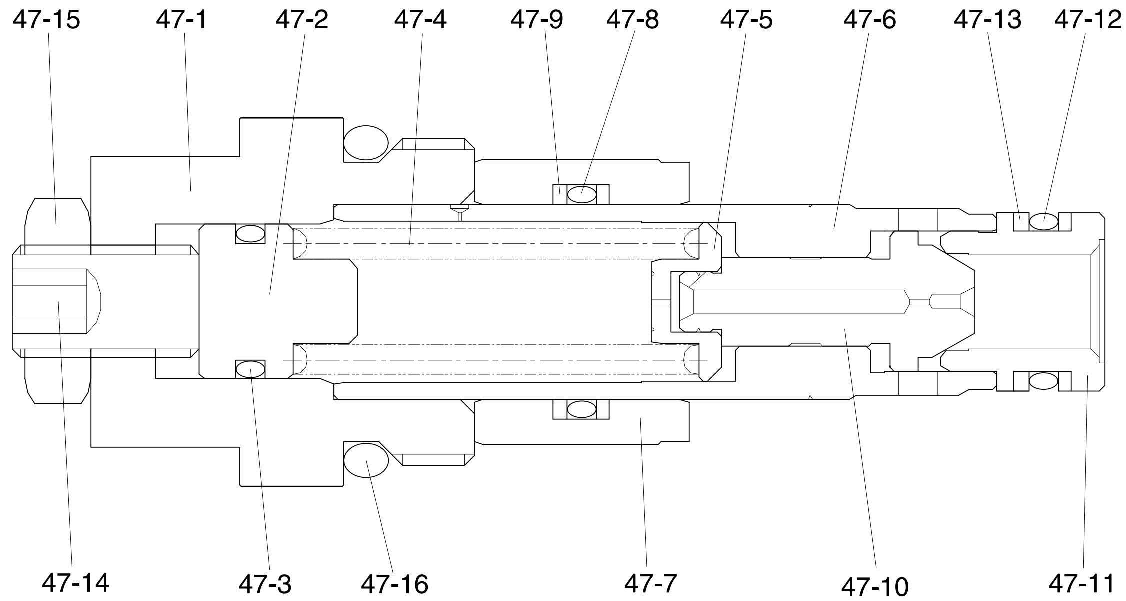
When P_B goes down, the spool (48) moves to the right and the speed become high.



4) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

(1) Structure

This valve is screwed in the motor rear cover (34) and consists of : plug (47-1) that is screwed and fixed in the rear cover (34), poppet (47-10) and supports the poppet seat (47-11), spring (47-4) that is operating relief valve setting pressure and supports the spring seat (47-5), that is inserted in the sleeve (47-6), screw (47-14) that is adjust the spring force, nut (47-15) that fix screw (47-14), piston (47-7) that reduce the shock.



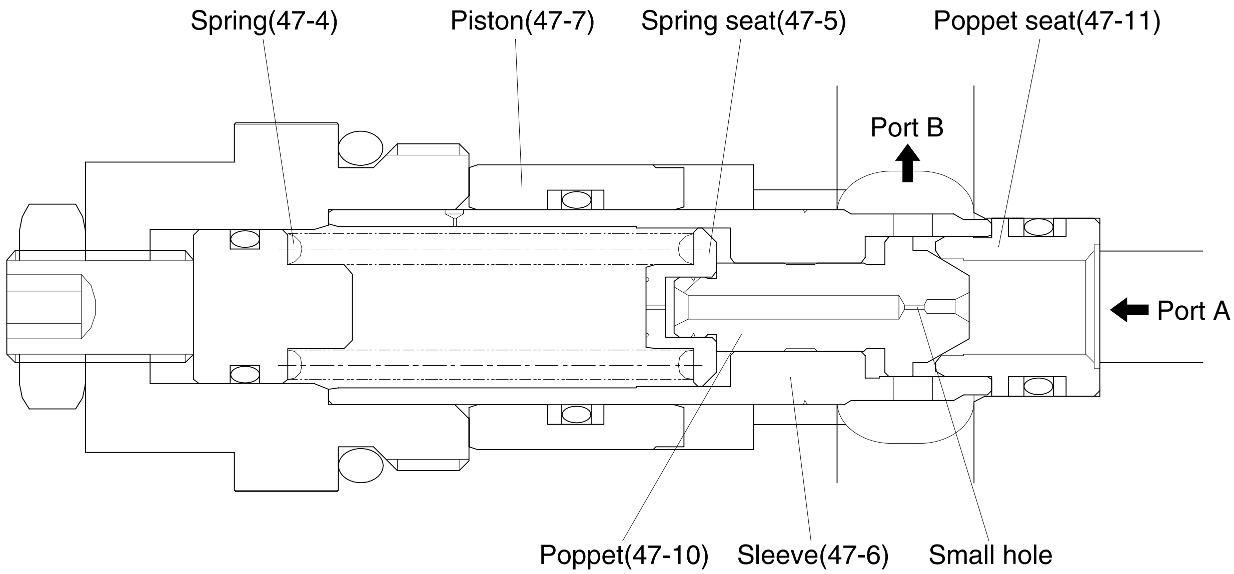
47-1	Plug	47-7	Piston	47-12	O-ring
47-2	Guide	47-8	O-ring	47-13	Back-up ring
47-3	O-ring	47-9	Back-up ring	47-14	Socket screw
47-4	Spring	47-10	Poppet	47-15	Hexagon nut
47-5	Spring seat	47-11	Poppet seat	47-16	O-ring
47-6	Sleeve				

(2) Operation

Two pieces of overload valves are located at cross-over position in the counterbalance circuit of brake valve and have the following functions:

① When hydraulic motor starts, keep the driving pressure below predetermined value and while accelerating, bypasses surplus oil to return line.
② When stopping the motor, keep the brake pressure, that develops on the outlet side of motor, under the predetermined value to stop the inertial force.
③ To accelerate sharply while starting, and to mitigate the braking shock while stopping. For these purposes, the developed pressure is kept comparatively low for a short period, then keep the line pressure as normal value. While the pressure is low, meshing of reduction gears, crawler and sprocket etc. can be smoothly done and the shock are absorbed.

When starting, "A" port pressure of overload valve increases, this pressure is applied to the effective diameter of poppet (47-10) which seats on the poppet seat (47-11) and, at the same time, is delivered, via small hole, to the spring seat (47-5) located inside the sleeve (47-6) and the seat bore pressure increases up to "A" port pressure. The poppet (47-10) opposes to spring (47-4) by the force of the pressure exerted on the area difference between poppet seat's effective diameter and spring seat bore and keep the predetermined pressure.
When hydraulically braking, the piston (47-7) is at the left position by the driving pressure, and when "A" port pressure increases, the pressure is applied also to the piston (47-7) through the small hole in the poppet (47-10) and piston (47-7) moves rightward until it touches the stopper in rear cover. In this while, the poppet (47-10) maintains "A" port pressure at comparatively low against the spring (47-4) force and exhaust oil to "B" port side. After the piston reached to the plug, the valve acts the same as at starting.



5) BRAKE VALVE

(1) Structure

The brake valve portion mainly consists of the following parts:

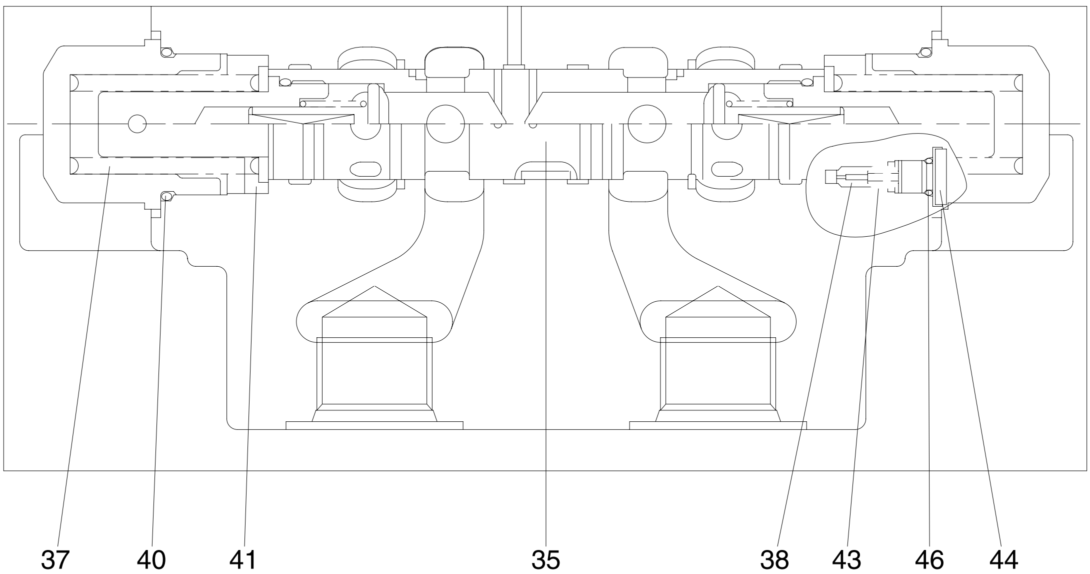
① Spool

By shifting the spool (35), the discharged oil from hydraulic motor is automatically shut off or restricted according to the condition and give the effect of holding, accelerating, stopping and counterbalance operations.

(See page 2-74, (2) Operation)

② Check valve (built in the spool)

This valve is located in the oil supplying passage to hydraulic motor, and at the same time functions to lock oil displacement. Therefore, this valve serves as not only a suction valve but also a holding valve for hydraulic motor.



35	Main spool	40	O-ring	44	O-ring
37	Spring	41	Spring seat	46	Plug
38	Restrictor	43	Restrictor spring		

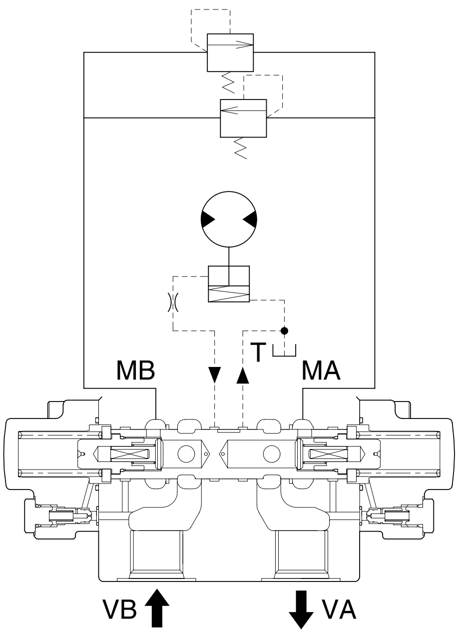
(2) Operation

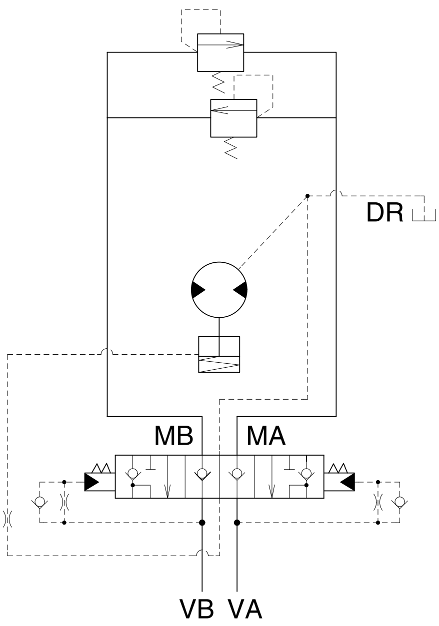
① Holding operation

When the control valve is at neutral position, VA and VB ports are connected to the tank, and the spring (38) located on both spool ends holds the spool (35) at central position.
Therefore, the passages from VA to MA and VB to MB are closed, which result in closing MA and MB ports connected to hydraulic motor.

Since the passage to parking brake is connected to the tank line, the brake cylinder pressure is equal to the tank pressure and the brake is applied by the springs. Thus, the rotation of the motor is mechanically prevented.
If external torque is exerted on the motor shaft, the motor would not rotate as usual by this negative parking brake.

In case the brake should be released for some reason, pressure is built on MA or MB port. But, due to oil leakage inside hydraulic motor or so, high-pressure oil escapes from the closed circuit and motor rotates a bit. So, the cavitation tends to occur in the lower pressure side of the closed circuit. Then, the check valve, built in the spool (35), operates to avoid the cavitation and opens the passage from VA to MA or from VB to MB. Then the oil equivalent to the leakage is sucked from the tank line to the closed circuit.



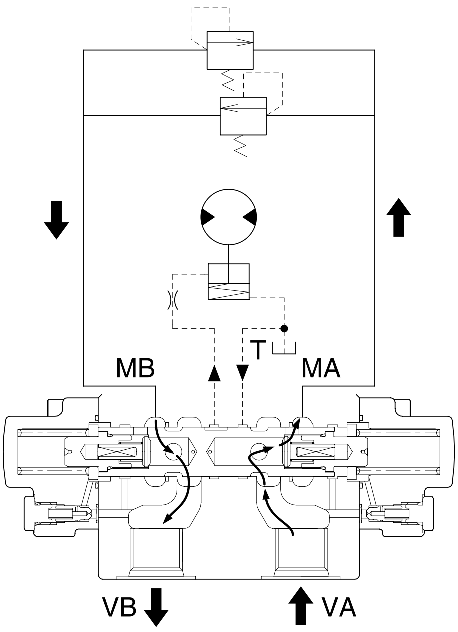


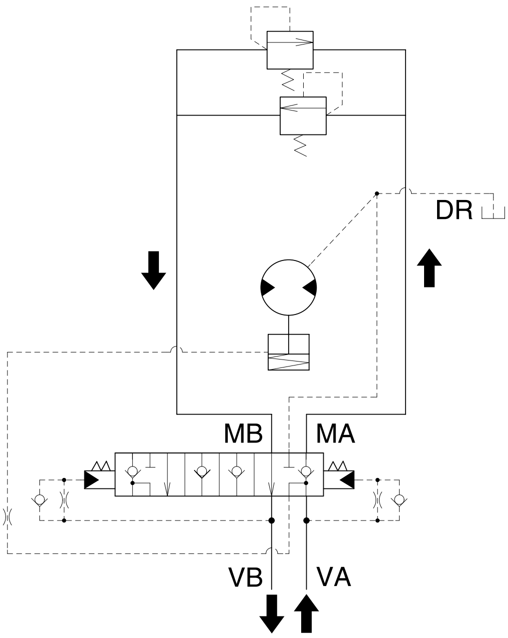
② Accelerating operation

When VA and VB ports are connected respectively to pump and tank by operating the control valve, hydraulic oil from pump is forwarded through VA port to push open the check valve provided inside spool (35), and oil flows to motor via MA port to rotate the motor.

Therefore, the pressure increases and negative brake is released by the pressure supplied from pump. At the same time, the pressure of pilot chamber increases to push and move the spool (35) leftwards, overcoming the spring (38) force. Thus, the return line from MB to VB opens to rotate the motor.

In case inertia load is too big to start rotation, accelerating pressure reaches the set pressure of relief valve and high pressure oil is being relieved while the motor gains the rotational speed.
As the rotational speed goes up, the relieved volume decreases, and finally the motor rotates at a fixed speed.



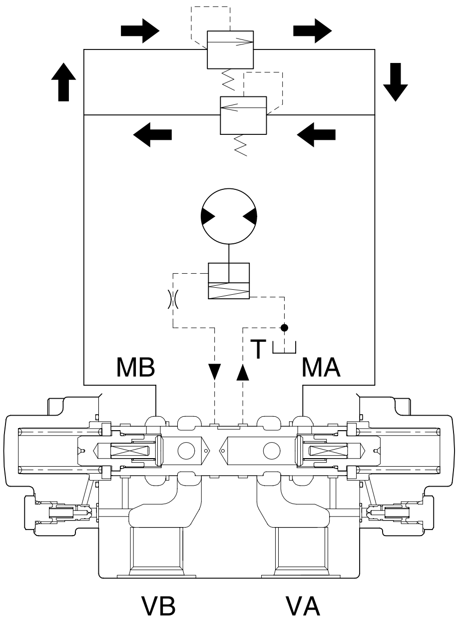


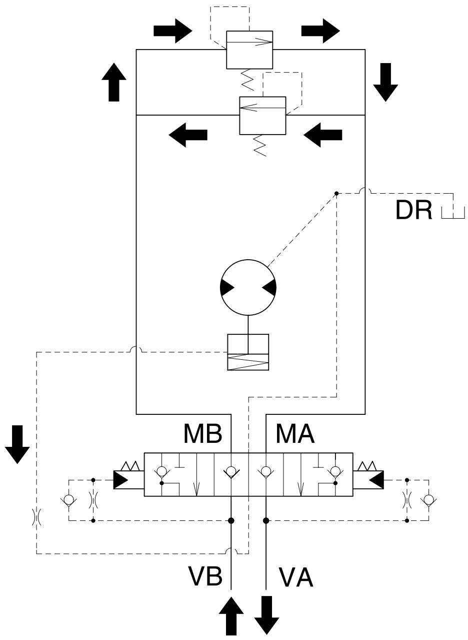
③ Stopping operation

Returning the control valve to neutral position while running the motor, the oil supply is cut off and VA and VB ports are connected to the tank line. Then the pressure of the pilot chamber located on both spool ends become equal, and the spool (35) returns to the neutral position by spring (38) force. Thus, the passage from MA to VA is closed.

Owing to the inertia force of the load, the hydraulic motor tends to continue the rotation. Here, the motor functions as a pump and forwards the oil to MB port but the passage is blocked and MB port pressure increases. Then the relief valve opens to relieve the pressure and rotational speed decelerates and at last the motor stops.

Negative brake release pressure is gradually lowered due to the restrictor and finally the brake works and the motor is mechanically stopped.



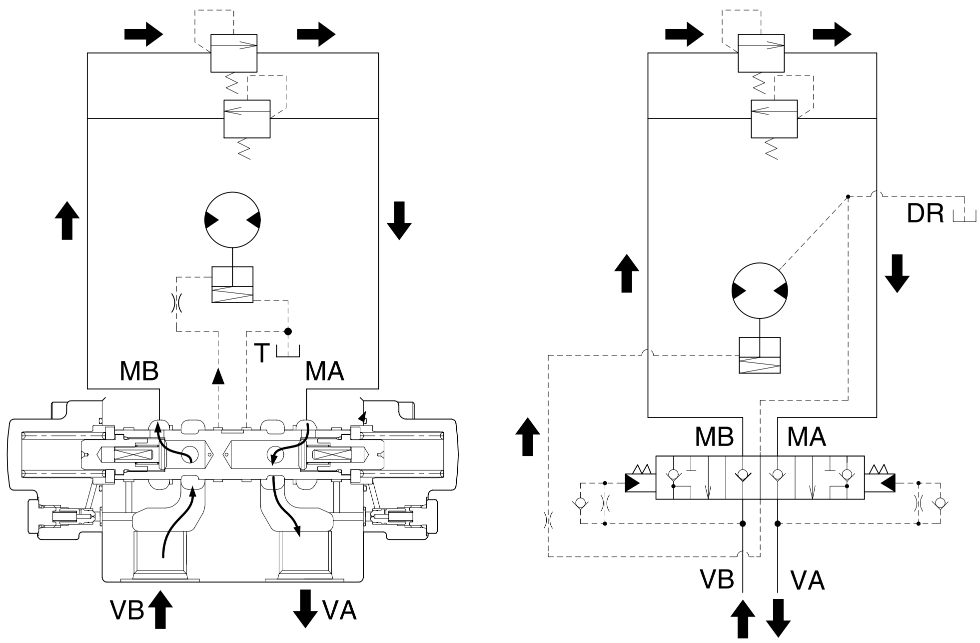


④ **Counterbalance operation**

Counterbalance operation is required to decelerate slowly the hydraulic motor while absorbing inertia force.

In case the hydraulic oil is gradually decreased from pump to VB port, the drive shaft of hydraulic motor tends to rotate faster than that matched to the volume of oil supply.
Consequently, the pilot chamber pressure on MB to VB side decreases and the spring (38) force moves the spool (35) leftwards towards neutral position.
Therefore, the area of passage from MA to VA becomes smaller and the pressure on MA side rises due to increased resistance in the passage and the motor receives hydraulic braking effect.

If the motor rotates slower than that matched to the volume of supplied oil, the pilot chamber pressure on VB port increases, and spool (35) moves rightwards to enlarge the area of passage from MA to VA. Therefore the braking effect becomes smaller and the rotational speed of motor is controlled to correspond to the volume of supplied oil.
In order to give stable counterbalance operation, the restrictors (40) are set in the pilot chamber to damp the spool (35) movement.
The parking brake is released during pressure adjusting action of the spool (35).



6) REDUCTION GEAR

Reduction unit slows down the rotating speed of motor and converts motor torque to strong rotating force.

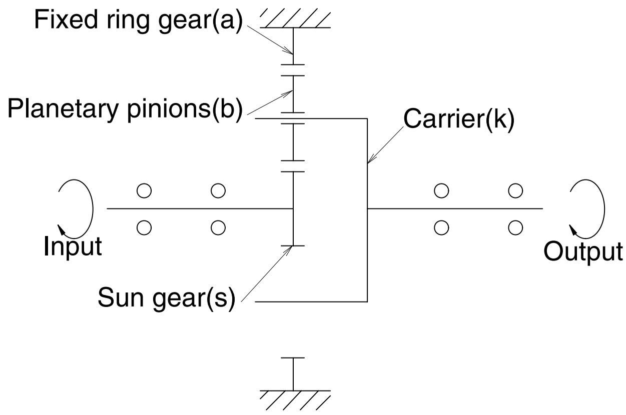
This reduction unit utilizes two stages, planetary reduction system.

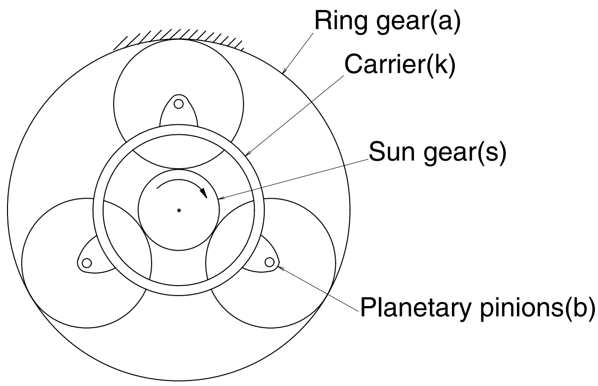
Planetary reduction system consists of sun gear, planetary gears, (planetary) carriers, and ring gear.

When the sun gear (s) is driven through input shaft, planetary pinions (b), rotating on their center, also move, meshing with fixed ring gear (a), around sun gear (s).

This movement is transferred to carrier (k) and deliver the torque.

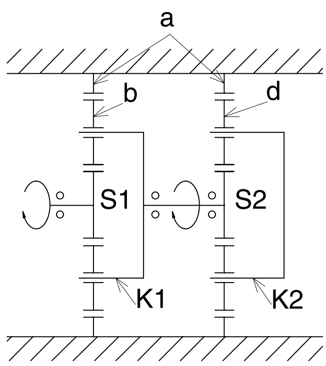
This mechanism is called planetary gear mechanism.





When the sun gear **S1** is driven by input shaft, planetary action occurs among gears **S1**, **a** and **b** and revolution of gear **b** transfers the rotation of carrier **K1** to second sun gear **S2**, and also evokes planetary action between gear **S2**, **a** and **d**.

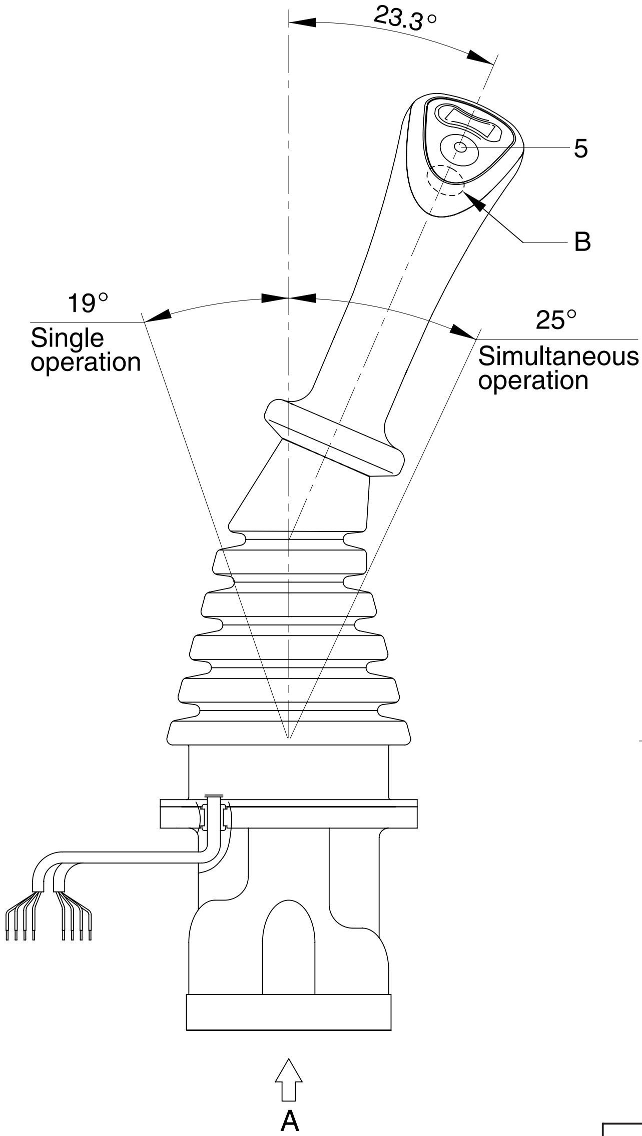
This time, because carrier **K2** is fixed to frame, gear **d** drives ring gear **a** and then ring gear **a** rotates to drive sprocket.



GROUP 5 RCV LEVER

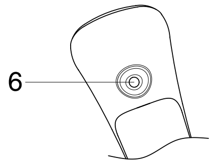
1. STRUCTURE

The casing has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure) and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.

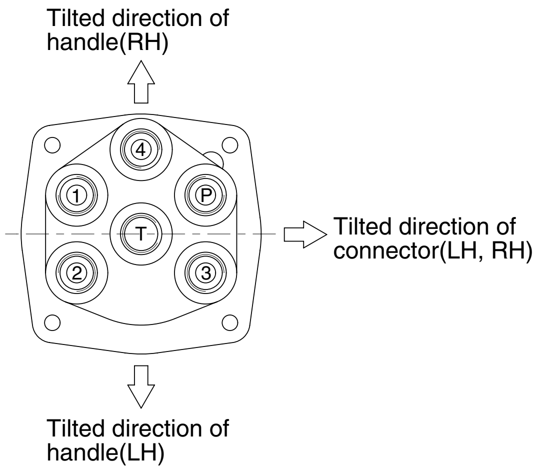


Switches

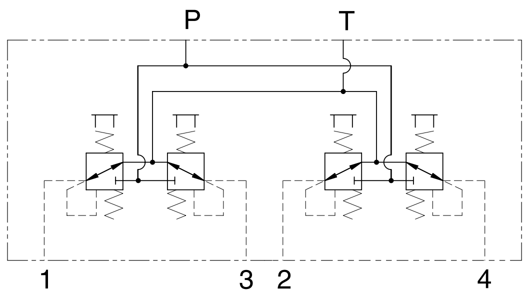
No.	LH	RH
5	One touch decel	Horn
6	Power boost	Breaker



DETAIL B



VIEW A



Hydraulic circuit

Port	LH	RH	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 1/4
T	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	
2	Arm in port	Boom down port	
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm out port	Boom up port	

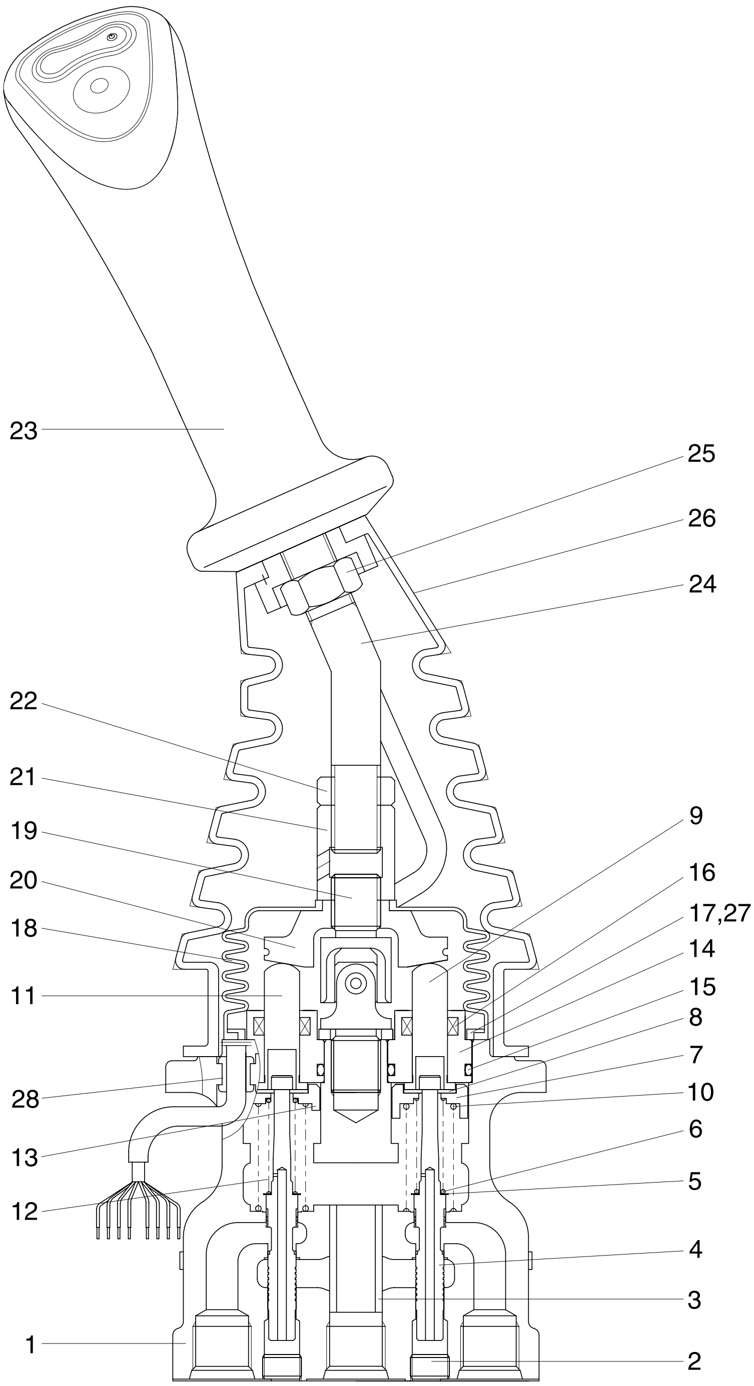
CROSS SECTION

The construction of the pilot valve is shown in the attached cross section drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (4), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (8), spring seat (7, 13) and shim (5). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 20.5 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (9, 11) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting the handle, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.

CROSS SECTION



1	Case	8	Stopper	15	O-ring	22	Lock nut
2	Plug	9	Push rod	16	Rod seal	23	Handle assembly
3	Bushing	10	Spring	17	Plate	24	Handle bar
4	Spool	11	Push rod	18	Boot	25	Nut
5	Shim	12	Spring	19	Joint assembly	26	Boot
6	Spring	13	Spring seat	20	Swash plate	27	Spring pin
7	Spring seat	14	Plug	21	Adjusting nut	28	Bushing

2. FUNCTIONS

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve that controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output ports (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port or tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (4) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output port pressure oil to tank port T.

The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (9,11) is inserted and can slide in the plug (14).

For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the swash plate (20) and adjusting nut (21) are provided the handle (23) that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the universal joint (19) center.

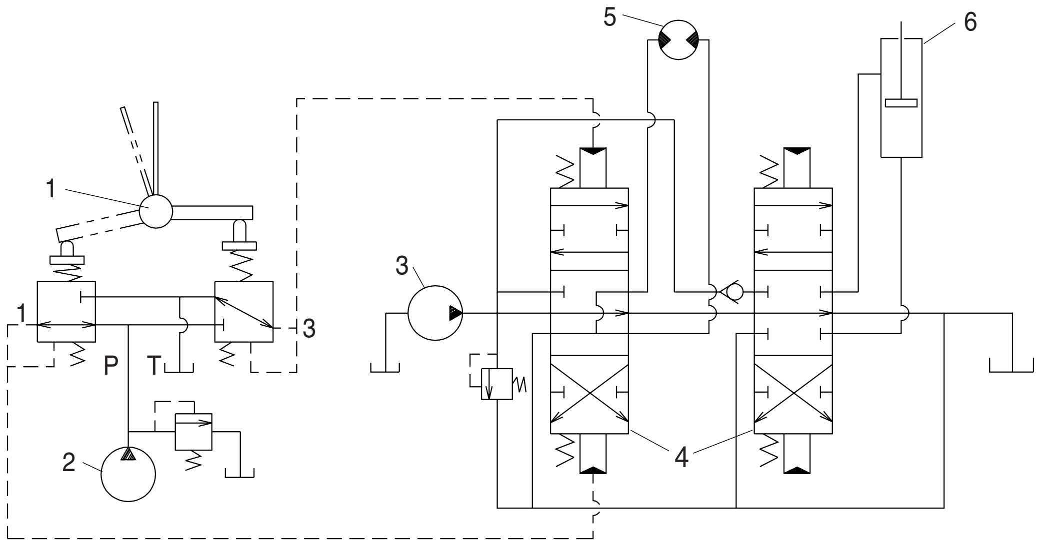
The spring (10) works on the case (1) and spring seat (7, 13) and tries to return the push rod (9,11) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

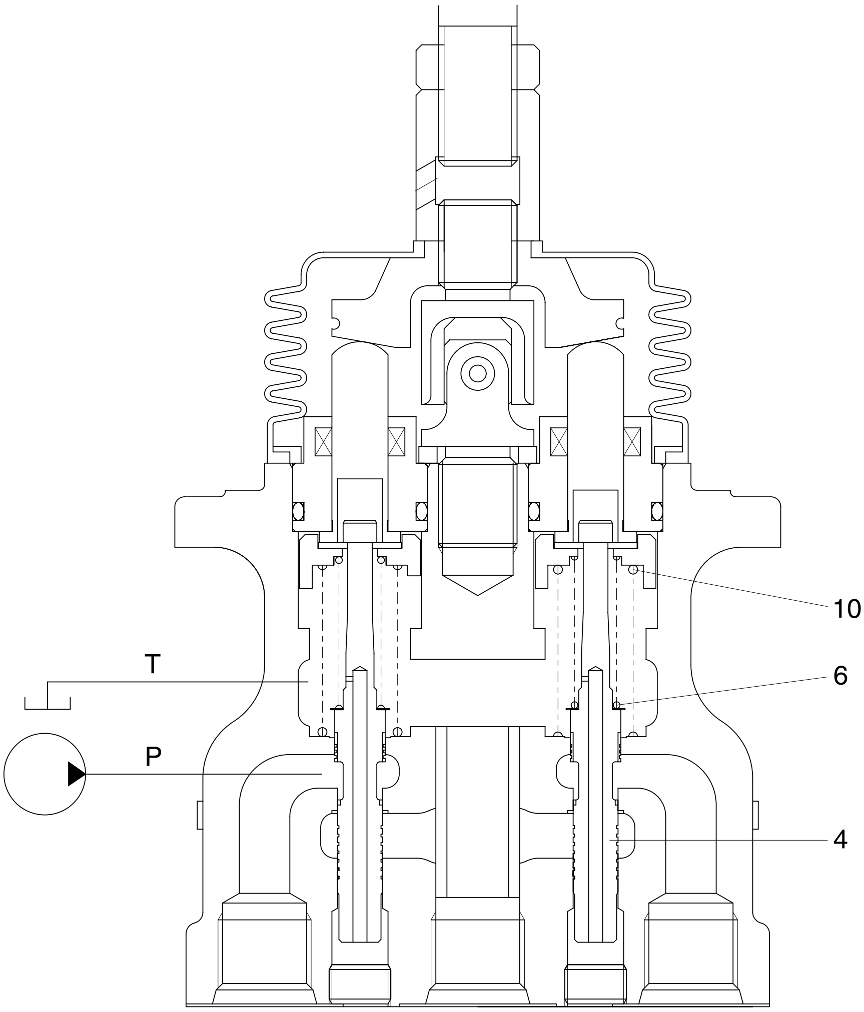
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below and the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



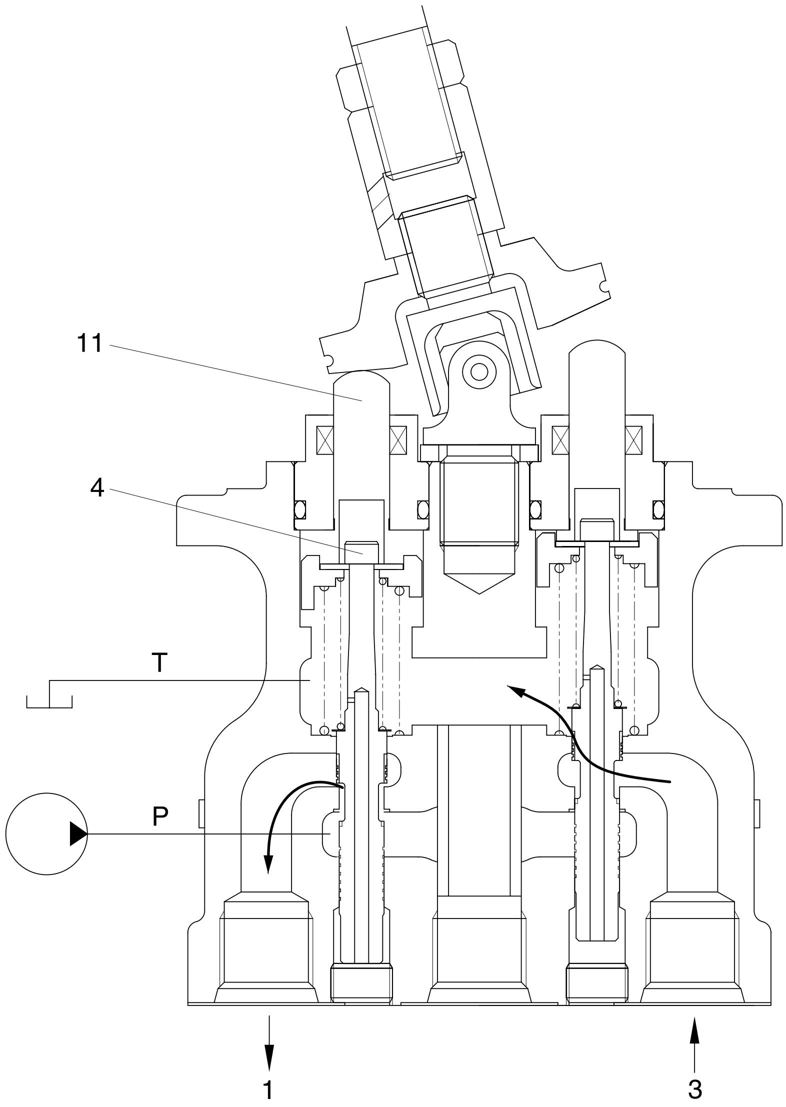
1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

(1) Case where handle is in neutral position



The force of the spring (6) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (4). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (10) to the position of port (1, 3) in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where handle is tilted



When the push rod (11) is stroked, the spool (4) moves downwards.

Then port P is connected with port (1) and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port (1) to generate the pressure.

When the pressure at port (1) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (1). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (1) and port T is disconnected from port 1.

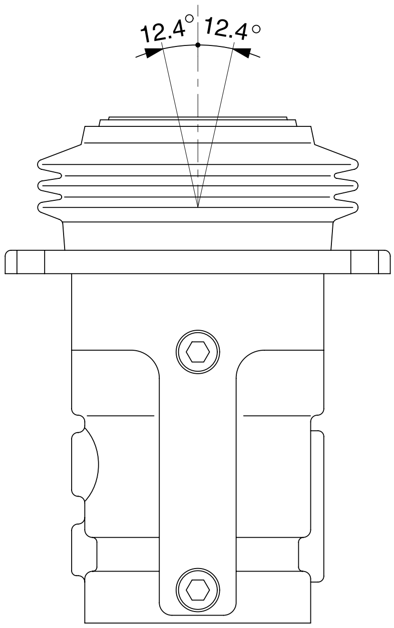
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.

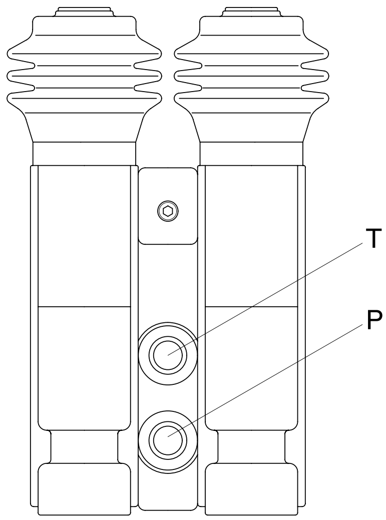
Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with the inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

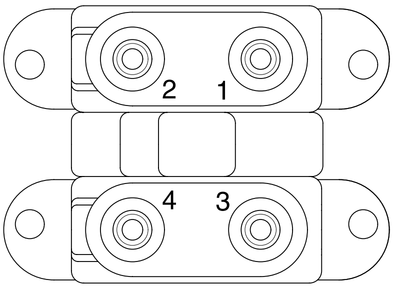
GROUP 6 RCV PEDAL

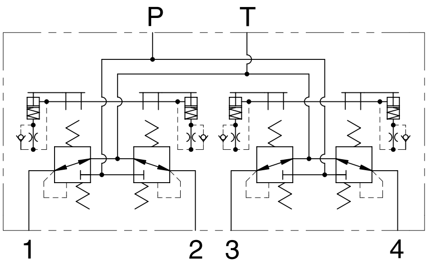
1. STRUCTURE

The casing (spacer) has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure), and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1,2,3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.









Hydraulic circuit

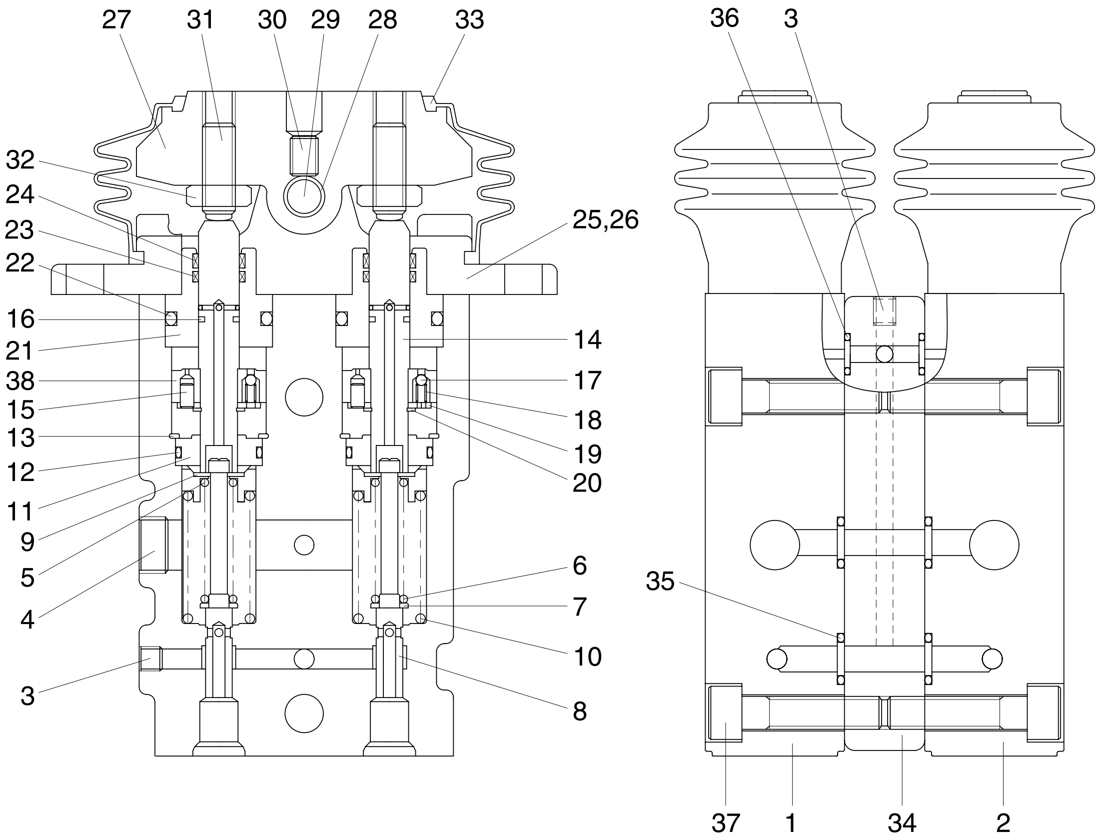
Port	Port	Port size
P	Pilot oil inlet port	PF 1/4
T	Pilot oil return port	
1	Travel (LH, Forward)	
2	Travel (LH, Backward)	
3	Travel (RH, Forward)	
4	Travel (RH, Backward)	

CROSS SECTION

The construction of the RCV pedal is shown in the below drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (8), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (9), and spring seat (7). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 19 kgf/cm^2 (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (14) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting pedal, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.



1	Body(1)	14	Push rod	27	Cam
2	Body(2)	15	Spring pin	28	Bushing
3	Plug	16	Seal	29	Cam shaft
4	Plug	17	Steel ball	30	Set screw
5	Spring seat	18	Spring	31	Set screw
6	Spring	19	Plate	32	Nut
7	Spring seat	20	Snap ring	33	Bellows
8	Spool	21	Plug	34	Space
9	Stopper	22	O-ring	35	O-ring
10	Spring	23	Rod seal	36	O-ring
11	Rod guide	24	Dust seal	37	Socket bolt
12	O-ring	25	Cover	38	Piston
13	Snap ring	26	Socket bolt		

2. FUNCTION

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.
For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

(1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.

(2) Output port (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.

(3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.

(4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port tank port.

(5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

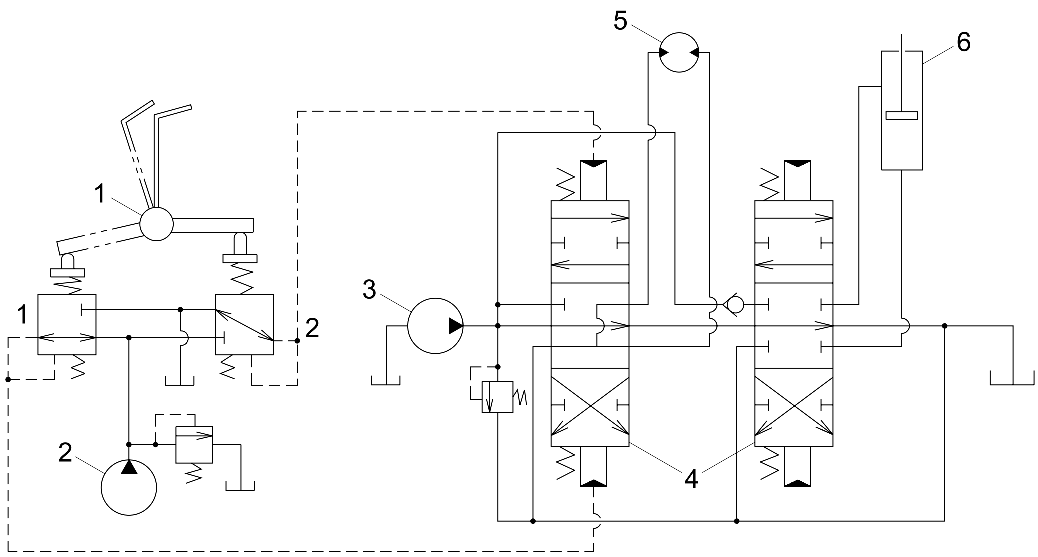
2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (8) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output spool to determine the output pressure.
The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.
The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (14) is inserted and can slide in the plug (21).
For the purpose of changing th displacement of the push rod through the cam (27) and adjusting nut (32) are provided the pedal that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the cam (27) center.
The spring (10) works on the casing (1) and spring seat (7) and tries to return the push rod (14) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.
This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

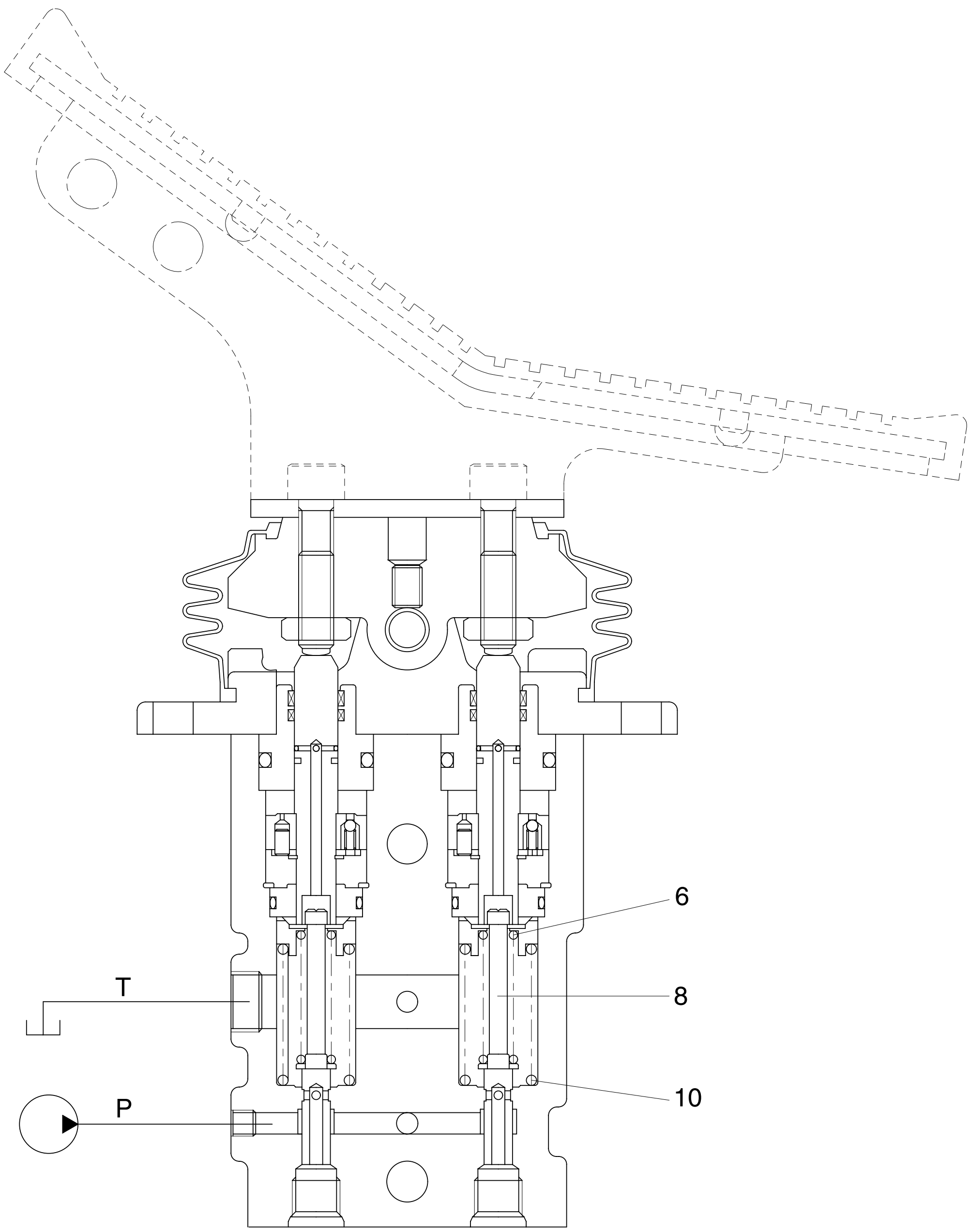
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below ant the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



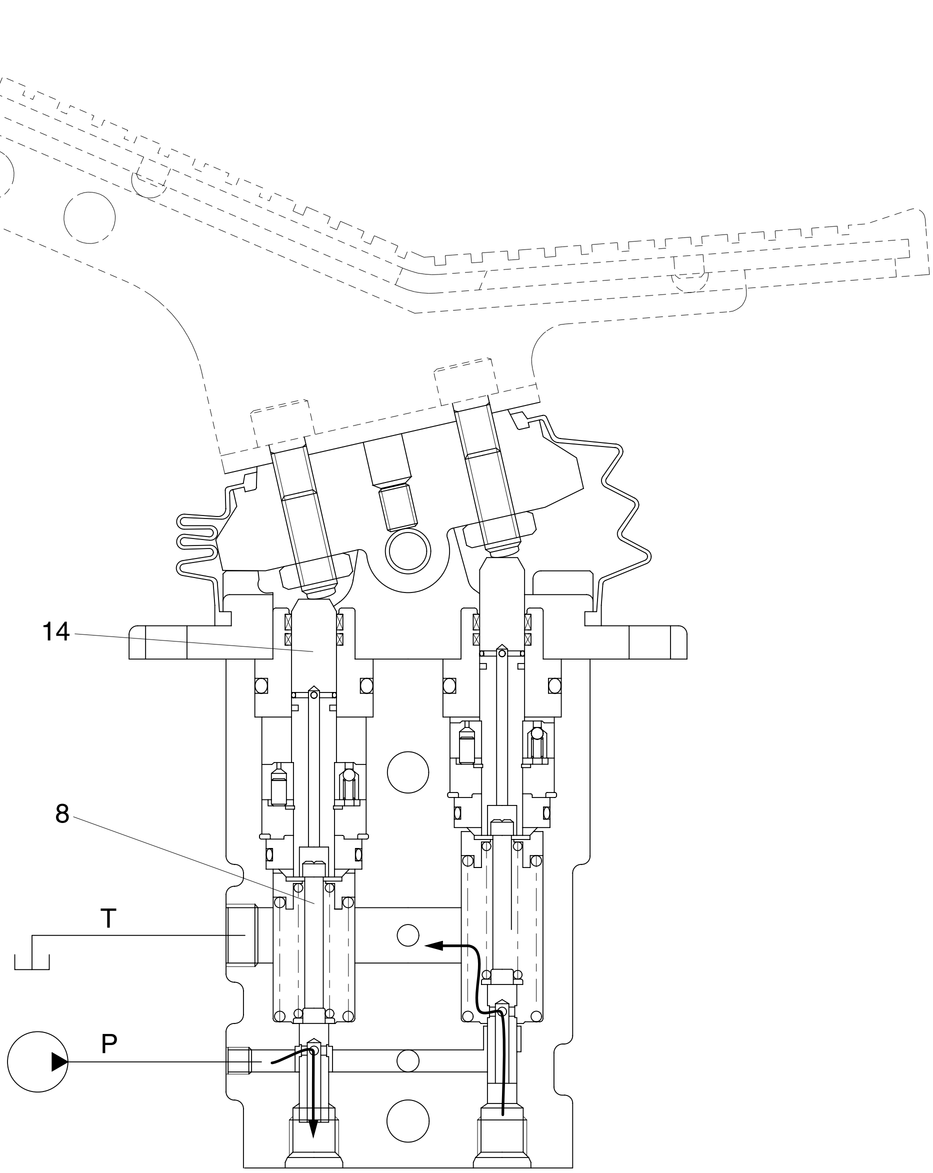
1	Pilot valve	3	Main pump	5	Hydraulic motor
2	Pilot pump	4	Main control valve	6	Hydraulic cylinder

(1) Case where pedal is in neutral position



The force of the spring (6) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (8). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (10) to the position of port 2 in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where pedal is tilted



When the push rod (14) is stroked, the spool (8) moves downwards.

Then port P is connected with port 1, and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port 1 to generate the pressure.

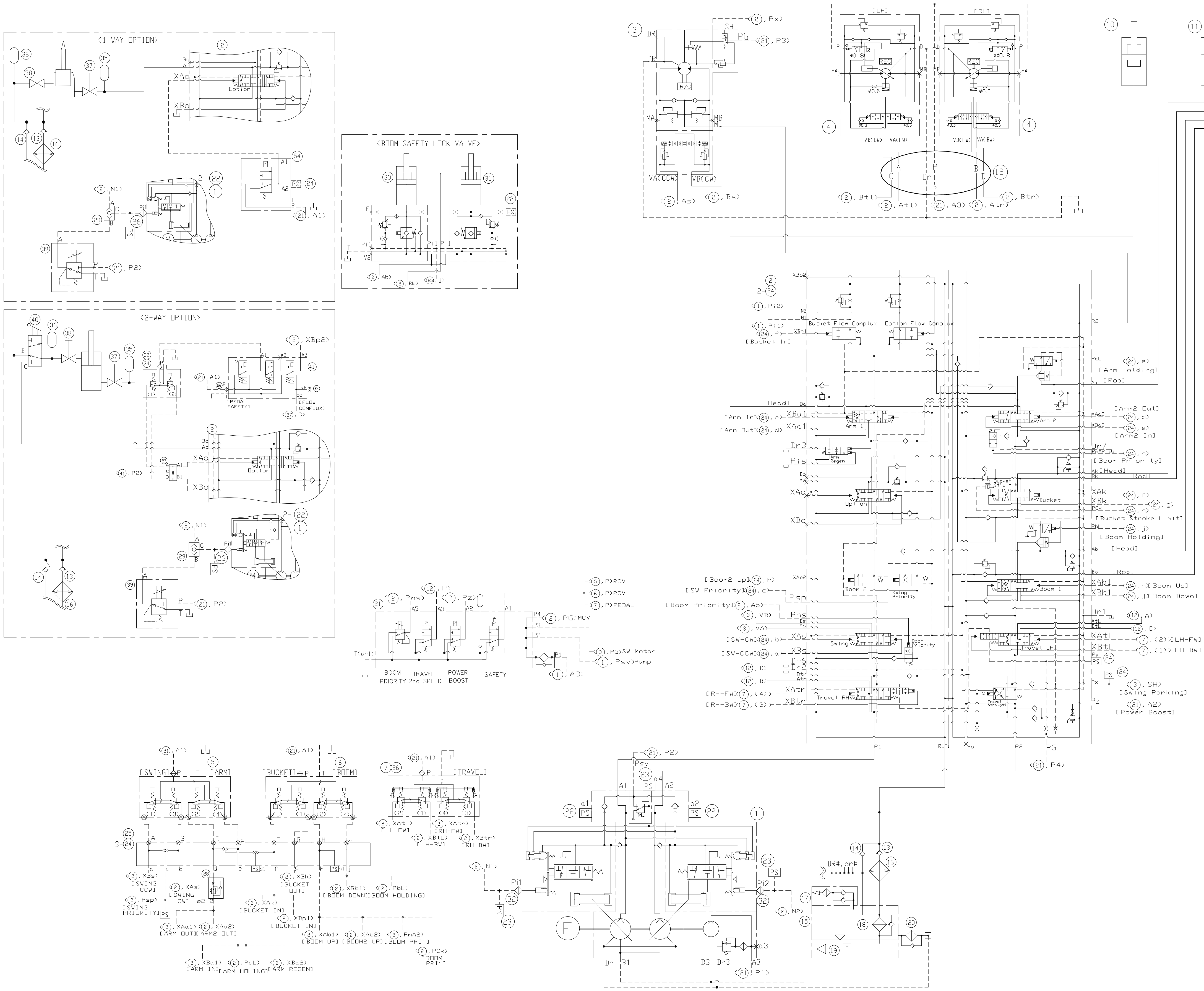
When the pressure at port 1 increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port 1 increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port 1 and port T is connected with port 1. If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port 1 and port T is disconnected from port 1.

In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.

Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

GROUP 1 HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

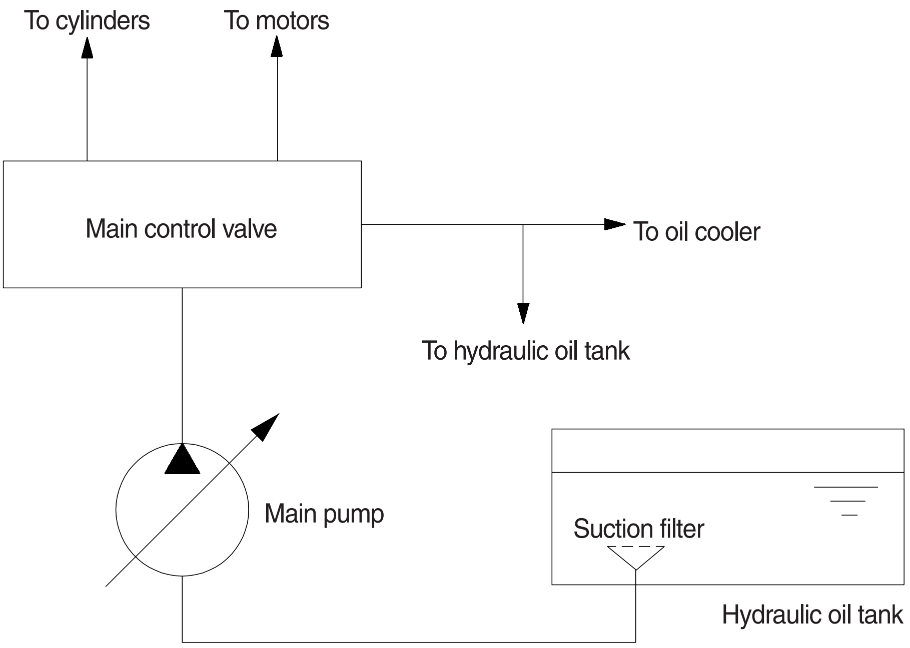


	ITEM	PARTS NO	PARTS NAME	QTY	
OPTION	39	31K6-25510	EPPR VALVE	1	2-Way
	40	31EM-91620	JOINT-3 WAY	1	
	41	31Q6-20050	3-SOL CAT'V/V	1	
	42	31Q6-20150	P. SELECTOR V/V	1	
	29	31N6-30130	TEE SHUTLE	1	
	38	31Q8-92560	STOP V/V(R/H)	1	
	37	31Q8-92550	STOP V/V(L/H)	1	
	36	31Q8-91680	ACCUMULATOR	1	
	35	31Q8-91670	ACCUMULATOR	1	
	34	31Q6-20300	PEDAL-2WAY OPT	1	
	27	31Q6-90460	5-SHUTTLE ASS'Y	1	
	32	31N6-25060	LAST G. FILTER	1	
	24	31Q4-40830	PRESS. SENSOR	1	50k
	29	31N6-30130	TEE SHUTLE	1	1-Way
	54	31Q6-91220	SOLENOID V/V	1	
	39	31K6-25510	EPPR VALVE	1	
	38	31Q8-92560	STOP V/V(R/H)	1	
	37	31Q8-92550	STOP V/V(L/H)	1	
	36	31Q8-91680	ACCUMULATOR	1	
	35	31Q8-91670	ACCUMULATOR	1	
	24	31Q4-40830	PRESS. SENSOR	1	50k
	31	31K9-52121E	BOOM CYL ASSY V/V(R/H)	1	BOOM Safety Lock V/V
	30	31K9-52111E	BOOM CYL ASSY V/V(L/H)	1	
	22	31Q4-40800	PRESS. SENSOR	1	500k
STANDARD					
	28	31ND-22700	SHOCKLESS V/V	1	
	32	31N6-25060	LAST G. FILTER	2	
	26	31N6-25070	LAST G. FILTER	1	
	25	31Q9-20180	BLOCK-TERMINAL	1	
	24	31Q4-40830	PRESS. SENSOR	5	50k
	23	31Q4-40820	PRESS. SENSOR	3	100k
	22	31Q4-40800	PRESS. SENSOR	2	500k
	21	31K6-23230	ACCUMULATOR	1	
			4-CARTR' V/V	1	
			PILOT FILTER	1	
	20	31K6-01310	DRAIN FILTER	1	
	19	31Q6-01130	STRAINER ASSY	1	
	18	31RF-10350	ELEMENT-RETURN	1	
		E131-0256	BYPASS V/V	1	
	17	32QA-00040	AIR BREATHER	1	
	16	11Q9-40539	OIL COOLER	1	
	15	3BQ8-03120	HYD. TANK ASSY	1	
	14	31ER-11121	CHECK V/V	1	3K
	13	31Q6-11110	CHECK V/V RETURN	1	1.5K
	12	31Q6-40042	TURNING JOINT	1	
	11	31Q9-60111CGG	BUCKET CYL	1	
	10	31Q9-50130CGG	ARM CYL	1	
	9	36Q9-50120GG	BOOM CYL(R/H)	1	
	8	36Q9-50110GG	BOOM CYL(L/H)	1	
	7	31Q6-20102	RCV PEDAL	1	EATON
	6	31Q8-20065	RCV LEVER(R/H)	1	YONGDONG
	5	31Q8-20055	RCV LEVER(L/H)	1	
	4	38K8-40101	TRAVEL UNIT	2	
	3	38K9-10150	SWING UNIT	1	
	2	31Q9-17113	M.C.V	1	KHI
	1	31QA-10050	MAIN PUMP	1	KHI

GROUP 2 MAIN CIRCUIT

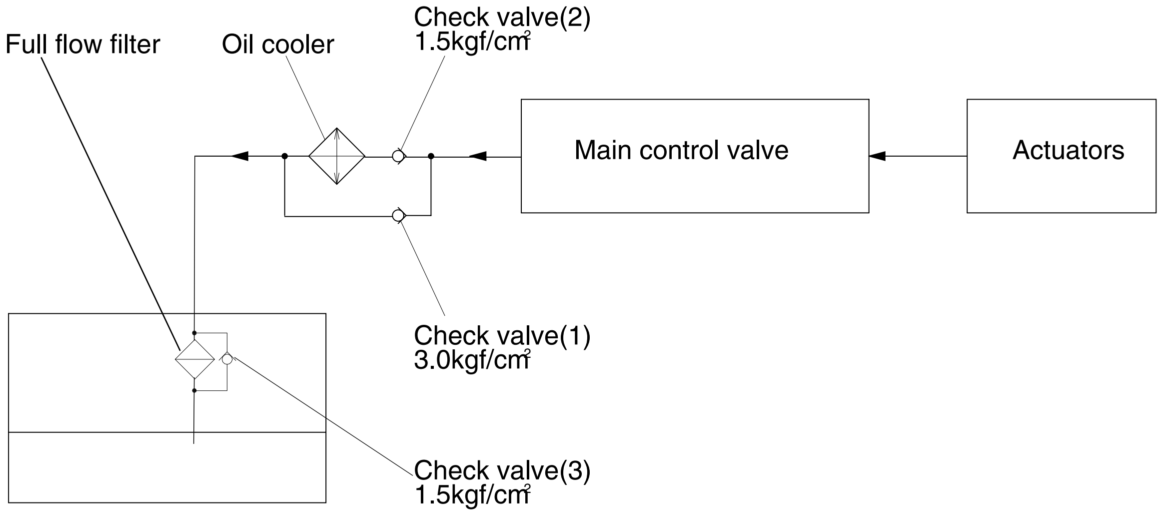
The main hydraulic circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit, return circuit and drain circuit.
The hydraulic system consists of one main pump, one control valve, one swing motor, four cylinders and two travel motors.
The swash plate type variable displacement tandem axial piston pump is used as the main pump and is driven by the engine at ratio 1.0 of engine speed.

1. SUCTION AND DELIVERY CIRCUIT



The pumps receive oil from the hydraulic tank through a suction filter. The discharged oil from the pump flows into the control valve and goes out the tank ports.
The oil discharged from the main pump flows to the actuators through the control valve.
The control valve controls the hydraulic functions.
The return oil from the actuators flows to the hydraulic tank through the control valve and the oil cooler.

2. RETURN CIRCUIT



All oil from each actuator returns to the hydraulic tank through the control valve.

The bypass check valves are provided in the return circuit.

The setting pressure of bypass check valves are 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi) and 3.0 kgf/cm^2 (43psi). Usually, oil returns to the hydraulic tank from the left side of control valve through oil cooler.

When oil temperature is low, viscosity becomes higher and flow resistance increases when passing through the oil cooler. The oil pressure exceeds 3.0 kgf/cm^2 (43psi), the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank, resulting in the oil temperature being raised quickly at an appropriate level.

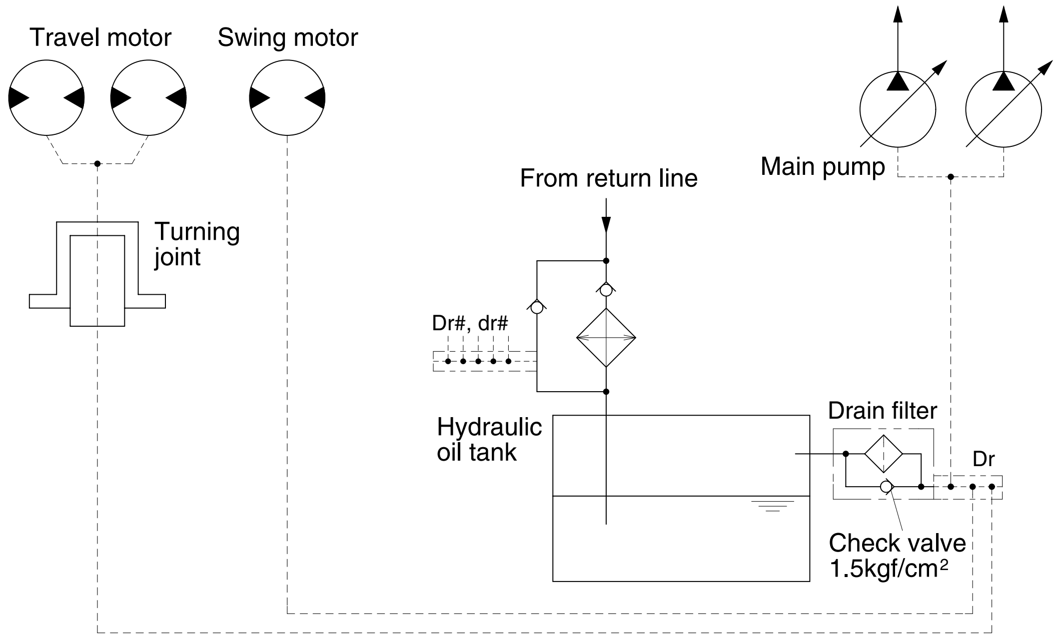
When the oil cooler is clogged, the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank through bypass check valve (1).

The full-flow filter and bypass relief valve are provided in the hydraulic tank.

The oil from right and left side of control valve is combined and filtered by the return filter. A bypass relief valve is provided in the full-flow filter.

When the filter element is clogged, the bypass relief valve opens at 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi) differential pressure.

3. DRAIN CIRCUIT



Besides internal leaks from the motors and main pump, the oil for lubrication circulates. These oil have to be fed to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter and full flow filter in the hydraulic tank. When the drain oil pressure exceed 1.5 kgf/cm^2 (21psi), the oil returns to the hydraulic tank directly.

1) TRAVEL MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the right and left travel motors comes out of the drain ports provided in the respective motor casing and join with each other. These oils pass through the turning joint and return to the hydraulic tank after being filtered by full flow filter in the hydranlic tank.

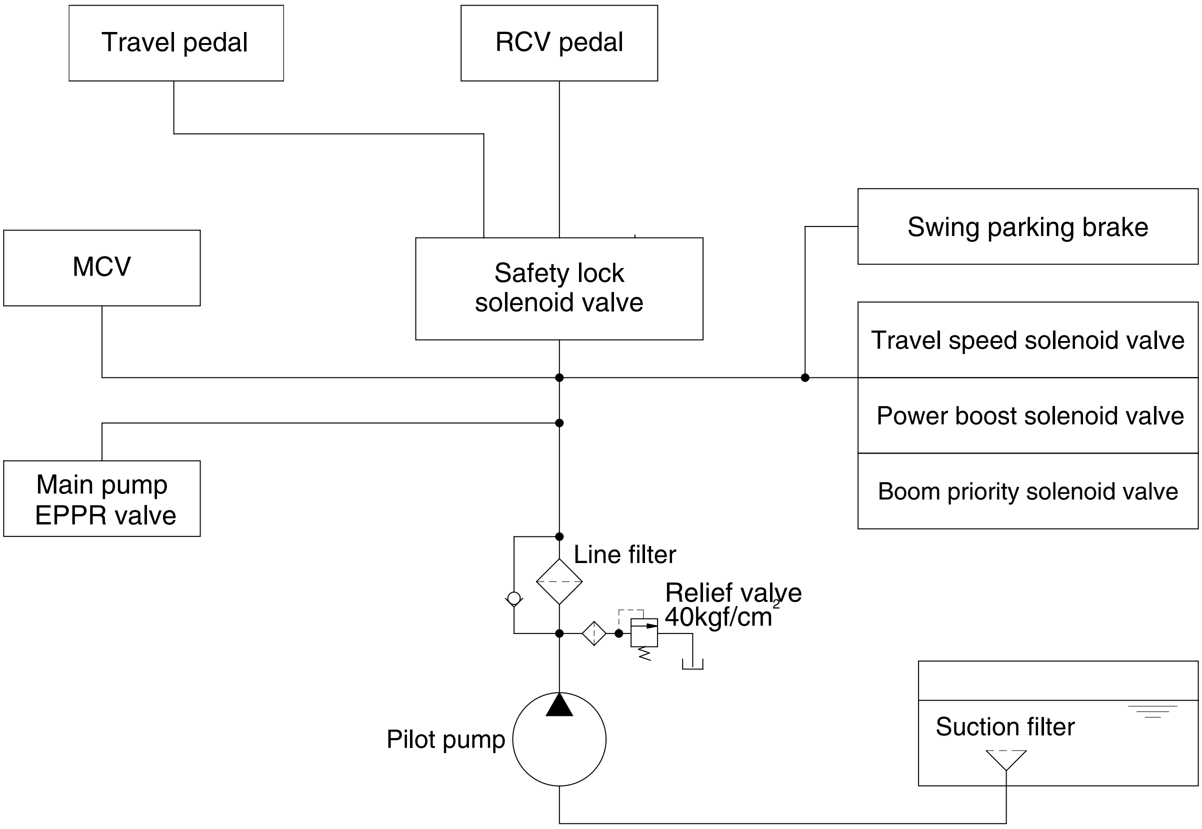
2) SWING MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the swing motor come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through a spin filter.

3) MAIN PUMP DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from main pump come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter.

GROUP 3 PILOT CIRCUIT

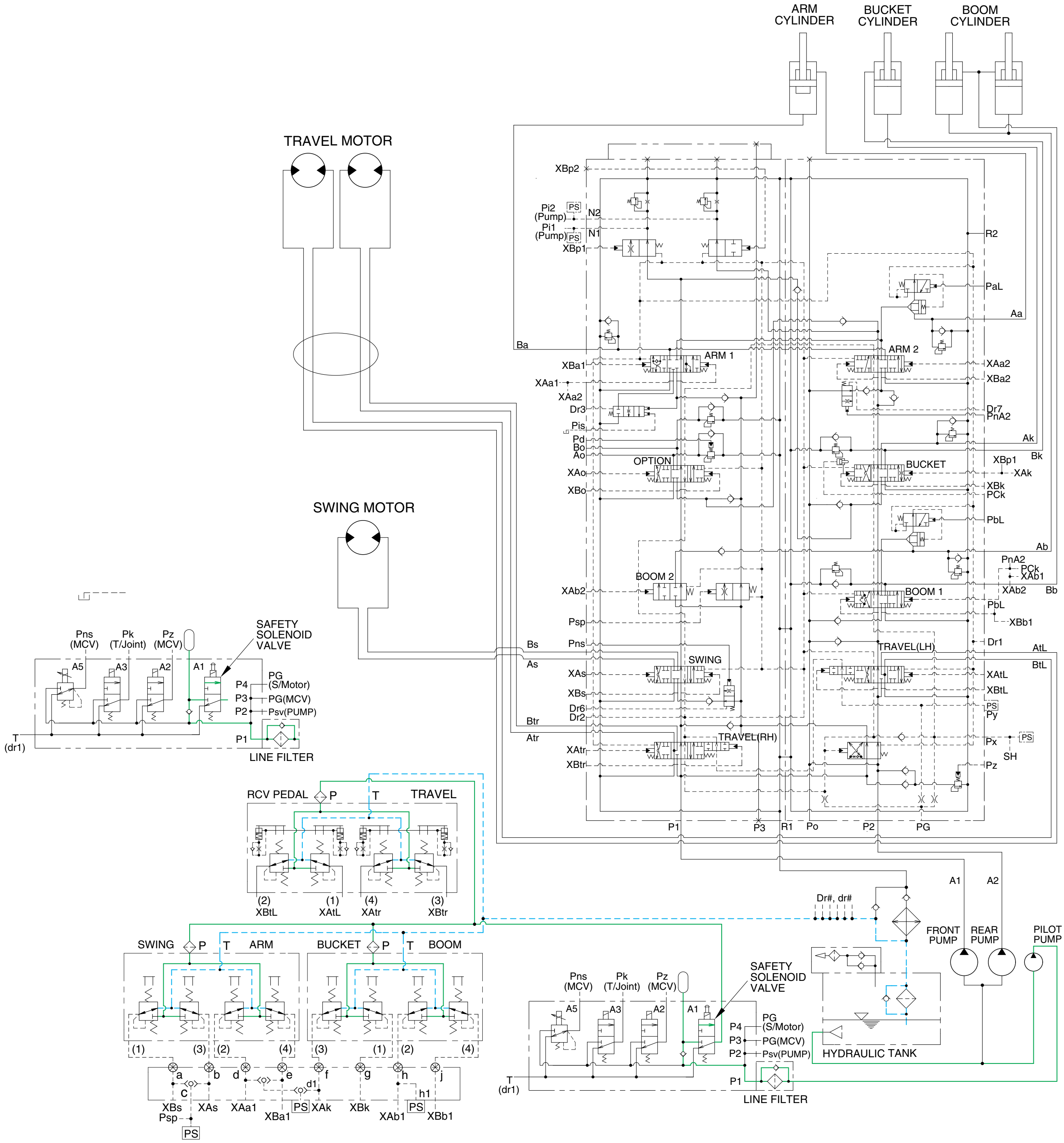


The pilot circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit and return circuit.

The pilot pump is provided with relief valve, receives the oil from the hydraulic tank through the suction filter.

The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the remote control valve through line filter, EPPR valve, solenoid valve assemblies, swing parking brake, main control valve and safety lock solenoid valve.

1. SUCTION, DELIVERY AND RETURN CIRCUIT

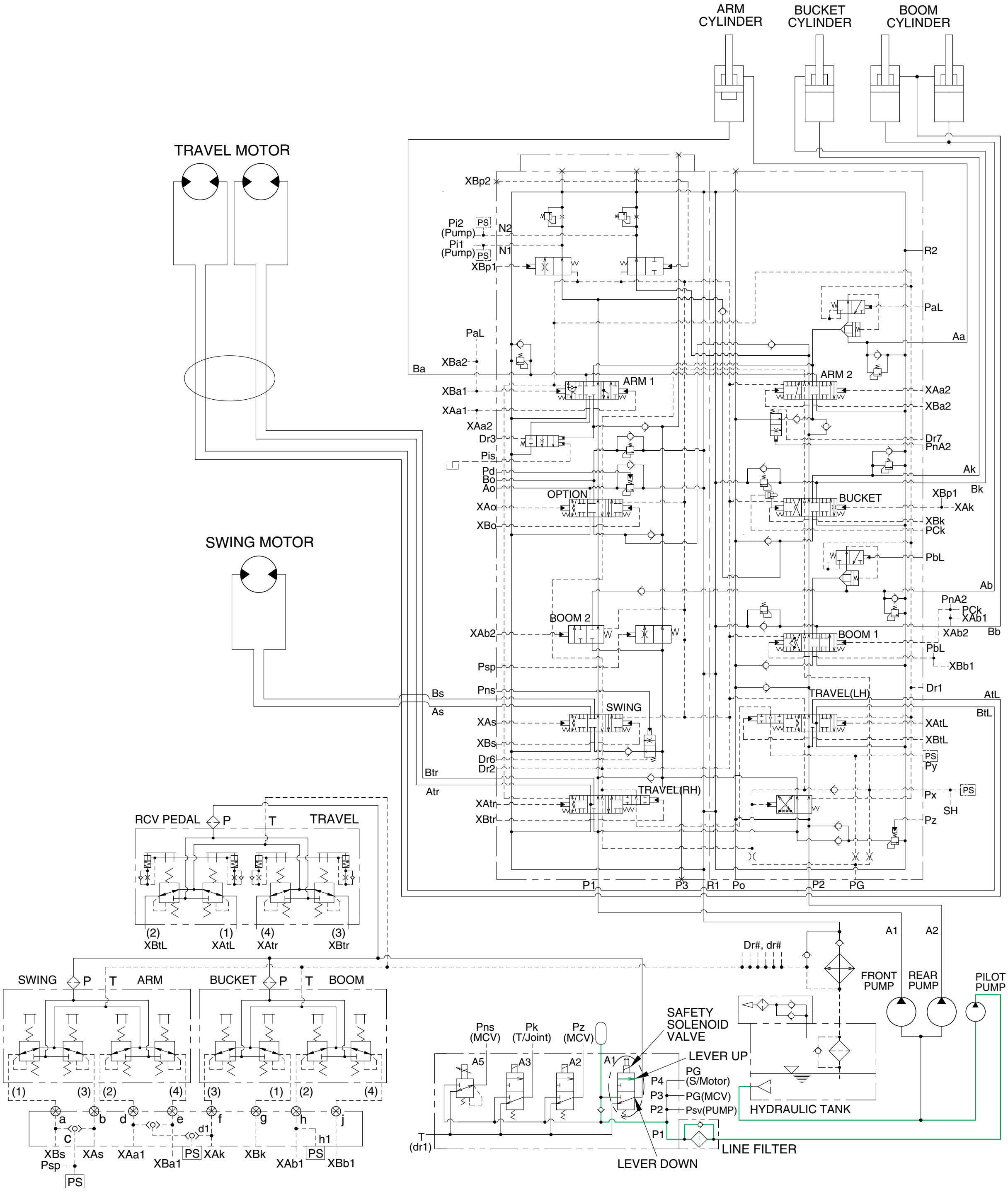


The pilot pump receive oil from the hydraulic tank. The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the safety solenoid valve through the line filter. The oil is filtered by the line filter. The pilot relief valve is provided in the pilot pump for limiting the pilot circuit pressure.

The oil filtered by line filter flows remote control valve through safety solenoid valve.

The return oil flow into the hydraulic tank.

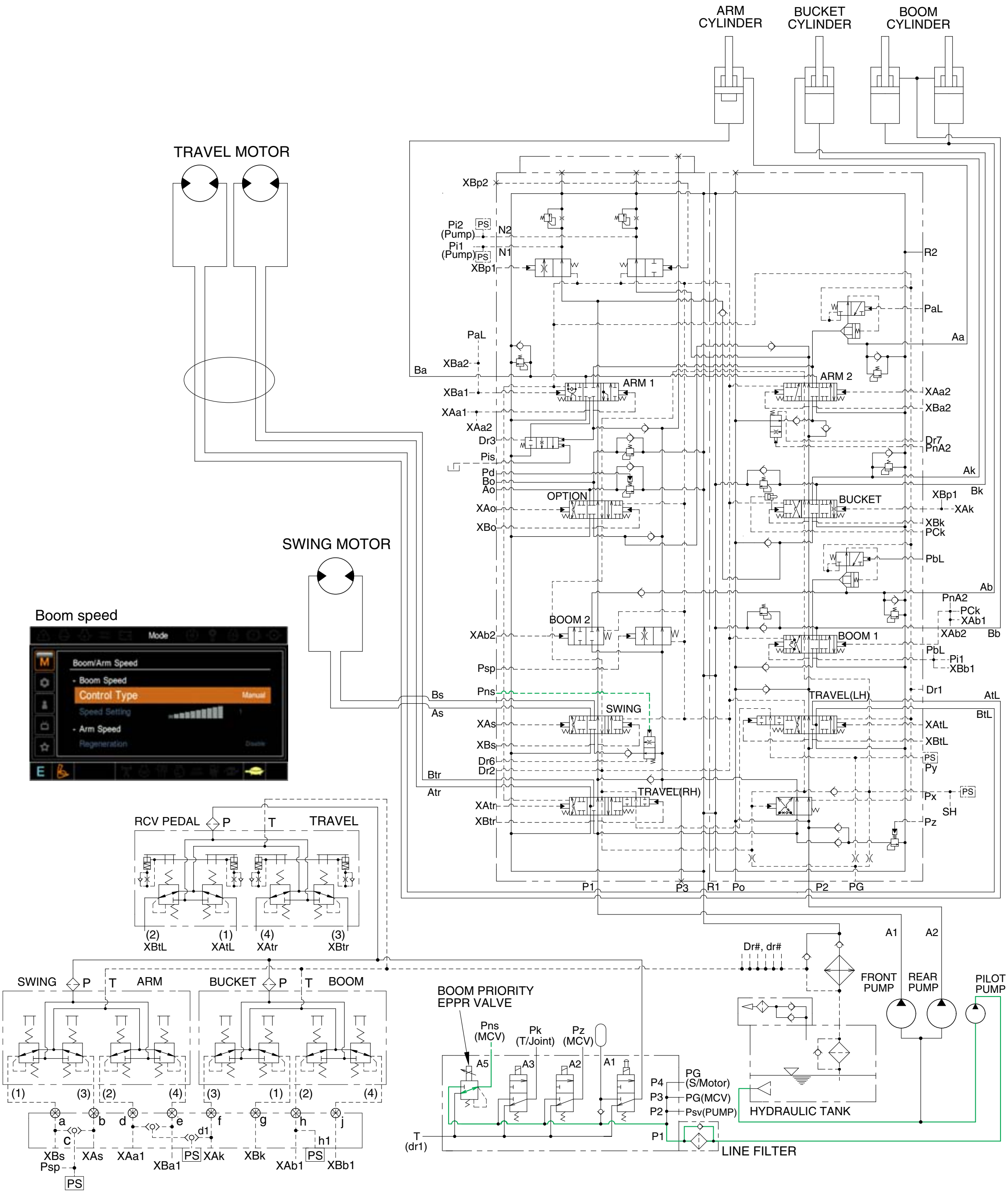
2. SAFETY VALVE (SAFETY LEVER)



When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved upward, oil flows into the remote control valve through solenoid valve and line filter.

When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved downward, oil does not flows into the remote control valve, because of blocked port.

3. BOOM PRIORITY SYSTEM



When carrying out the combined operation of swing and boom up, the boom up operating speed is lowered then normal operation.

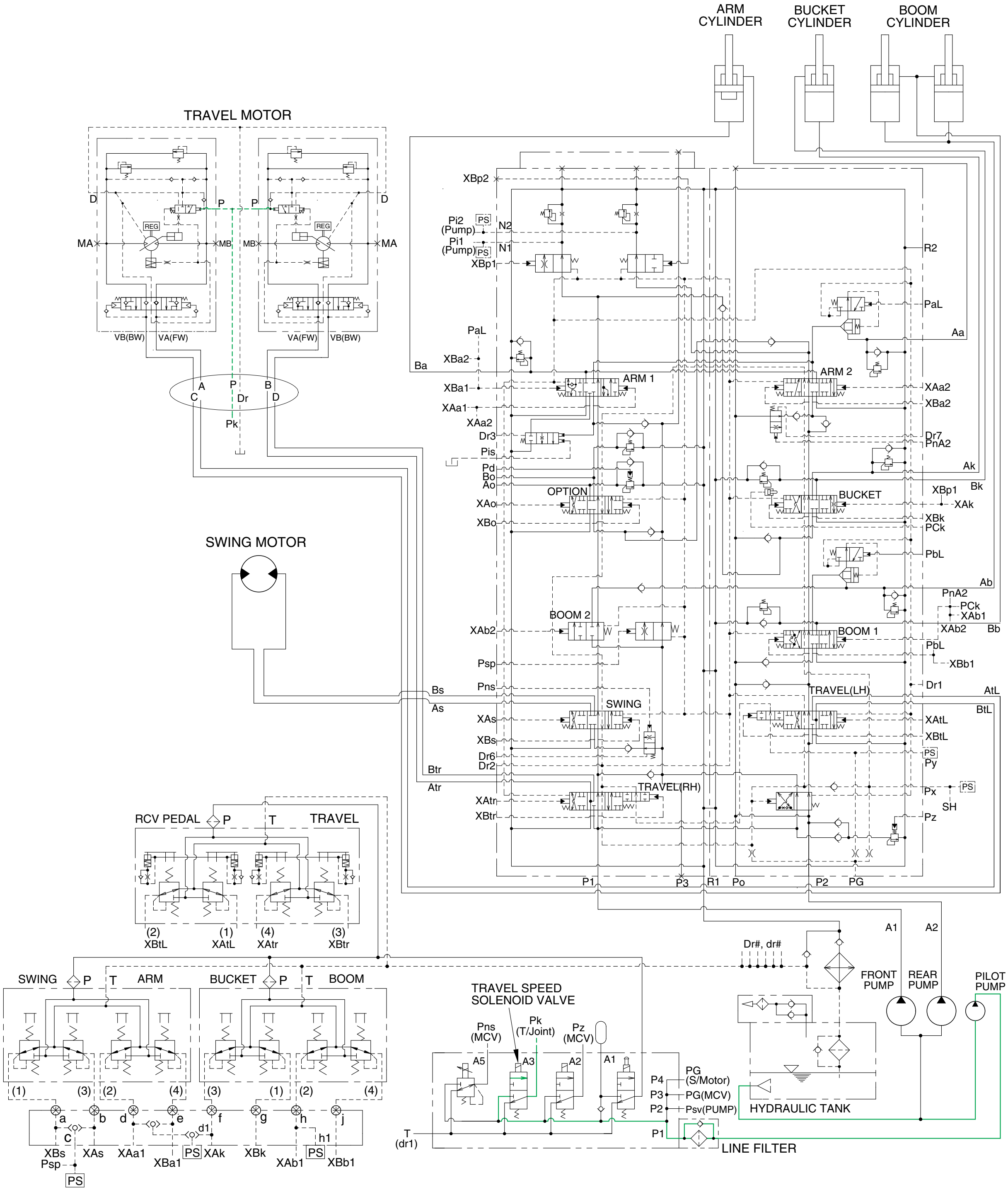
To increase working efficiency, swing speed reducing system is used.

The pilot oil from pilot pump flow into Pns port in main control valve through boom priority EPPR valve. Pns oil pressure moves swing reducing spool to lower position and oil flow rate to the swing motor decreased.

Then, the boom up speed is increased. This is called the boom priority system.

The boom up speed can be adjusted by the cluster. Refer to page 3-12 of the operator's manual.

4. TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



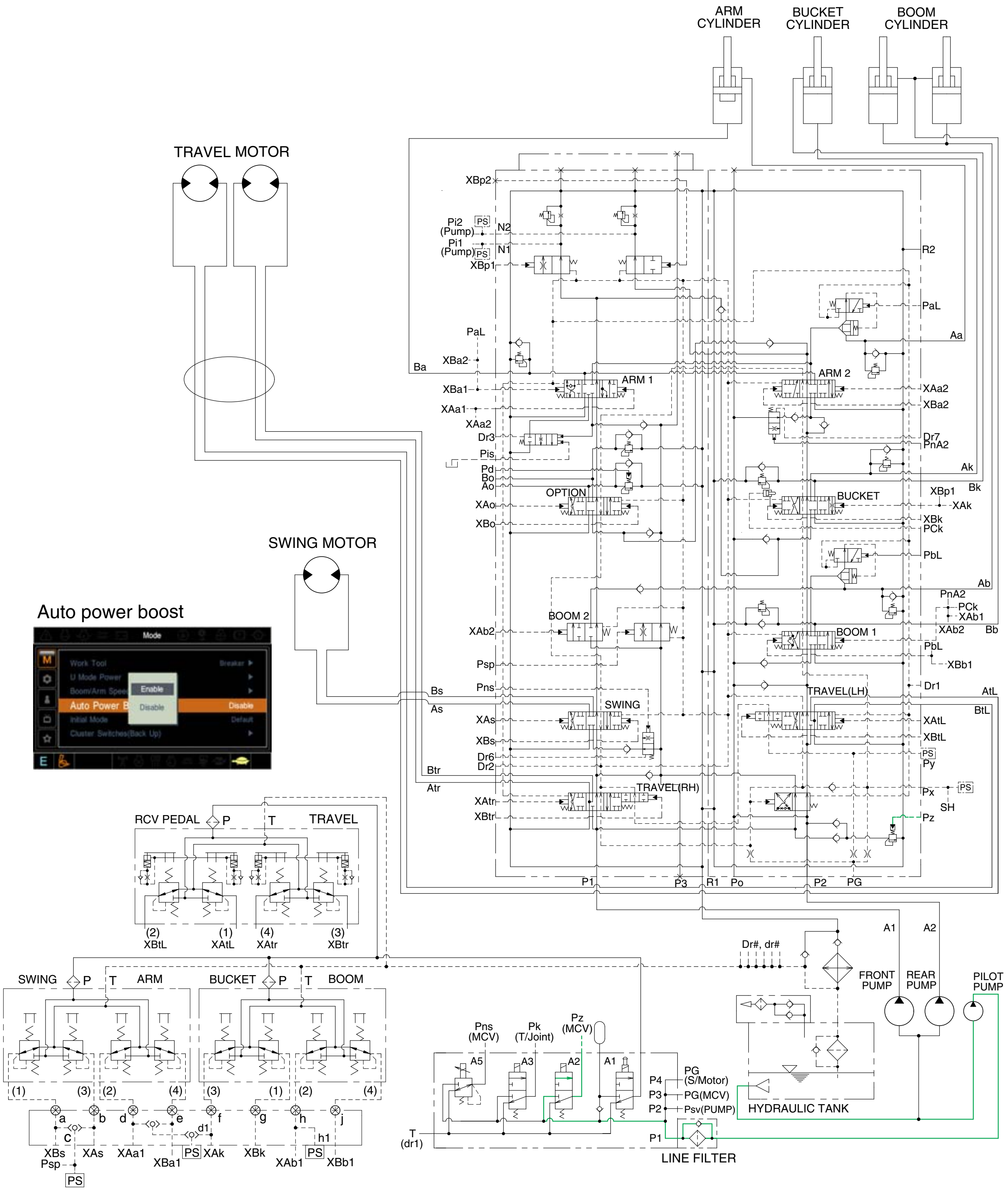
When the travel speed switch is pushed, the travel speed solenoid valve is actuated and the discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the **P** port of pilot valve in the travel motors.

As a result, the control piston is pushed by the main oil flow, thus the displacement is minimized.

When the travel speed switch is pushed once more, the travel speed solenoid valve is return to original position by the force of spring, the hydraulic oil of P port returns to the hydraulic tank.

As a result, the control piston is returned by the main oil flow, thus the displacement is maximized.

5. MAIN RELIEF PRESSURE CHANGE CIRCUIT

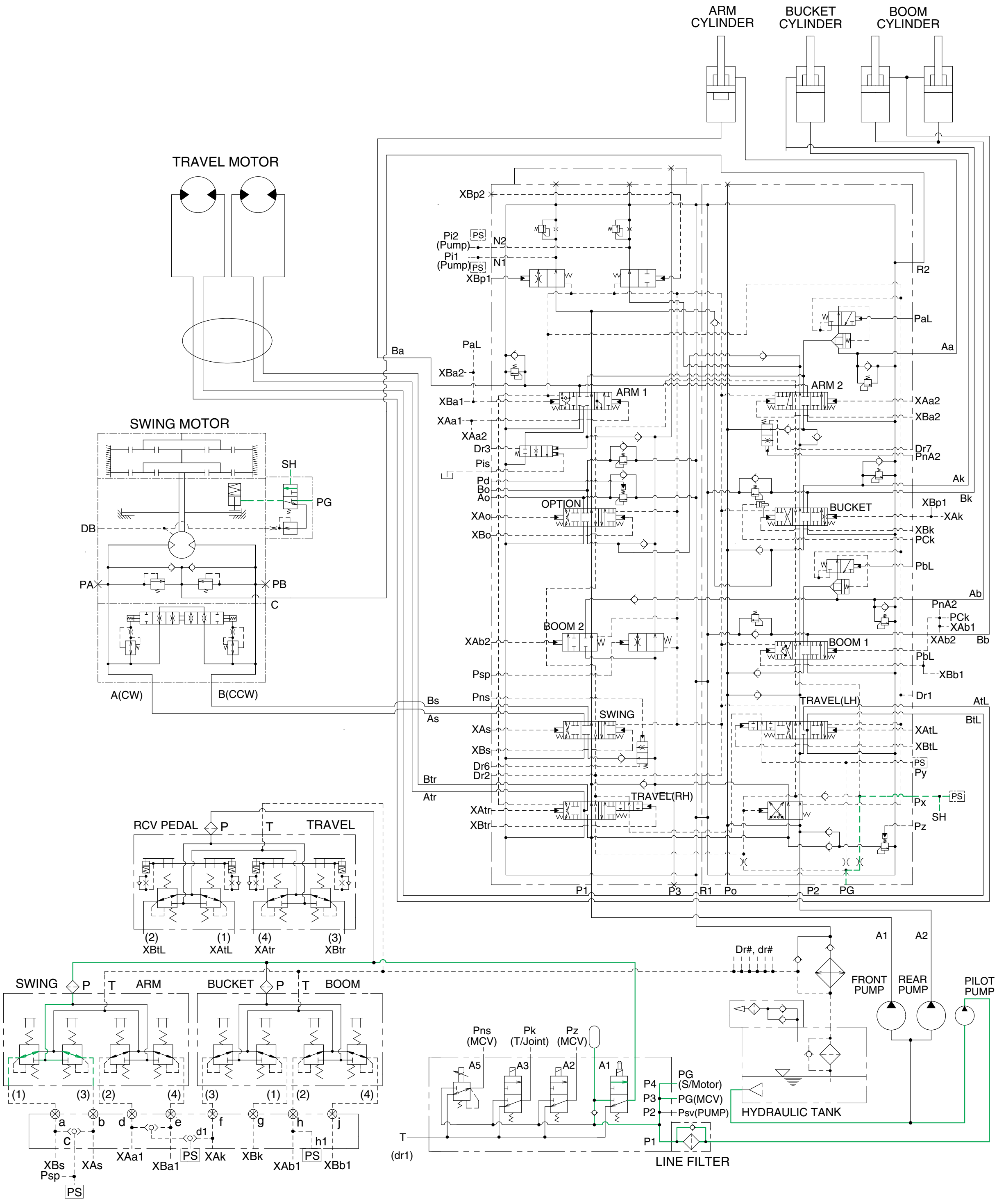


When the power boost switch on the left control lever is pushed ON, the power boost solenoid valve is actuated, the discharged oil from the pilot pump flows into Pz port of the main relief valve of main control valve; then the setting pressure of the main relief valve is raised from 350 kgf/cm^2 to 380 kgf/cm^2 for increasing the digging power.

And even when pressed continuously, it is canceled after 8 seconds.

When the auto power boost function is selected to enable on the cluster, the pressure of the main relief pressure is automatically increased to 380 kgf/cm^2 as working condition by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

6. SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE



When one of the RCV lever (except travel lever) is tilted, the pilot oil flows into SH port through main control valve.

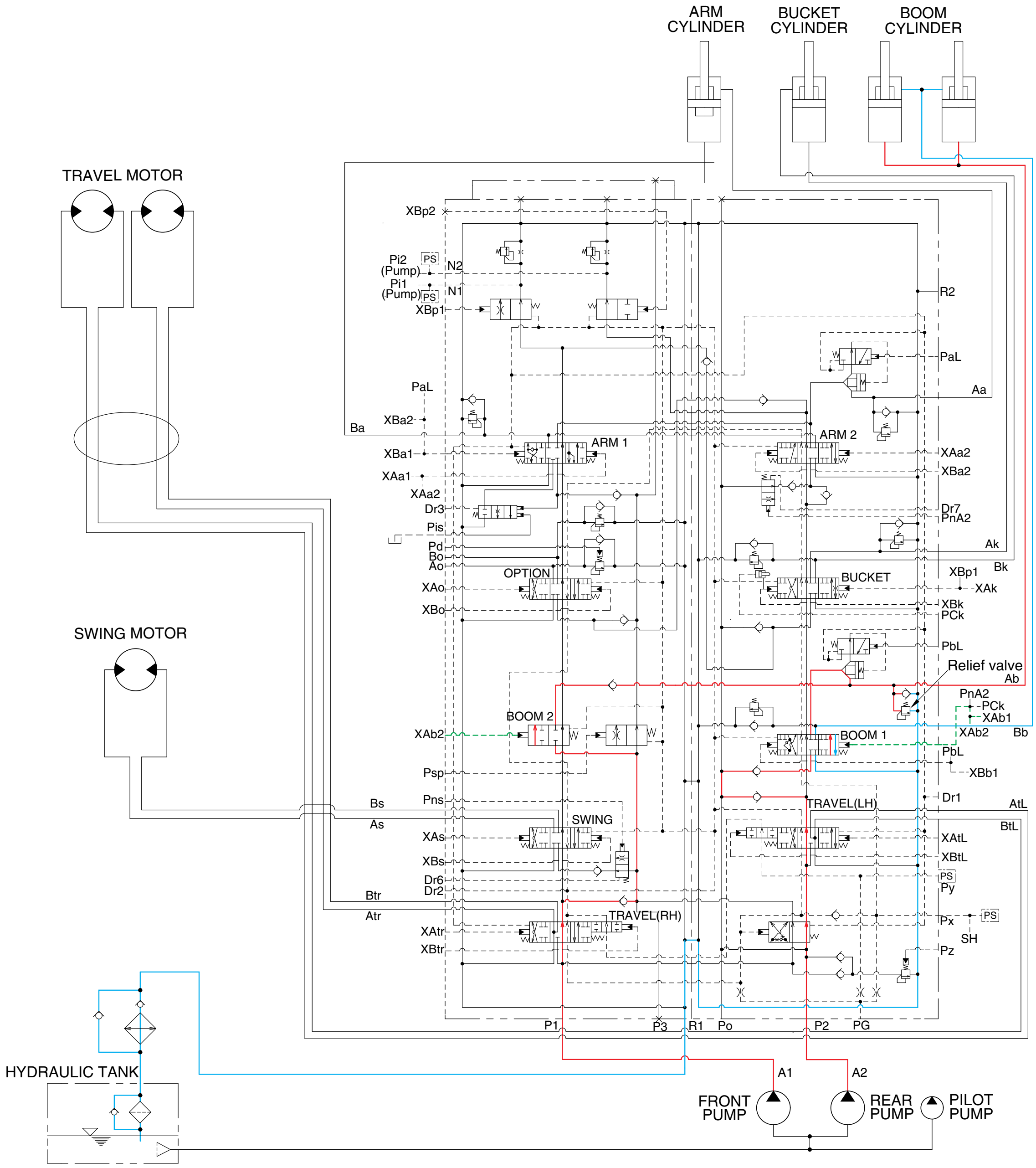
This pressure moves spool so, discharged oil from pilot valve flows to swing motor PG port.

This pressure is applied to swing motor disc, thus the brake is released.

When all of the RCV lever are set in the neutral position, oil in the swing motor disc cylinder is drained, thus the brake is applied.

GROUP 4 SINGLE OPERATION

1. BOOM UP OPERATION



When the right control lever is pulled back, the boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the up position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the front and rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of boom cylinders.

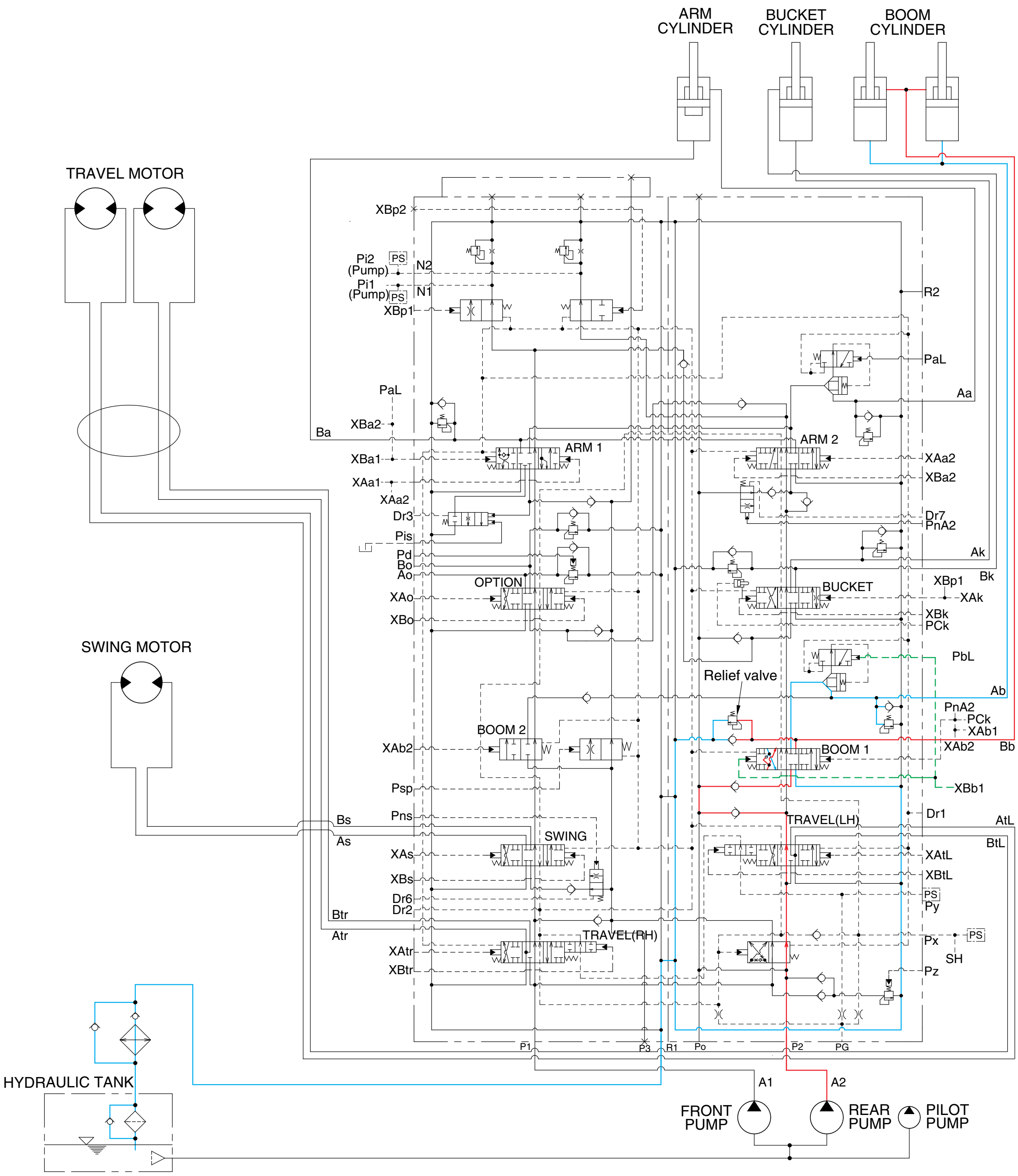
At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the boom goes up.

The excessive pressure in the boom cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

When the boom is up and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the bottom end of the boom cylinder is closed by the boom holding valve.

This prevents the hydraulic drift of boom cylinder.

2. BOOM DOWN OPERATION



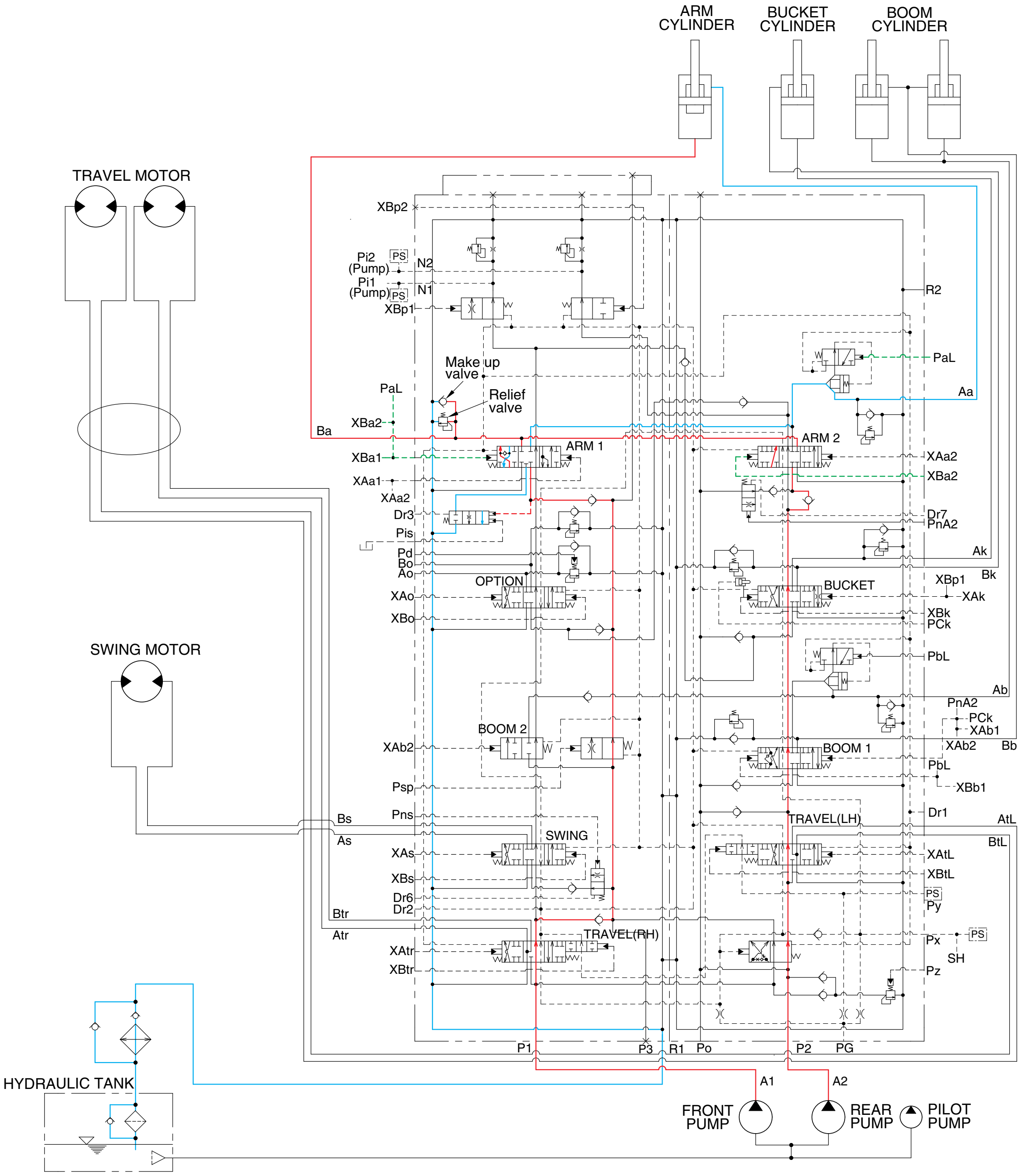
When the right control lever is pushed forward, the boom 1 spools in the main control valve are moved to the down position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of boom cylinders. At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic tank through the boom spool in the main control valve.

When the down speed of boom is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the rear pump, and flows into the small chamber of the boom cylinder.

This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the rear pump flow can not match the boom down speed. And the excessive pressure in the boom cylinder rod side is prevented by the relief valve.

3. ARM IN OPERATION



When the left control lever is pulled back, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

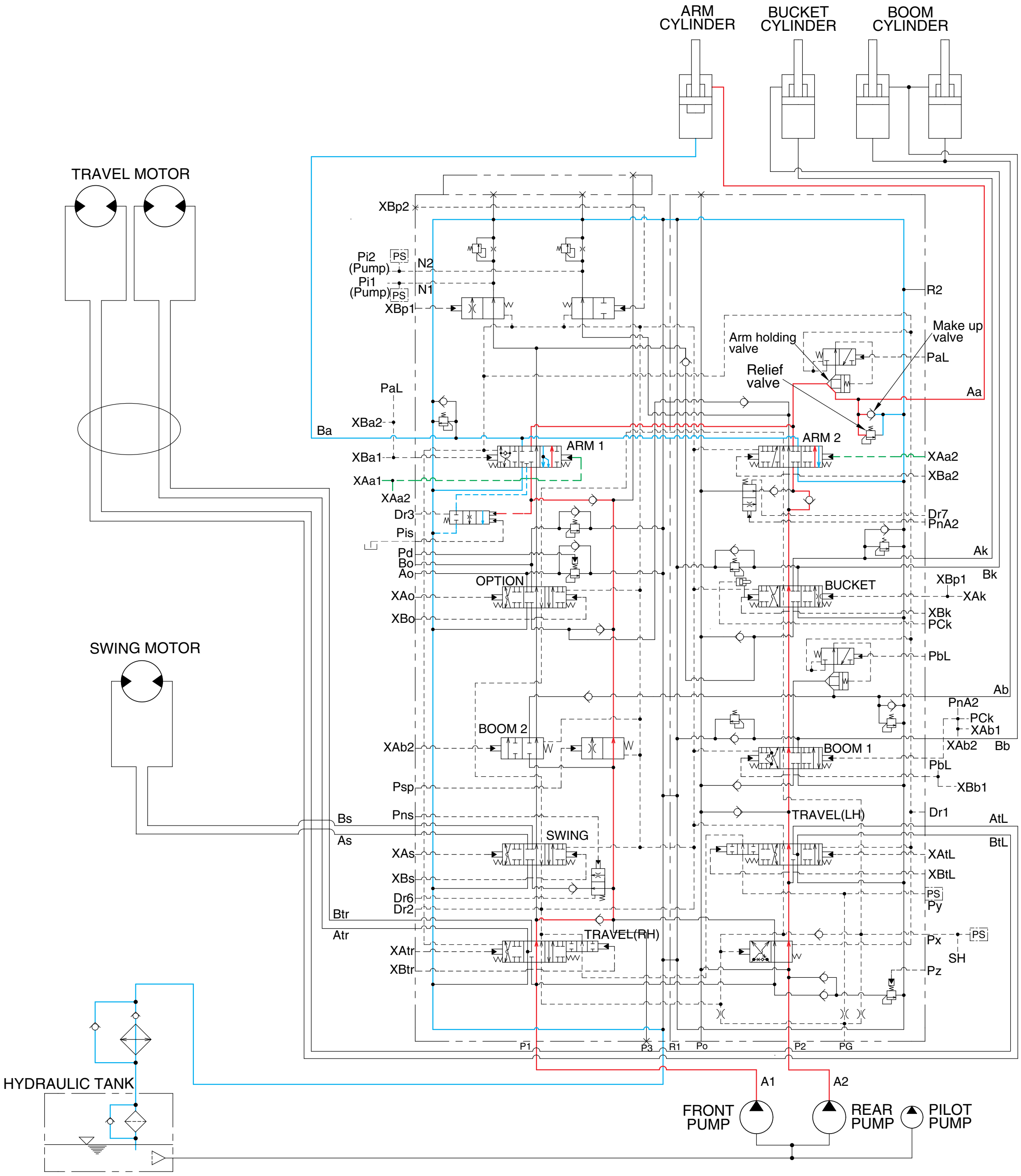
The oil from the front and rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of arm cylinder.

At the same time, the oil from small chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

4. ARM OUT OPERATION



When the left control lever is pushed forward, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the front and rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of arm cylinder.

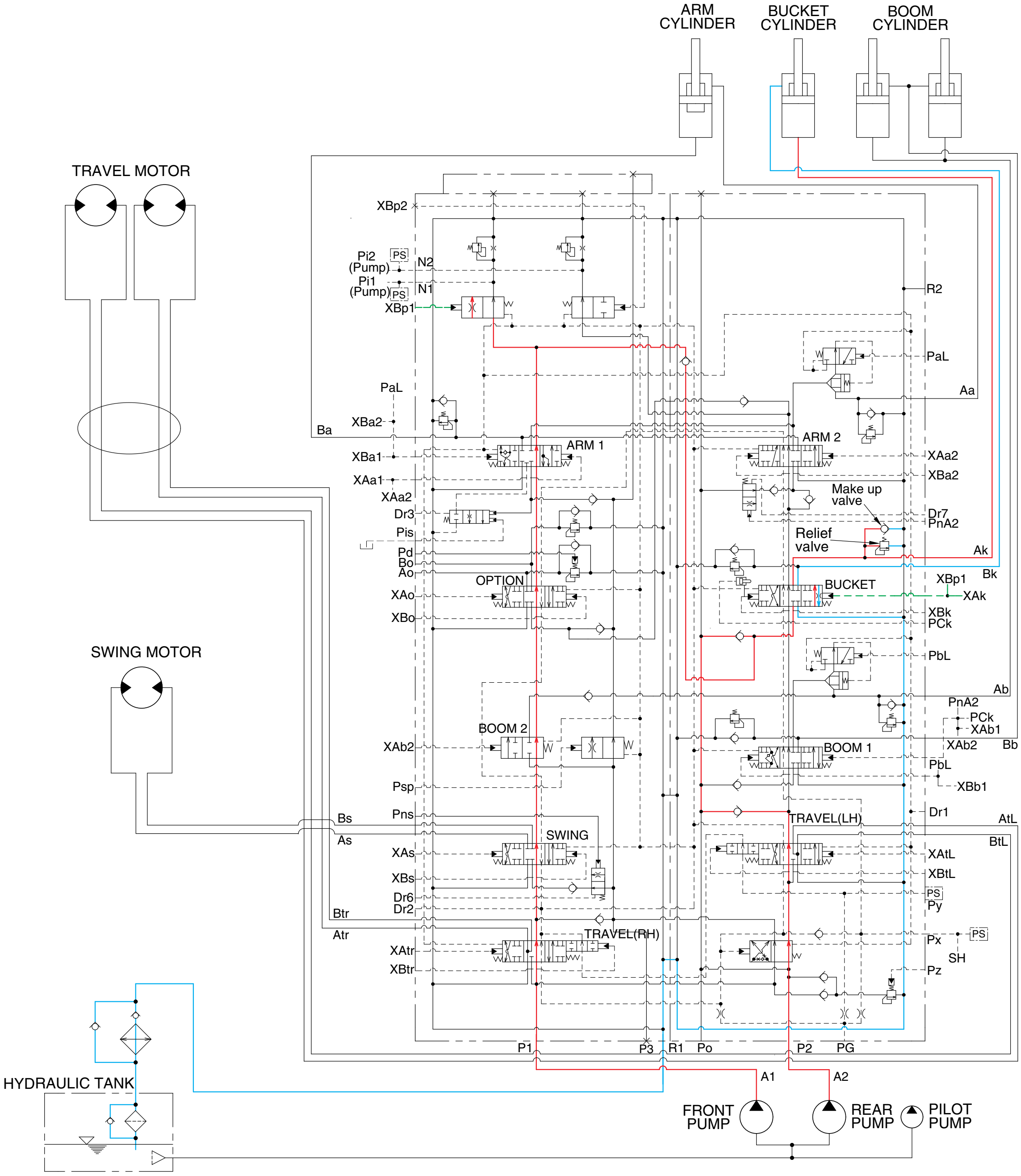
At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spools in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls out.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.

When the arm is roll out and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the rod side of the arm cylinder is closed by the arm holding valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

5. BUCKET IN OPERATION



When the right control lever is pulled left, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

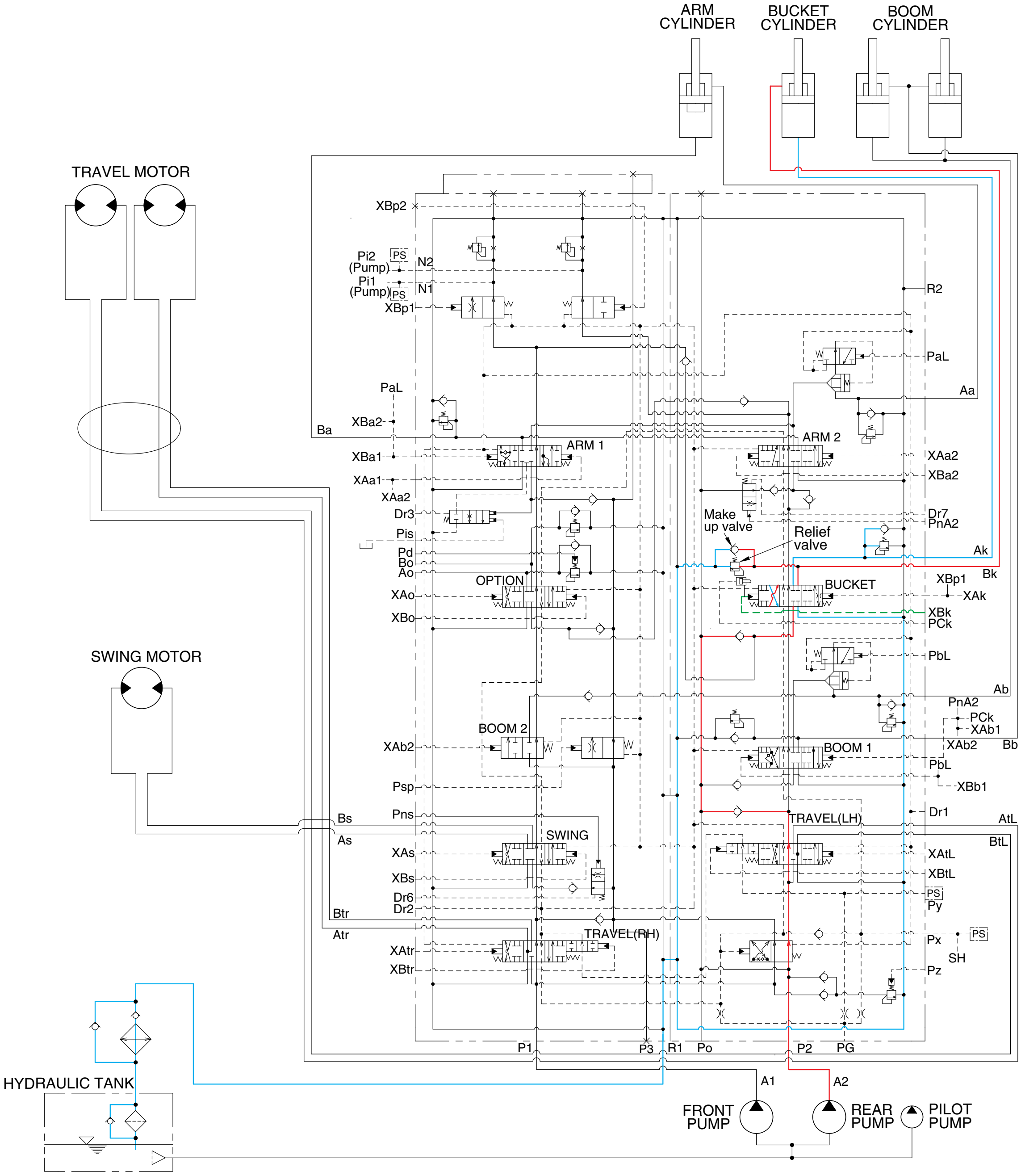
The oil from the rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of bucket cylinder. The oil form the front pump flows into the large chamber of bucket cylinder through confluence oil passage in the main control valve by bypass cut pilot pressure (XBp1).

At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

6. BUCKET OUT OPERATION



When the right control lever is pushed right, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

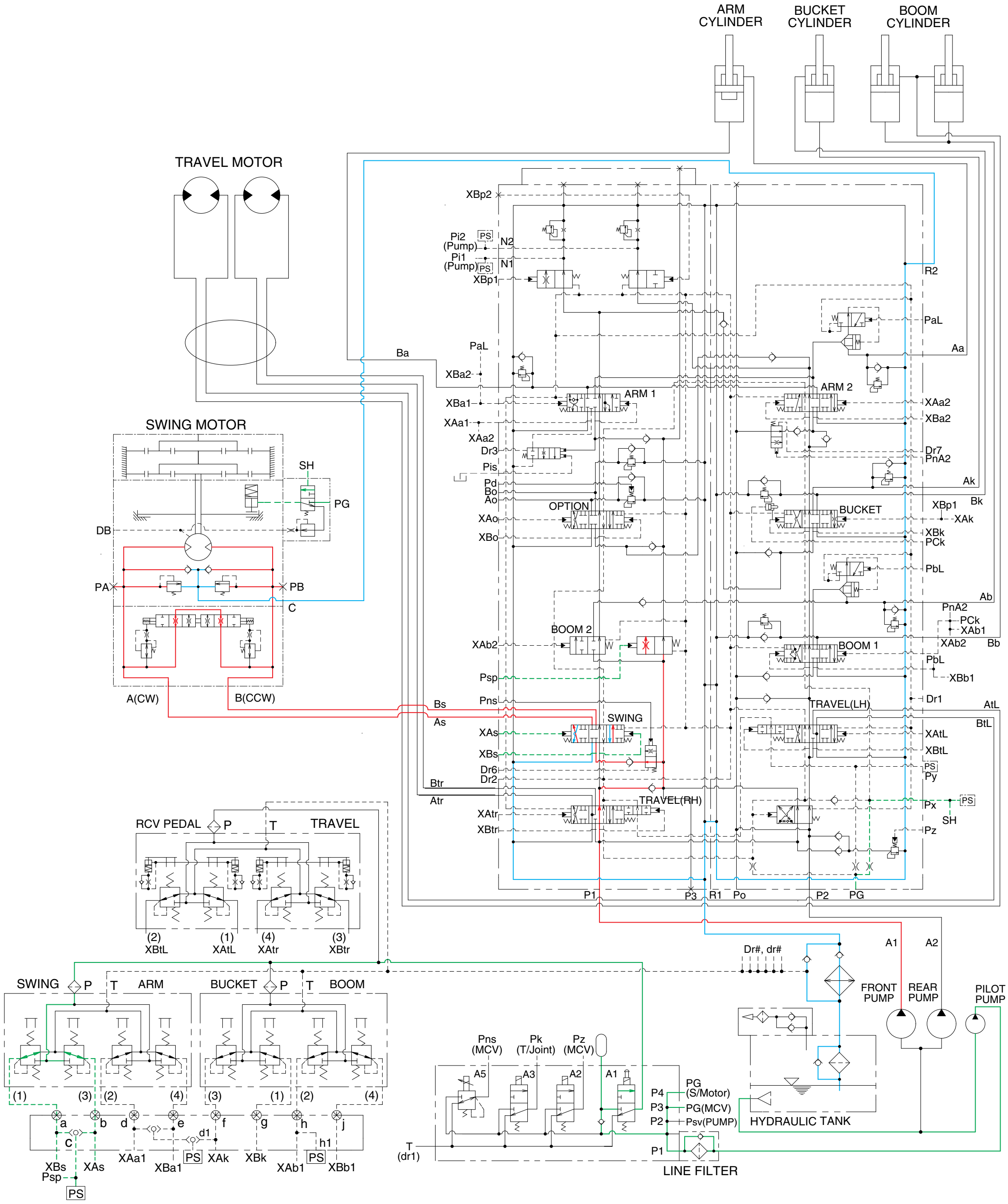
The oil from the rear pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of bucket cylinder.

At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the bucket spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls out.

The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

7. SWING OPERATION



32093HC15

When the left control lever is pushed left or right, the swing spool in the main control valve is moved to the left or right swing position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

Also the swing operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure Psp (refer to page 2-36).

The oil from the front pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the swing motor.

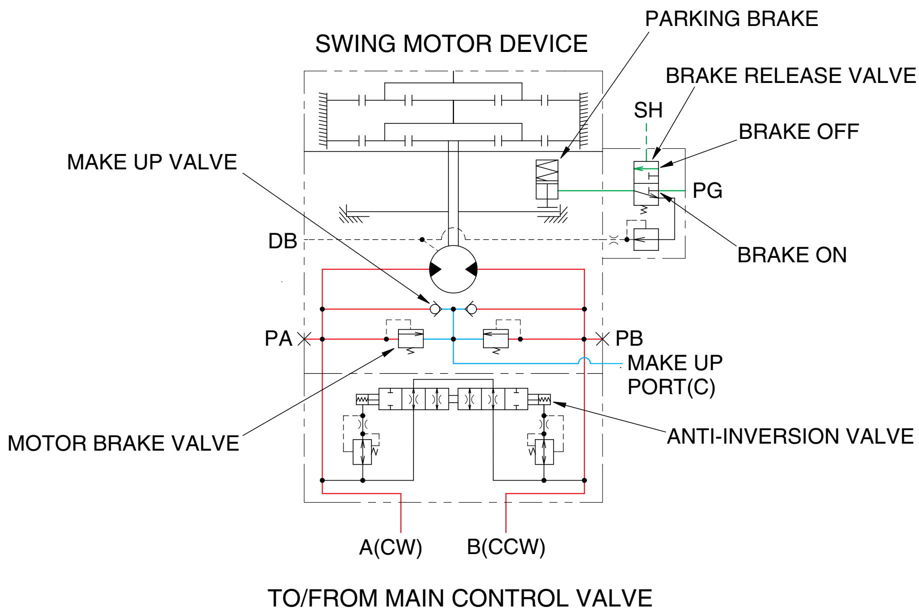
At the same time, the return oil from the swing motor returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the swing spool in the main control valve.

When this happens, the upper structure swings to the left or right.

The swing parking brake, make up valve and the motor brake valve are provided in the swing motor.

The cavitation which will happen to the swing motor is also prevented by the make up valve in the swing motor itself.

SWING CIRCUIT OPERATION



1) MOTOR BRAKE VALVE

Motor brake valve for the swing motor limits to cushion the starting and stopping pressure of swing operation and controls the swing motor operating pressure.

2) MAKE UP VALVE

The make up valves prevent cavitation by supplying return oil to the vacuum side of the motor.

3) PARKING BRAKE

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

PARKING BRAKE "OFF" OPERATION

The parking brake is released by the pilot pressure oil from the pilot pump.

When the RCV lever placed in the operating position, the pilot oil flows into SH port through the MCV. This pressure transferred to the brake release valve and the brake release valve is change over. Then the pilot oil pressure PG lift the brake piston and release the parking brake.

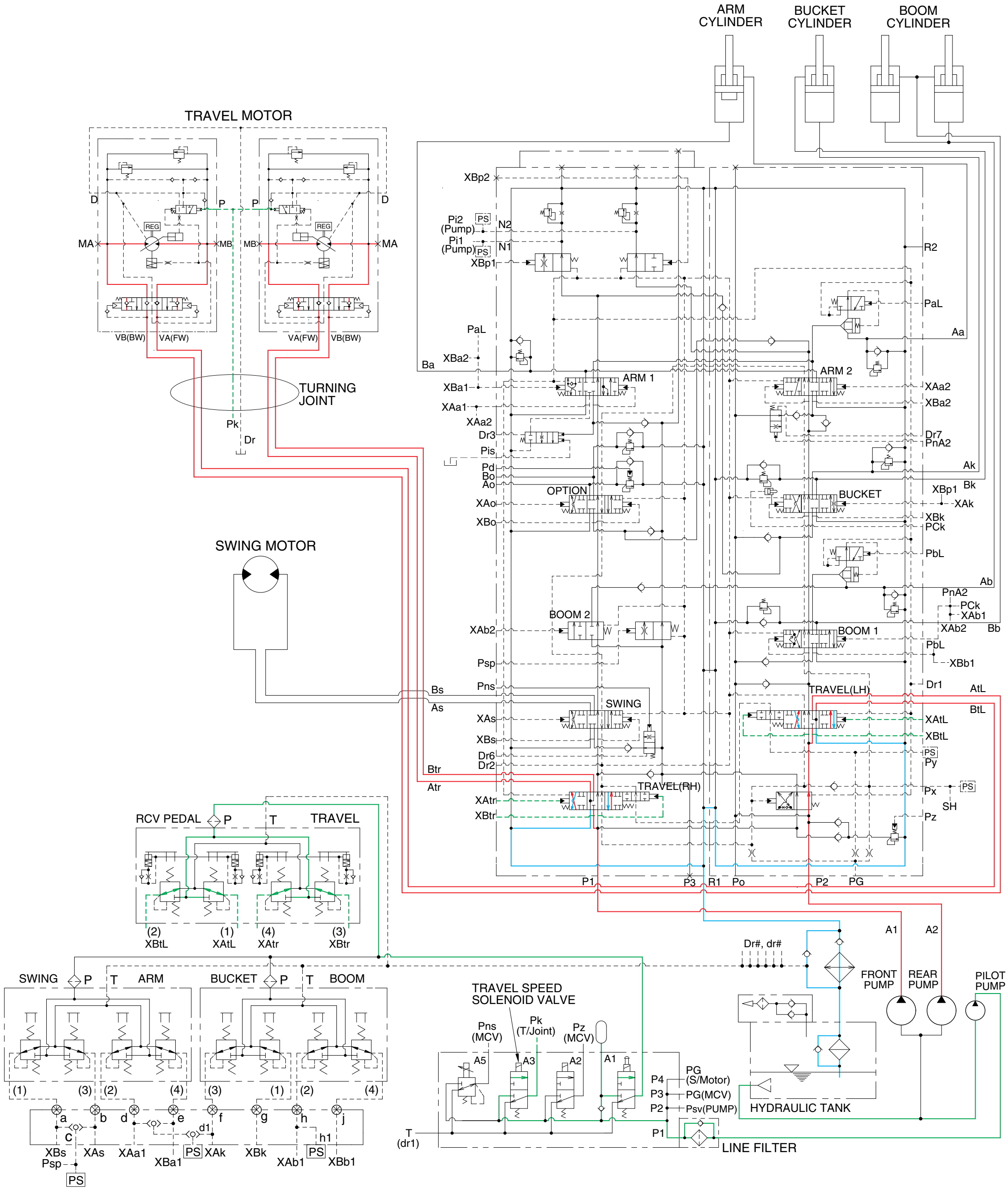
PARKING BRAKE "ON" OPERATION

When all of the RCV lever placed in the neutral position, the pressure of the pilot oil passage down. Then the brake release valve returned to the neutral position and the oil is returned from the brake piston to the tank. And the brake is set to 'ON".

4) ANTI-INVERSION VALVE

This anti-inversion valve absorbs shocks produced as swing motion stops and reduced oscillation cause by swing motion.

8. TRAVEL FORWARD AND REVERSE OPERATION



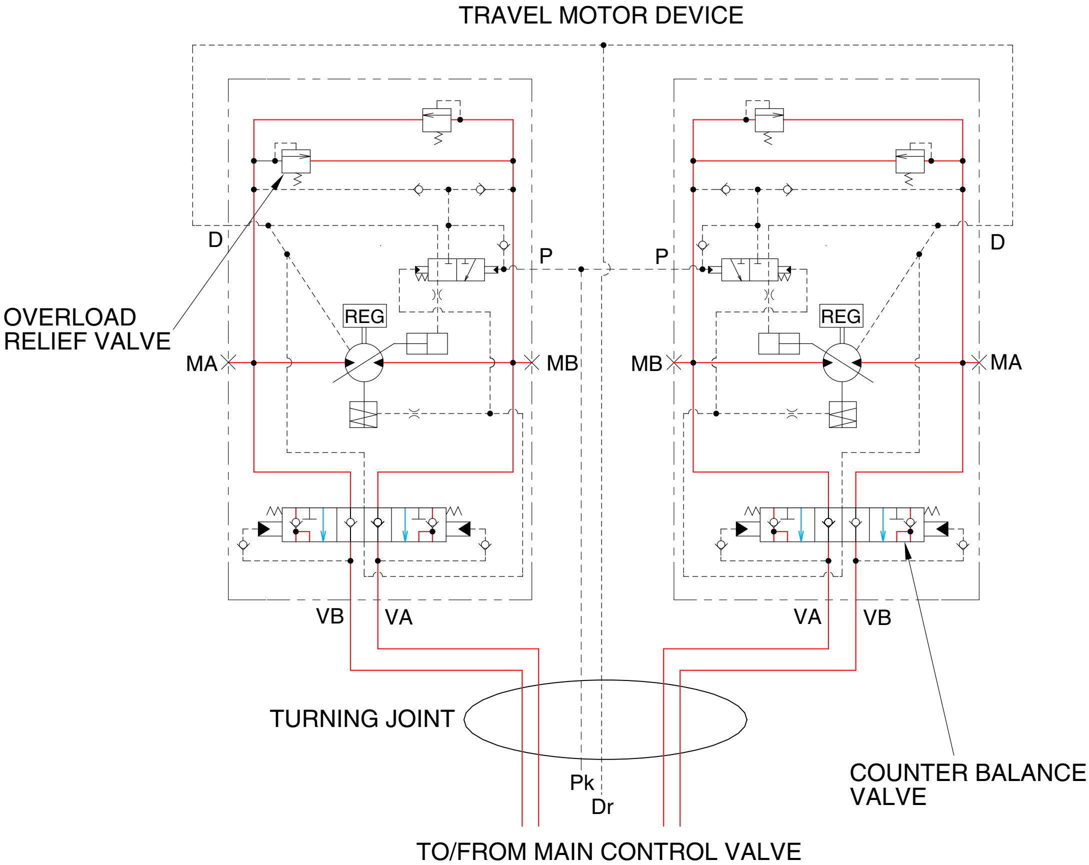
When the travel levers are pushed forward or reverse position, the travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the forward or reverse travel position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the each pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the each travel motor through the turning joint.

The return oil from both travel motors returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the turning joint and the travel spools in the main control valve.

When this happens, the machine moves to the forward or reverse.

TRAVEL CIRCUIT OPERATION



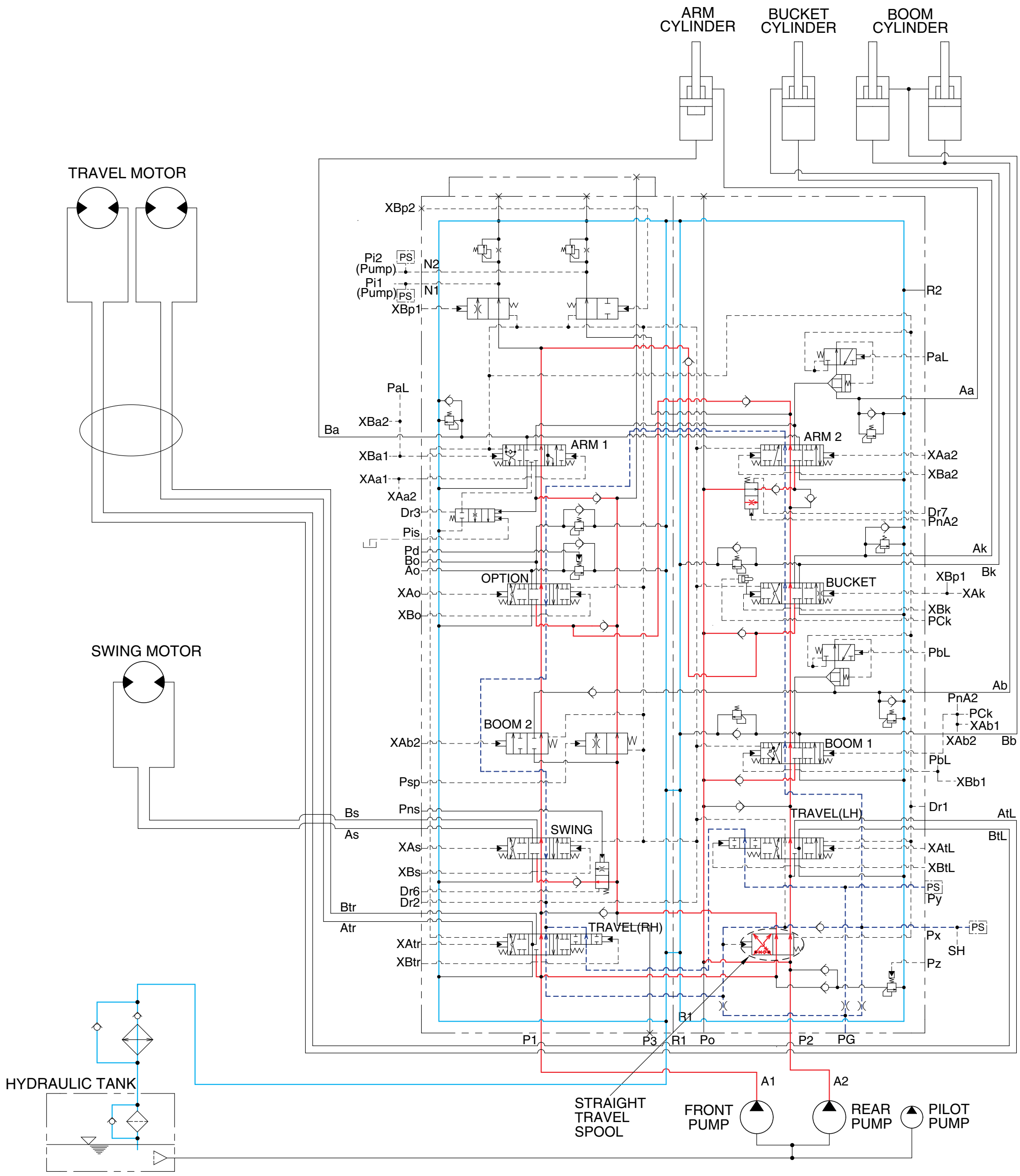
Valves are provided on travel motors to offer the following functions.

1) COUNTER BALANCE VALVE
   When stopping the motor of slope descending, this valve to prevent the motor over run.

2) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE
   Relief valve limit the circuit pressure below 350 kgf/cm^2 to prevent high pressure generated at a time of stopping the machine. Stopping the motor, this valve sucks the oil from lower pressure passage for preventing the negative pressure and the cavitation of the motor.

GROUP 5 COMBINED OPERATION

1. OUTLINE



The oil from the front and rear pump flows through the neutral oil passage, bypass oil passage and confluence oil passage in the main control valve. Then the oil goes to each actuator and operates them. Check valves and orifices are located on these oil passage in the main control valve. These control the oil from the main pumps so as to correspond to the operation of each actuator and smooth the combined operation.

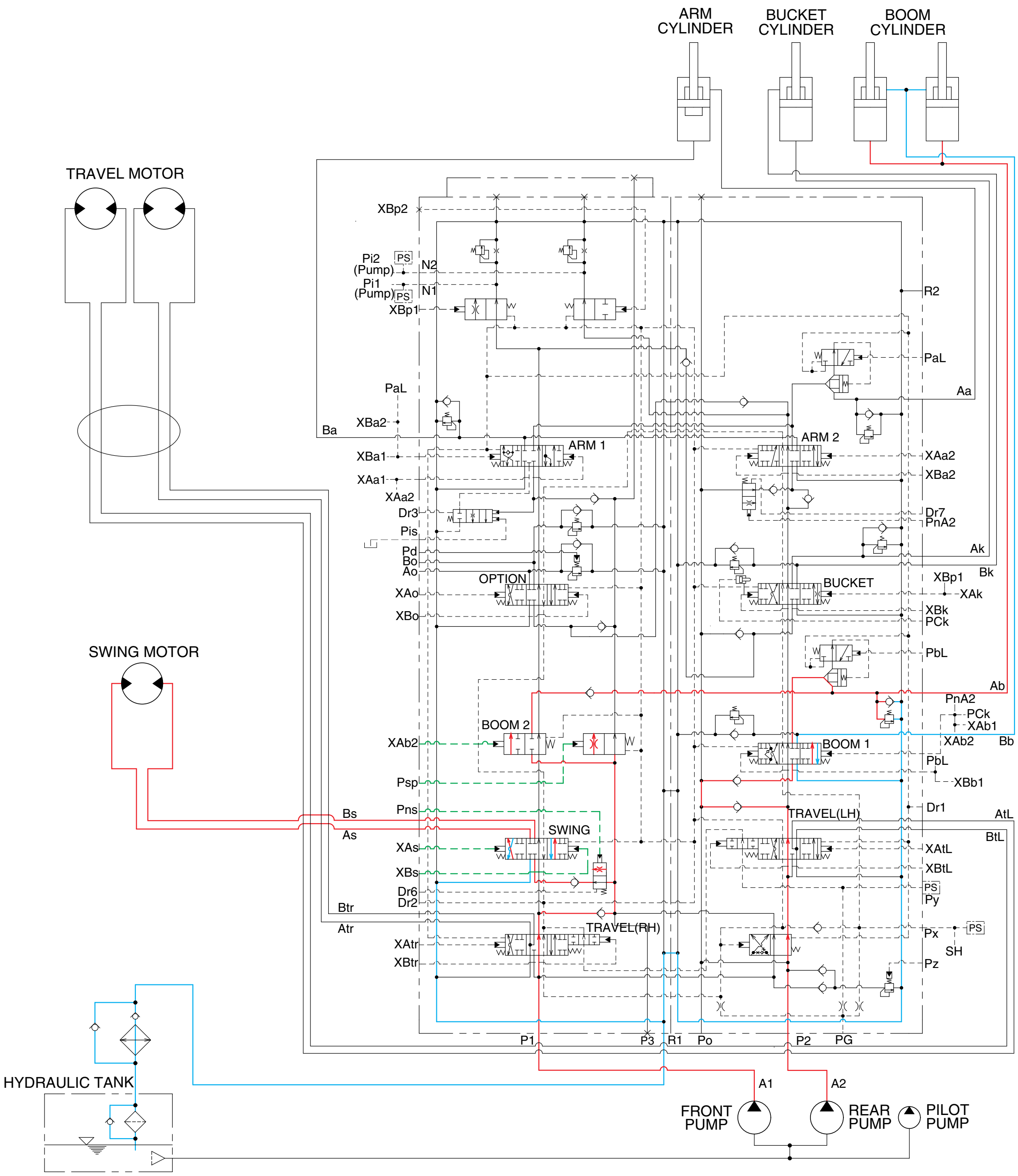
STRAIGHT TRAVEL SPOOL

This straight travel spool is provided in the main control valve.

If any actuator is operated when traveling, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure.

Consequently, the left and right travel oil supply passage are connected, and equivalent amount of oil flows into the left and right travel motors. This keeps the straight travel.

2. COMBINED SWING AND BOOM UP OPERATION



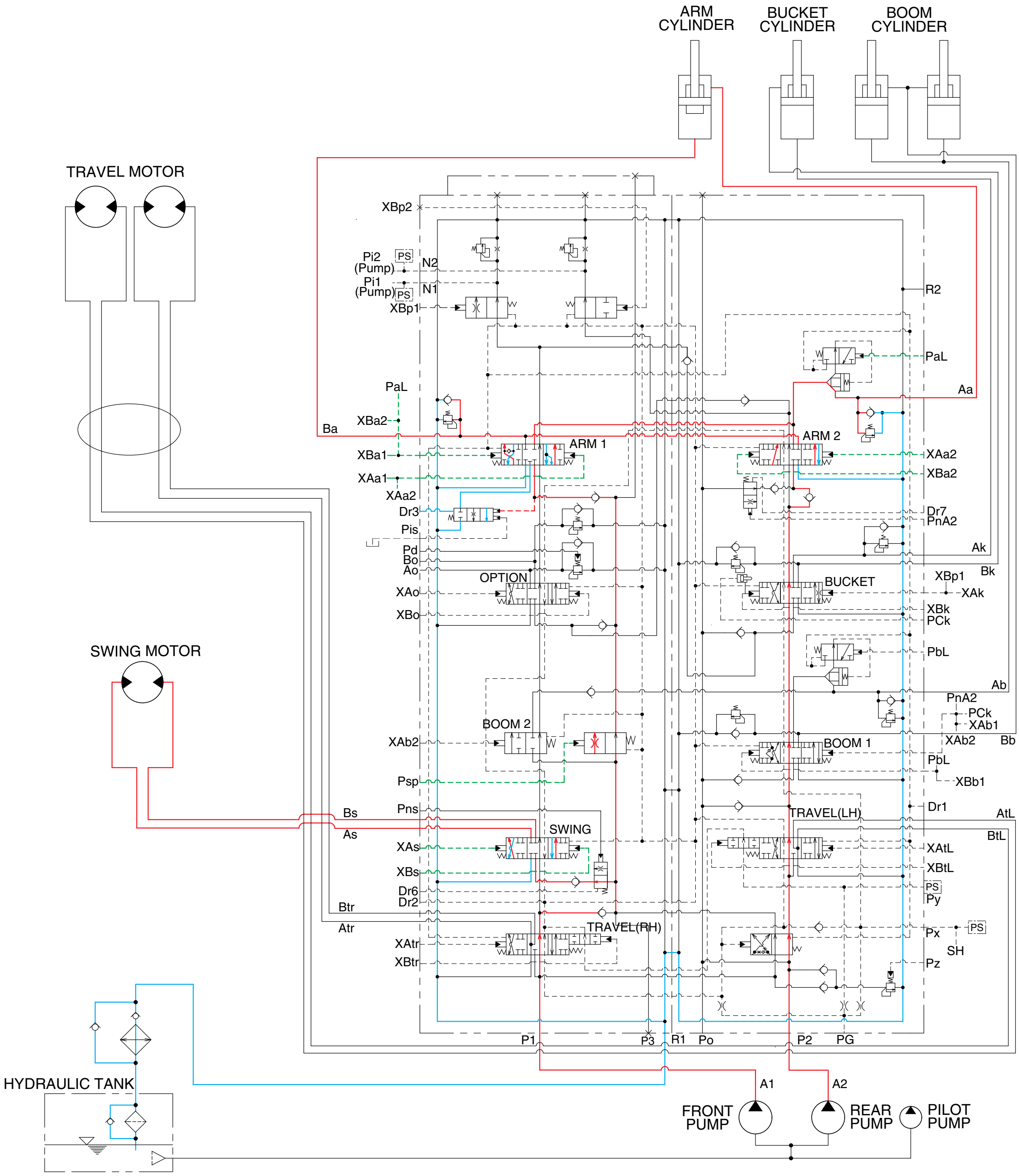
When the swing and boom up functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the front pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the boom cylinder through boom 2 spool.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 1 spool in the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the boom is operated.

Refer to page 3-8 for the boom priority system.

3. COMBINED SWING AND ARM OPERATION



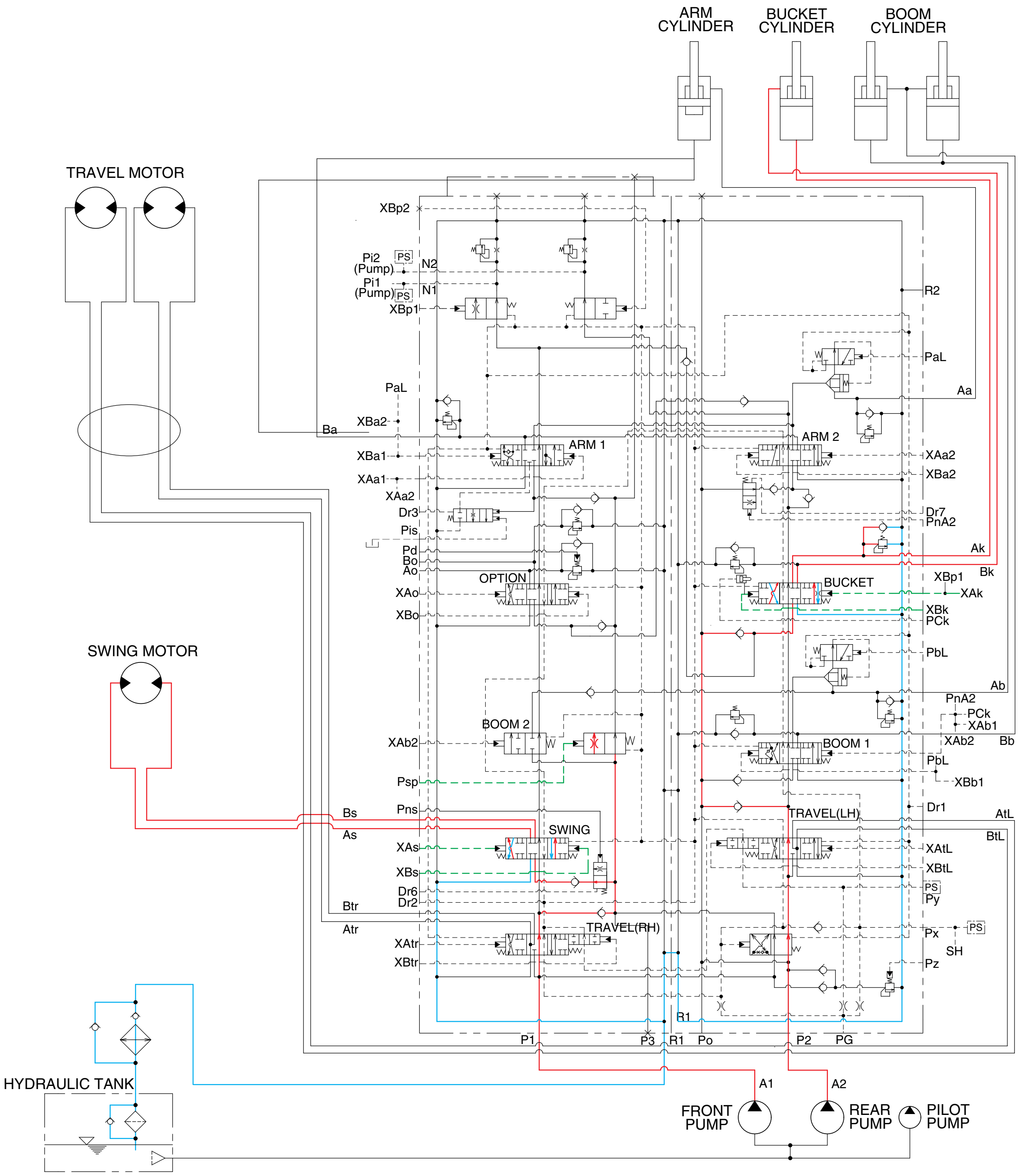
When the swing and arm functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the front pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the arm cylinder through arm 1 spool.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the arm cylinder through the arm 2 spool of the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the arm is operated.

Refer to page 2-35 for the swing operation preference function.

4. COMBINED SWING AND BUCKET OPERATION



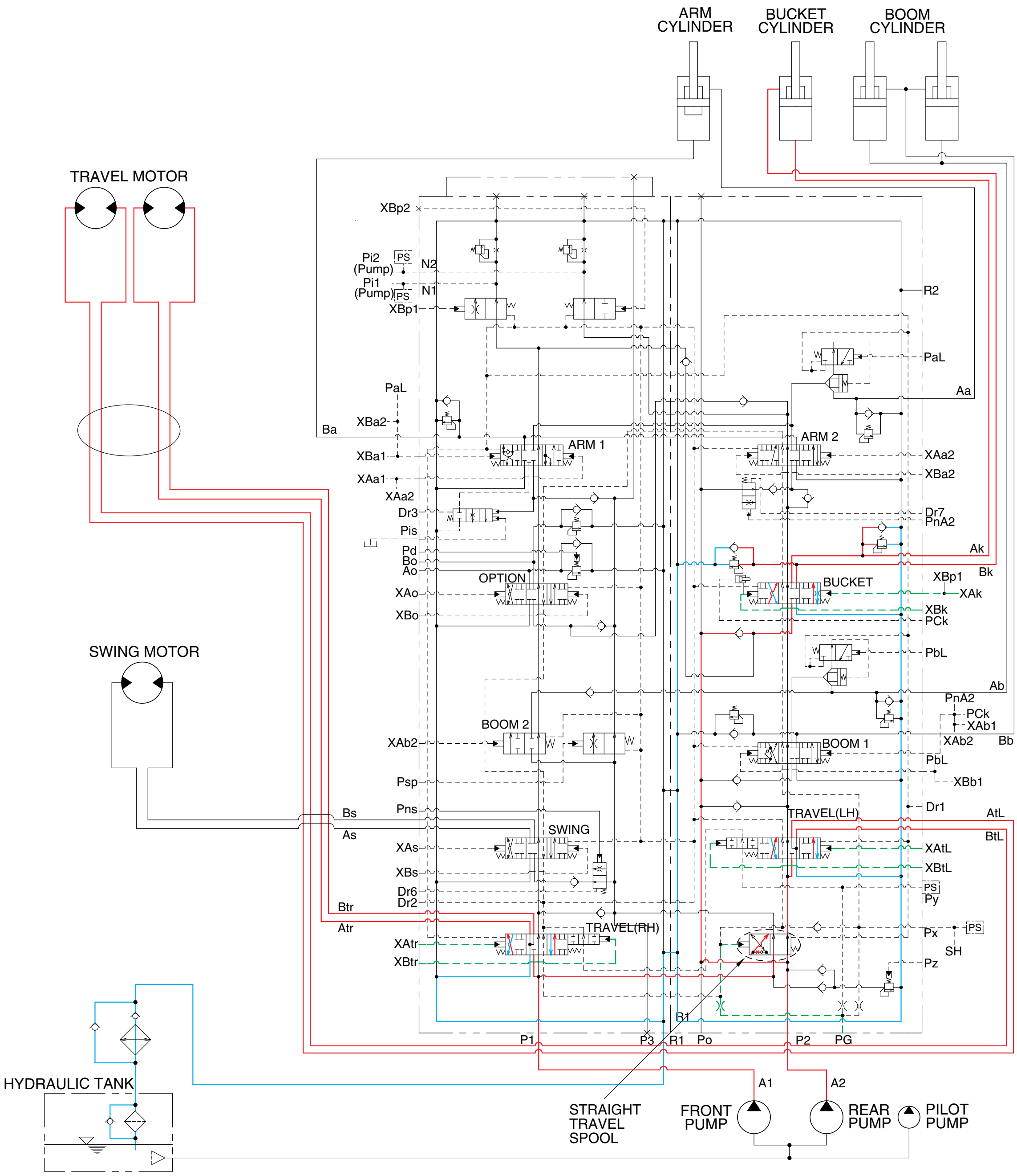
When the swing and bucket functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and bucket spool in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the front pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool in the left control valve.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool in the right control valve.

The upper structure swings and the bucket is operated.

5. COMBINED SWING AND TRAVEL OPERATION



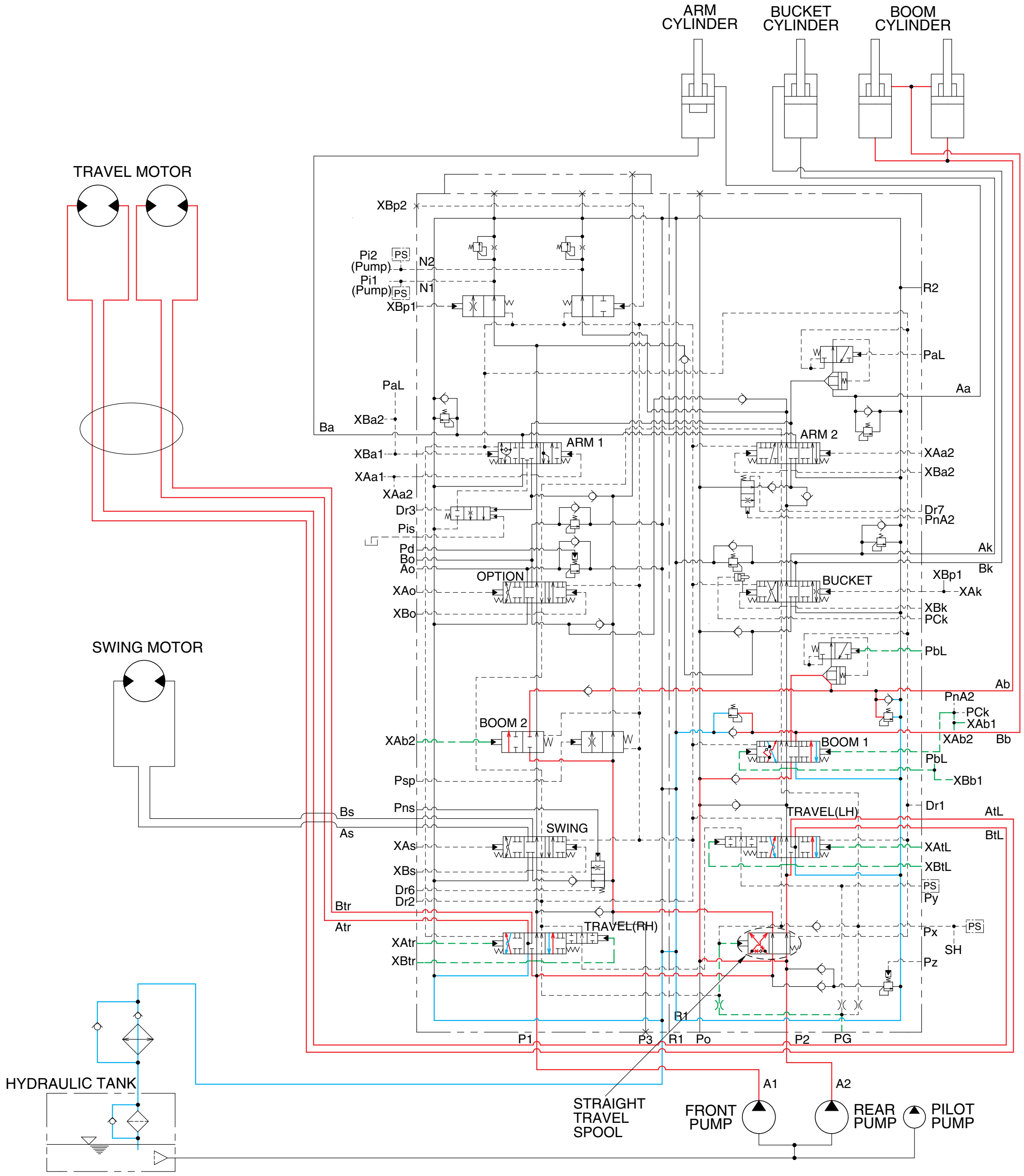
When the swing and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

The oil from the front pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool and travel motor through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The upper structure swings and the machine travels straight.

6. COMBINED BOOM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



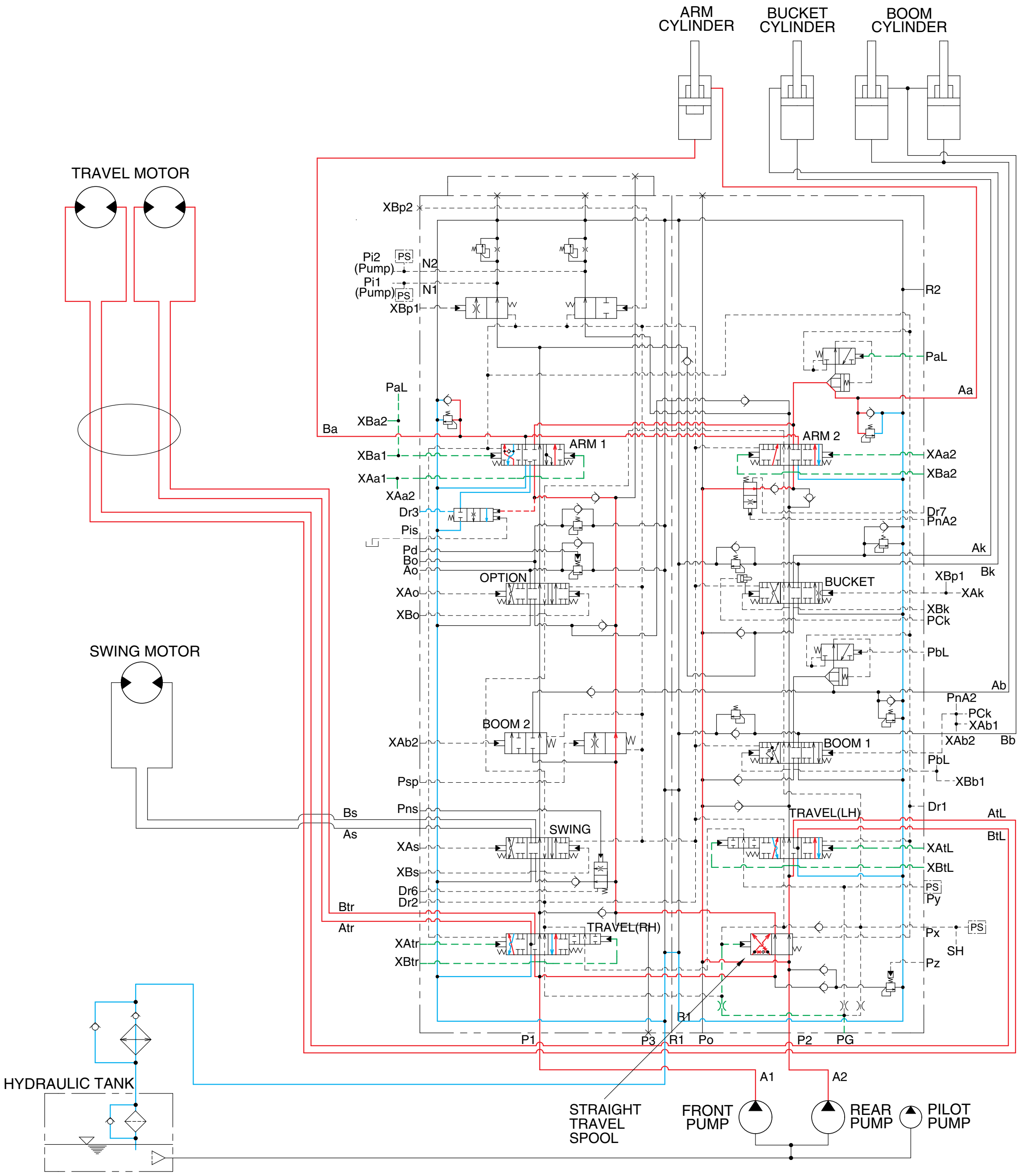
When the boom and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the boom spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

The oil from the front pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool and boom 1 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage in case boom up operation. Also, the oil from the rear pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The boom is operated and the machine travels straight.

7. COMBINED ARM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



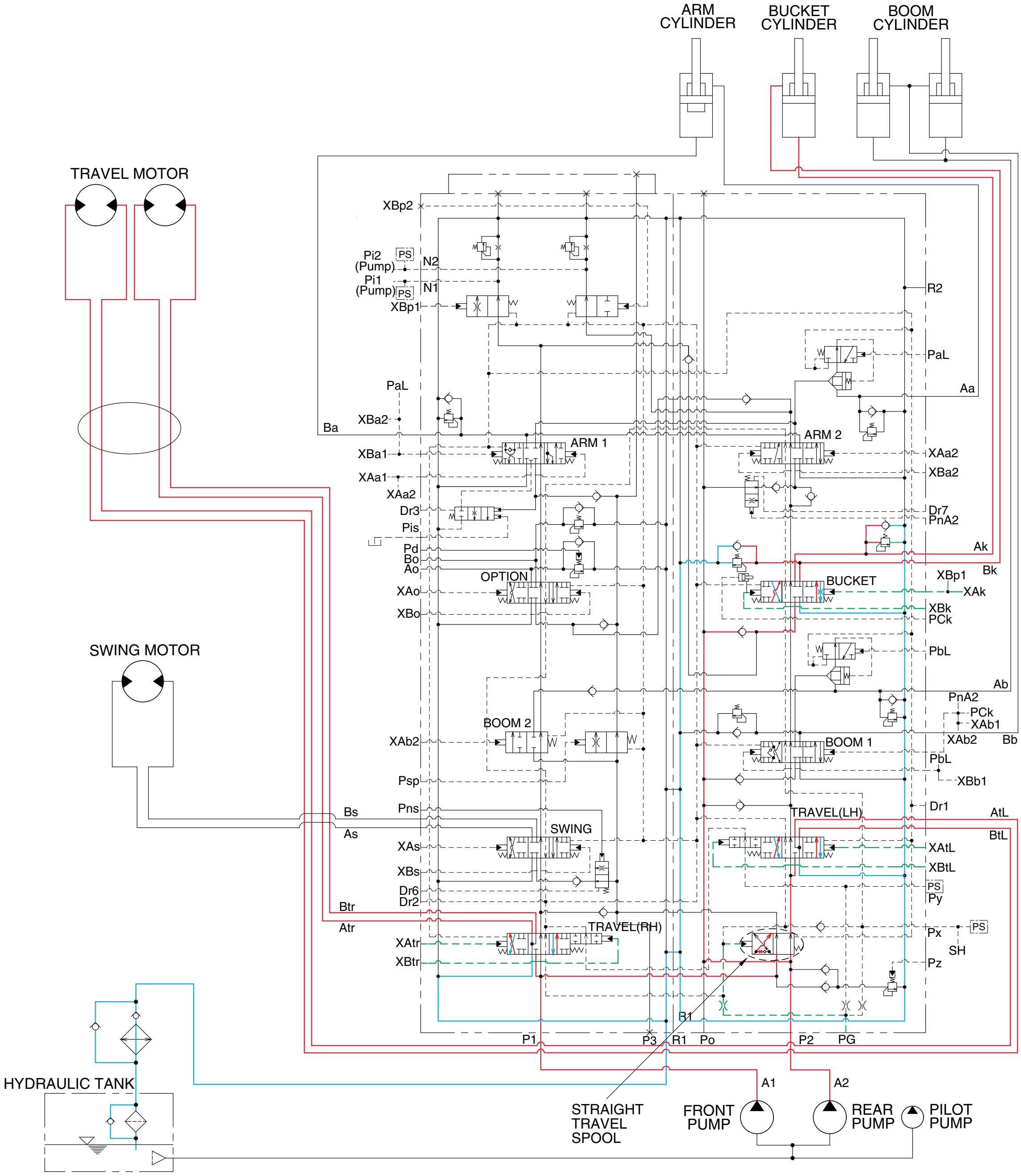
When the arm and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the arm spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

The oil from the front pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the arm cylinders through the arm 1 spool and arm 2 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage. Also, the oil from the rear pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The arm is operated and the machine travels straight.

8. COMBINED BUCKET AND TRAVEL OPERATION

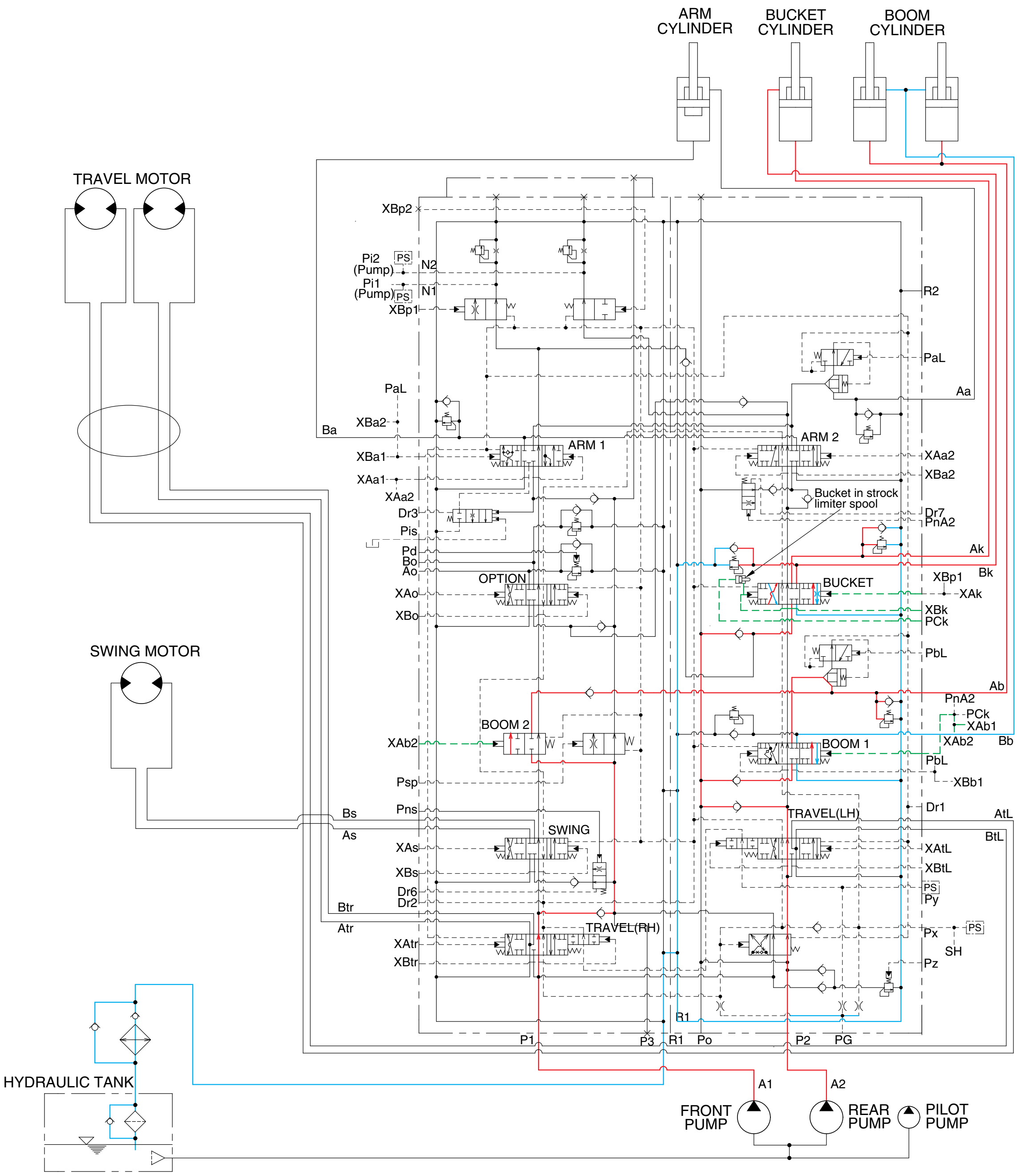


When the bucket and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the bucket spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve, and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump. The oil from the front pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool of the control valve.

The oil from the rear pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool via the confluence oil passage. Also, the oil from the rear pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The bucket is operated and the machine travels straight.

9. COMBINED BOOM UP AND BUCKET OPERATION



When the boom up and bucket functions are operated, simultaneously each spool in the main control valve is moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. Also, the boom up operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure PCk (refer to page 2-33).

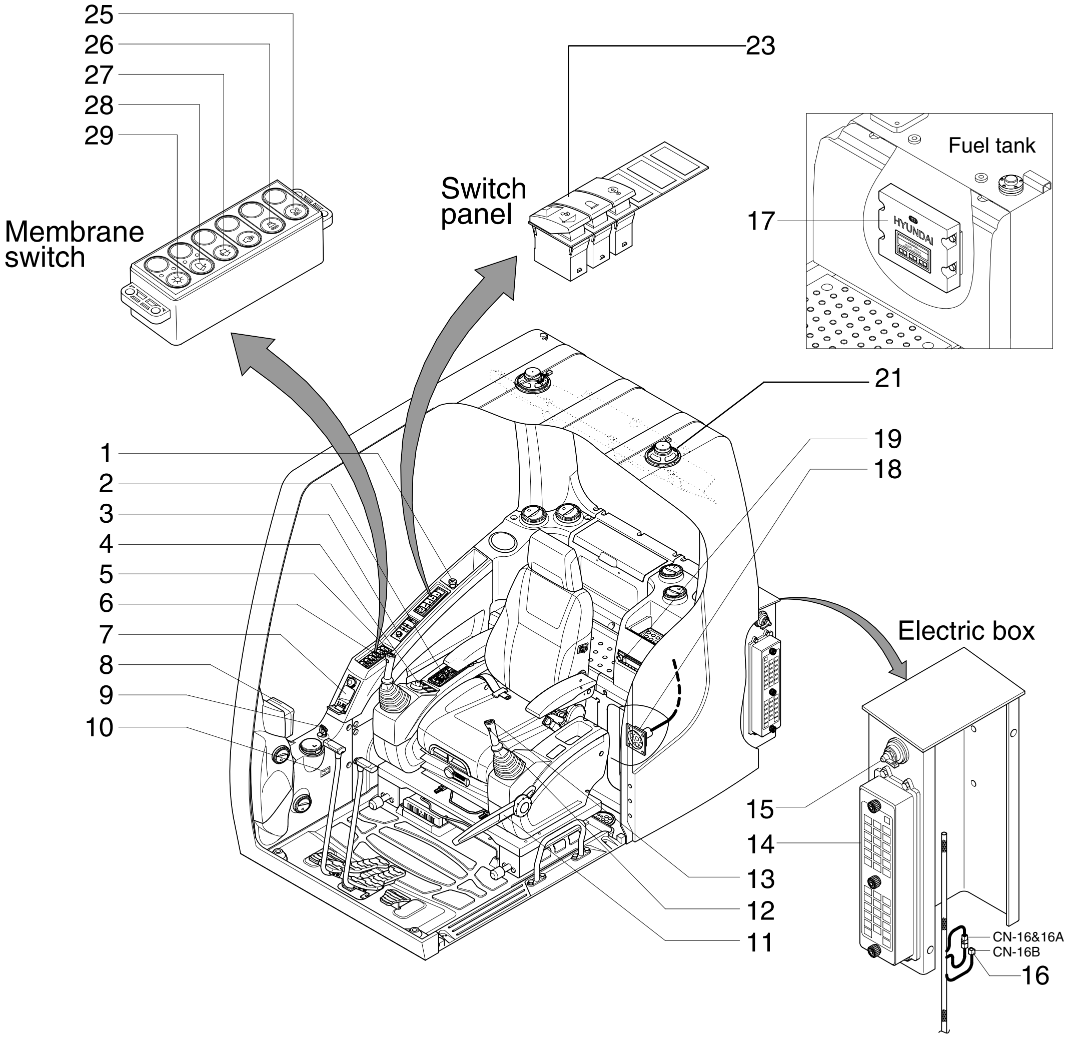
The oil from the front pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool in the left control valve. The oil from the rear pump flows into the boom cylinders and bucket cylinder through the boom 1 spool, bucket spool and the parallel and confluence oil passage in the right control valve.

The boom and bucket are operated.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

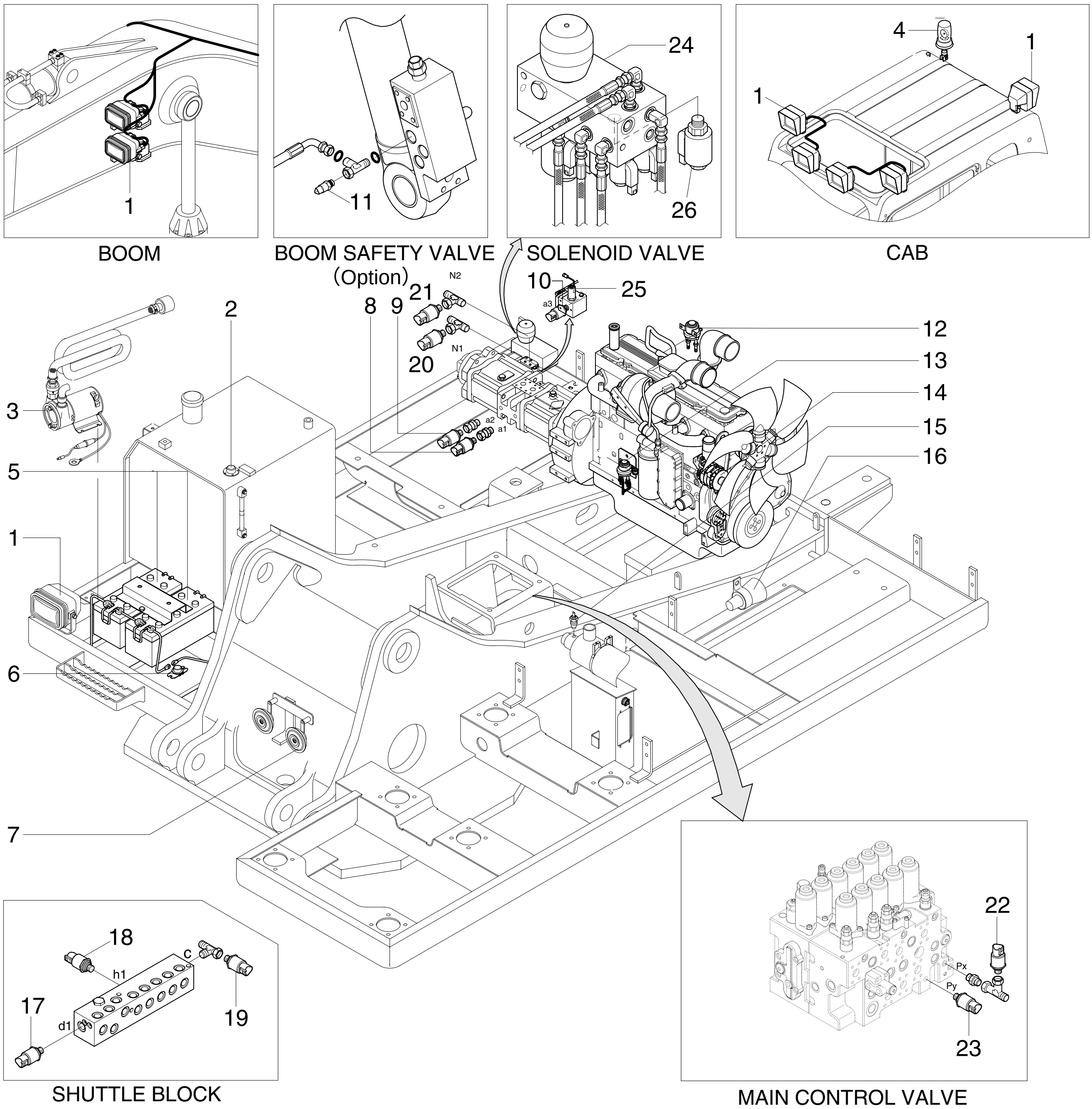
GROUP 1 COMPONENT LOCATION

1. LOCATION 1



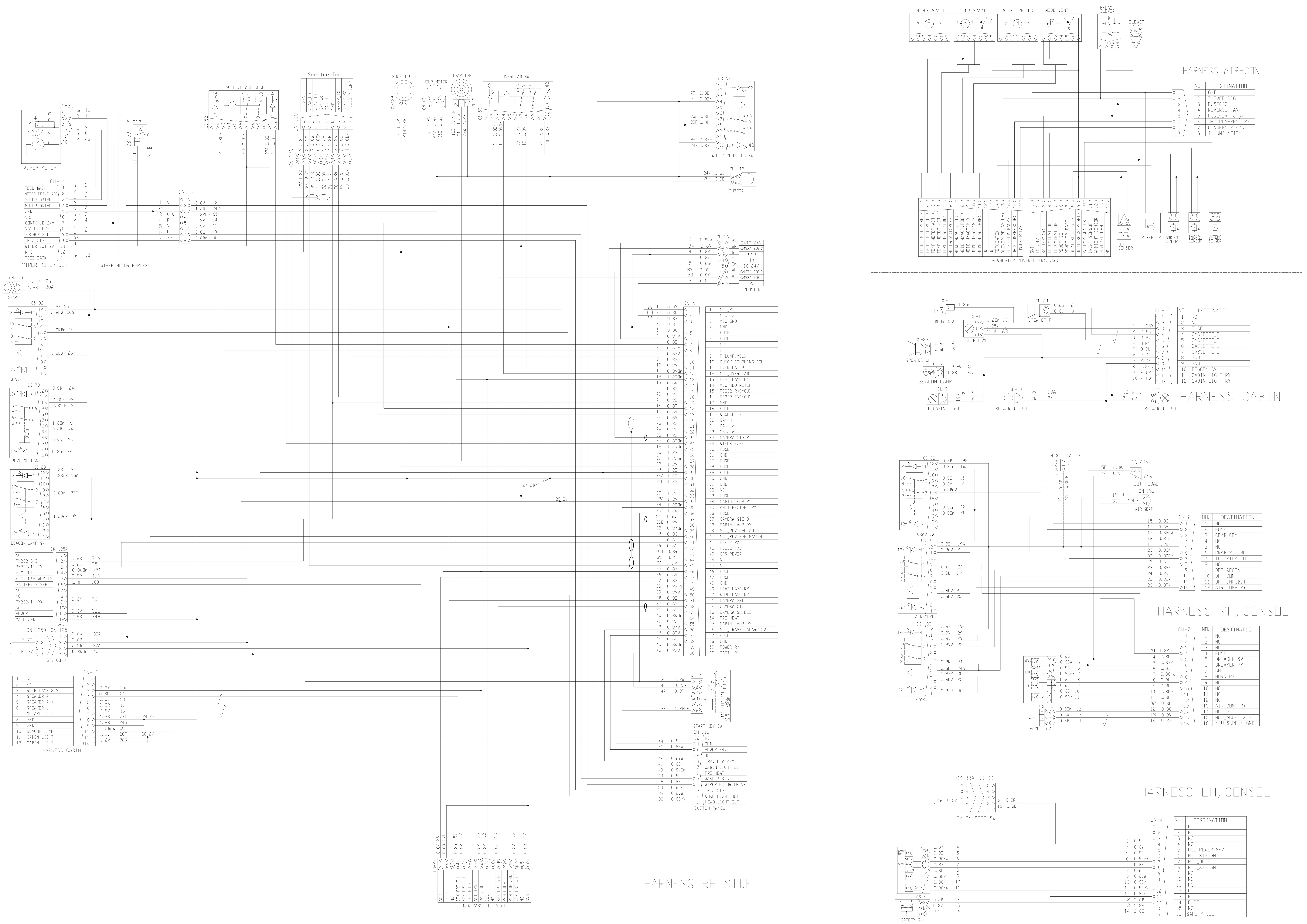
1	Cigar light	11	Safety lever	23	Beacon switch
2	Aircon & heater switch panel	12	Power max switch	25	Cab light switch
3	Remote controller	13	One touch decel switch	26	Travel alarm switch
4	Accel dial switch	14	Fuse box	27	Washer switch
5	Horn switch	15	Master switch	28	Wiper switch
6	Breaker operation switch	16	Emergency engine connector	29	Main light switch
7	Handsfree	17	MCU		
8	Cluster	18	RS232 & J1939 service socket		
9	Starting switch	19	Radio & CD/MP3 player		
10	Service meter	21	Speaker		

2. LOCATION 2



1	Lamp	10	eppr pressure sensor	19	Swing pressure sensor
2	Fuel sender	11	Overload pressure sensor(opt)	20	Nega control 1 pressure sensor
3	Fuel filler pump(opt)	12	Heater relay	21	Nega control 2 pressure sensor
4	Beacon lamp	13	Start relay	22	Attach pressure sensor
5	Battery	14	Alternator	23	Travel pressure sensor
6	Battery relay	15	Air cleaner switch	24	Solenoid valve
7	Horn	16	Travel alarm buzzer	25	Pump EPPR valve
8	P1 pressure sensor	17	Arm/Bucket in pressure sensor	26	Boom priority EPPR valve
9	P2 pressure sensor	18	Boom up pressure sensor		

· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (1/2)



· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/2)

MEMORANDUM

1. POWER CIRCUIT

The negative terminal of battery is grounded to the machine chassis through master switch.

When the start switch is in the OFF position, the current flows from the positive battery terminal as shown below.

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery → Battery relay → Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A]

- → Fuse box [No.1] → I/conn [CN-3 (14, 15)] → Engine ECM [CN -94 (3, 4)]
- → Fuse box [No.2] → I/conn [CN-5 (46)]
  - → I/conn [CN -10 (3)] → Room lamp [CL-1 (2)]
    - → Door switch [CS-1]
  - → Radio & CD/MP3 player [CN-27 (8)]
  - → Hour meter [CN-48 (1)]
- → Fuse box [No.3] → MCU [CN-51 (1)]
- → Fuse box [No.4]
  - → Master switch [CS-74B] → I/conn [CN-5 (36)]
    - → Start switch [CS-2 (1)]
    - → GPS [CN-125A(11)]
    - → GPS connection [CN-125 (1)]
  - → Power relay [CR-35 (30)]
  - → ECM power relay [CR-45 (3)]
- → Fuse box [No.5] → I/conn [CN-11 (5)]
  - → AC & Heater controller (3)
  - → Blower relay (3)
- → Fuse box [No.6] → I/conn [CN - 5 (18)] → I/conn [CN -17 (5)]
  - → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (7)]
  - → Wiper motor [CN-21 (6)]
- → Fuse box [No.7] → I/conn [CN - 5 (6)] → Cluster [CN -56 (1)]

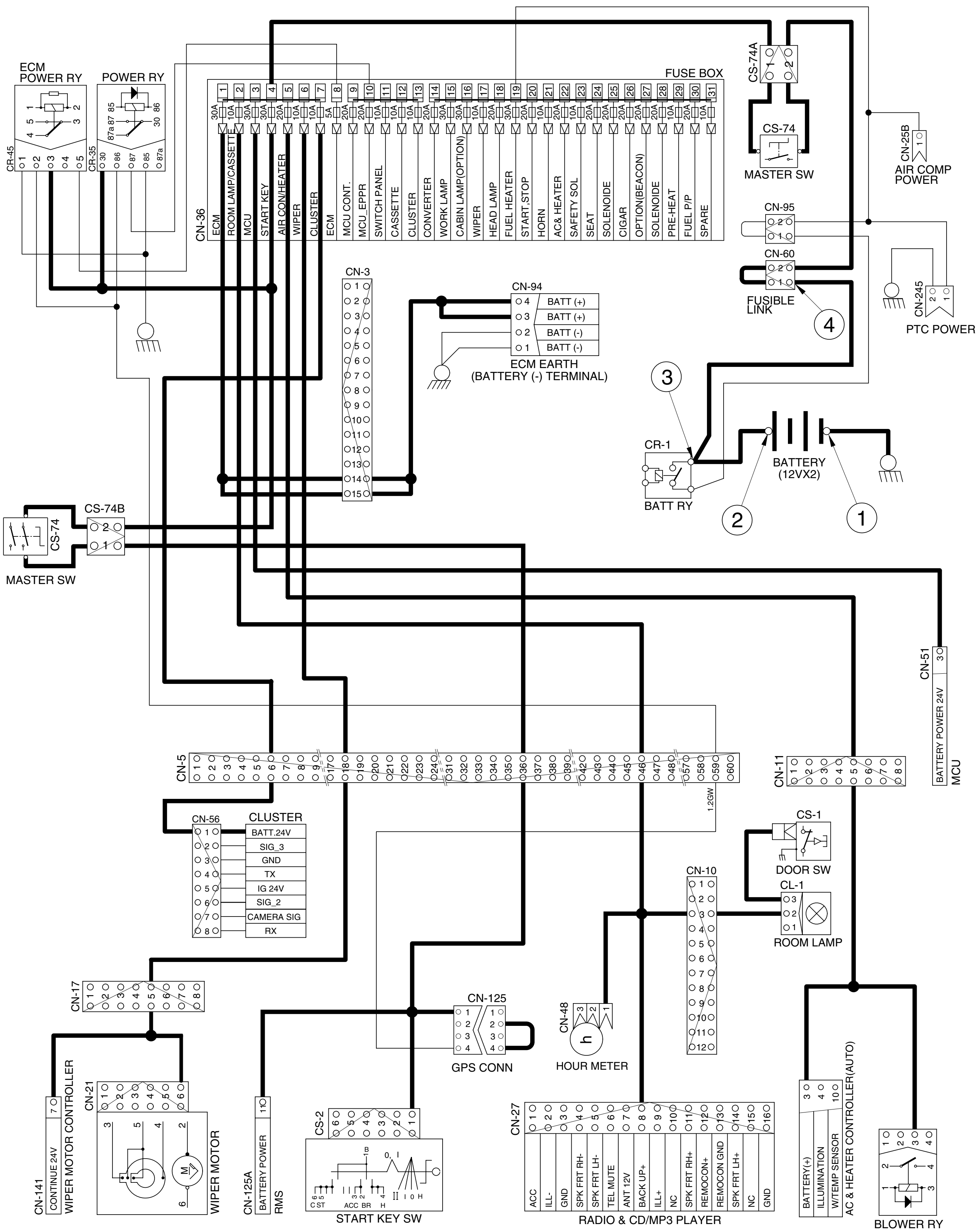
※ I/conn : Intermediate connector

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OFF	OFF	① - GND (battery 1EA)	10~12.5V
		② - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		③ - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		④ - GND (fusible link)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

POWER CIRCUIT



2. STARTING CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Battery(+) terminal → Battery relay [CR-1] → Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A] → Fuse box [No.4] → Master switch [CS-74B] → I/conn [CN-5(36)] → Start switch [CS-2(1)]

(1) When start key switch is in ON position

→ Start switch ON [CS-2 (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (60)] → Battery relay [CR-1]
→ Battery relay operating (all power is supplied with the electric component)
→ Start switch ON [CS-2 (3)] → GPS conn [CN-125 (2)→(4)] → I/conn [CN-5 (59)]
→ Power relay [CR-35 (86) → (87)] → Fuse box [No.10]
→ ECM power relay [CR-45 (2) → (5)] → Fuse box [No.8]

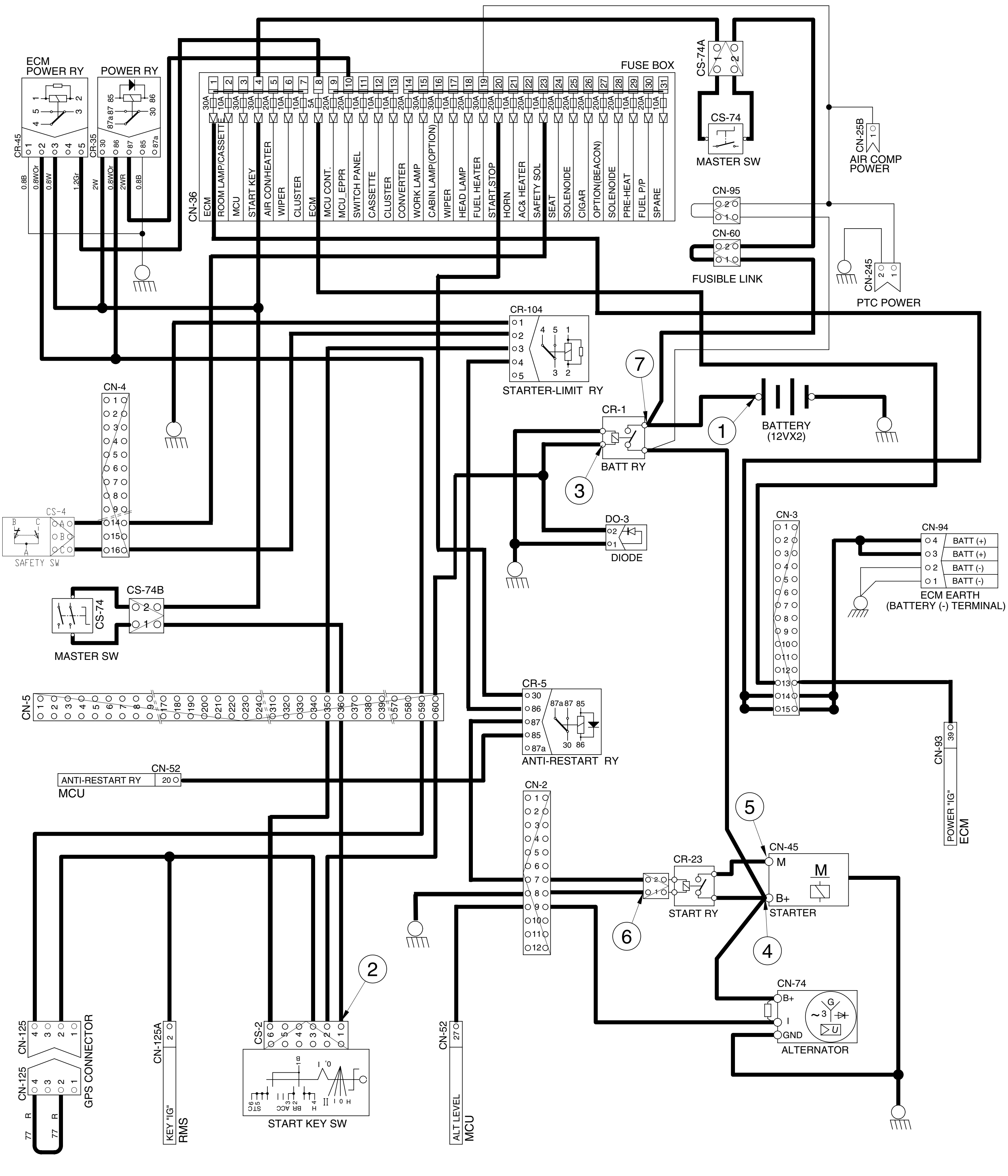
(2) When start key switch is in START position

Start switch START [CS-2 (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (35)] → Starter limit relay [CR-104 (3)→(4)]
Anti-restart relay [CR-5 (86)→(87)] → I/conn [CN-2 (7)] → Start relay [CR-23 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
OPERATING	START	① - GND (battery) ② - GND (start key) ③ - GND (battery relay M4) ④ - GND (starter B^+) ⑤ - GND (starter M) ⑥ - GND (start relay) ⑦ - GND (battery relay M8)	20~25V

STARTING CIRCUIT



3. CHARGING CIRCUIT

When the starter is activated and the engine is started, the operator releases the key switch to the ON position.

Charging current generated by operating alternator flows into the battery through the battery relay [CR-1].

The current also flows from alternator to each electrical component and controller through the fuse box.

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Warning flow

Alternator "I" terminal → I/conn [CN-2 (9)] → MCU alternator level [CN-52 (27)]
→ Cluster charging warning lamp(Via serial interface)

(2) Charging flow

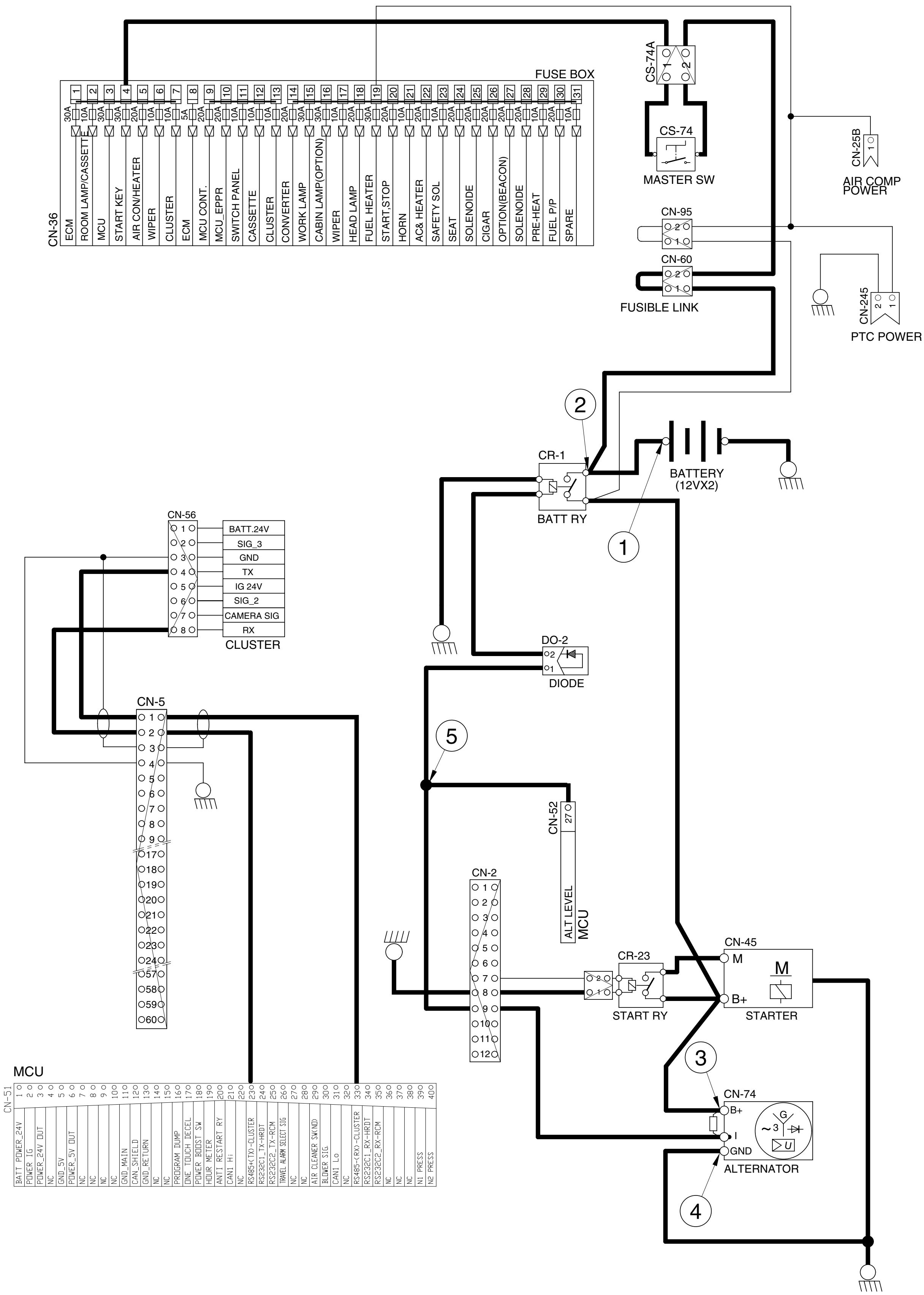
Alternator "B^+" terminal → Battery relay(M8) → Battery(+) terminal
→ Fusible link [CN-60] → Master switch [CS-74A]
→ Fuse box

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
Run	ON	① - GND (battery voltage) ② - GND (battery relay) ③ - GND (alternator B^+ terminal) ④ - GND (alternator I terminal) ⑤ - GND (MCU)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

CHARGING CIRCUIT



4. HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.15) → Work light relay [CR-4 (30,86)]
Fuse box (No.18) → Head light relay [CR-13 (30,86)]

(1) Head light switch ON

Head light switch ON [CN-116 (1)] → I/conn [CN-5 (49)] → Head light relay [CR-13 (85) → (87)]
→ Head light ON [CL-3 (2), CL-4 (2), CL-24 (2)]
→ I/conn [CN-8 (7)] → Accel dial LED ON [2]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (13)] → Cigar light [CL-2]
→ Radio & CD/MP3 player illumination ON [CN-27 (9)]

(2) Work light switch ON

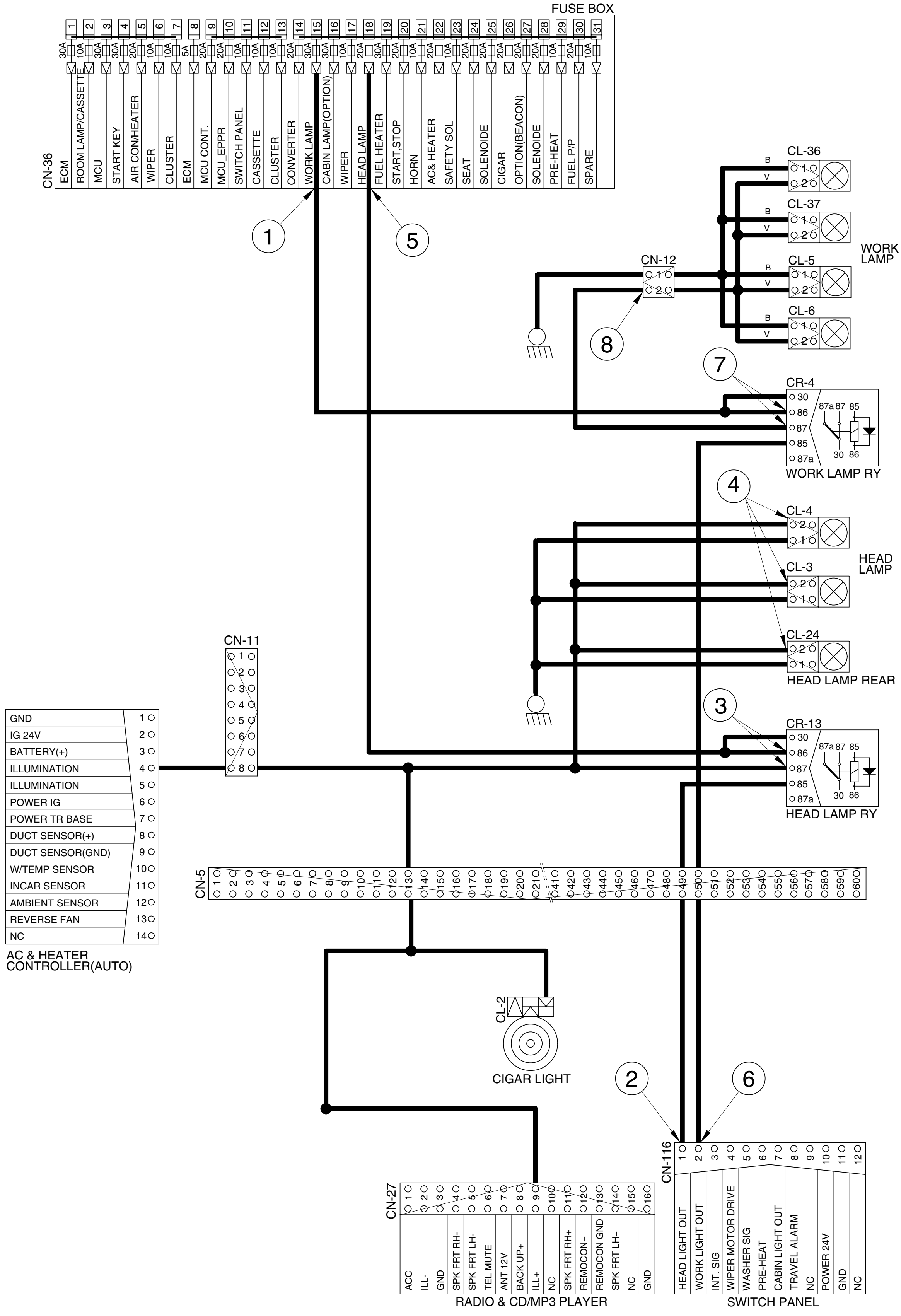
Work light switch ON [CN-116 (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (50)] → Work light relay [CR-4 (85) → (87)]
→ I/conn [CN-12 (2)] → Work light ON [CL-5 (2), CL-6 (2), CL-36 (2), CL-37 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power output) ③ - GND (head light relay) ④ - GND (head light) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (switch power output) ⑦ - GND (work light relay) ⑧ - GND (work light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT



5. BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.27) → I/conn [CN-5 (33)] → Beacon lamp switch [CN-23 (8)]
Fuse box (No.16) → Cab light relay [CR-9 (30, 86)]

(1) Beacon lamp switch ON

Beacon lamp switch ON [CS-23 (4)] → Switch indicator lamp ON [CS-23 (11)]
→ I/conn [CN-10 (10)] → Beacon lamp ON [CL-7]

(2) Cab light switch ON

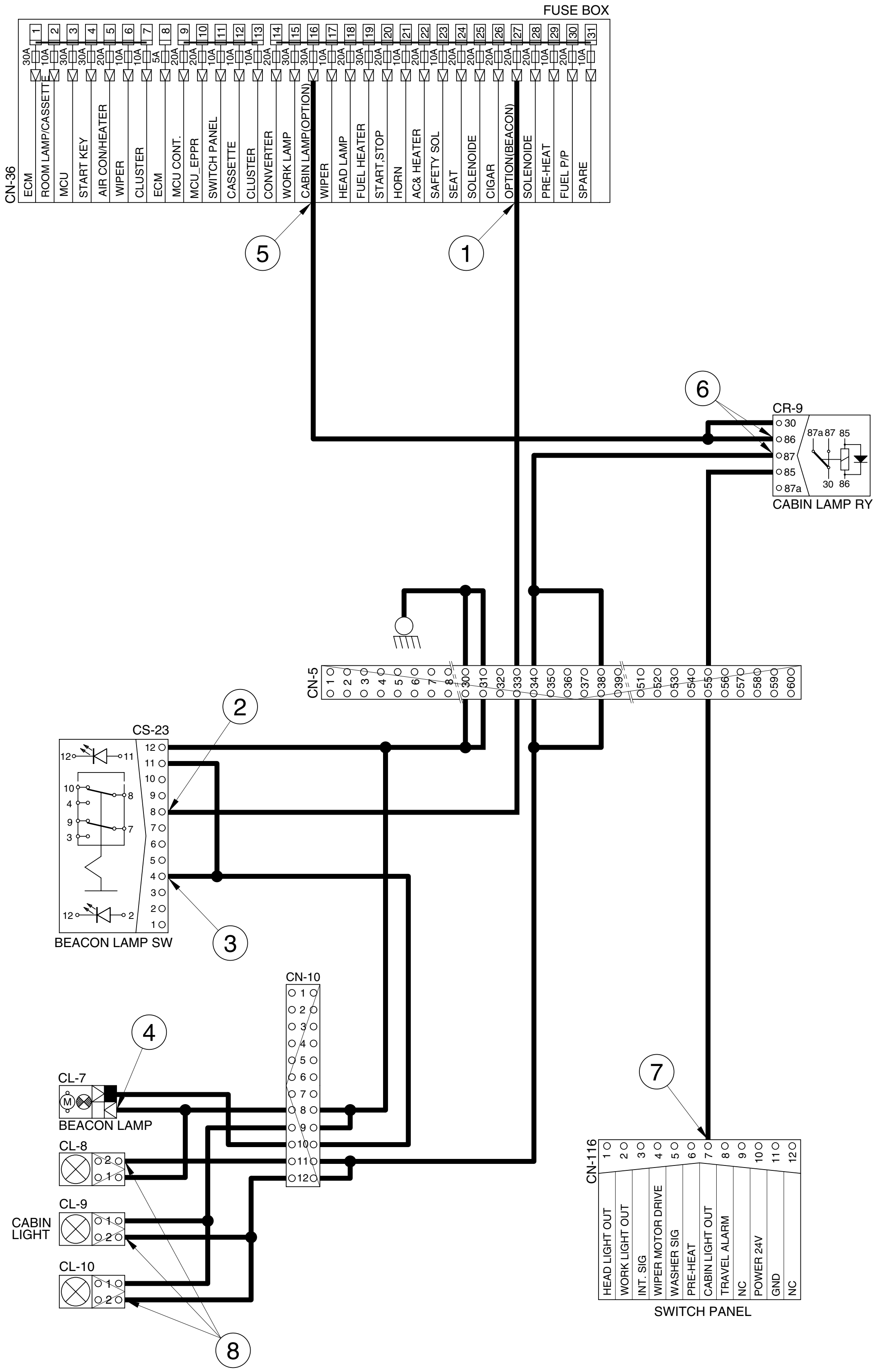
Cab light switch ON [CN-116 (7)] → I/conn [CN-5 (55)] → Cab lamp relay [CR-9 (85) → (87)]
→ I/conn [CN-5 (34, 38)] → I/conn [CN-10 (11)] → Cab light ON [CL-8 (2)]
→ I/conn [CN-10 (12)] → Cab light ON [CL-9 (2), CL-10 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power input) ③ - GND (switch power output) ④ - GND (beacon lamp) ⑤ - GND (fuse box) ⑥ - GND (cabin light relay) ⑦ - GND (switch power output) ⑧ - GND (cab light)	20~25V

※ GND : Ground

BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT



6. WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No.11) → I/conn [CN-5 (57)] → Switch panel [CN-116 (10)]

Fuse box (No.6) → I/conn [CN-5 (18)] → I/conn [CN-17 (5)] ┌→ Wiper motor controller [CN-141(7)]
└→ Wiper motor [CN-21(6)]

Fuse box (No.17) ┌→ I/conn [CN-5 (24)] → I/conn [CN-17 (4)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (6)]
└→ Washer pump [CN-22 (2)]

(2) Wiper switch ON : 1st step (Intermittent)

Wiper switch ON [CN-116 (3)] → I/conn [CN-17 (8)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (10) → (3)]
→ Wiper motor intermittently operating [CN-21 (4)]

(3) Wiper switch ON : 2nd step (continual)

Wiper switch ON [CN-116(4)] → I/conn[CN-17(2)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141(2) → (4)]
→ Wiper motor operating [CN-21(2)]

(4) Washer switch ON

Washer switch ON [CN-116 (5)] → I/conn [CN-17 (7)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (9) → (8)]
→ I/conn [CN-17 (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (19)] → Washer pump [CN-22 (1)] → Washer operating
Wiper switch ON [CN-116 (4)] → I/conn[CN-17 (2)] → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (2) → (4)]
→ Wiper motor operating [CN-21 (2)]

(5) Auto parking(when switch OFF)

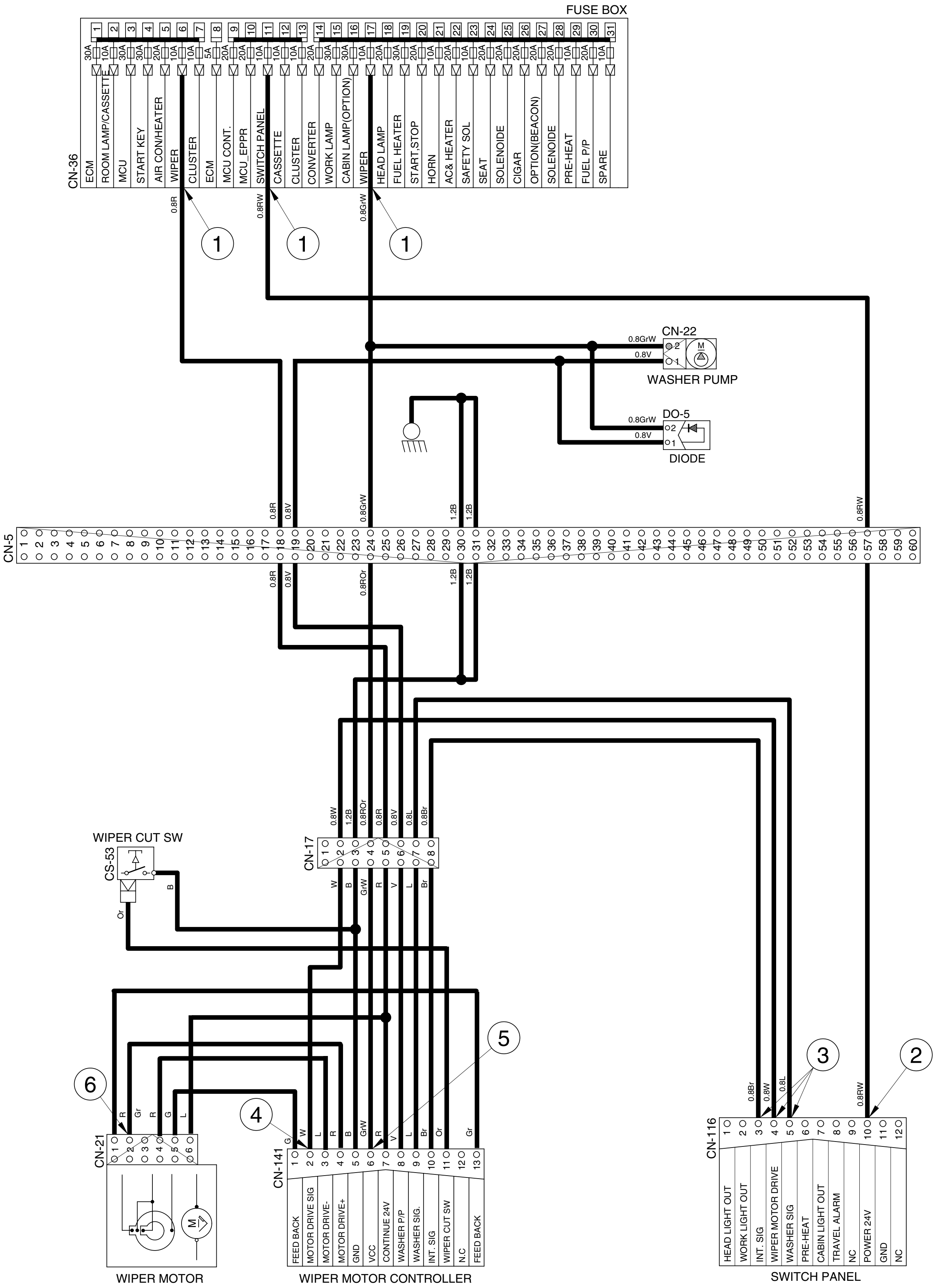
Switch OFF [CN-116 (4)] → Wiper motor parking position by wiper motor controller

2) CHECK POINT

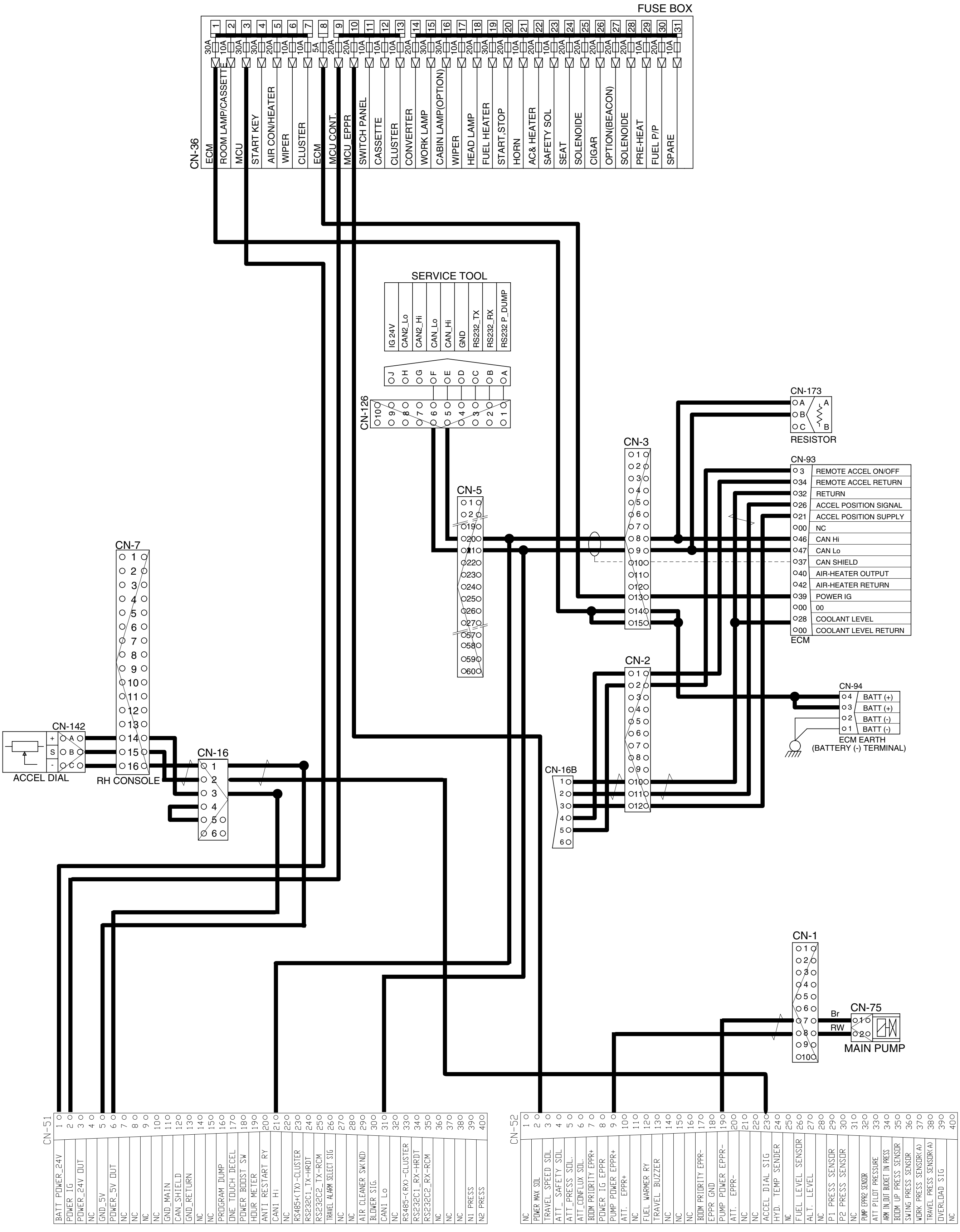
Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
STOP	ON	① - GND (fuse box) ② - GND (switch power input)	24V
		③ - GND (switch power output) ④ - GND (wiper power input)	0 ~ 5V
		⑤ - GND (wiper power output)	24V
		⑥ - GND (wiper motor)	0 or 24V

※ GND : Ground

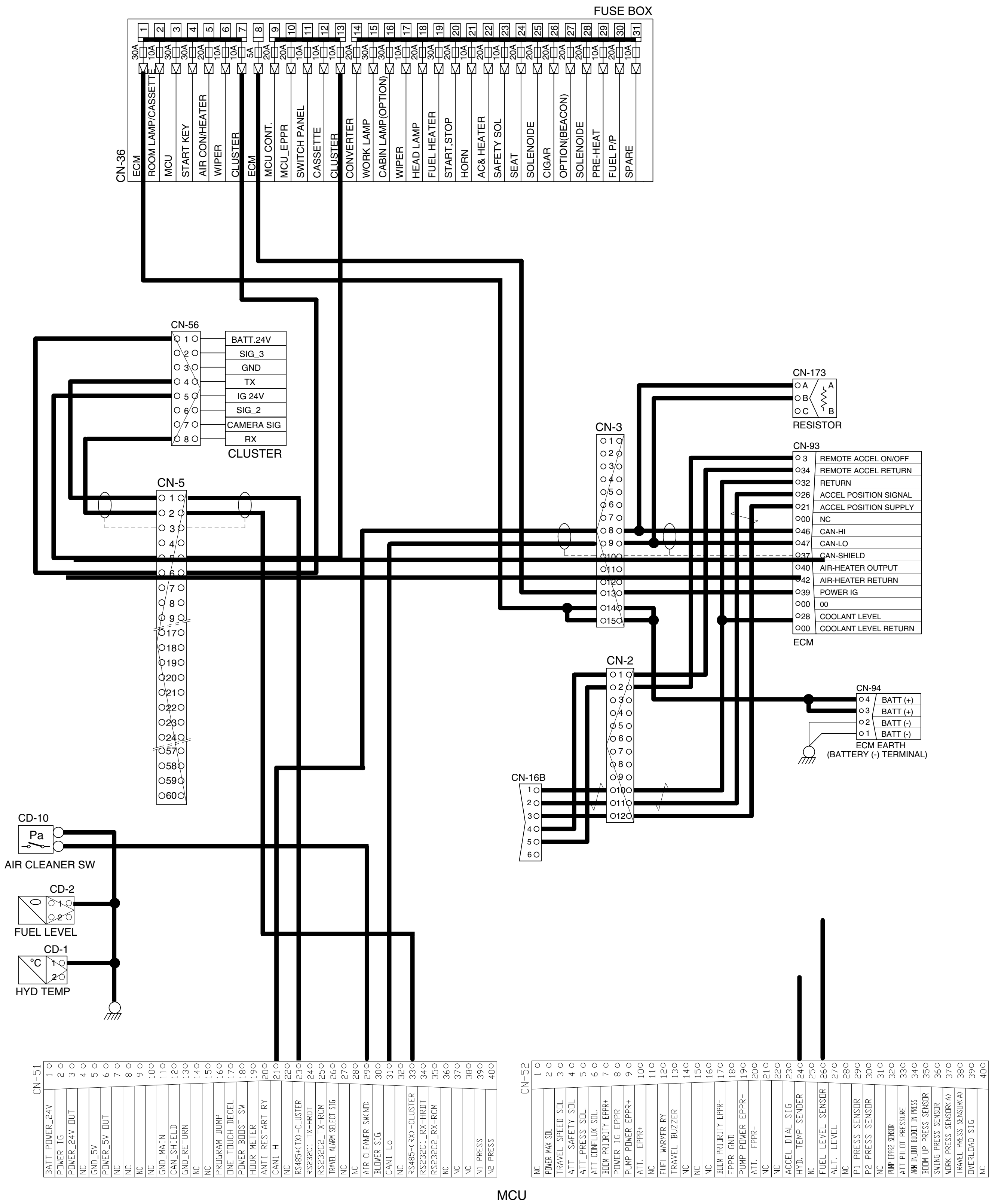
WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT



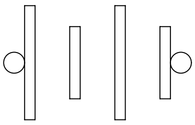
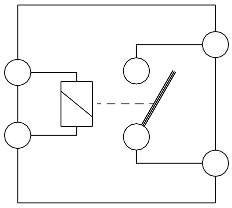
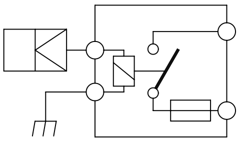
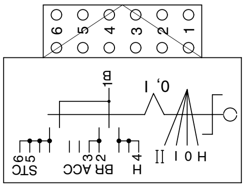
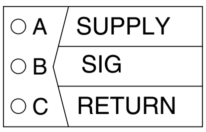
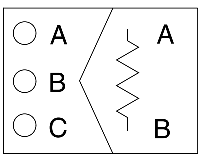
CONTROLLER CIRCUIT

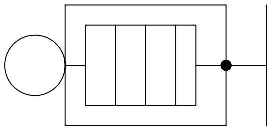
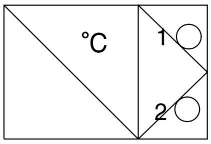
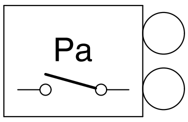
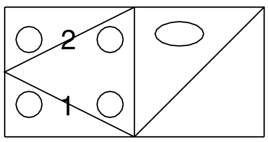
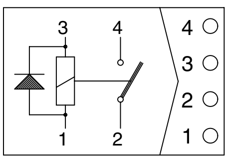
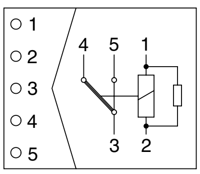


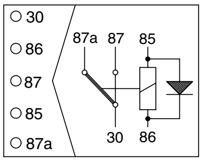
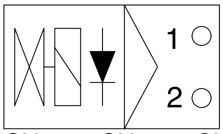
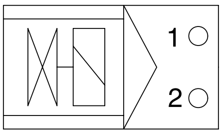
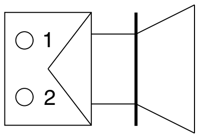
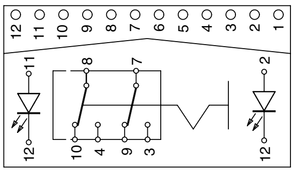
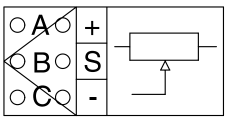
MONITORING CIRCUIT

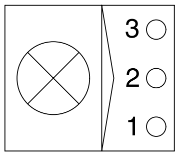
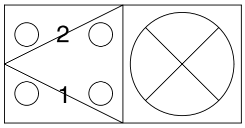
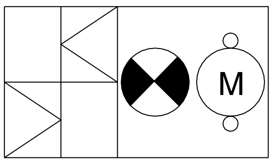
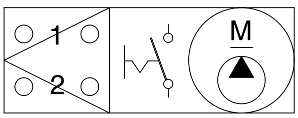
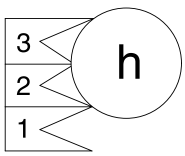
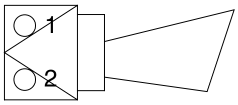


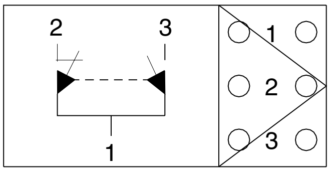
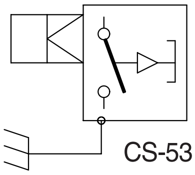
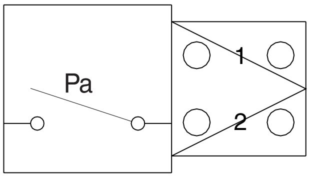
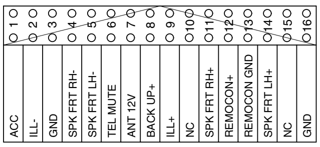
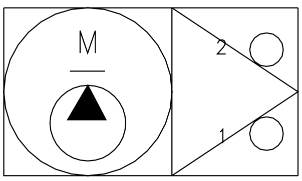
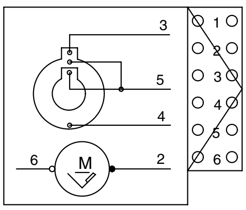
GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SPECIFICATION

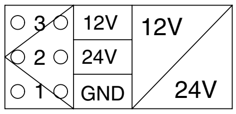
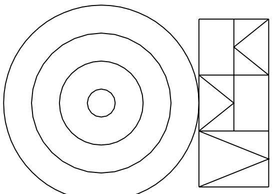
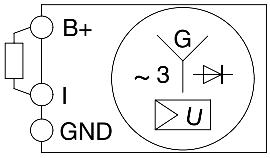
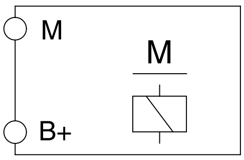
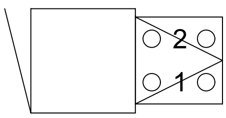
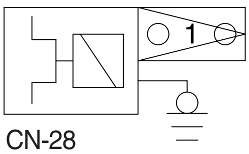
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Battery		12V × 100Ah (2EA)	※ Check specific gravity 1.280 over : Over charged 1.280 ~ 1.250 : Normal 1.250 below : Recharging
Battery relay	 CR-1	Rated load : 24V 100A (continuity) 1000A (30seconds)	※ Check coil resistance(M4 to M4) Normal : About 50 Ω ※ Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Glow plug relay	 CR-24	24V 200A	※ Check contact Normal : 0.942 Ω (For terminal 1-GND)
Start key	 CS-2	B-BR : 24V 1A B-ACC : 24V 10A B-ST : 24V 40A	※ Check contact OFF : ∞ Ω (for each terminal) ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-3 and 1-2) START : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-5)
Pressure sensor	 CD-6 CD-7 CD-24 CD-31 CD-32 CD-35 CD-42 CD-43 CD-44 CD-69 CD-70 CD-71	8~30V	※ Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Resistor	 CN-173	4W	※ Check resistance A-B : 120 Ω

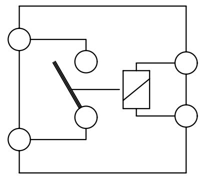
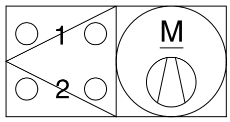
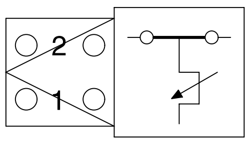
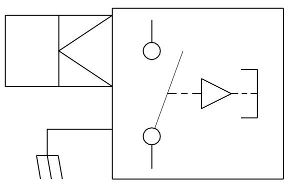
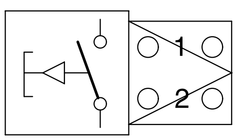
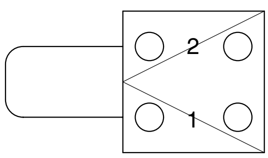
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Glow plug	 CN-80	24V 200A	※ Check resistance 0.25~0.12 Ω
Temperature sensor (hydraulic)	 CD-1	-	※ Check resistance 50˚C : 804 Ω 80˚C : 310 Ω 100˚C : 180 Ω
Air cleaner pressure switch	 CD-10	(N.O TYPE)	※ Check contact High level : ∞ Ω Low level : 0 Ω
Fuel sender	 CD-2	-	※ Check resistance Full : 50 Ω 6/12 : 350 Ω 11/12 : 100 Ω 5/12 : 400 Ω 10/12 : 150 Ω 4/12 : 450 Ω 9/12 : 200 Ω 3/12 : 500 Ω 8/12 : 250 Ω 2/12 : 550 Ω 7/12 : 300 Ω 1/12 : 600 Ω Empty warning : 700 Ω
Relay (air con blower)		24V 20A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 200 Ω (for terminal 1-3) 0 Ω (for terminal 2-4)
Relay	 CR-2 CR-36 CR-45 CR-62 CR-104	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (for terminal 3-4) ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-5)

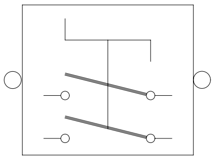
Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Relay	 CR-4 CR-5 CR-7 CR-9 CR-13 CR-35 CR-46	24V 16A	※ Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 85-86) 0 Ω (for terminal 30-87a) ∞ Ω (for terminal 30-87)
Solenoid valve	 CN-66 CN-68 CN-70 CN-88 CN-140 CN-149 CN-236 CN-237 CN-242	24V 1A	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
EPPR valve	 CN-75 CN-133	700mA	※ Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Speaker	 CN-23(LH) CN-24(RH)	20W	※ Check resistance Normal : A few Ω
Switch (locking type)	 CS-23 CS-50 CS-52 CS-67 CS-73 CS-82 CS-83 CS-99 CS-100	24V 8A	※ Check contact Normal ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) ∞ Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10) OFF : ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) 0 Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10)
Accel dial	 CN-142	-	※ Check resist Normal : About 5k Ω (for terminal A-C) ※ Check voltage Normal : About 5V (for terminal A-C) : 2~4.5V (for terminal C-B)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Room lamp	 CL-1	24V 10W	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.0 Ω ON : 0 Ω (For terminal 1-2) ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-3) OFF : ∞ Ω (For terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (For terminal 1-3)
Head lamp, Work lamp, Cab lamp	 CL-3 CL-4 CL-5 CL-6 CL-8 CL-9 CL-10 CL-24 CL-36 CL-37	24V 65W (H3 Type)	※ Check disconnection Normal : 1.2 Ω
Beacon lamp	 CL-7	21V 70W (H1 Type)	※ Check disconnection Normal : A few Ω
Fuel filler pump	 CN-61	24V 10A 35 l /min	※ Check resistance Normal : 1.0 Ω
Hour meter	 CN-48	16~32V	※ Check operation Supply power(24V) to terminal No.2 and connect terminal No.1 and ground
Horn	 CN-20 CN-25	DC22~28V 2A	※ Check operation Supply power(24V) to each terminal and connect ground.

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Safety switch	 CS-4	24V 15A (N.C TYPE)	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2) ∞ Ω (for terminal 1-3) Operating : ∞ Ω (for terminal 1-2) 0 Ω (for terminal 1-3)
Wiper cut switch	 CS-53	24V (N.O TYPE)	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (one pin to ground)
Receiver dryer	 CN-29	24V 2.5A	※Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Radio & CD/MP3 plalyer	 CN-27	24V 2A	※Check voltage 20~25V (for terminal 1-3, 3-8)
Washer pump	 CN-22	24V 3.8A	※Check contact Normal : 10.7 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Wiper motor	 CN-21	24V 2A	※Check disconnection Normal : 7 Ω (for terminal 2-6)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
DC/DC Converter	 CN-138	12V 3A	24V (1-2) 12V (1-3)
Cigar lighter	 CL-2	24V 5A 1.4W	※Check coil resistance Normal : About 1M Ω ※Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω Operating time : 5~15sec
Alternator	 CN-74	Delco Remy 24V 55A	※Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal B^+-I) Normal : 24~27.5V
Starter	 CN-45	Denso 24V 4.5kW	※Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Travel alarm	 CN-81	24V 0.5A	※Check contact Normal : 5.2 Ω
Aircon compressor	 CN-28	24V 79W	※Check contact Normal : 13.4 Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Start relay	 CR-23	24V 300A	※Check contact Normal : 0.94 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Blower motor		24V 9.5A	※Check resistance Normal : 2.5 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Duct sensor (switch)		1˚C OFF 4˚C ON	※Check resistance Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2), the atmosphere temp : Over 4˚C
Door switch	 CS-1	24V 2W	※Check resistance Normal : About 5M Ω
Switch (power max, one touch decel, horn, breaker)	 CS-5 CS-19 CS-26 CS-29	24V 6A	※Check resistance Normal : ∞ Ω
Fusible link	 CN-60 CN-95	60A	※Check disconnection Normal : 0 Ω (connect ring terminal and check resist between terminal 1 and 2)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Master switch	 CS-74	6-36V	※Check disconnection Normal : 0.1 Ω

GROUP 4 CONNECTORS

1. CONNECTOR DESTINATION

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-1	AMP	10	I/conn (Frame harness-Pump PS harness)	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-2	AMP	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-3	AMP	15	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-4	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness LH-Frame harness)	368047-1	S816-116002
CN-5	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Side harness RH-Frame harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB12-60PAE-L018
CN-7	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	368047-1	S816-116002
CN-8	AMP	12	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-10	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (Cab harness-Side harness RH)	DT06-12S-EP06	DT04-12P-BE02
CN-11	DEUTSCH	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Aircon harness)	DT06-8S-EP06	-
CN-12	DEUTSCH	2	I/conn (Frame harness-Boom wire harness)	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E004
CN-14	AMP	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Bucket EPPR)	S816-008002	S816-108002
CN-15	AMP	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Breaker solenoid)	S816-012002	S816-112002
CN-16	AMP	6	Emergency engine start & speed control	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-17	DEUTSCH	8	I/conn (Wiper harness-Side harness RH)	DT06-8S-EP06	DT04-8P
CN-20	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-21	AMP	6	Wiper motor	925276-0	-
CN-22	KET	2	Washer pump	MG640605	-
CN-23	KET	2	Speaker-LH	MG610070	-
CN-24	KET	2	Speaker-RH	MG610070	-
CN-25	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-27	KUM	16	Radio & CD/MP3 player	PK145-16017	-
CN-28	KUM	1	Aircon compressor	NMWP01F-B	-
CN-29	KET	2	Receiver dryer	MG640795	-
CN-36	-	-	Fuse & relay box	21Q7-10910	-
CN-45	RING-TERM	-	Starter motor B^+	S820-308000	-
CN-48	AMP	1	Hour meter	2-520193-2	-
CN-51	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SA	-
CN-52	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SB	-
CN-53	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SC	-
CN-56	DEUTSCH	6	Cluster	-	DT04-6P-E005
CN-60	YAZAKI	2	Fusible link	21N4-01320	7122-4125-50
CN-61	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel filler pump	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-66	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-68	DEUTSCH	2	Safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-70	DEUTSCH	2	Travel high solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-

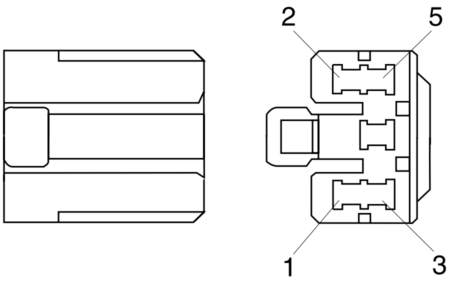
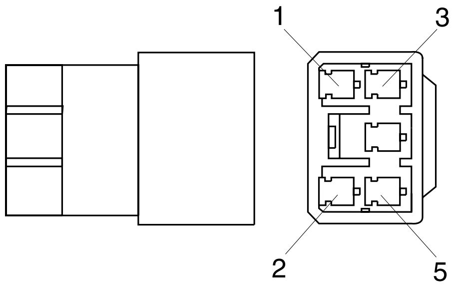
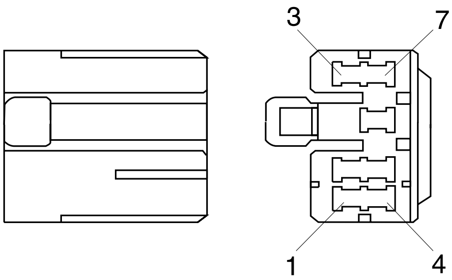
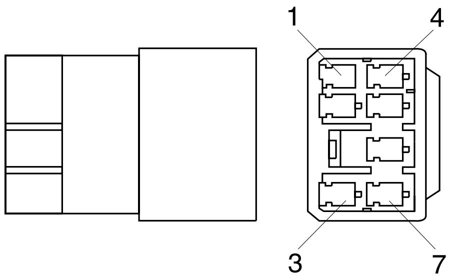
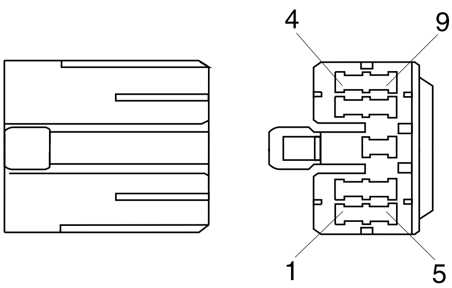
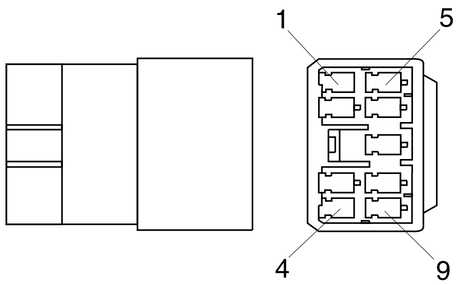
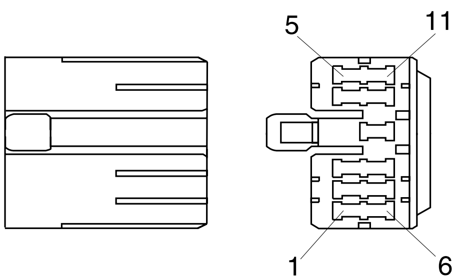
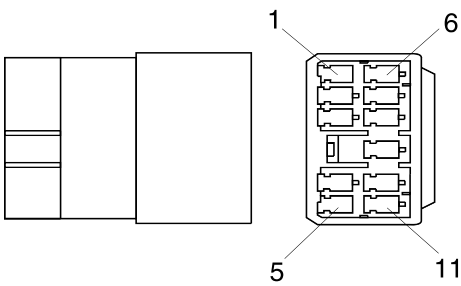
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
CN-74	RING-TERM	2	Alternator "I" terminal	S820-105000	-
CN-75	AMP	2	Pump EPPR	S816-002002	-
CN-80	RING-TERM	-	Glow plug	S820-306000	-
CN-81	DEUTSCH	2	Travel buzzer solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-88	DEUTSCH	2	Power max solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-93	DEUTSCH	50	ECM	DRC26-50S-04	-
CN-94	DEUTSCH	4	ECM earth	DTP06-4S-EP06	-
CN-95	KET	2	Fusible link	21N4-01311	S813-130201
CN-96	AMP	4	Fuel warmer	2-967325-3	-
CN-116	AMP	12	Switch panel	176116	-
CN-125	Econoseal J	4	GPS connector	S816-004002	S816-104002
CN-126	AMP	10	Service tool	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-133	DEUTSCH	2	Boom priority solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-135	DEUTSCH	2	Arm regeneration solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-138	FASTEN	3	DC/DC Converter	S810-003202	-
CN-139	FASTEN	2	12V socket	S810-002202	172434-2
CN-140	DEUTSCH	2	Quick clamp solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-141	AMP	13	Wiper motor controller	172498-1	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-142	DEUTSCH	3	Accel dial	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CN-144	KET	20	Handsfree	MG610240	-
CN-147	AMP	4	Fuel-heater	2-967325-3	-
CN-149	DEUTSCH	2	Attach safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-154	DEUTSCH	2	Cooling fan	DT06-2S-EP06	
CN-155	AMP	2	Reverse solenoid	85202-1	
CN-156	DEUTSCH	2	Air seat	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-170	AMP	2	Heated seat	174352-2	174354-2
CN-173	DEUTSCH	3	Resistor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-236	DEUTSCH	2	Attach pressure solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-237	DEUTSCH	2	Attach conflux solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-242	DEUTSCH	2	Attach flow solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-244	AMP	2	CAN 2	-	S816-102002
CN-245	AMP	2	PTC power	S813-030201	-
CN-246	KET	12	USB & Socket assy	MG610240	-
CN-247	DEUTSCH	8	PWM convert	DT06-08SA-EP06	DT04-8P
CN-249	DEUTSCH	4	Rear view camera	DT06-4S-EP06	DT04-4P-E005
CN-255	AMP	2	PTC Power	S813-030201	-
CN-256	AMP	8	Proportional	-	S816-108002
CN-258	KET	1	Air compressor power	MG640944-5	MG650943-5

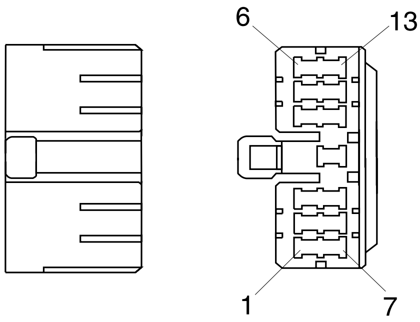
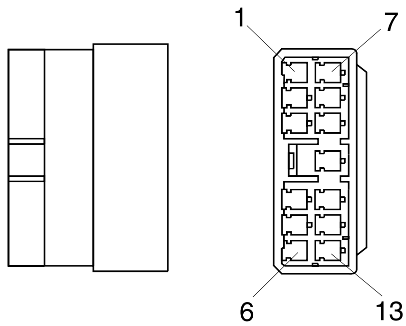
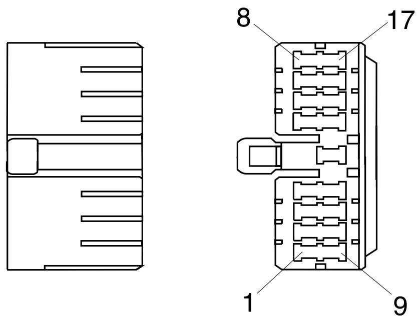
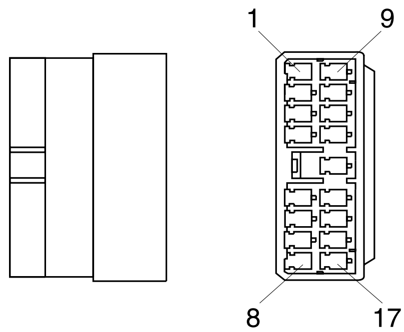
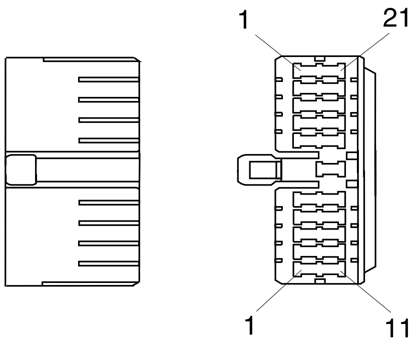
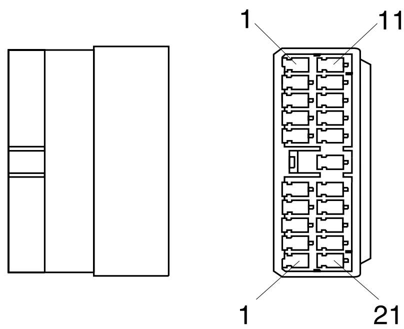
Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
· Relay					
CR-1	RING-TERM	-	Battery relay	ST710285-2	-
CR-2	-	5	Horn relay	-	-
CR-4	-	5	Working lamp relay	-	-
CR-5	-	5	Anti restart relay	-	-
CR-7	-	5	Aircon compressor relay	-	-
CR-9	-	5	Head lamp relay	-	-
CR-13	-	5	Cabin lamp relay	-	-
CR-23	KET	2	Start relay	S814-002001	S814-102001
CR-24	RING TERM	1	Preheat relay	S822-014000	-
CR-35	-	5	Power relay	-	-
CR-36	-	5	Preheat relay	-	-
CR-45	-	5	ECM power relay	-	-
CR-46	-	5	Fuel warmer relay	-	-
CR-62	-	5	Breaker relay	-	-
· Switch					
CS-1	SHUR	1	Door switch	S822-014002	S822-114002
CS-2	WP	6	Start key switch	S816-006002	-
CS-4	DEUTSCH	3	Safety switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CS-5	DEUTSCH	2	Horn switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-19	DEUTSCH	2	One touch decel switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-20	AMP	1	Safety switch	S822-014002	-
CS-23	SWF	12	Beacon lamp switch	SWF589790	-
CS-26	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-26A	AMP	2	Breaker pedal switch	S816-002002	S816-102002
CS-27	SWF	10	Breaker switch	SWF 593757	-
CS-29	DEUTSCH	2	Power max switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-50	SWF	12	Overload switch	SWF589790	-
CS-52	SWF	10	Econo switch	SWF 593757	-
CS-53	AMP	1	Wiper cut switch	S822-014002	-
CS-67	SWF	12	Quick clamp switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-73	SWF	12	Reverse fan switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-74	AMP	2	Master switch	S813-030201	-
CS-82	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-83	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-99	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-
CS-100	SWF	12	Spare switch	SWF 589790	-

Connector number	Type	No. of pin	Destination	Connector part No.	
				Female	Male
· Light					
CL-1	KET	3	Room lamp	MG651032	-
CL-2	AMP	1	Cigar light	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-3	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CL-4	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-5	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-6	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-7	SHUR	1	Beacon lamp	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-8	DEUTSCH	2	Cab lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-9	DEUTSCH	2	Cab lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-10	DEUTSCH	2	Cab lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-24	DEUTSCH	2	Rear work lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-36	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-37	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
· Sensor, sendor					
CD-1	AMP	2	Hydraulic oil temp sender	85202-1	-
CD-2	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel sender	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-6	DEUTSCH	3	Travel pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-7	DEUTSCH	3	Working pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-10	RING TERM	-	Air cleaner switch	ST730135-2	S820-104002
CD-24	DEUTSCH	3	Swing sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-31	DEUTSCH	3	Overload sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-E005
CD-32	DEUTSCH	3	Boom up sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-35	DEUTSCH	3	Arm & bucket in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-42	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 1	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-43	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 2	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-44	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 3	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-45	DEUTSCH	2	WIF sensor	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-69	DEUTSCH	3	Attach pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-70	DEUTSCH	3	N1 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-71	DEUTSCH	3	N2 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-

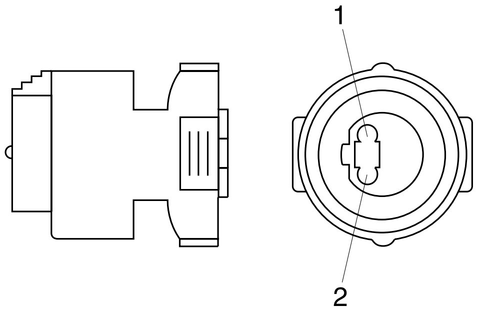
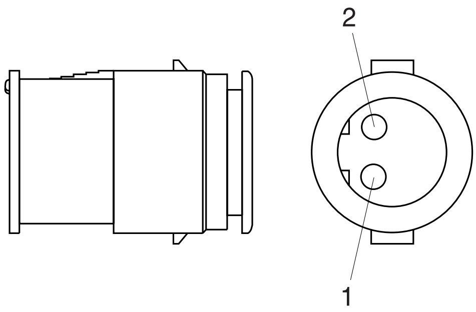
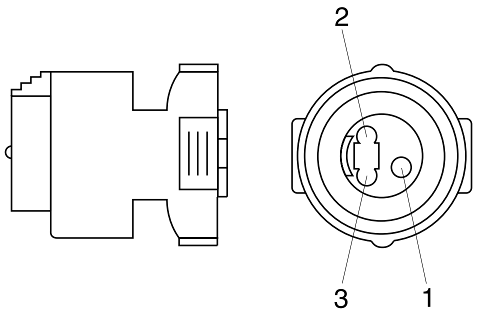
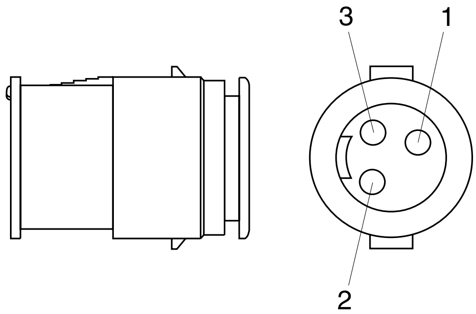
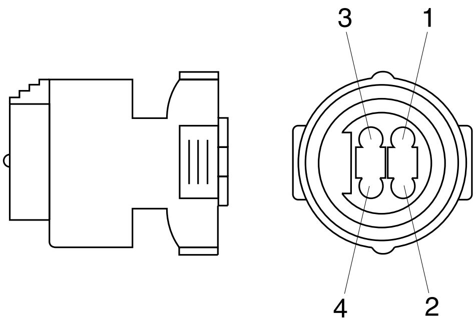
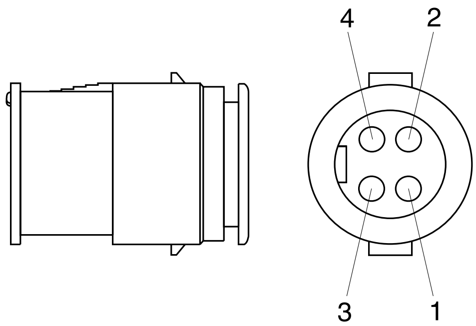
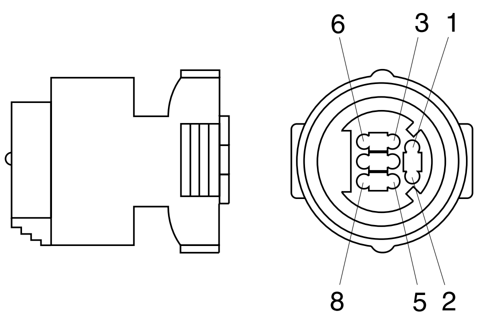
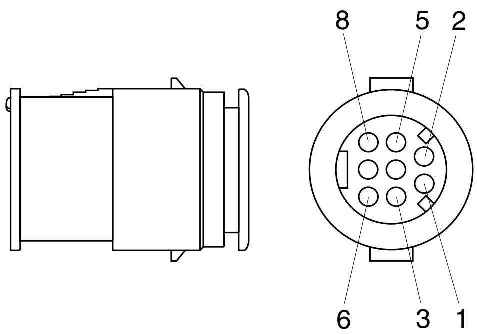
2. CONNECTION TABLE FOR CONNECTORS

1) PA TYPE CONNECTOR

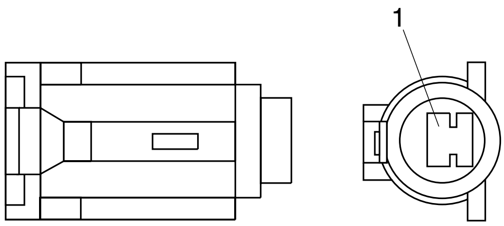
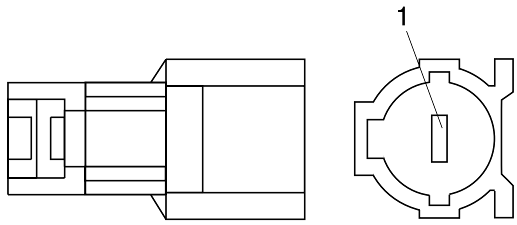
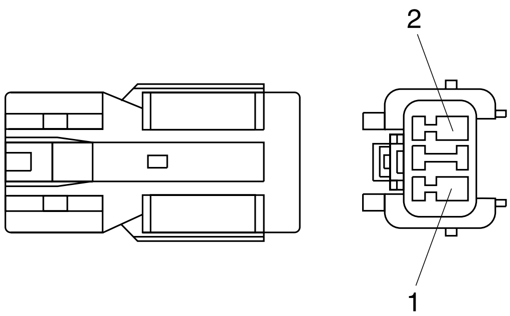
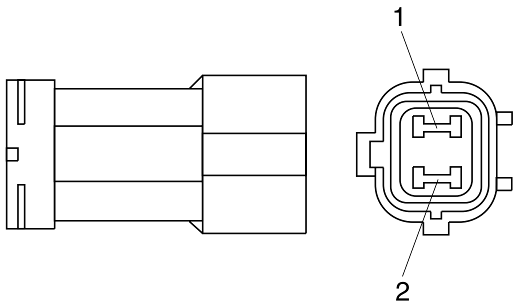
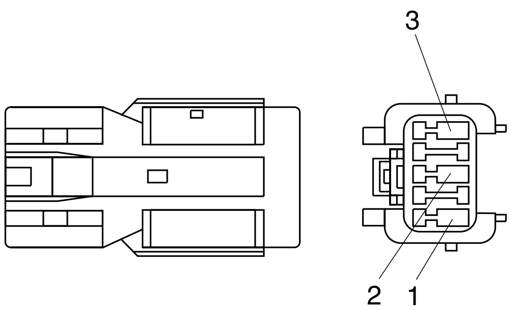
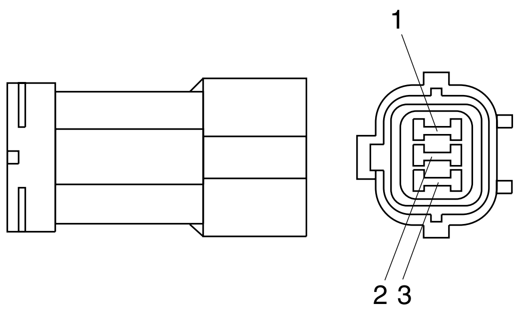
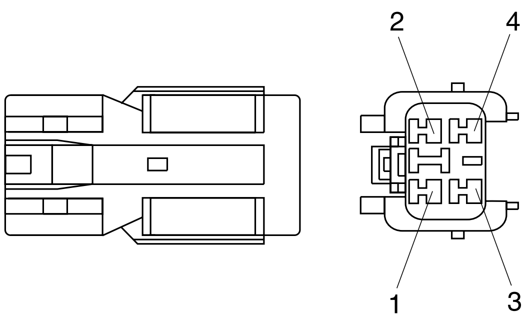
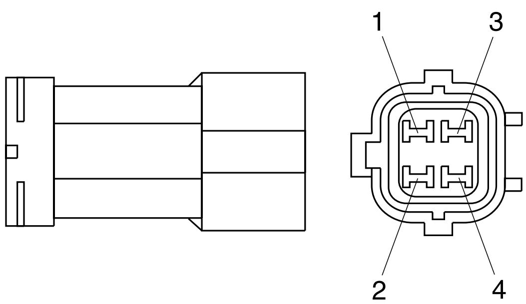
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
5	 S811-005002	 S811-105002
7	 S811-007002	 S811-107002
9	 S811-009002	 3S811-109002
11	 S811-011002	 S811-111002

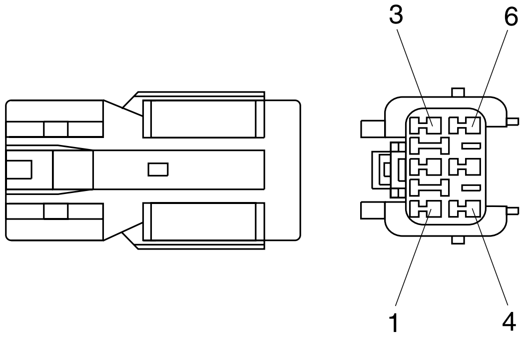
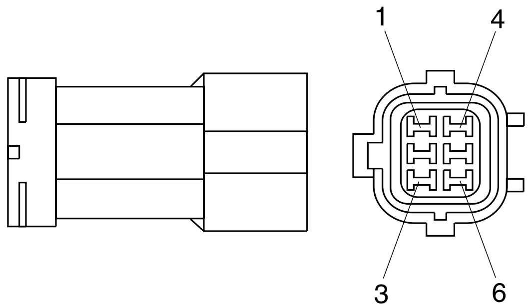
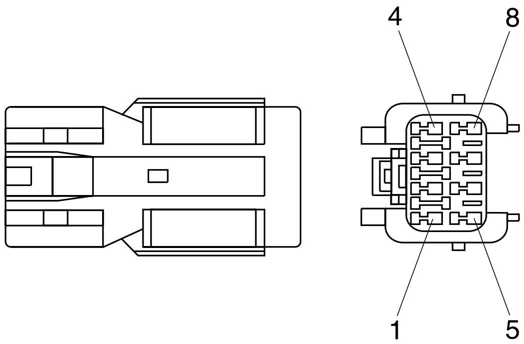
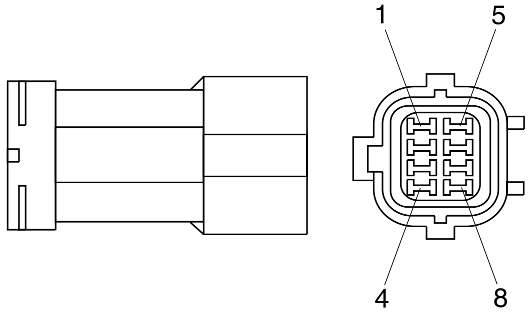
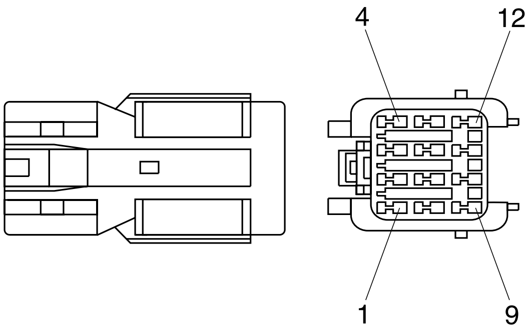
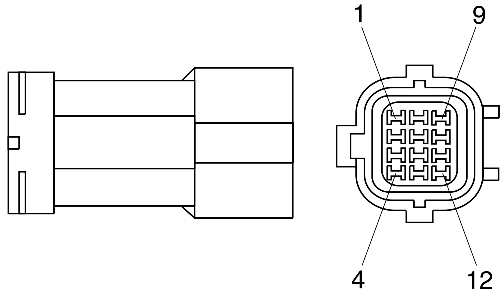
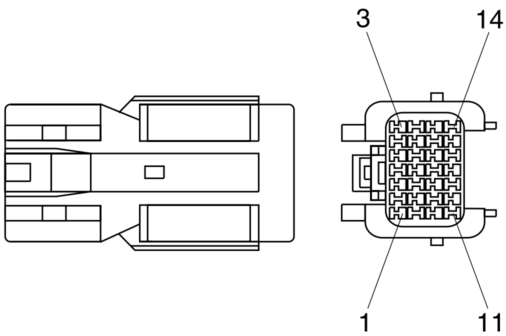
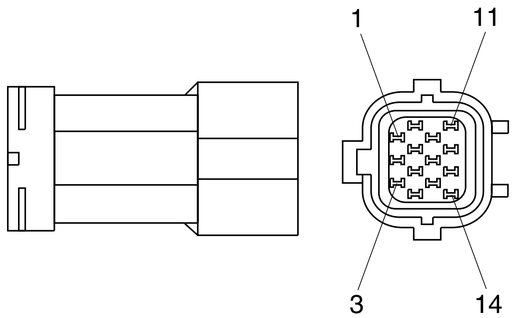
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
13	 S811-013002	 S811-113002
17	 S811-017002	 S811-117002
21	 S811-021002	 S811-121002

2) J TYPE CONNECTOR

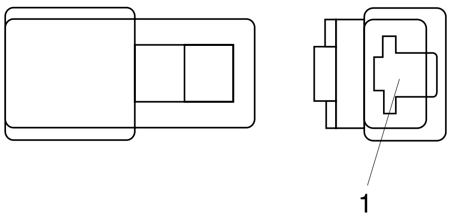
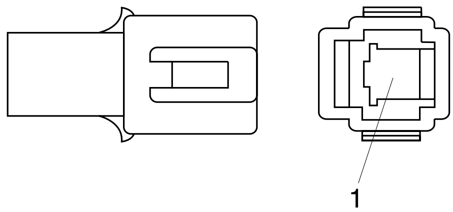
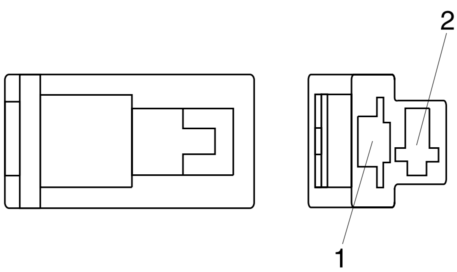
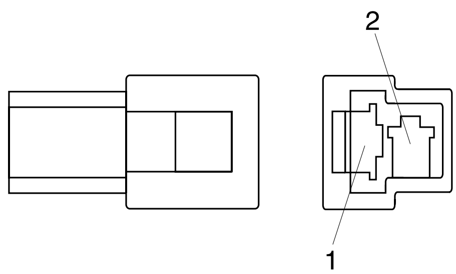
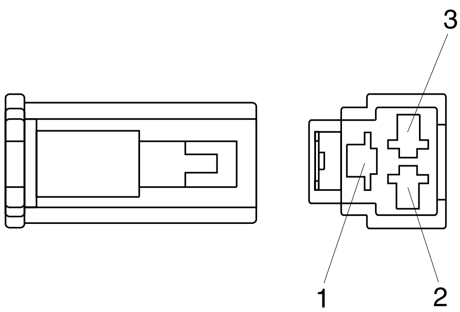
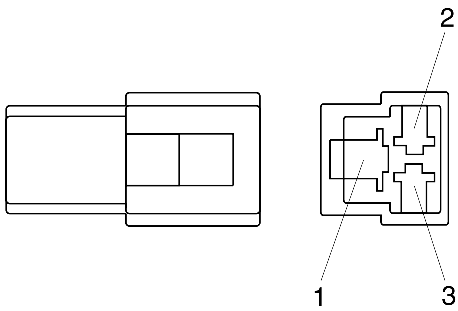
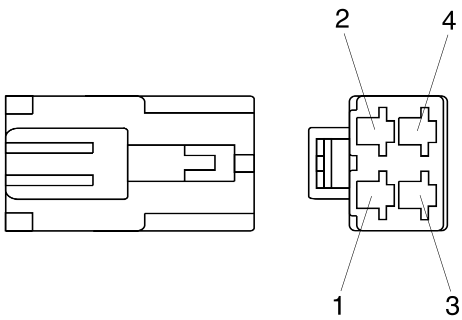
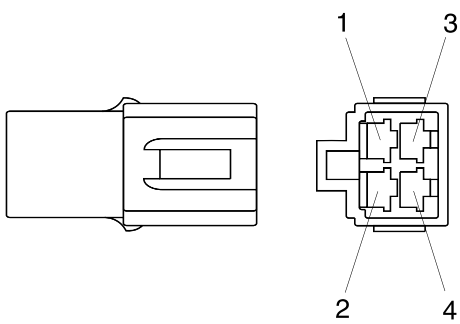
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S816-002001	 S816-102001
3	 S816-003001	 S816-103001
4	 S816-004001	 S816-104001
8	 S816-008001	 S816-108001

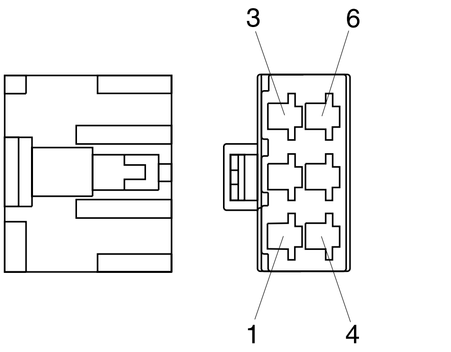
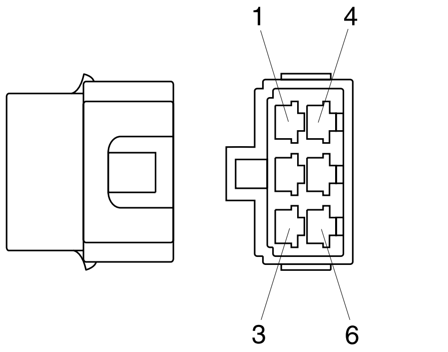
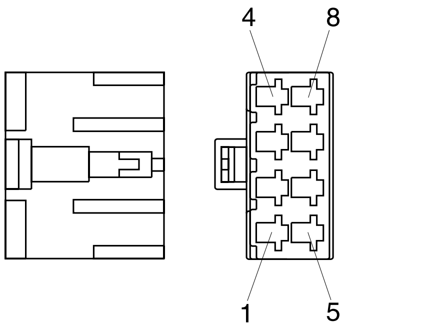
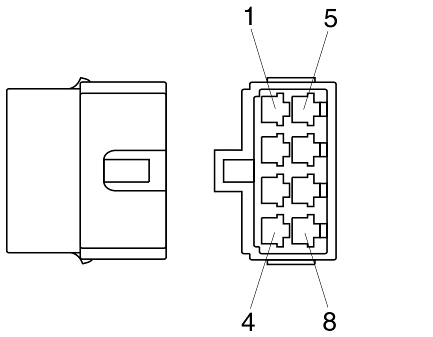
3) SWP TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S814-001000	 S814-101000
2	 S814-002000	 S814-102000
3	 S814-003000	 S814-103000
4	 S814-004000	 S814-104000

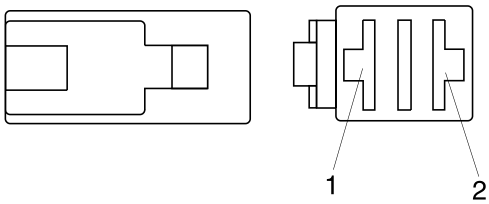
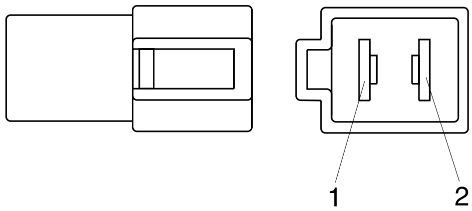
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S814-006000	 S814-106000
8	 S814-008000	 S814-108000
12	 S814-012000	 S814-112000
14	 S814-014000	 S814-114000

4) CN TYPE CONNECTOR

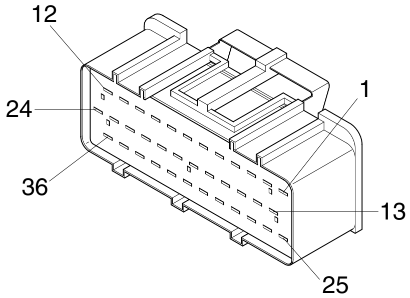
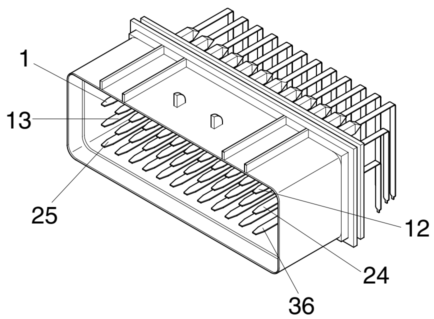
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S810-001202	 S810-101202
2	 S810-002202	 S810-102202
3	 S810-003202	 S810-103202
4	 S810-004202	 S810-104202

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S810-006202	 S810-106202
8	 S810-008202	 S810-108202

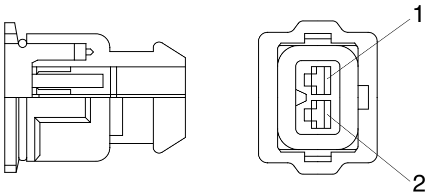
5) 375 FASTEN TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 S810-002402	 S810-102402

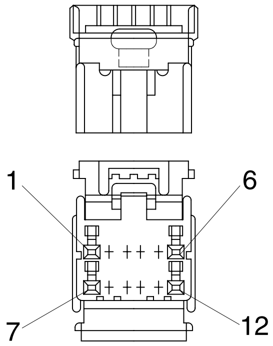
6) AMP ECONOSEAL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
36	 344111-1	 344108-1

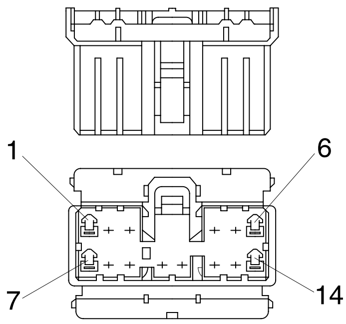
7) AMP TIMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 85202-1	

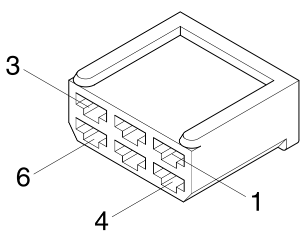
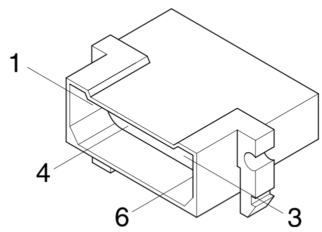
8) AMP 040 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
12	 174045-2	

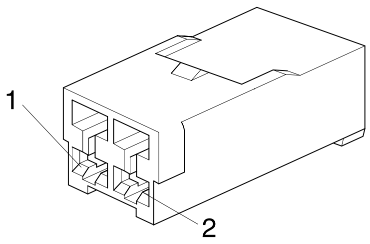
9) AMP 070 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	 173852	

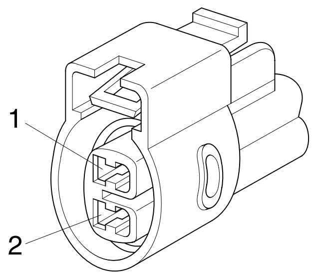
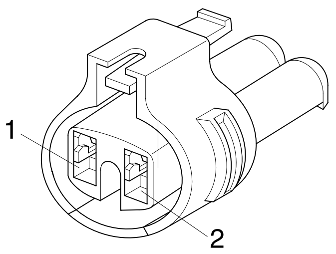
10) AMP FASTIN - FASTON CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 925276-0	 480003-9

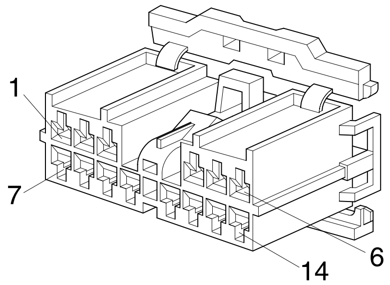
11) KET 090 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG610070	

12) KET 090 WP CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 MG640605	
2	 MG640795	

13) KET SDL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	 MG610406	

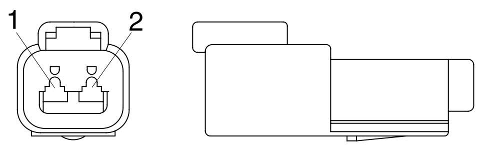
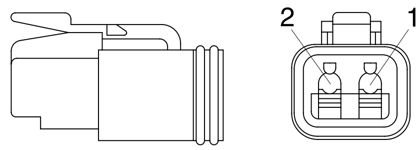
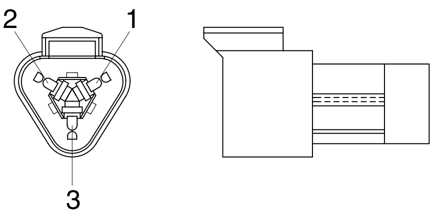
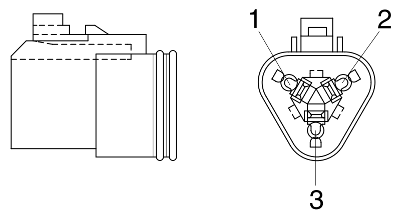
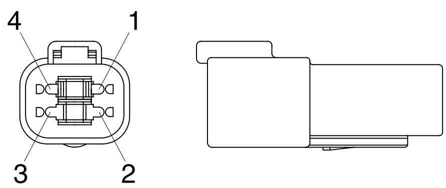
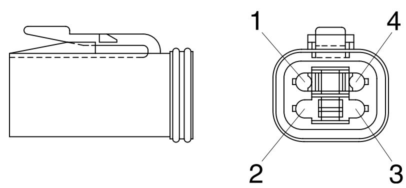
14) DEUTSCH DT CONNECTORS

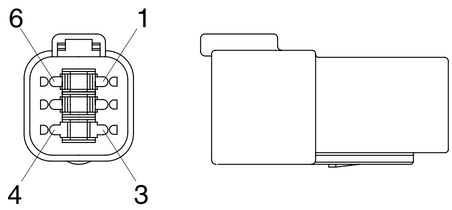
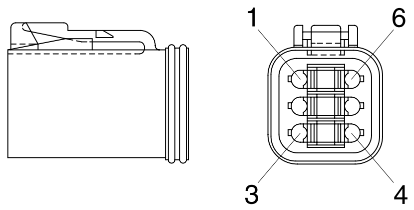
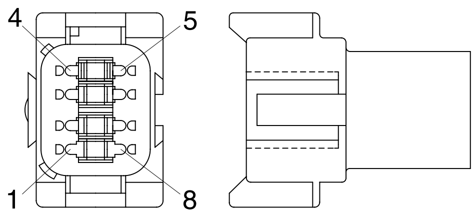
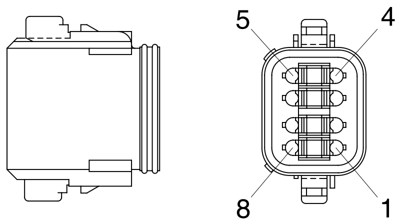
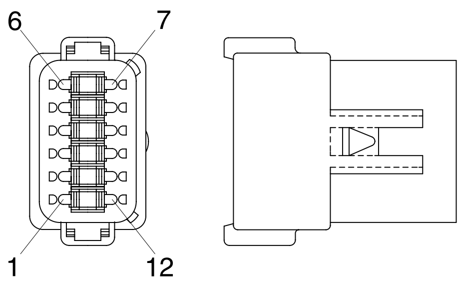
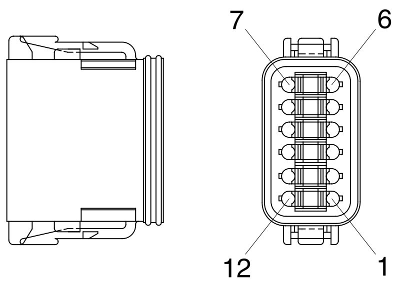
DT 06 - 3S - ★★★★

- ★★★★ : Modifications (see below)
- 3S : Number of contacts (P : Pin, S : Socket)
- 06 : 04 : Receptacle, 06 : Plug
- DT : Deutsch connectors

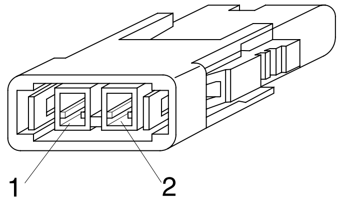
※ Modification

E003 : Standard end cap - gray
E004 : Color of connector to be black
E005 : Combination - E004 & E003
EP04 : End cap
EP06 : Combination P012 & EP04
P012 : Front seal enhancement - connectors color to black for 2, 3, 4 & 6pin

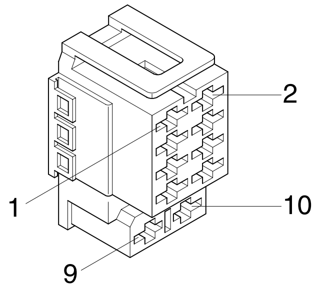
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 DT06-2S	 DT04-2P
3	 DT06-3S	 DT04-3P
4	 DT06-4S	 DT04-4P

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 DT06-6S	 DT04-6P
8	 DT06-8S	 DT04-8P
12	 DT06-12S	 DT04-12P

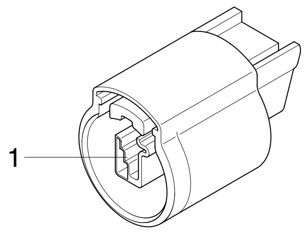
15) MOLEX 2CKTS CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 35215-0200	

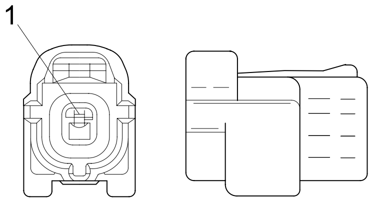
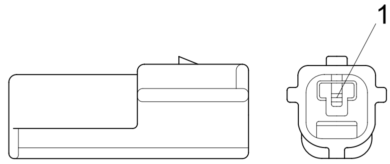
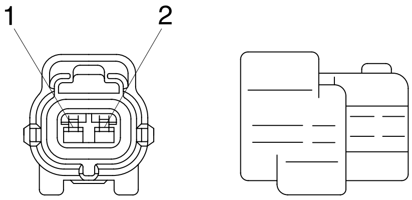
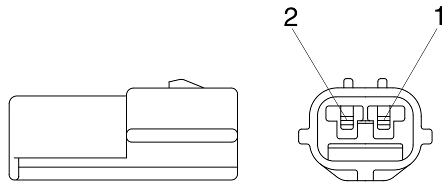
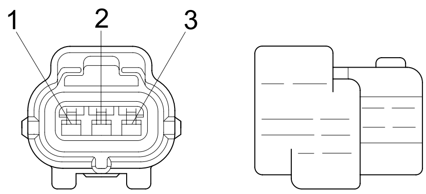
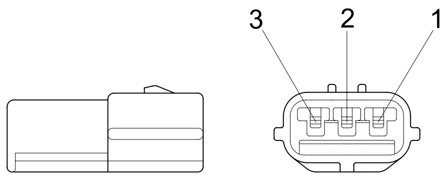
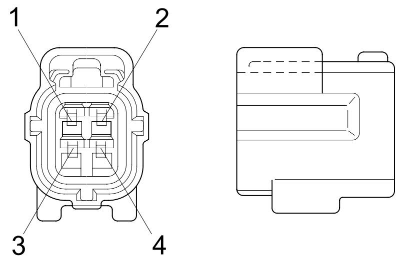
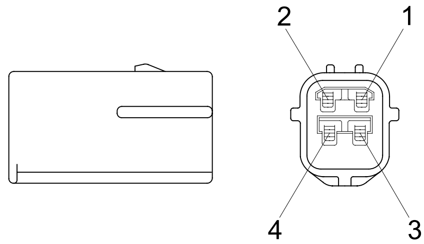
16) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

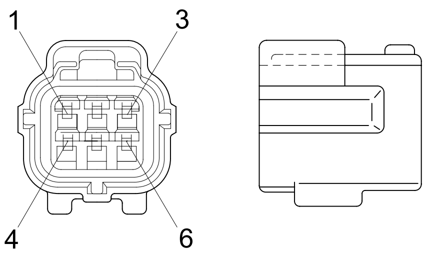
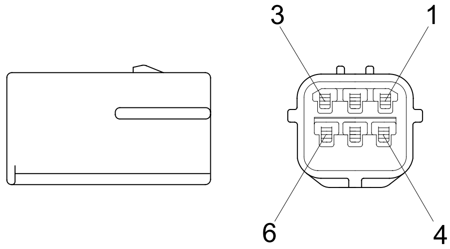
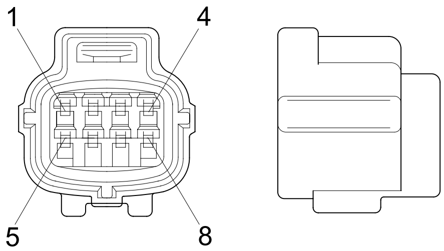
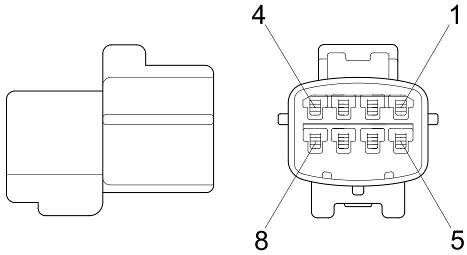
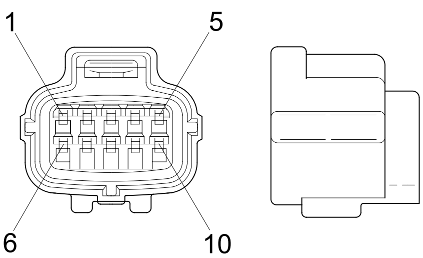
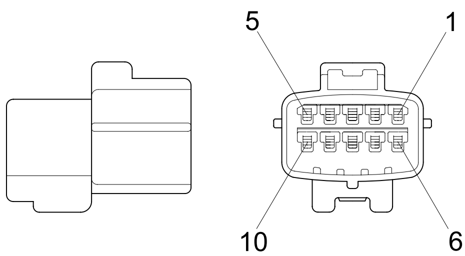
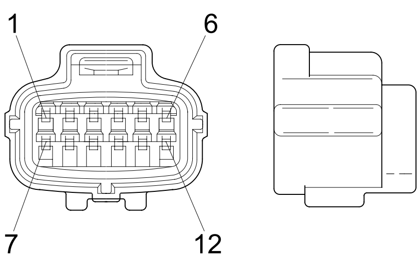
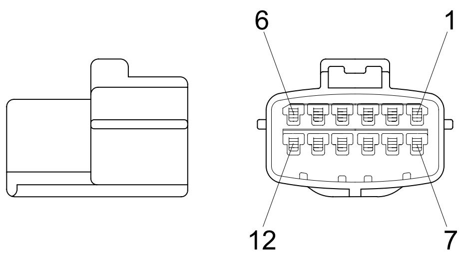
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	 SWF593757	

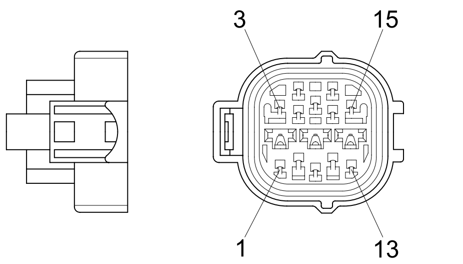
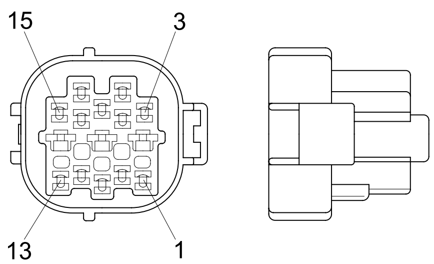
17) MWP NMWP CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 NMWP01F-B	

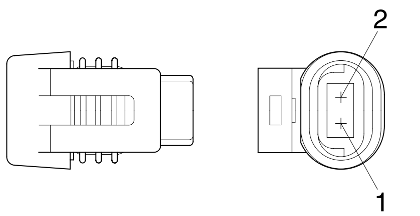
18) ECONOSEAL J TYPE CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	 S816-001002	 S816-101002
2	 S816-002002	 S816-102002
3	 S816-003002	 S816-103002
4	 S816-004002	 S816-104002

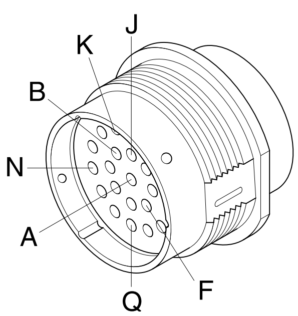
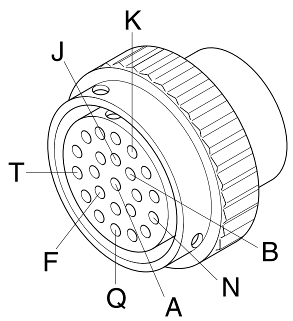
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	 S816-006002	 S816-106002
8	 S816-008002	 S816-108002
10	 S816-010002	 S816-110002
12	 S816-012002	 S816-112002

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
15	 368301-1	 2-85262-1

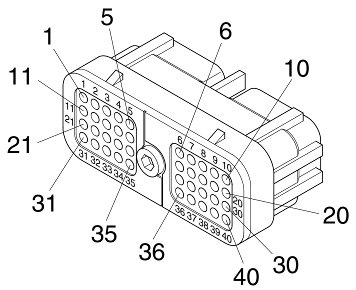
19) METRI-PACK TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	 12040753	

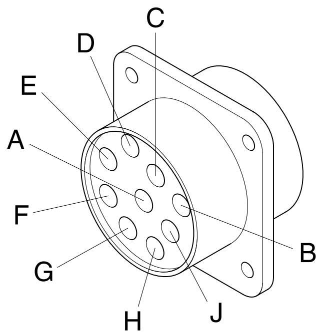
20) DEUTSCH HD30 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
23	 HD36-24-23SN	 HD34-24-23PN

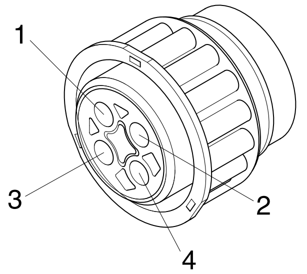
21) DEUTSCH MCU CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
40	 DRC26-40SA/B/C	

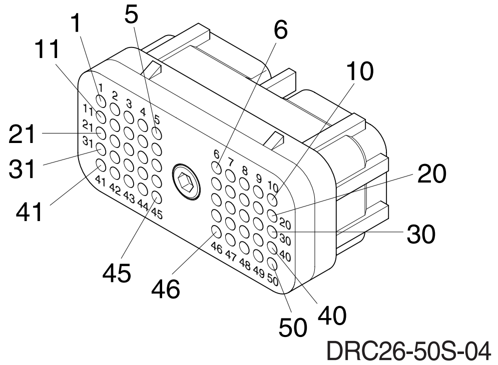
22) DEUTSCH SERVICE TOOL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
9	 HD10-9-96P	

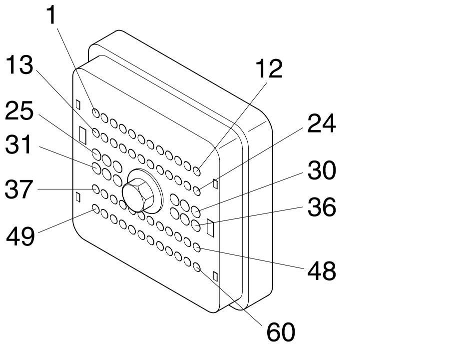
23) AMP FUEL WARMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
4	 2-967325-3	

24) DEUTSCH ENGINE ECM CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
50	 DRC26-50S-04	

25) DEUTSCH INTERMEDIATE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
60	 DRB16-60SAE-L018	

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

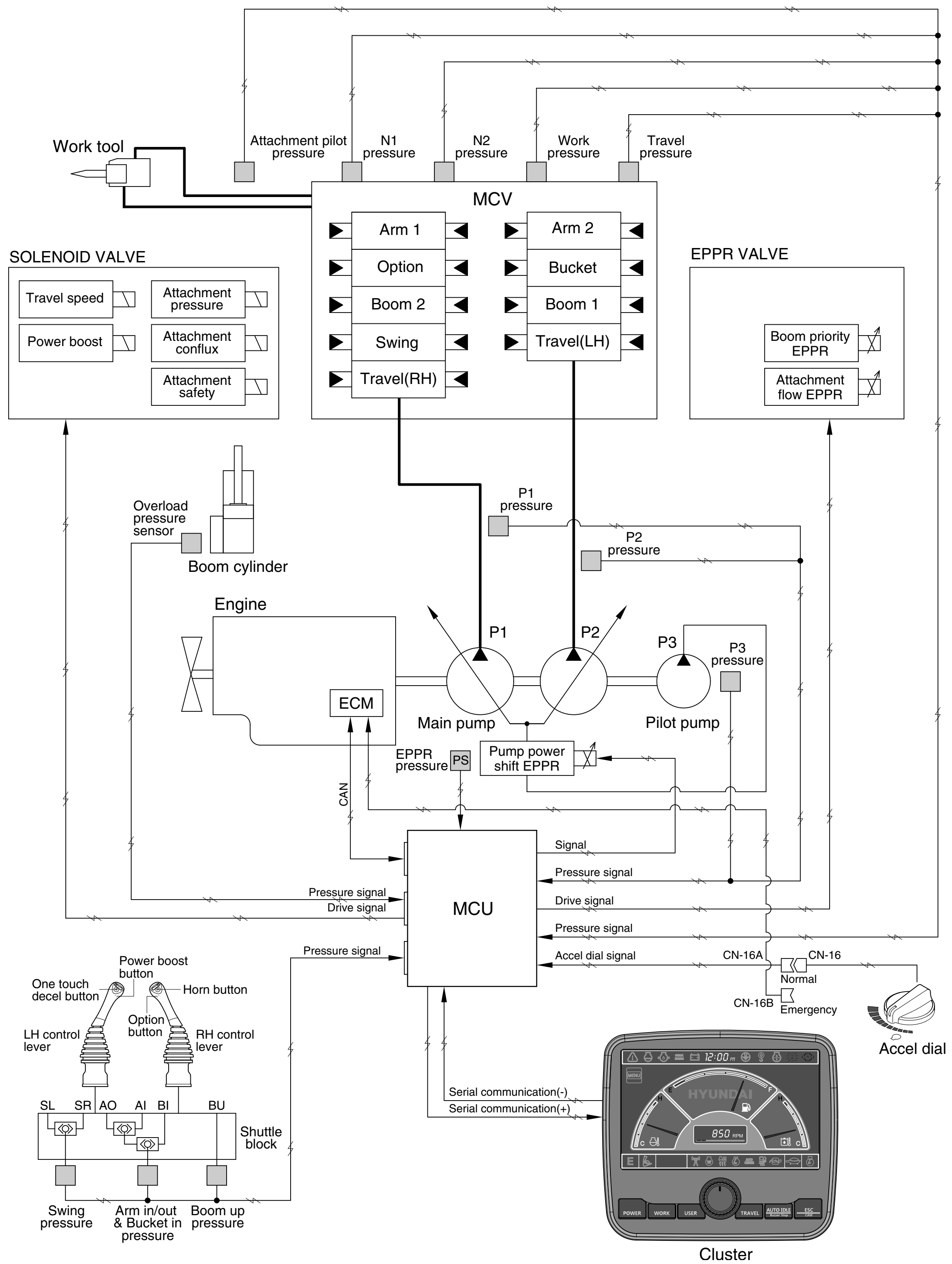
GROUP 1 OUTLINE

The ADVENCED CAPO (Computer Aided Power Optimization) system controls engine and pump mutual power at an optimum and less fuel consuming state for the selected work by mode selection, auto-deceleration, power boost function, etc. It monitors machine conditions, for instance, engine speed, coolant temperature, hydraulic oil temperature, and hydraulic oil pressure, etc.

It consists of a MCU, a cluster, an ECM, EPPR valves, and other components. The MCU and the cluster protect themselves from over-current and high voltage input, and diagnose malfunctions caused by short or open circuit in electric system, and display error codes on the cluster.

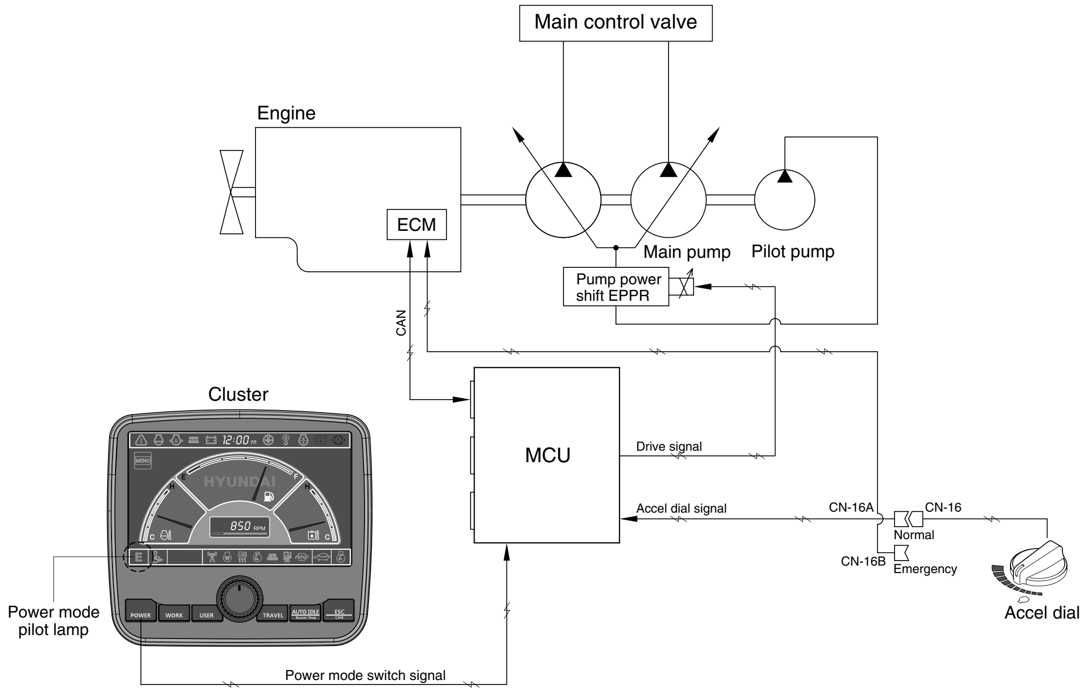
- ADVENCED CAPO SYSTEM
  - Mode selection system
    - Power mode selection (P, S, E)
    - Work mode selection
    - User mode system (U)
  - Auto deceleration system
  - Power boost system
  - Travel speed control system
  - Automatic warming up system
  - Engine overheat prevention system
  - Variable power control system
  - Attachment flow control system
  - Anti-restart system
  - Self-diagnostic system
    - MCU & cluster protection
    - Open-short diagnosis & error code display
    - Machine error & ECM fault code display
  - Machine monitoring system
    - Machine condition monitoring
    - Electric signal monitoring
  - One touch deceleration system

SYSTEM DIAGRAM



GROUP 2 MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

1. POWER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM



Mode selection system (micro computer based electro-hydraulic pump and engine mutual control system) optimizes the engine and pump performance.

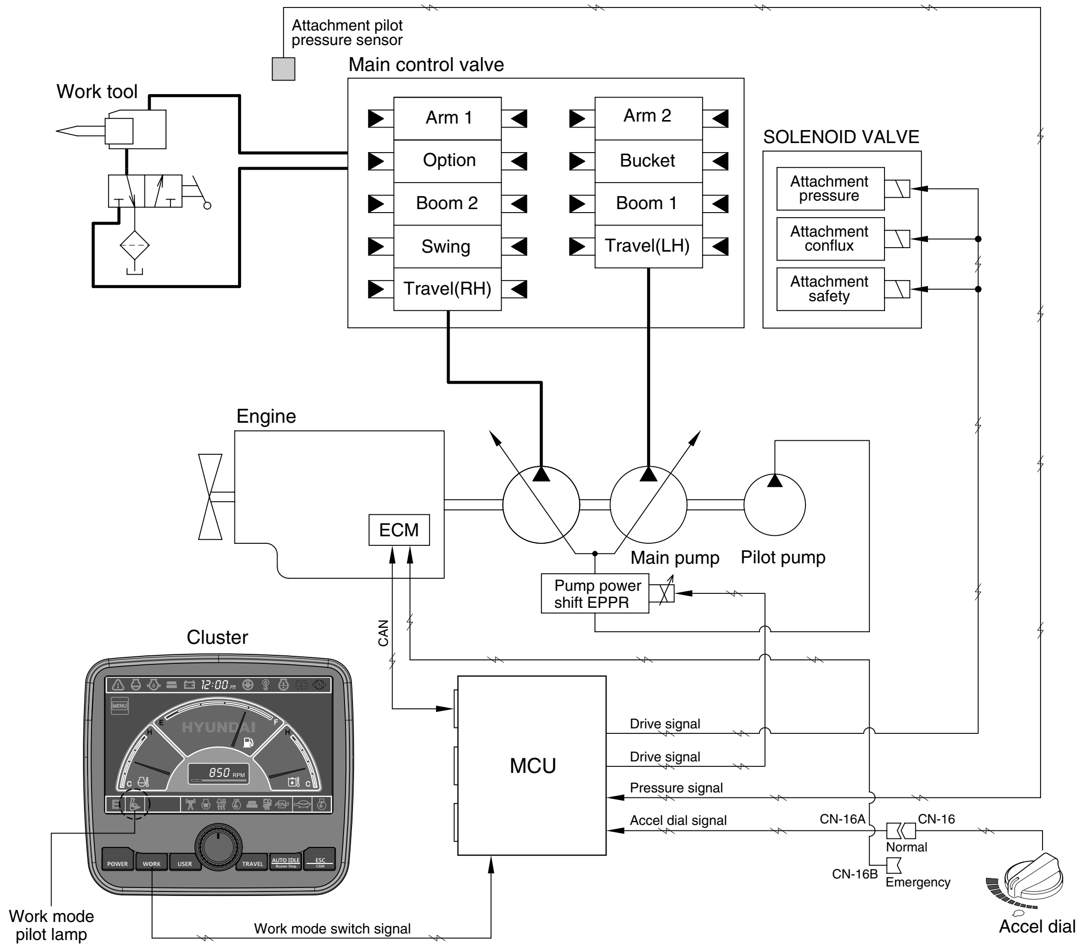
The combination of 3 power modes (P, S, E) and accel dial position (10 set) makes it possible to use the engine and pump power more effectively corresponding to the work conditions from a heavy and great power requesting work to a light and precise work.

Power mode	Application	Engine rpm				Power shift by EPPR valve			
		Standard		Option		Standard(Load)		Option(Load)	
		Unload	Load	Unload	Load	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm^2)
P	Heavy duty power	1650±50	-	1650±50	-	-	10(~5)±3	-	6(~3)±3
S	Standard power	1550±50	-	1550±50	-	-	13(~8)±3	-	6(~3)±3
E	Economy operation	1450±50	-	1450±50	-	-	15(~10)±3	-	8(~5)±3
AUTO DECEL	Engine deceleration	1000±50	-	1000±50	-	-	-	-	-
One touch decel	Engine quick deceleration	800±50	-	800±50	-	-	-	-	-
KEY START	Key switch start position	800±50	-	800±50	-	-	-	-	-

※ Power shift (Standard/Option) can be changed by "Service menu" in "Management" on the cluster.

2. WORK MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

Work mode consists of the general operation (bucket) and the optional attachment (breaker, crusher).



1) GENERAL WORK MODE (bucket)

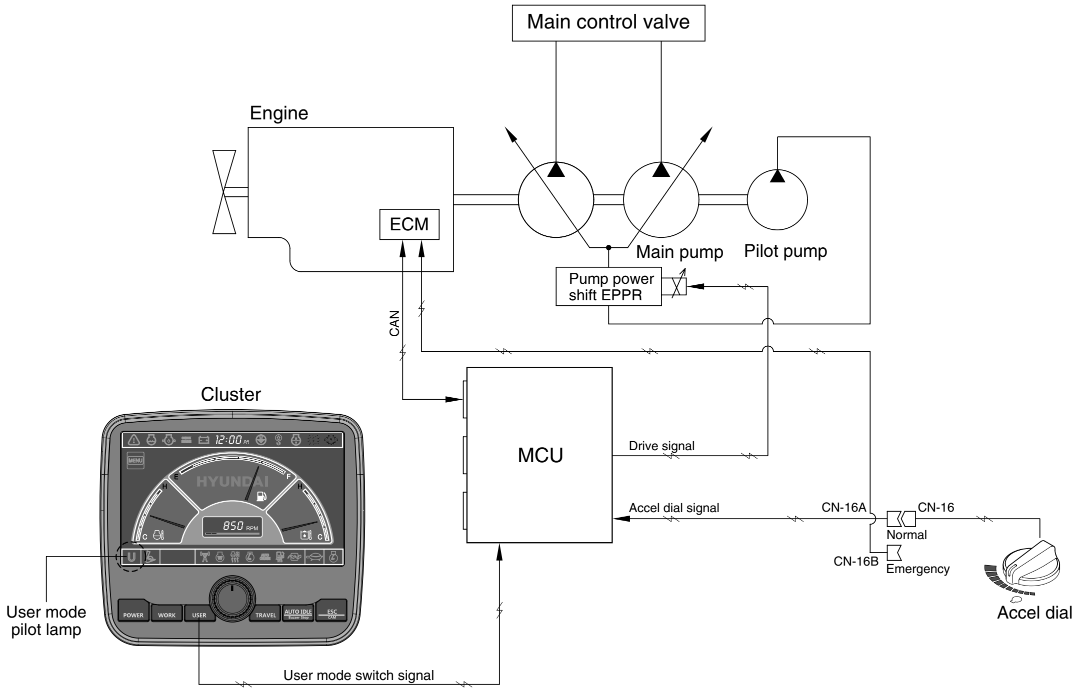
This mode is used to general digging work.

2) ATT WORK MODE (breaker, crusher)

It controls the pump flow and system pressure according to the operation of breaker or crusher.

Description	General mode	Work tool	
	Bucket	Breaker	Crusher
Attachment safety solenoid	OFF	ON	ON
Attachment pressure solenoid	OFF	OFF	ON
Attachment conflux solenoid	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF
Attachment flow EPPR current	100 mA	100~700 mA	0~700 mA

3. USER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

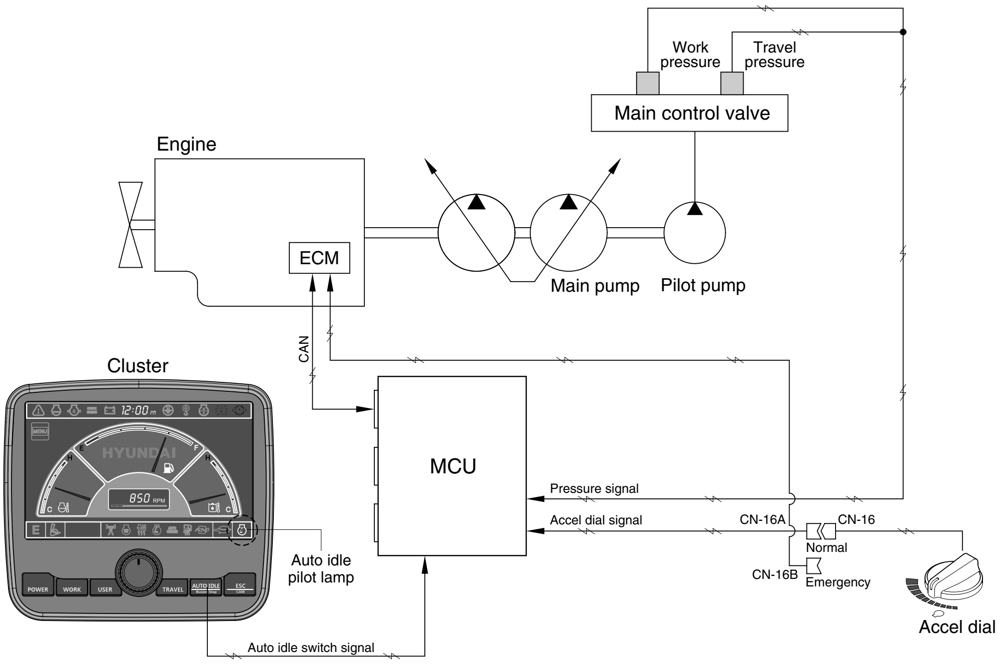


1) High idle rpm, auto idle rpm and EPPR pressure can be adjusted and memorized in the U-mode.

2) LCD segment vs parameter setting

Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1350	800	0
2	1400	900	3
3	1450	950	6
4	1500	1000	9
5	1550	1050	12
6	1600	1100	16
7	1650	1150	20
8	1700	1200	26
9	1750	1250	32
10	1800	1300	38

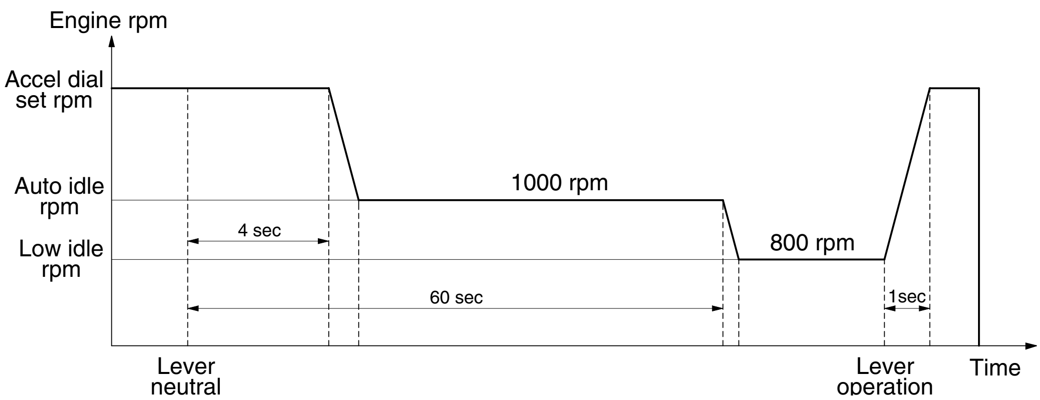
GROUP 3 AUTOMATIC DECELERATION SYSTEM



1. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP ON

When all of the work equipment control levers including swing and travel levers are at neutral for 4 seconds, MCU sends throttle command to ECM to reduce the engine speed to 1000 rpm. If the control levers are at neutral for 1 minute, MCU reduces the engine speed to 800 rpm. As the result of reducing the engine speed, fuel consumption and noise are effectively cut down during non-operation of the control levers.

When the Auto idle pilot lamp is turned off by pressing the switch or any control lever is operated, the reduced engine speed rises upto the speed before deceleration in a second.

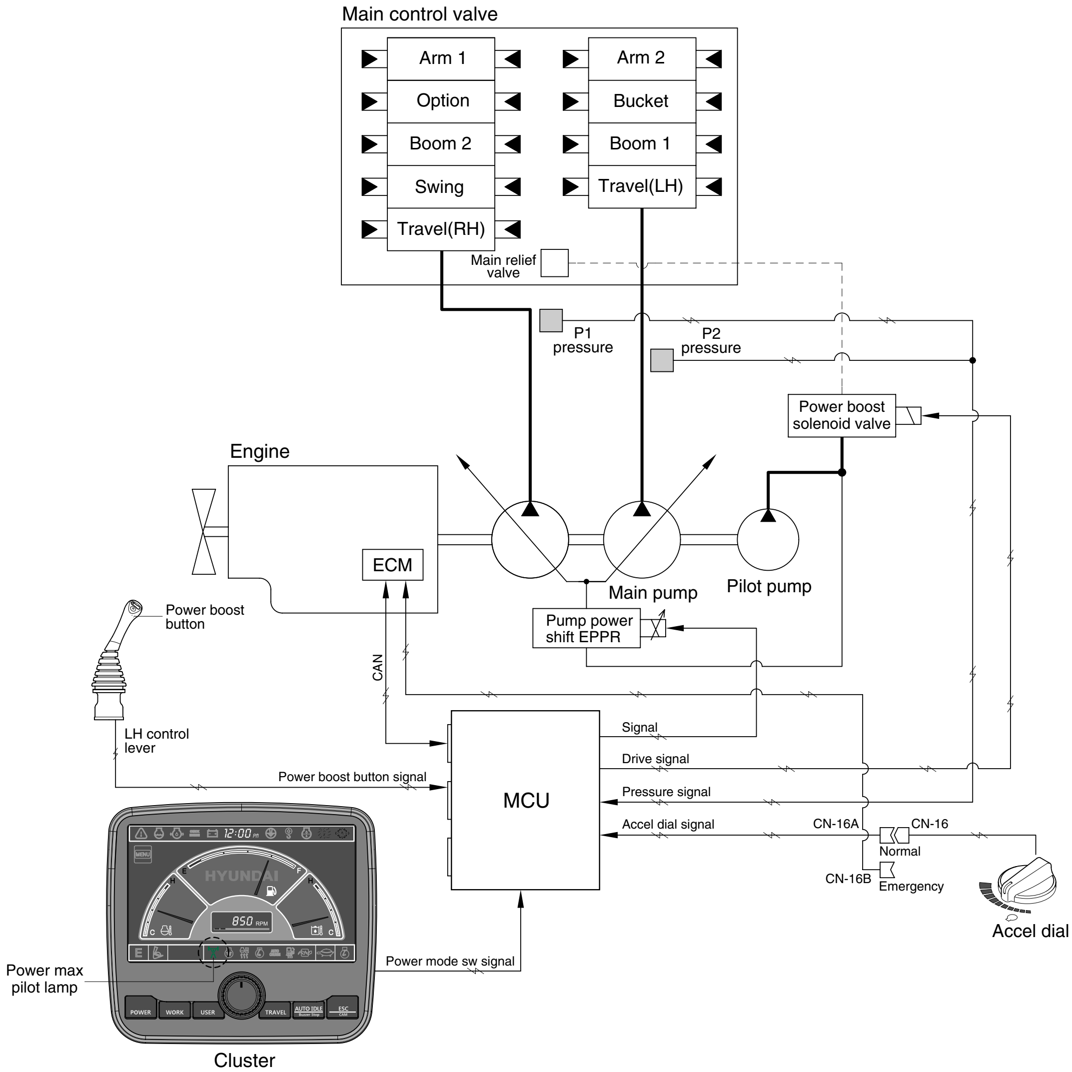


2. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP OFF

The engine speed can be set as desired using the accel dial switch, and even if the control levers are neutral, the engine speed is not reduced.

※ Auto idle function can be activated when accel dial position is over 4.

GROUP 4 POWER BOOST SYSTEM

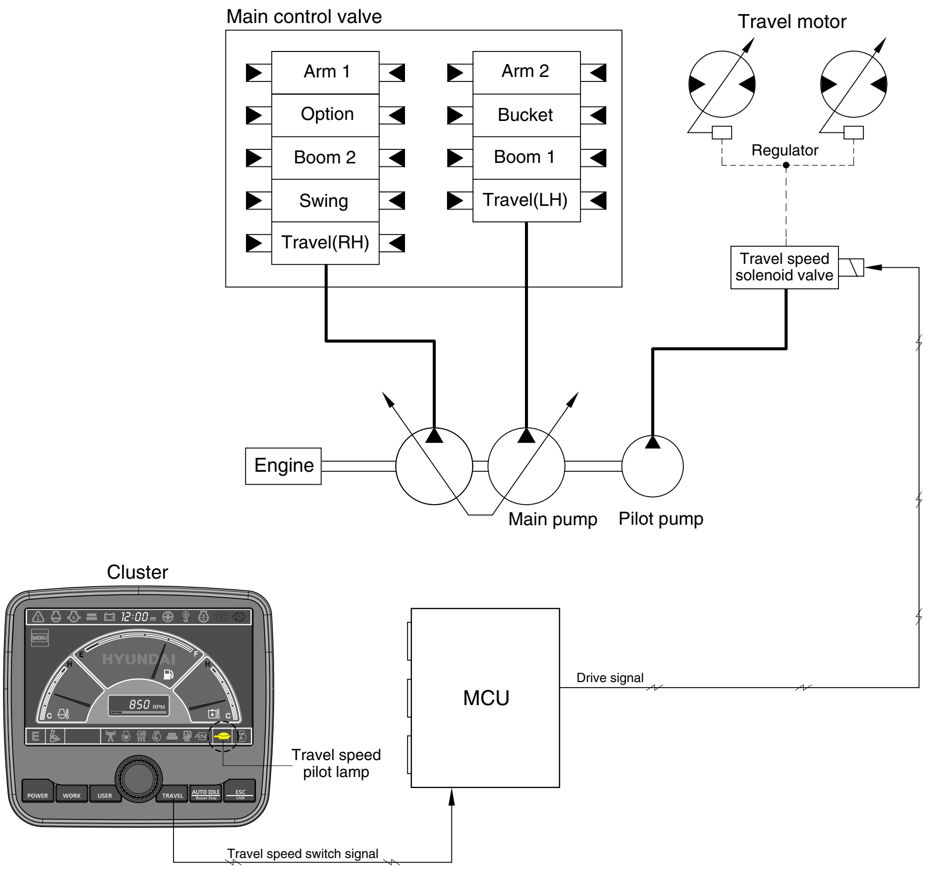


- When the power boost switch on the left control lever knob is pushed ON, the power mode is set P mode and maximum digging power is increased by 10 %.
- When the power boost function is activated, the power boost solenoid valve pilot pressure raises the set pressure of the main relief valve to increase the digging power.

Description	Condition	Function
Activated	Power boost switch : ON Accel dial : over 8	- Power mode : P - Accel dial power : 9 - Power boost solenoid : ON - Power boost pilot lamp : ON - Operating time : max 8 seconds
Canceled	Power boost switch : OFF	- Pre-set power mode - Power boost solenoid : OFF - Power boost pilot lamp : OFF

※ When the auto power boost is set to Enable and power mode is set to P mode on the cluster, the digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

GROUP 5 TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM

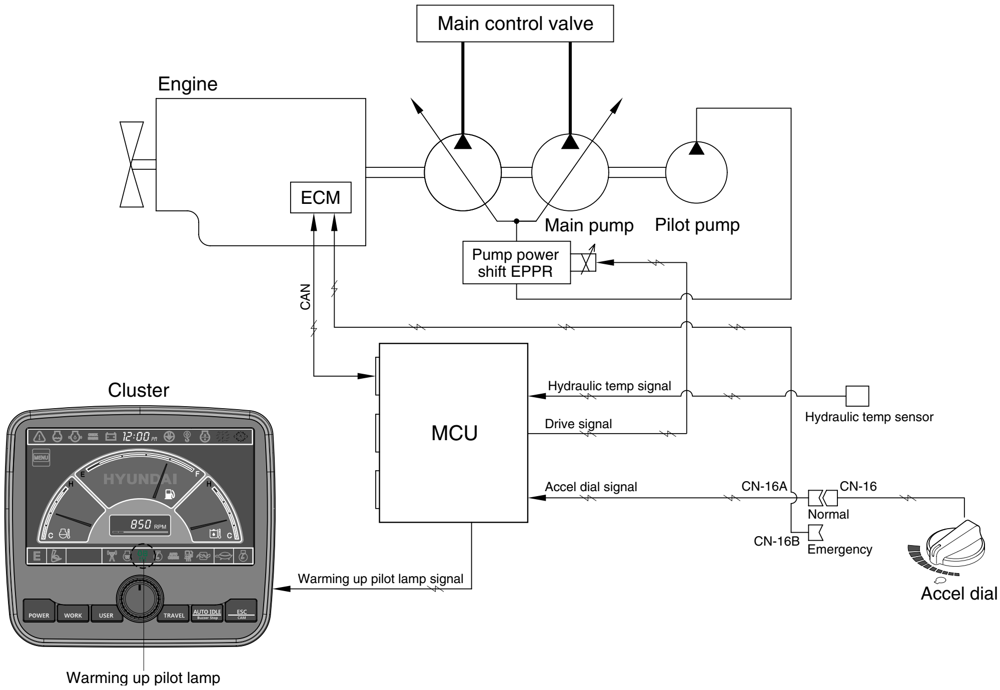


Travel speed can be switched manually by pressing the travel speed switch on the cluster.

Speed	Travel speed solenoid valve	Lamp on cluster	Operation
Low	OFF	Turtle	Low speed, high driving torque in the travel motor
High	ON	Rabbit	High speed, low driving torque in the travel motor

※ Default : Turtle (Low)

GROUP 6 AUTOMATIC WARMING UP SYSTEM



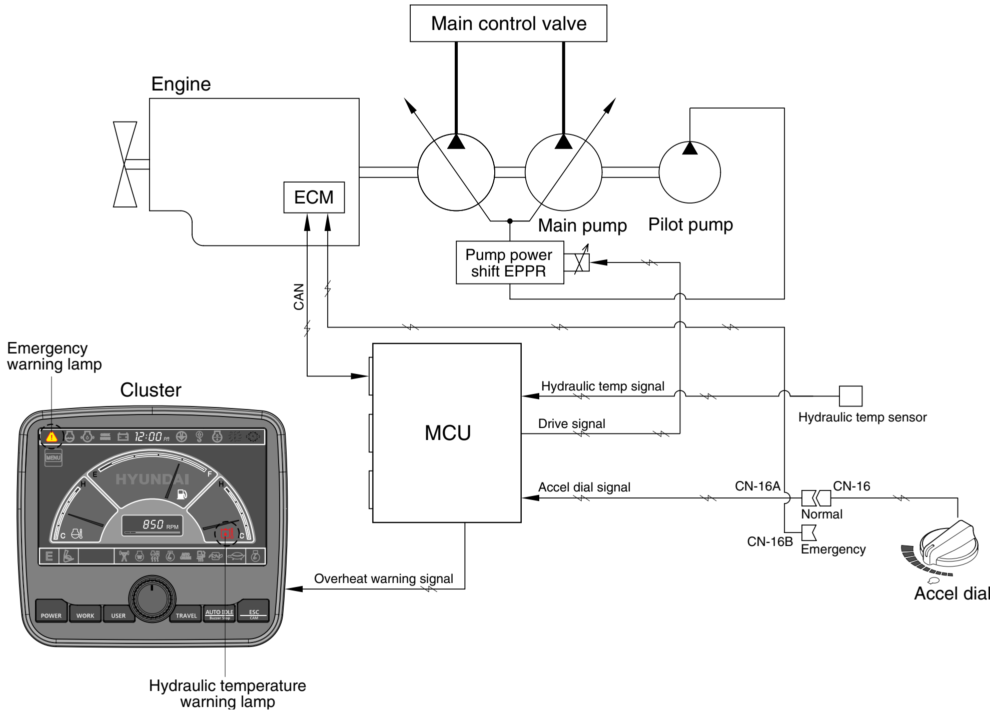
1. The MCU receives the engine coolant temperature from the ECM, and if the coolant temperature is below 30˚C, it increases the engine speed from key start rpm to 1200rpm. At this time the mode does not change. If the coolant temperature sensor has fault, the hydraulic oil temperature signal is substituted.

2. In case of the coolant temperature increases up to 30˚C, the engine speed is decreased to key start speed. And if an operator changes power mode set during the warming up function, the MCU cancels the automatic warming up function.

3. LOGIC TABLE

Description	Condition	Function
Actuated	- Coolant temperature : below 30˚C (after engine run)	- Power mode : Default (E mode) - Warming up time : 10 minutes (max) - Warming up pilot lamp : ON
Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Above 30˚C - Warming up time : Above 10 minutes - Changed power mode set by operator - RCV lever or pedal operating - Auto idle cancel ※ If any of the above conditions is applicable, the automatic warming up function is canceled	- Power mode : set mode - Warming up pilot lamp : OFF

GROUP 7 ENGINE OVERHEAT PREVENTION SYSTEM

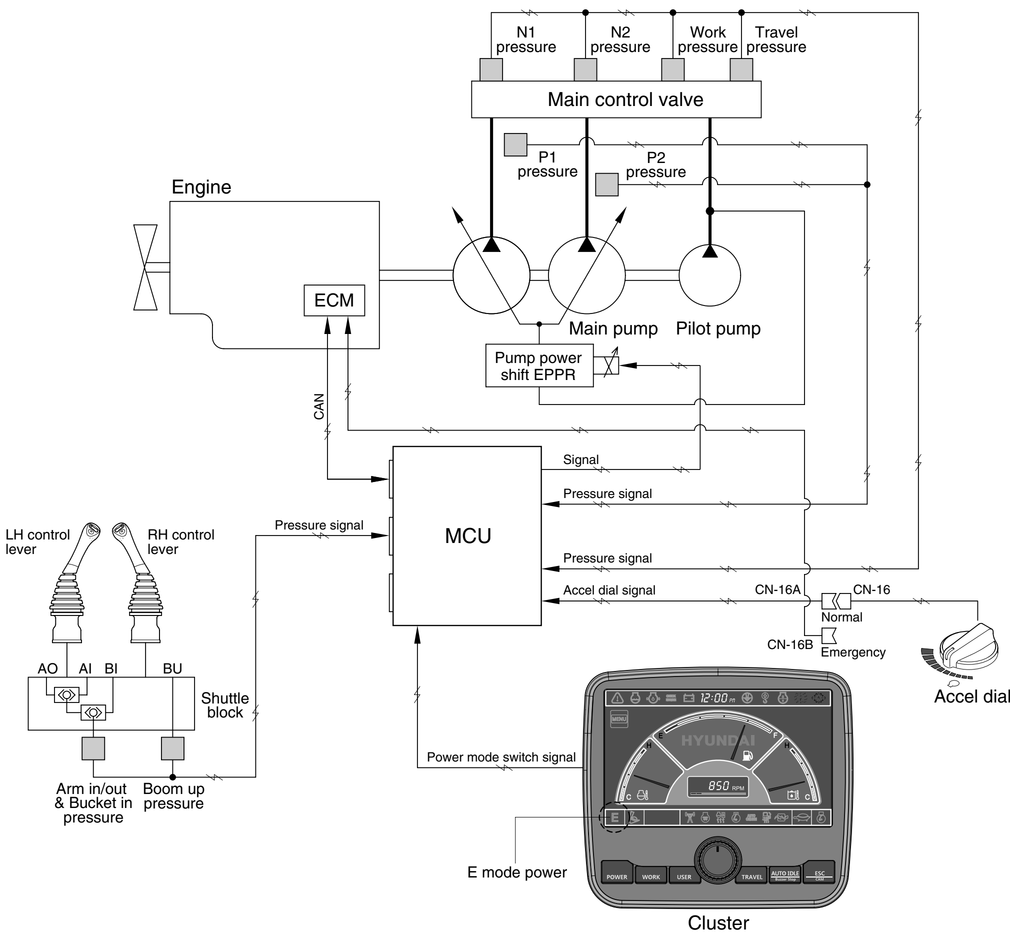


1. The engine coolant temperature or the hydraulic oil temperature is overheated over 100˚C, the warning lamp is ON and the pump input torque or the engine speed is reduced as below logic table.

2. LOGIC TABLE

Description		Condition	Function
First step warning	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 103˚C	- Warning lamp : ON , buzzer : OFF - Pump input torque is reduced.
		- Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 100˚C	- Warning lamp & buzzer : ON - Pump input torque is reduced.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 100˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 95˚C	- Return to pre-set the pump absorption torque.
Second step warning	Activated	- Coolant or hydraulic oil temperature : Above 105˚C	- Emergency warning lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds. - Engine speed is reduced after 10 seconds.
	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 103˚C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 100˚C	- Return to pre-set the engine speed. - Hold pump absorption torque on the first step warning.

GROUP 8 VARIABLE POWER CONTROL SYSTEM

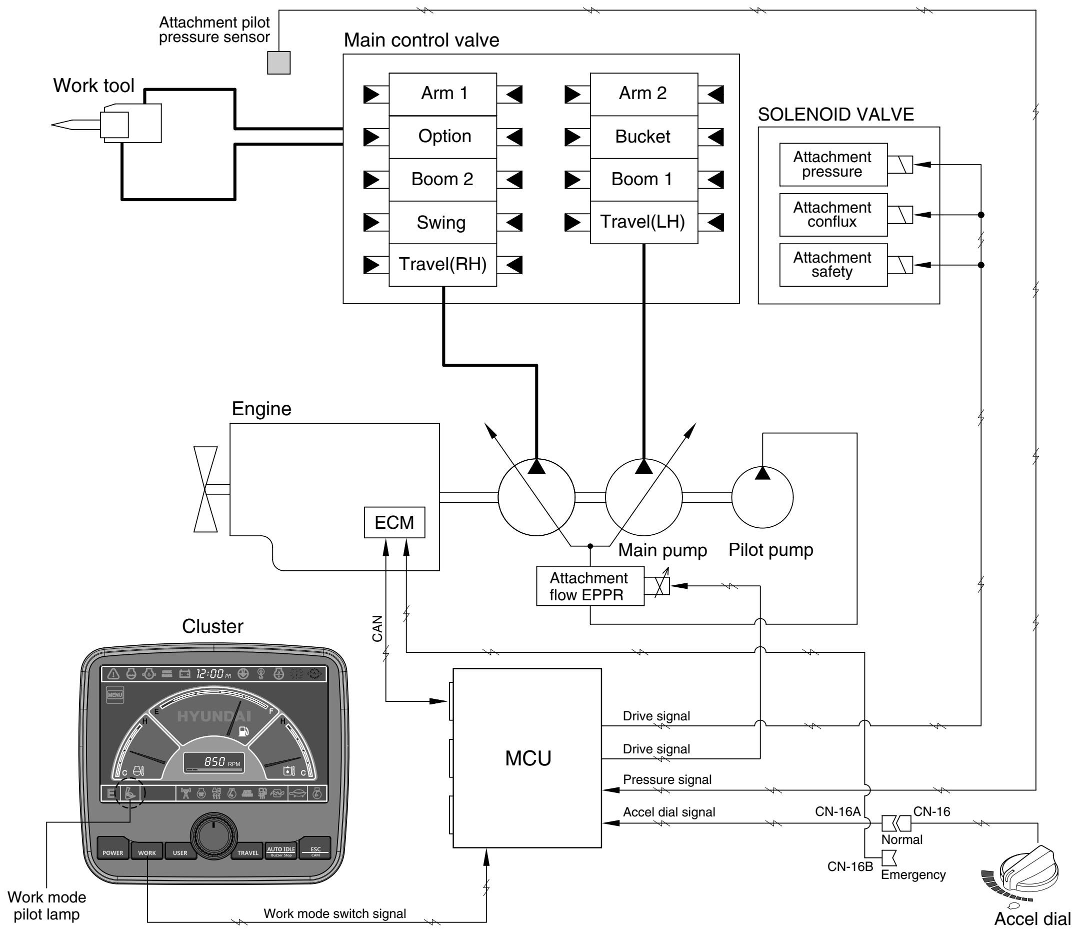


· The variable power control system controls the engine and pump mutual power according to RCV lever stroke and pump load.
It makes fuel saving and smooth control at precise work.

Description	Working condition
Power mode	E
Work mode	General (bucket)
Pressure sensor	Normal

※ The variable power control function can be activated when the power mode is set to E mode.

GROUP 9 ATTACHMENT FLOW CONTROL SYSTEM

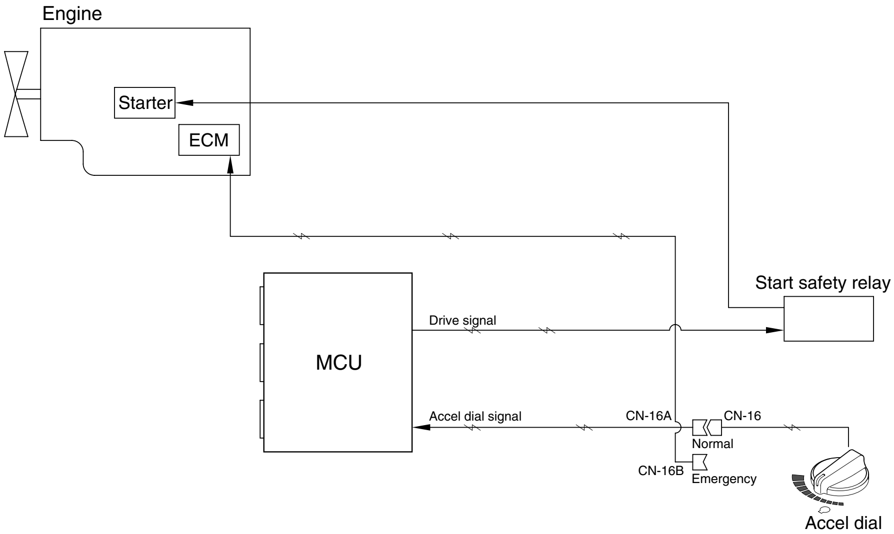


· The system is used to control the pump delivery flow according to set of the work tool on the cluster by the attachment flow EPPR valve.

Description	Work tool	
	Breaker	Crusher
Flow level	Max 7 step, reduced 10 lpm each step	Max 4 step, reduced 20 lpm each step
Attach safety solenoid	ON	ON
Attach pressure solenoid	OFF	ON
Attach conflux solenoid	OFF	ON/OFF

※ Refer to the page 5-45 for the attachment kinds and max flow.

GROUP 10 ANTI-RESTART SYSTEM



1. ANTI-RESTART FUNCTION

After a few seconds from the engine starts to run, MCU turns off the start safety relay to protect the starter from inadvertent restarting.

2. When a replacement or taking-off of the MCU is needed, connect CN-16 and CN-16B to ensure the engine start without the MCU.

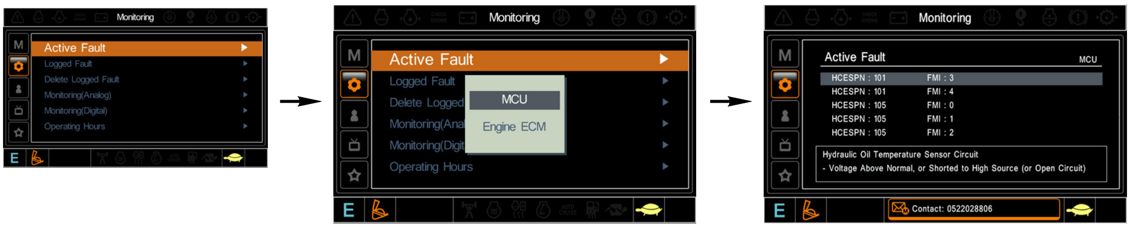
GROUP 11 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

When any abnormality occurs in the ADVANCED CAPO system caused by electric parts malfunction and by open or short circuit, the MCU diagnoses the problem and sends the error codes to the cluster and also stores them in the memory.

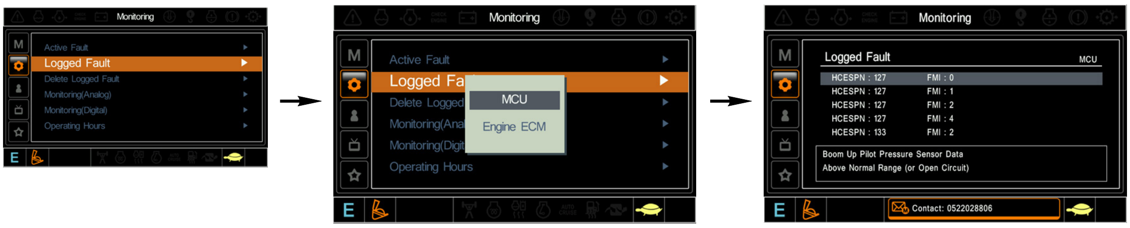
2. MONITORING

1) Active fault



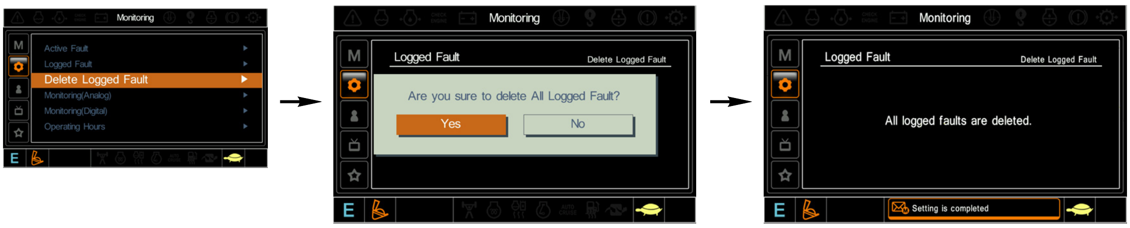
· The active faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

2) Logged fault



· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

3) Delete fault



· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be deleted by this menu.

3. MACHINE ERROR CODES TABLE

Error code HCESPN	FMI	Description
101	3	Hydraulic oil temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Hydraulic oil temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
105	0	Working pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Working pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Working pressure sensor data error.
	4	Working pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to Low source.
108	0	Travel oil pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel oil pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel oil pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel oil pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
120	0	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Main pump 1 (P1) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
121	0	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Main pump 2 (P2) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
122	0	Overhead pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Overhead pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Overhead pressure sensor data error.
	4	Overhead pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
123	0	Negative 1 pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Negative 1 pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Negative 1 pressure sensor data error.
	4	Negative 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
124	0	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Negative 2 Pressure sensor data error.
	4	Negative 2 Pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
125	0	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor data error.
	4	Pilot pump (P3) pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
127	0	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Boom up pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Boom up pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
133	0	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Arm in/out & bucket in pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.

Error code HCESPN	FMI	Description
135	0	Swing pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Swing pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Swing pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Swing pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
138	0	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Attachment pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Attachment pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
140	5	Pump EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Pump EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
141	5	Boom priority EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Boom priority EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
143	5	Travel EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Travel EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
144	5	Attachment flow EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment flow EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
145	5	Remote cooling fan EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Remote cooling fan EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
150	5	Left rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Left rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
151	5	Right rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Right rotate EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
152	5	Left tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Left tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
153	5	Right tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Right tilt EPPR valve circuit - Current above normal.
166	5	Power max solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Power max solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
167	5	Travel speed solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Travel speed solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
168	5	Attachment pressure solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment pressure solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
169	5	Attachment conflux solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment conflux solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
170	5	Arm regeneration solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Arm regeneration solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
171	5	Attachment safety solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Attachment safety solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
181	5	Remote cooling fan reverse solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Remote cooling fan reverse solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
301	5	Fuel level sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	6	Fuel level sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
304	3	Engine coolant temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Engine coolant temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
310	8	Engine speed signal error - Abnormal frequency or pulse width.
322	3	Engine preheat relay circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Engine preheat relay circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
325	3	Fuel warmer relay circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Fuel warmer relay circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.

Error code		Description
HCESPN	FMI	
340	3	Potentiometer (G/A) circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Potentiometer (G/A) circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
341	5	Governor actuator circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Governor actuator circuit - Current above normal.
501	0	Transmission oil pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Transmission oil pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Transmission oil pressure sensor data error.
	4	Transmission oil pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
503	0	Brake pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Brake pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Brake pressure sensor data error.
	4	Brake pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
505	0	Working brake pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Working brake pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Working brake pressure sensor data error.
	4	Working brake pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
506	3	Working brake lamp circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Working brake lamp circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
520	3	Ram lock lamp circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Ram lock lamp circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
525	5	Ram lock solenoid circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit.
	6	Ram lock solenoid circuit - Current above normal.
530	0	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel F pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel F pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
531	0	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data above normal range.
	1	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data below normal range.
	2	Travel R pilot pressure sensor data error.
	4	Travel R pilot pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
701	3	Hourmeter circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Hourmeter circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
705	0	MCU input voltage high.
	1	MCU input voltage low.
707	1	Alternator node I voltage low.
714	3	Acc. dial circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Acc. dial circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
715	3	Rotate signal input circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Rotate signal input circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
716	3	Tilt signal input circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Tilt signal input circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
722	3	Travel alarm (buzzer) circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source.
	4	Travel alarm (buzzer) circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source.
830	12	MCU internal memory error.
840	2	Cluster communication data error.
841	2	ECM communication data error.
843	2	Option #1 (CAN 2) communication data error.
850	2	RCM communication data error.

4. ENGINE FAULT CODE

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
111 629 12	Engine control module critical internal failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to memory hardware failures or internal ECM voltage supply circuits.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
115 612 2	Engine magnetic crankshaft speed/position lost both of two signals - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the primary engine speed sensor and the backup engine speed sensor signals are reversed.	Fueling to injectors is disabled and the engine can not be started.
122 102 3	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
123 102 4	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low Source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
124 102 16	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure has exceeded the maximum limit for the given engine rating.	Engine power derate.
131 91 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position circuit.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
132 91 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
133 974 3	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate. Remote accelerator position will be set to zero percent.
134 974 4	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate. Remote accelerator position will be set to zero percent.
135 100 3	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
141 100 4	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
143 100 18	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level.	None on performance.
144 110 3	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for engine coolant temperature.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
145 110 4	Engine Coolant Temperature 1 Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for engine coolant temperature.
146 110 16	Engine Coolant Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert.
147 91 1	Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position 1 Sensor Circuit Frequency - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. A frequency of less than 100 Hz has been detected at the frequency throttle input to the ECM.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
148 91 0	Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position Sensor 1 - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. A frequency of more than 1500 Hz has been detected at the frequency throttle input to the ECM.	Severe derate in power output of the engine. Limp home power only.
151 110 0	Engine Coolant Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
153 105 3	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature Sensor Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for intake manifold air temperature.
154 105 4	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Possible white smoke. Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM. No engine protection for intake manifold air temperature.
155 105 0	Intake Manifold 1 Temperature - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
187 520195 4	Sensor Supply 2 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low voltage detected at the sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
195 111 3	Coolant Level Sensor 1 Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
196 111 4	Coolant Level Sensor 1 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
197 111 18	Coolant Level - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. Low coolant level has been detected.	None on performance.
221 108 3	Barometric Pressure Sensor Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
222 108 4	Barometric Pressure Sensor Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
227 520195 3	Sensor Supply 2 Circuit - Voltage Above Normal, or Shorted to High Source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
234 190 0	Engine Crankshaft Speed/Position - Data Valid but Above Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Engine speed signal indicates engine speed above engine protection limit.	Fuel injection disabled until engine speed falls below the overspeed limit.
235 111 1	Coolant Level - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Most Severe Level. Low engine coolant level detected.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If Engine Protection Shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after Red Stop Lamp starts flashing.
237 644 2	External Speed Command Input (Multiple Unit Synchronization) - Data Erratic, Intermittent, or Incorrect. Communication between multiple engines may be intermittent.	
238 520196 4	Sensor Supply 3 Circuit - Voltage Below Normal, or Shorted to Low Source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Possible hard starting and rough running.
241 84 2	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM lost the vehicle speed signal.	Engine speed limited to ,maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
242 84 10	Wheel-based vehicle speed sensor circuit tampering has been detected - Abnormal rate of change. Signal indicates an intermittent connection or VSS tampering.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed g+H53overnor will not work.
245 647 4	Fan control circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fan control circuit when commanded on.	The fan may stay on continuously or not run at all.
268 94 2	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the fuel pressure signal is not changing.	The ECM will estimate fuel pressure, and power is reduced.
271 1347 4	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine will run poorly at idle. Engine will have low power. Fuel pressure will be higher than commanded.
272 1347 3	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine will not run or engine will run poorly.
275 1347 7	Fuel pumping element number 1 (front) - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment.	Engine will not run or possible low power.
281 1347 7	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment.	Engine will not run or possible low power.
285 639 9	SAE J1939 multiplexing PGN timeout error - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
286 639 13	SAE J1939 multiplexing configuration error - Out of calibration. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but only received a portion of the necessary information.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
287 91 19	SAE J1939 multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - received network data In error. The OEM vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with its accelerator pedal.	Engine may only idle or engine will not accelerate to full speed.
288 974 19	SAE J1939 Multiplexing Remote Accelerator Pedal or Lever Position Sensor Circuit - Received Network Data In Error. The OEM vehicle electronic control unit (VECU) detected a fault with the remote accelerator.	The engine will not respond to the remote throttle. Engine may only idle. The primary or cab accelerator may be able to be used.
292 441 14	Auxiliary temperature Sensor Input 1 - Special instructions.	Possible engine power derate.
293 441 3	Auxiliary temperature sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the OEM auxiliary temperature circuit.	None on performance.
294 441 4	Auxiliary temperature sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the OEM auxiliary temperature circuit.	None on performance.
296 1388 14	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 - Special instructions.	Possible engine power derate.
297 1388 3	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the OEM pressure circuit.	None on performance.
298 1388 4	Auxiliary pressure sensor input 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the OEM pressure circuit.	None on performance.
319 251 2	Real time clock power interrupt - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Real time clock lost power.	None on performance. Data in the ECM will not have accurate time and date information.
322 651 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 1 circuit or no current detected at number 1 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
323 655 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 5 circuit or no current detected at number 5 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
324 653 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 3 circuit or no current detected at number 3 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
325 656 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 6 circuit or no current detected at number 6 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
331 652 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 2 circuit or no current detected at number 2 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
332 654 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. High resistance detected on injector number 4 circuit or no current detected at number 4 injector driver or return pin when the voltage supply at the harness is on.	Engine can possibly misfire or run rough.
334 110 2	Engine coolant temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine coolant temperature reading is not changing with engine operating conditions.	The ECM will estimate engine coolant temperature.
342 630 13	Electronic calibration code incompatibility - Out of calibration. An incompatible calibration has been detected in the ECM.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
343 629 12	Engine control module warning internal hardware failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Internal ECM failure.	No performance effects or possible severe power derate.
351 627 12	Injector power supply - Bad intelligent device or component. The ECM measured injector boost voltage is low.	Possible smoke, low power, engine misfire, and/or engine will not start.
352 1079 4	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
386 1079 3	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
415 100 1	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. Oil pressure signal indicates oil pressure below the engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after red stop lamp starts flashing.
418 97 15	Water in fuel indicator - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. water has been detected in the fuel filter.	Possible white smoke, loss of power, or hard starting.
428 97 3	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
429 97 4	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
431 558 2	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Voltage detected simultaneously on both idle validation and off-idle validation switches.	Engine will only idle.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
432 558 13	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation circuit - Out of calibration. Voltage at idle validation on-idle and off-idle circuit does not match accelerator pedal position.	Engine will only idle.
435 100 2	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the engine oil pressure switch signal was detected by the ECM.	None on performance. No engine protection for oil pressure.
441 168 18	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is below the minimum system voltage level.	Engine may stop running or be difficult to start.
442 168 16	Battery 1 Voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is above the maximum system voltage level.	Possible electrical damage to all electrical components.
449 157 0	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level.	None or possible engine noise associated with higher injection pressures (especially at idle or light load). Engine power is reduced.
451 157 3	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and or speed derate.
452 157 4	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and or speed derate.
488 105 16	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature is above the engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert.
497 1377 2	Multiple unit synchronization switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	None on performance.
523 611 2	Auxiliary intermediate (PTO) speed switch validation - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	None on performance.
527 702 3	Auxiliary input/output 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit has been detected at the auxiliary input/output 2 circuit.	None on performance.
528 93 2	Auxiliary alternate torque validation switch - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect.	None on performance.
529 703 3	Auxiliary input/output 3 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Low signal voltage has been detected at the auxiliary input/output 2 circuit.	Engine will only idle.
553 157 16	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is higher than commanded pressure.	Possibly hard to start, low power, or engine smoke.

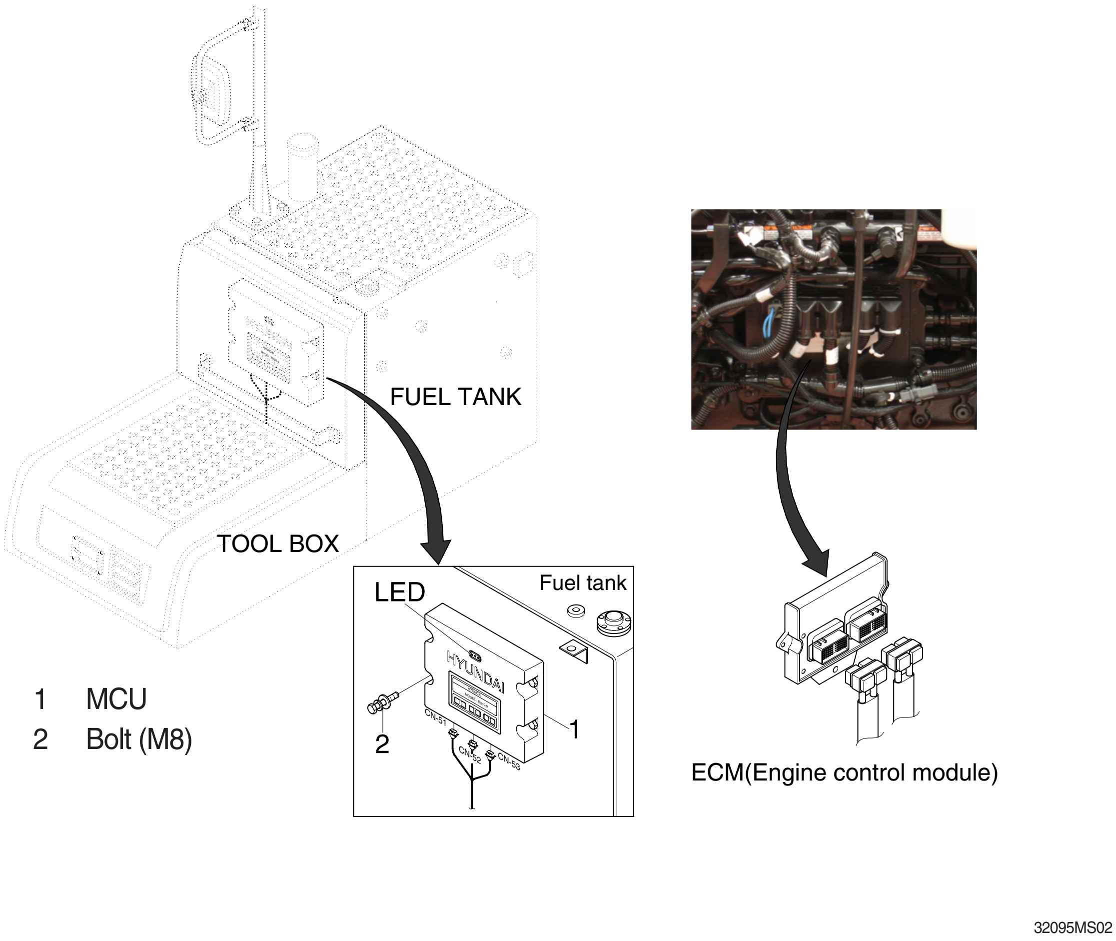
Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
554 157 2	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data erratic, Intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the fuel pressure signal is not changing.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
559 157 18	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data Valid but Below Normal Operational Range - Moderately Severe Level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	The engine will not have starter lockout protection.
584 677 3	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Engine power derate. The ECM uses an estimated turbocharger speed.
585 677 4	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Amber lamp will light until high battery voltage condition is corrected.
595 103 16	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected.	Amber lamp will light until high battery voltage condition is corrected.
599 640 14	Auxiliary commanded dual output shutdown - Special instructions.	None or possible engine noise associated with higher injection pressures (especially at idle or light load). Engine power is reduced.
687 103 18	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low turbocharger speed detected by the ECM.	Engine power derate.
689 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Loss of signal from crankshaft sensor.	Engine power derate.
691 1172 3	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Engine will run derated. Excessive black smoke, hard start, and rough idle possible.
692 1172 4	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air tempera	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
731 723 7	Engine speed / position camshaft and crankshaft misalignment - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment. mechanical misalignment between the crankshaft and camshaft engine speed sensors.	Possible poor starting. Engine power derate.
757 611 31	Electronic control module data lost - Condition exists. Severe loss of data from the ECM.	Possible poor starting. Engine power derate.
778 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the camshaft position sensor signal.	Possible no noticeable performance effects or engine dying or hard starting. Fault information, trip information, and maintenance monitor data may be inaccurate.
779 703 11	Auxiliary equipment sensor input 3 - Root cause not known.	Engine will shut down.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1117 627 2	Power supply lost with ignition on - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Supply voltage to the ECM fell below 6.2 volts momentarily, or the ECM was not allowed to power down correctly (retain battery voltage for 30 seconds after key OFF).	Engine will shut down.
1633 625 2	OEM datalink cannot transmit - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Communications within the OEM datalink network is intermittent.	Engine will only idle.
2185 520197 3	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Possibly hard to start, low power, or engine smoke.
2186 520197 4	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	None or possible engine noise associated with higher injection pressure (especially at idle or light load)
2249 157 1	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Engine may be difficult to start.
2265 1075 3	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or open detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Possible low power.
2266 1075 4	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel lift pump circuit.	Engine may exhibit misfire as control switches from the primary to the backup speed sensor. Engine power is reduced while the engine operates on the backup speed sensor.
2311 633 31	Electronic fuel injection control valve circuit - Condition exists. Fuel pump actuator circuit resistance too high or too low.	Possible low power.
2321 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. crankshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Engine power derate.
2322 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Camshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Engine power derate.
2345 103 10	Turbocharger 1 Speed - Abnormal rate of change. The turbocharger speed sensor has detected an erroneous speed value.	Engine power derate.
2346 2789 15	Turbocharger turbine inlet temperature (Calculated) - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Turbocharger turbine inlet temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Engine brake on cylinders 1, 2, and 3 can not be activated or exhaust brake will not operate.
2347 2790 15	Turbocharger compressor outlet temperature (Calculated) - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level.	Engine brake on cylinders 4, 5 and 6 can not be activated or exhaust brake will not operate.
2377 647 3	Fan control circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the fan control circuit.	Variable geometry turbocharger will go to the open position.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2384 641 4	VGT actuator driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at turbocharger control valve circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2385 641 3	VGT actuator driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at turbocharger control valve circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2555 729 3	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	Can not control transmission.
2556 729 4	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	Can not control transmission.
2557 697 3	Auxiliary PWM driver 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the analog torque circuit.	Power derate and possible engine shutdown if engine protection shutdown feature is enabled.
2558 697 4	Auxiliary PWM driver 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the analog torque circuit.	Pregressive power derate increasing in severity from time of alert.
2973 102 2	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an intake manifold pressure signal that is too high or low for current engine operating conditions.	

GROUP 12 ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

1. MCU and Engine ECM (Electronic Control Module)



2. MCU ASSEMBLY

1) To match the pump absorption torque with the engine torque, MCU varies EPPR valve output pressure, which control pump discharge amount whenever feedbacked engine speed drops under the reference rpm of each mode set.

2) Three LED lamps on the MCU display as below.

LED lamp	Trouble	Service
G is turned ON	Normal	-
G and R are turned ON	Trouble on MCU	· Change the MCU
G and Y are turned ON	Trouble on serial communication line	· Check if serial communication lines between controller and cluster are disconnected
Three LED are turned OFF	Trouble on MCU power	· Check if the input power wire (24 V, GND) of controller is disconnected · Check the fuse

G : green, R : red, Y : yellow

GROUP 13 EPPR VALVE

1. PUMP EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

EPPR (Electro Proportional Pressure Reducing) valve consists of electro magnet and spool valve installed at main pump.

(1) Electro magnet valve

Receive electric current from MCU and move the spool proportionally according to the specific amount of electric current value.

(2) Spool valve

Is the two way direction control valve for pilot pressure to reduce main pump flow.
When the electro magnet valve is activated, pilot pressure enters into flow regulator of main pump.

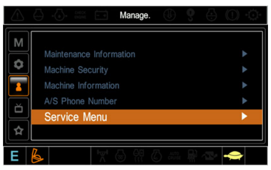
(3) Pressure and electric current value for each mode

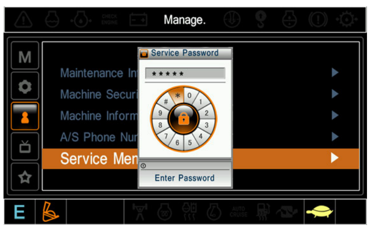
Mode		Pressure		Electric current (mA)	Engine rpm (at accel dial 10)
		kgf/cm²	psi		
Standard (Stage : 1.0)	P	10±3	145 ± 40	-	1650 ± 50
	S	13±3	189 ± 40	-	1550 ± 50
	E	15±3	218 ± 40	-	1450 ± 50
Option (Stage : 2.0)	P	6 ± 3	87 ± 40	-	1650 ± 50
	S	6 ± 3	87 ± 40	-	1550 ± 50
	E	8 ± 3	116 ± 40	-	1450 ± 50

2) HOW TO SWITCH THE STAGE (1.0↔2.0) ON THE CLUSTER

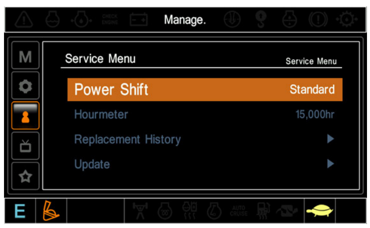
You can switch the EPPR valve pressure set by selecting the stage (1.0↔2.0).

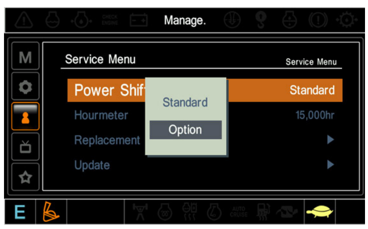
- Management
  · Service menu





Enter the password

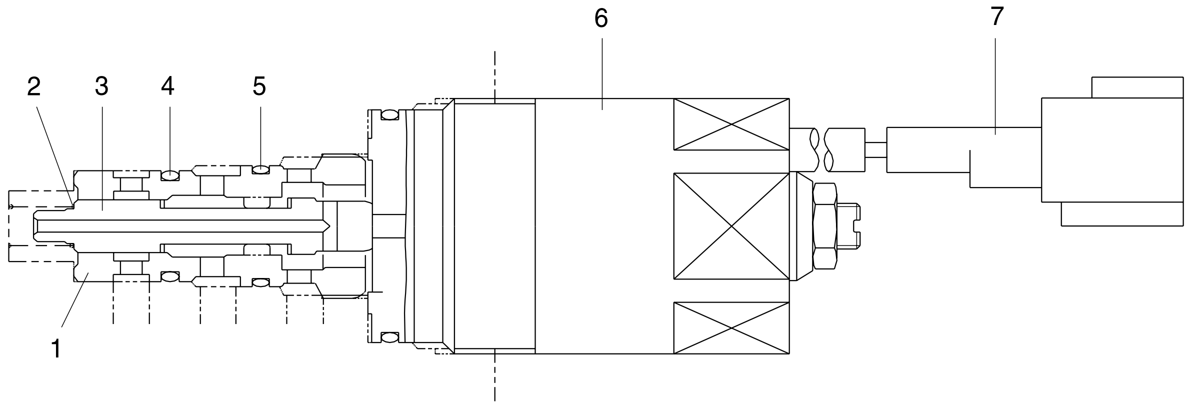




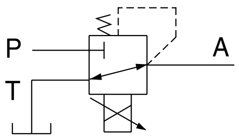
· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE (pump EPPR valve)

(1) Structure



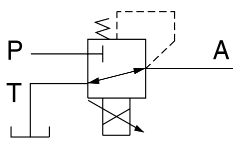
1	Sleeve	4	O-ring	6	Solenoid valve
2	Spring	5	O-ring	7	Connector
3	Spool				

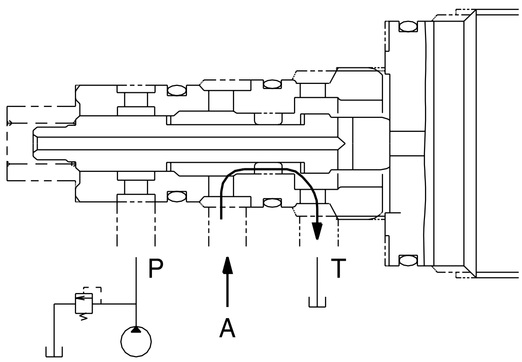


P Pilot oil supply line (pilot pressure)
T Return to tank
A Secondary pressure to flow regulator at main pump

(2) Neutral

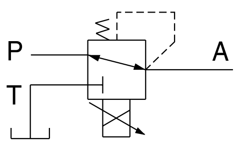
Pressure line is blocked and A oil returns to tank.

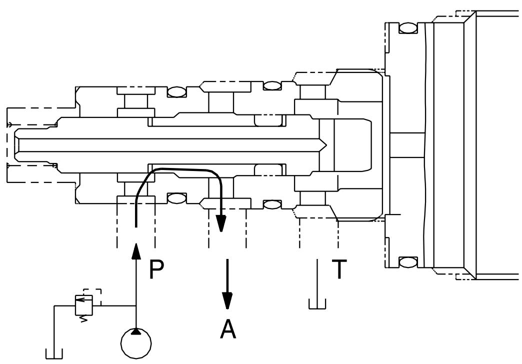




(3) Operating

Secondary pressure enters into A.





4) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.

② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

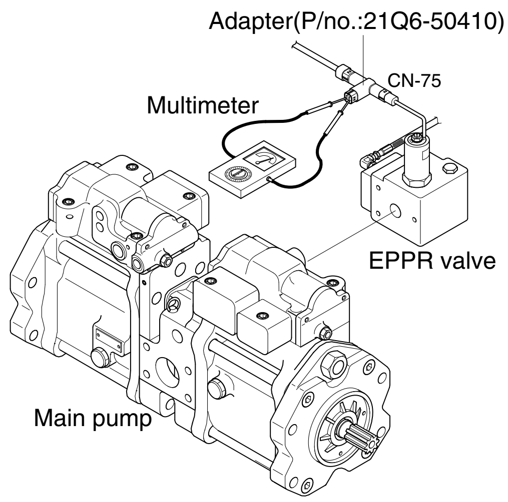
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

⑤ Position the accel dial at 10.

⑥ If rpm display show approx 1700±50 rpm check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.

Spec : 100~700 mA



(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.

- Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)

② Start engine.

③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.

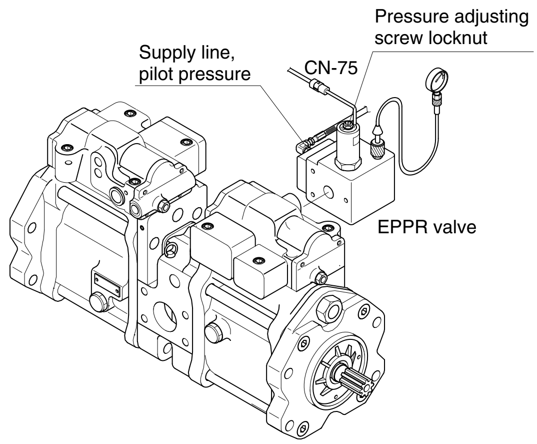
④ Position the accel dial at 10.

⑤ If tachometer show approx 1700±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑦ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 4~20 kgf/cm² (60~280 psi)



2. BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

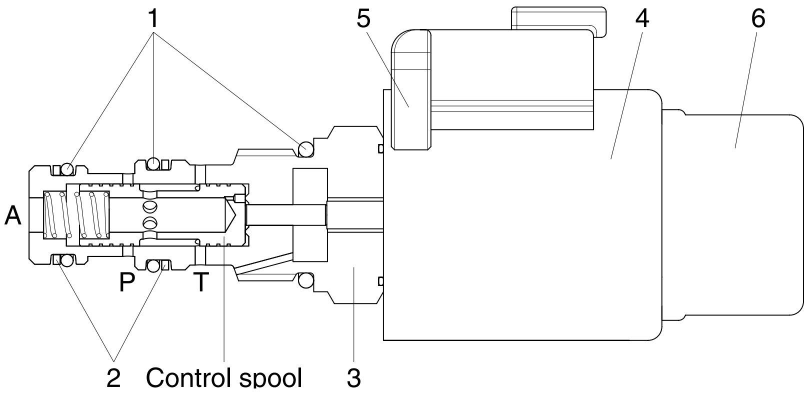
The boom priority EPPR valve is built in a manifold and mainly consisting of valve body and coil. This EPPR valve installed under the solenoid valve.

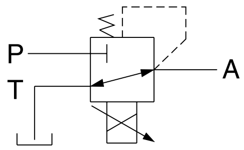
2) CONTROL

The boom priority EPPR valve has to be controlled by a specific electronic amplifier card, which is supplying the coil with a current 580 mA at 30 Ω and 24 V.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE

(1) Structure





P : Pilot supply line
T : Return to tank
A : Secondary pressure to flow MCV

1	O-ring	3	Valve body	5	Connector
2	Support ring	4	Coil	6	Cover cap

(2) Operation

In de-energized mode the inlet port (P) is closed and the outlet port (A) is connected to tank port (T).

In energized mode the solenoid armature presses onto the control spool with a force corresponding to the amount of current. This will set a reduced pressure at port A. The setting is proportional to the amount of current applied.

(3) Maximum pressure relief

If a pressure from outside is applied on port A the valve may directly switch to tank port (T) and protect the system before overload.

2) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

① Disconnect connector CN-133 from EPPR valve.

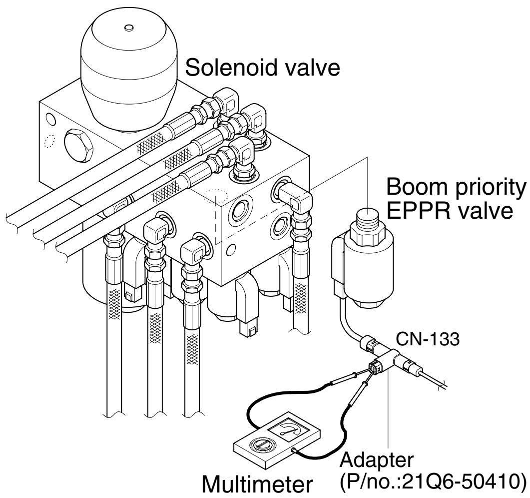
② Insert the adapter to CN-133 and install multimeter as figure.

③ Start engine.

④ If rpm display approx 1600±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.

⑤ Check electric current in case of combined boom up and swing operation.

Spec : 400~600 mA
(combined boom up and swing operation)



(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

① Remove hose from A5 port and connect pressure gauge as figure.
- Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)

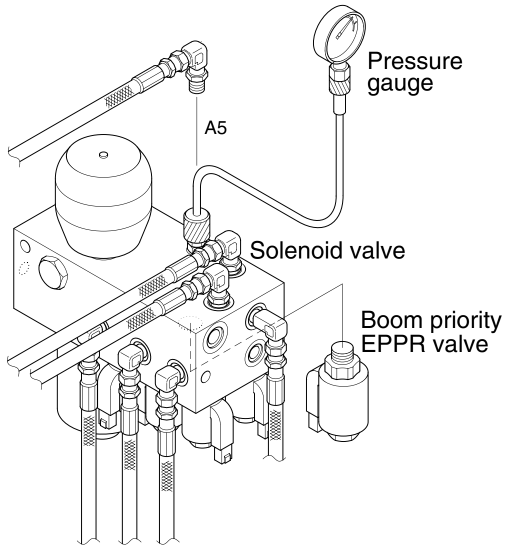
② Start engine.

③ If rpm display approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.

④ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.

⑤ After adjust, test the machine.

Spec : 12~37 kgf/cm² (170~530 psi)
(bucket relief operation)



GROUP 14 MONITORING SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

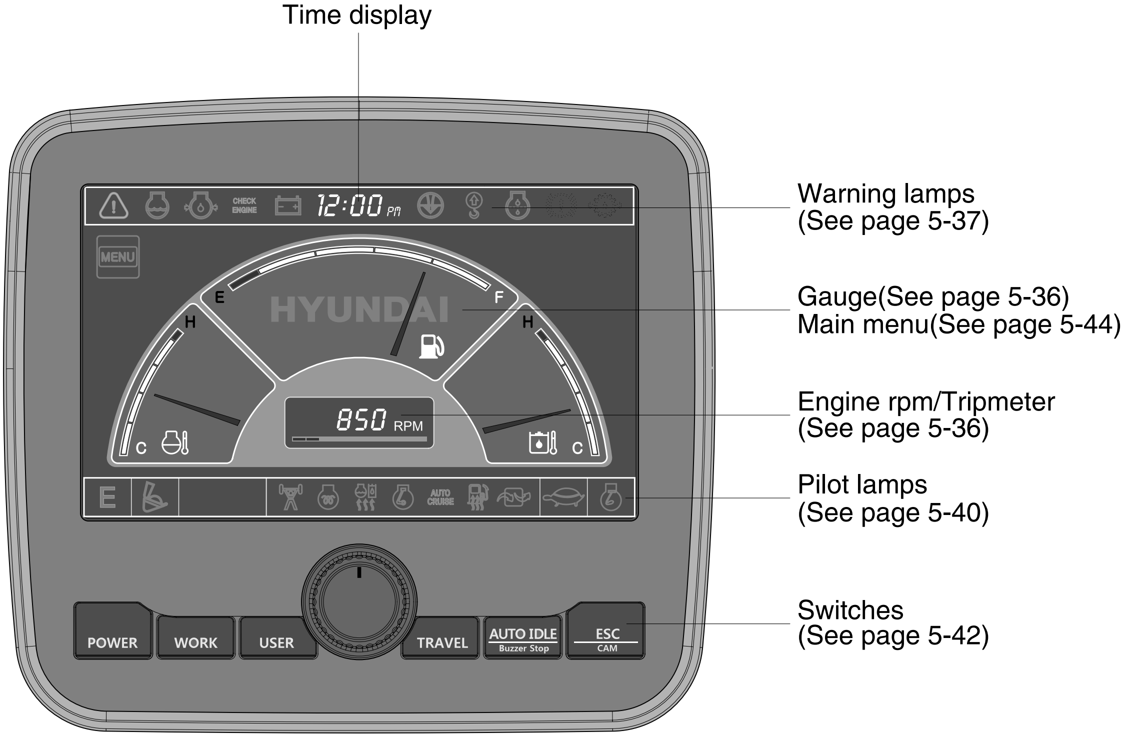
Monitoring system consists of the monitor part and switch part.

The monitor part gives warnings when any abnormality occurs in the machine and informs the condition of the machine.

Various select switches are built into the monitor panel, which act as the control portion of the machine control system.

2. CLUSTER

1) MONITOR PANEL



2) CLUSTER CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Start key : ON

① Check monitor

a. Buzzer sounding for 4 seconds with HYUNDAI logo on cluster.

※ If the ESL mode is set to the enable, enter the password to start engine.

② After initialization of cluster, the operating screen is displayed on the LCD.
Also, self diagnostic function is carried out.

a. Engine rpm display : 0 rpm

b. Engine coolant temperature gauge : White range

c. Hydraulic oil temperature gauge : White range

d. Fuel level gauge : White range

③ Indicating lamp state

a. Power mode pilot lamp : E mode or U mode

b. Work mode pilot lamp : General operation mode (bucket)

c. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

(2) Start of engine

① Check machine condition

a. RPM display indicates at present rpm

b. Gauge and warning lamp : Indicate at present condition.

※ When normal condition : All warning lamp OFF

c. Work mode selection : General work

d. Power mode selection : E mode or U mode

e. Travel speed pilot lamp : Low (turtle)

② When warming up operation

a. Warming up pilot lamp : ON

b. After engine started, engine speed increases to 1200 rpm.

※ Others same as above.

③ When abnormal condition

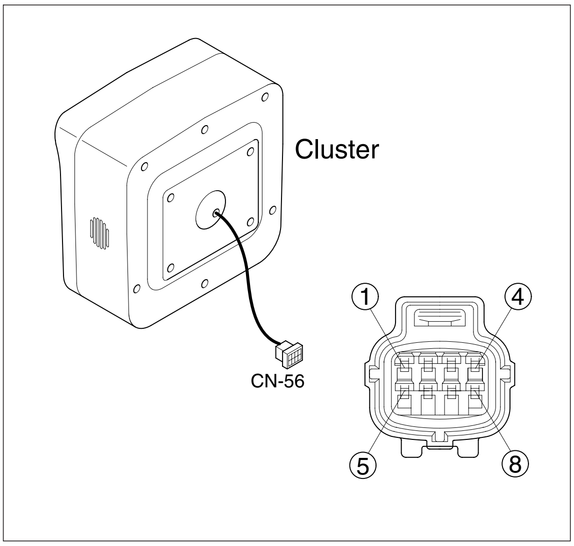
a. The warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds.

b. If BUZZER STOP switch is pressed, buzzer sound is canceled but the lamp warning lights up until normal condition.

※ The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blink when the select switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops.

3. CLUSTER CONNECTOR

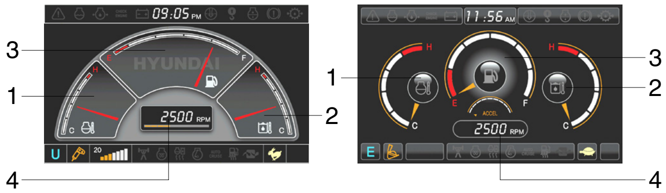
No.	Name	Signal
1	Battery 24V	20~32V
2	Signal 3	NTSC
3	GND	-
4	Serial + (TX)	0~5V
5	Power IG (24V)	20~32V
6	Signal 2	NTSC
7	Camera signal	NTSC
8	Serial - (RX)	0~5V



2) GAUGE

(1) Operation screen

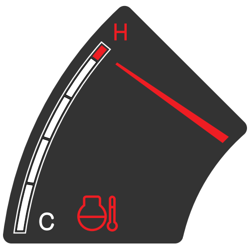
Default　　　　　　　　Option



1 Engine coolant temperature gauge
2 Hydraulic oil temperature gauge
3 Fuel level gauge
4 RPM / Tripmeter display

※ Operation screen type can be set by the screen type menu of the display.
Refer to page 5-54 for details.

(2) Engine coolant temperature gauge



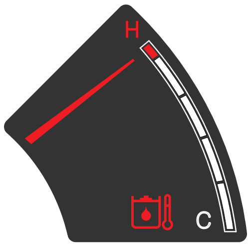
21093CD07G

① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.
- White range : 40-107˚C (104-225˚F)
- Red range : Above 107˚C (225˚F)

② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp blinks in red, turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(3) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge



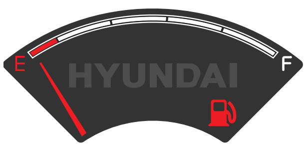
21093CD07E

① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.
- White range : 40-105˚C(104-221˚F)
- Red range : Above 105˚C(221˚F)

② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp blinks is red, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(4) Fuel level gauge



21093CD07F

① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.

② Fill the fuel when the red range, or lamp blinks in red.

※ If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

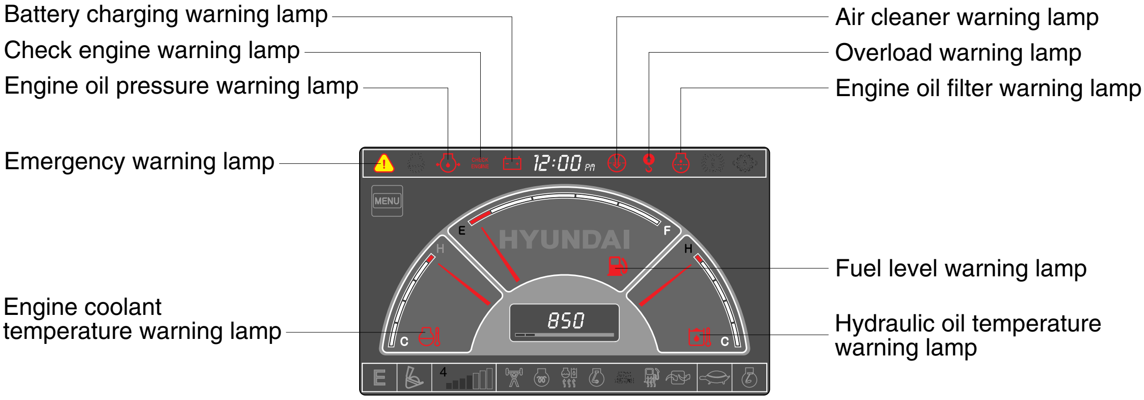
(5) RPM / Tripmeter display

21093CD02D

① This displays the engine speed or the tripmeter.

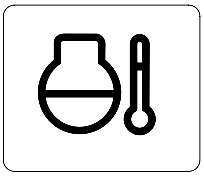
※ Refer to page 5-54 for details.

3) WARNING LAMPS



※ Each warning lamp on the top of the LCD pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds when the each warning is happened. The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. And the buzzer stops.
Refer to page 5-43 for the select switch.

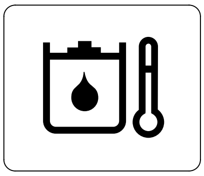
(1) Engine coolant temperature



① Engine coolant temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 103˚C over : The lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds.
- 107˚C over : The lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also, the buzzer stops and lamp keeps blink.
③ Check the cooling system when the lamp keeps ON.

(2) Hydraulic oil temperature



① Hydraulic oil temperature warning is indicated two steps.
- 100˚C over : The lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds.
- 105˚C over : The lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds.

② The pop-up lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also, the buzzer stops and lamp keeps blink.
③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.

(3) Fuel level

① This warning lamp blinks and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 69 ℓ (18.2 U.S. gal).
② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp blinks.

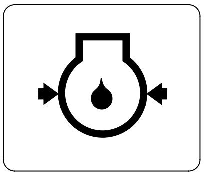
(4) Emergency warning lamp

① This lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings is happened.
- Engine coolant overheating (over 107˚C)
- Hydraulic oil overheating (over 105˚C)
- Pump EPPR circuit abnormal or open
- Attachment flow EPPR circuit abnormal or open
- MCU input voltage abnormal
- Accel dial circuit abnormal or open
- Cluster communication data error
- Engine ECM communication data error

※ The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the select switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops. This is same as following warning lamps.

② When this warning lamp blinks, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

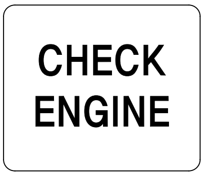
(5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



① This lamp blinks when the engine oil pressure is low.

② If the lamp blinks, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

(6) Check engine warning lamp

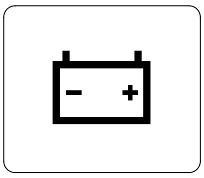


① This lamp blinks when the communication between MCU and engine ECM on the engine is abnormal, or if the cluster received any fault code from engine ECM.

② Check the communication line between them.
If the communication line is OK, then check the fault codes on the cluster.

③ This lamp blinks when "Engine check water in fuel" is displayed in the message box then check water separator.

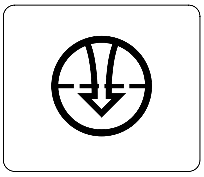
(7) Battery charging warning lamp



① This lamp blinks when the battery charging voltage is low.

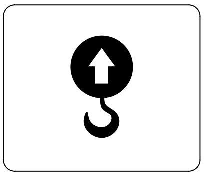
② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp blinks.

(8) Air cleaner warning lamp



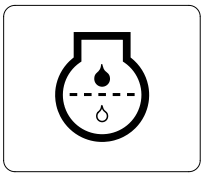
① This lamp blinks when the filter of air cleaner is clogged.
② Check the filter and clean or replace it.

(9) Overload warning lamp (opt)



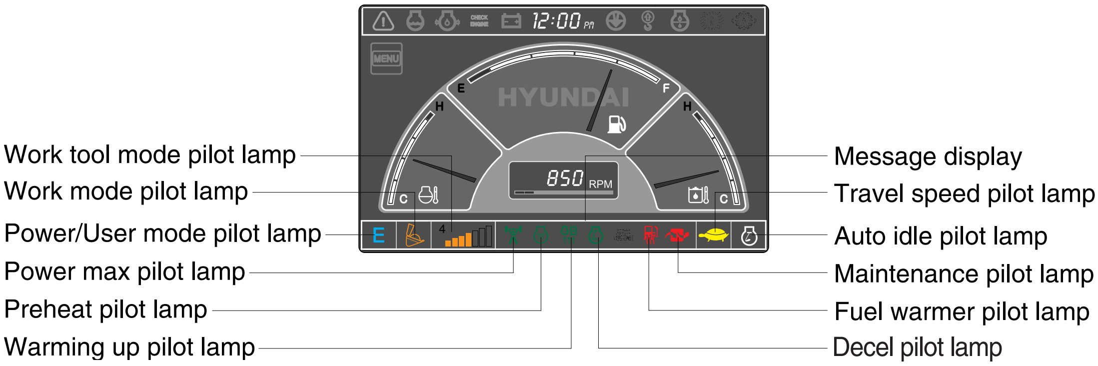
① When the machine is overload, the overload warning lamp blinks during the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
② Reduce the machine load.

(10) Engine oil filter warning lamp

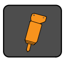


① This lamp blinks when the filter of engine oil is clogged.
② Check the filter and replace it.

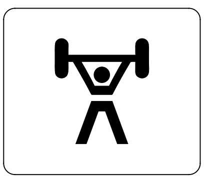
4) PILOT LAMPS



(1) Mode pilot lamps

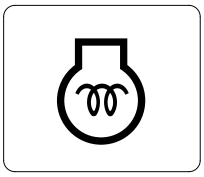
No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
1	Power mode	P	Heavy duty power work mode
		S	Standard power mode
		E	Economy power mode
2	User mode	U	User preferable power mode
3	Work mode		General operation mode
			Breaker operation mode
			Crusher operation mode
4	Travel mode		Low speed traveling
			High speed traveling
5	Auto idle mode		Auto idle
6	Work tool mode		Oil flow level of breaker or crusher mode
7	Message display		"Setting is completed" display after selection

(2) Power max pilot lamp



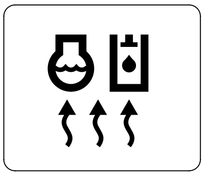
① The lamp will be ON when pushing power max switch on the LH RCV lever.
② The power max function is operated maximum 8 seconds.
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 3-26 for power max function.

(3) Preheat pilot lamp



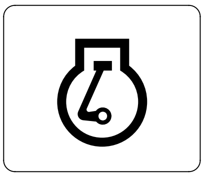
① Turning the start key switch ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
② Start the engine after this lamp is OFF.

(4) Warming up pilot lamp



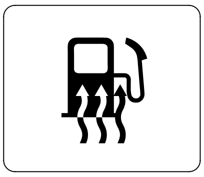
① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 30˚C(86˚F).
② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30˚C, or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

(5) Decel pilot lamp



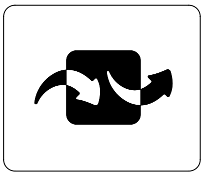
① Operating one touch decel switch on the RCV lever makes the lamp ON.
② Also, the lamp will be ON and engine speed will be lowered automatically to save fuel consumption when all levers and pedals are at neutral position, and the auto idle function is selected.
※ One touch decel is not available when the auto idle pilot lamp is turned ON.
※ Refer to the operator's manual page 3-26.

(6) Fuel warmer pilot lamp



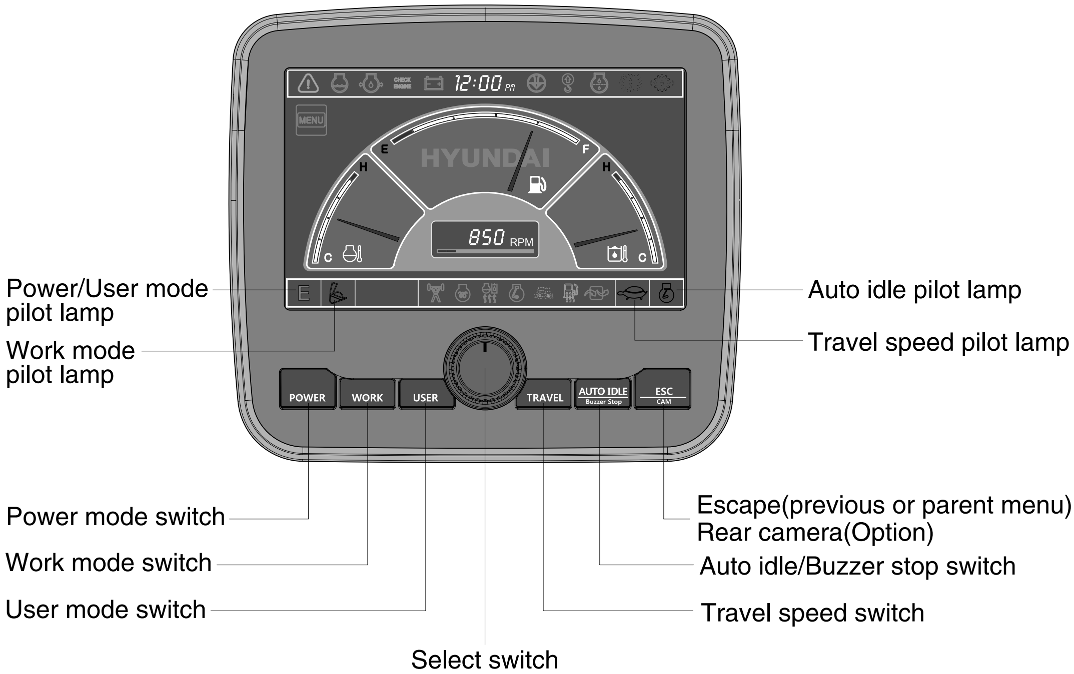
① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 10˚C (50˚F) or the hydraulic oil temperature 20˚C (68˚F).
② The automatic fuel warming is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 60˚C, or the hydraulic oil temperature is above 45˚C since the start switch was ON position.

(7) Maintenance pilot lamp



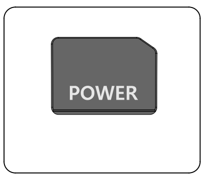
① This lamp will be ON when the consuming parts are needed to change or replace. It means that the change or replacement interval of the consuming parts remains below 30 hours.
② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights ON for 3 minutes when the start switch is ON position.

5) SWITCHES



※ When the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to the page 5-40 for details.

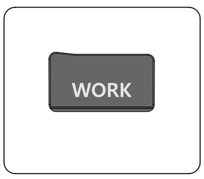
(1) Power mode switch



① This switch is to select the machine power mode and selected power mode pilot lamp is displayed on the pilot lamp position.
- · P : Heavy duty power work.
- · S : Standard power work.
- · E : Economy power work.

② The pilot lamp changes E → S → P → E in order.

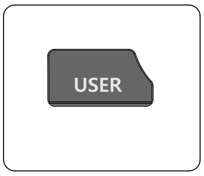
(2) Work mode switch



① This switch is to select the machine work mode, which shifts from general operation mode to optional attachment operation mode.
- · : General operation mode
- · : Breaker operation mode (if equipped)
- · : Crusher operation mode (if equipped)
- · Not installed : Breaker or crusher is not installed.

※ Refer to the operator's manual page 4-6 for details.

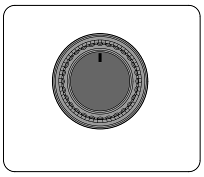
(3) User mode switch



① This switch is used to memorize the current machine operating status in the MCU and activate the memorized user mode.
- · Memory : Push more than 2 seconds.
- · Action : Push within 2 seconds.
- · Cancel : Push this switch once more within 2 seconds.

② Refer to the page 5-45 for another set of user mode.

(4) Select switch

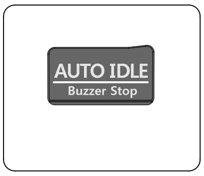


① This switch is used to select or change the menu and input value.

② Knob push
- · Long (over 2 sec) : Return to the operation screen
- · Medium (0.5~2 sec) : Return to the previous screen
- · Short (below 0.5 sec) : Select menu

③ Knob rotation
This knob changes menu and input value.
- · Right turning : Down direction / Increase input value
- · Left turning : Up direction / Decreased input value

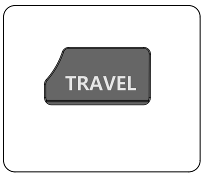
(5) Auto idle/ buzzer stop switch



① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.
- · Pilot lamp ON : Auto idle function is activated.
- · Pilot lamp OFF : Auto idle function is cancelled.

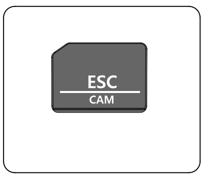
② The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.
In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

(6) Travel speed control switch



① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.
- ·  : High speed
- ·  : Low speed

(7) Escape/Camera switch

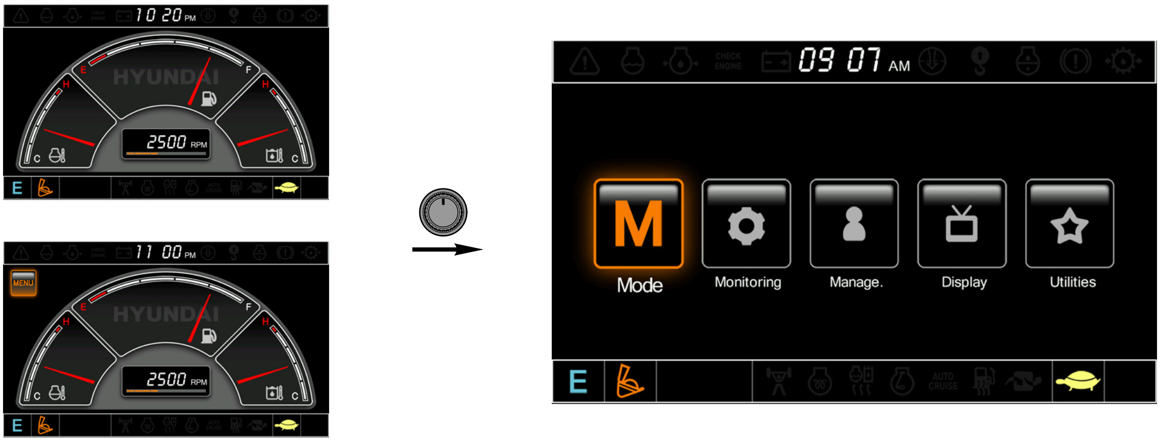


① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.

② In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).
Please refer to page 5-55 for the camera.

③ If the camera is not installed, this switch is used only ESC function.

6) MAIN MENU



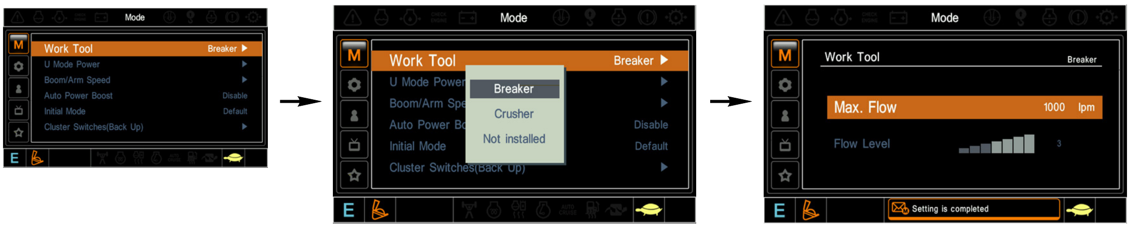
※ Please refer to select switch, page 5-43 for selection and change of menu and input value.

(1) Structure

No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description
1	Mode	Work tool U mode power Boom/Arm speed Auto power boost Initial mode Cluster switch (back up)	Breaker, Crusher, Not installed User mode only Boom speed, Arm speed Enable, Disable Default, U mode Switch function
2	Monitoring	Active fault Logged fault Delete logged fault Monitoring (analog) Monitoring (digital) Operating hours	MCU, Engine ECM MCU, Engine ECM All logged fault delete, Initialization canceled Machine information Switch status, Output status Operating hours for each mode
3	Management	Maintenance information Machine security Machine Information A/S phone number Service menu	Replacement, Change interval oils and filters ESL mode setting, Password change Cluster, MCU, Engine, Machine A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Power shift, Hourmeter, Replacement history, Update
4	Display	Display item Clock Brightness Unit Language Screen type	Engine speed, Tripmeter A, Tripmeter B, Tripmeter C Clock Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure, Flow, Date format Korean, English, Chinese A type, B type
5	Utilities	Tripmeter DMB Entertainment Camera setting Message box	3 kinds (A, B, C) DMB select, DAB select, Channel scan, Exit Play MP4, codec. Basic direction, Display switching, Full screen Record for fault, attachment etc.

(2) Mode setup

① Work tool

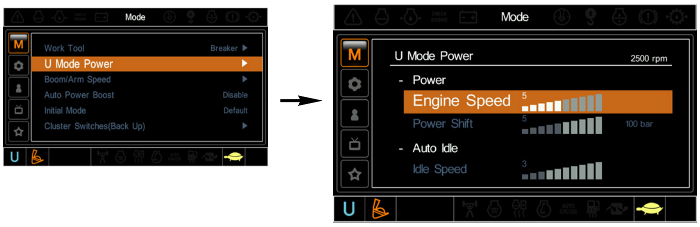


A B

- A : Select one installed optional attachment.
- B : Max flow - Set the maximum flow for the attachment.
  Flow level - Reduce the operating flow from maximum flow.
  Breaker - Max 7 steps, Reduced 10 lpm each step.
  Crusher - Max 4 steps, Reduced 20 lpm each step.

※ The flow level is displayed with the work mode pilot lamp.

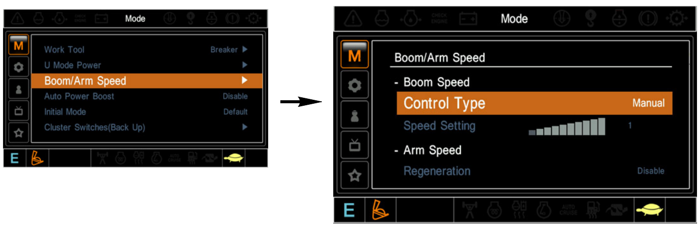
② U mode power



Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1350	800	0
2	1400	900	3
3	1450	950	6
4	1500	1000	9
5	1550	1050	12
6	1600	1100	16
7	1650	1150	20
8	1700	1200	26
9	1750	1250	32
10	1800	1300	38

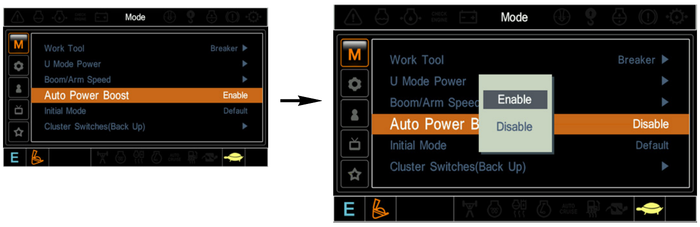
- Engine high idle rpm, auto idle rpm and pump torque (power shift) can be modulated and memorized separately in U-mode.
- U-mode can be activated by user mode switch.

③ Boom/Arm speed



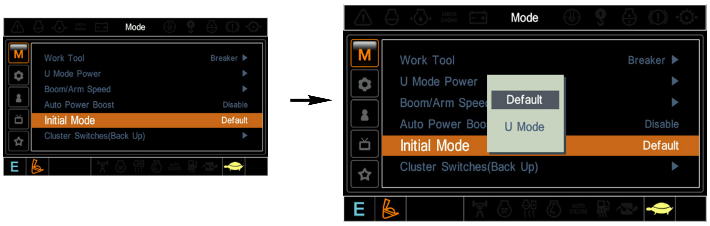
- Boom speed
  - Control type
    Manual - Boom up speed is fixed as set steps.
    Auto - Boom up speed is automatically adjusted as working conditions by the MCU.
  - Speed setting - Boom up speed is increased as much as activated steps.
- Arm speed
  - Regeneration - Arm regeneration function can be activated or cancelled.
    Enable - Arm in speed is up.
    Disable - Fine operation.

④ Auto power boost



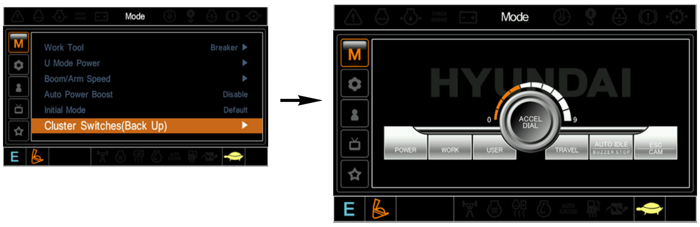
· The power boost function can be activated or cancelled.
· Enable - The digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU.
It is operated max 8 seconds.
· Disable - Not operated.

⑤ Initial mode



· Default - The initial power mode is set E mode when the engine is started.
· U mode - The initial power mode is set U mode when the engine is started.

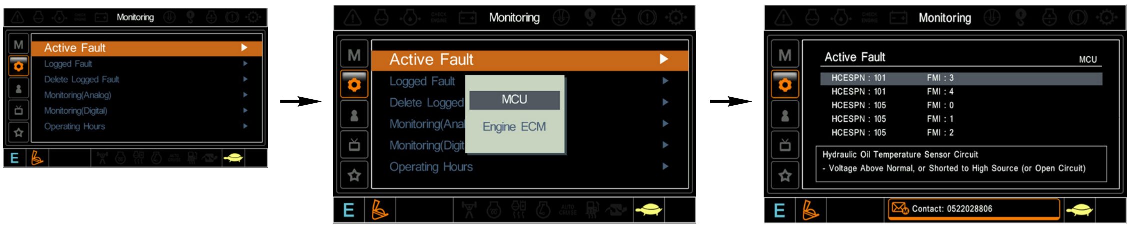
⑥ Cluster switch (back up)



- The cluster switch can be selected and changed by this menu when the switches are abnormal on the cluster.
- In order to exit "Cluster switch" mode, please put the cursor on the ESC/CAM switch by turning the select switch and push the select switch.
- In "Cluster switch", other switches except "Select switch" do not work.

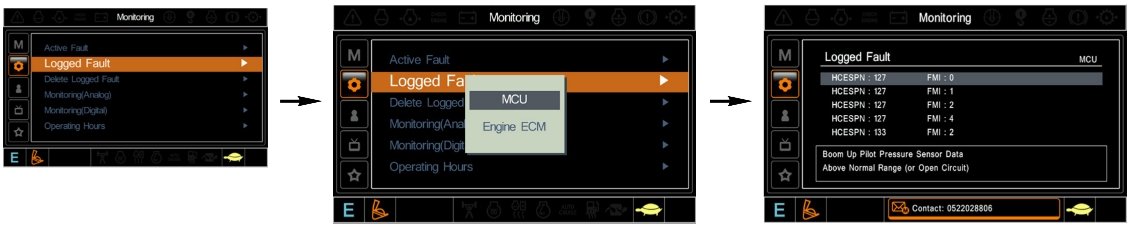
(3) Monitoring

① Active fault



· The active faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

② Logged fault

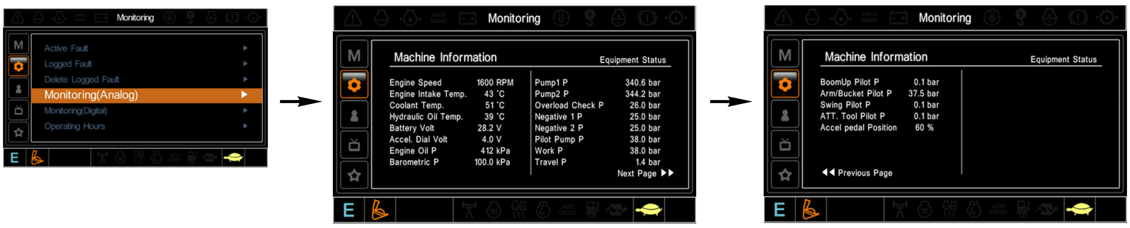


· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be checked by this menu.

③ Delete logged fault

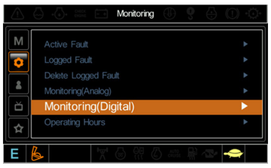
· The logged faults of the MCU or engine ECM can be deleted by this menu.

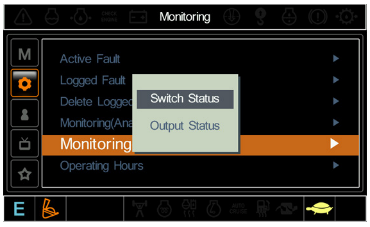
④ Monitoring (analog)

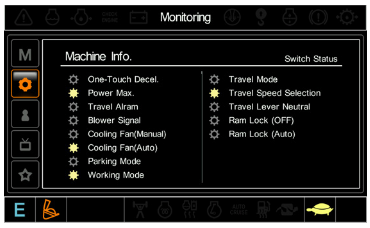


· The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.

⑤ Monitoring (digital)

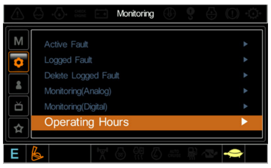


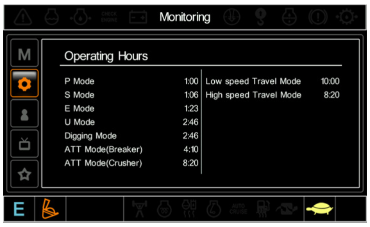




· The switch status or output status can be confirmed by this menu.
· The activated switch or output pilot lamps ✸ are light ON.

⑥ Operating hours





· The operating hour of each mode can be confirmed by this menu.

(4) Management

① Maintenance information

· Alarm( ) : Gray - Normal

Yellow - First warning

Red - Second warning

· Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).

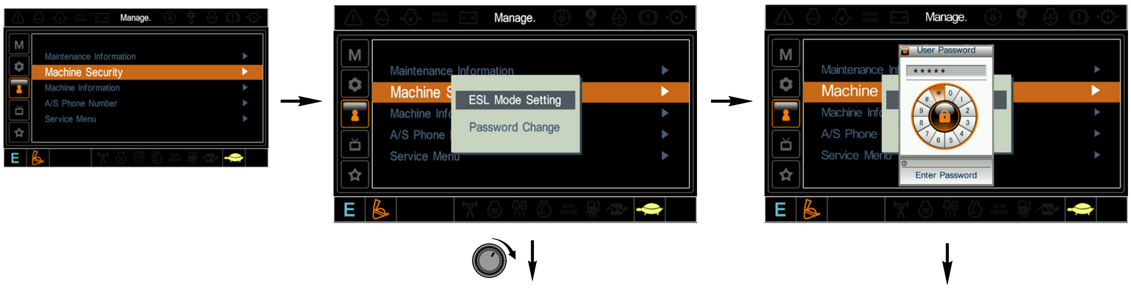
· Change interval : The change or replace interval can be changed in the unit of 50 hours.

· OK : Return to the item list screen.

· Change or replace interval(h)

No	Item	Interval
1	Engine oil	500
2	Travel gear oil	1000
3	Swing gear oil	1000
4	Hydraulic oil(Conventional/Long life)	2000/5000
5	Pilot line filter	1000
6	Drain filter	1000
7	Hydraulic oil return filter	1000
8	Engine oil filter	500
9	Fuel filter	500
10	Pre-filter	500
11	Hydraulic tank breather	1000
12	Air cleaner	500
13	Radiator coolant	2000
14	Swing gear pinion grease	1000

② Machine security

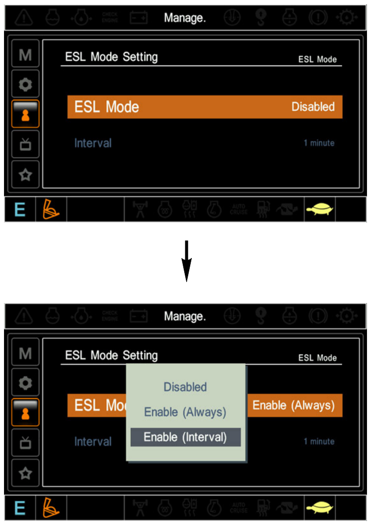


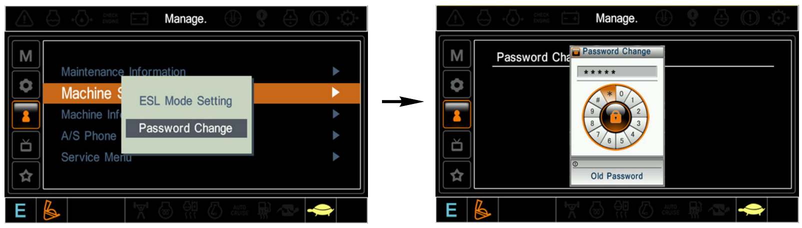
· ESL mode

- ESL : Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is designed to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- If the ESL mode was selected Enable, the password will be required when the start switch is turned ON.
- Disable : Not used ESL function

  Enable (always) : The password is required whenever the operator start engine.

  Enable (interval) : The password is required when the operator start engine first. But the operator can restart the engine within the interval time without in putting the password. The interval time can be set maximum 4 hours.

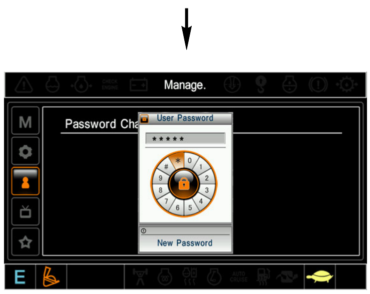




Enter the current password

· Password change

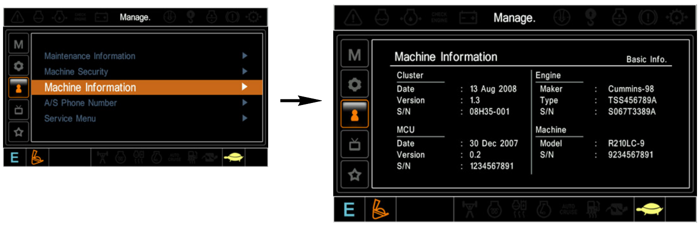
- The password is 5~10 digits.



Enter the new password

The new password is stored in the MCU. Enter the new password again

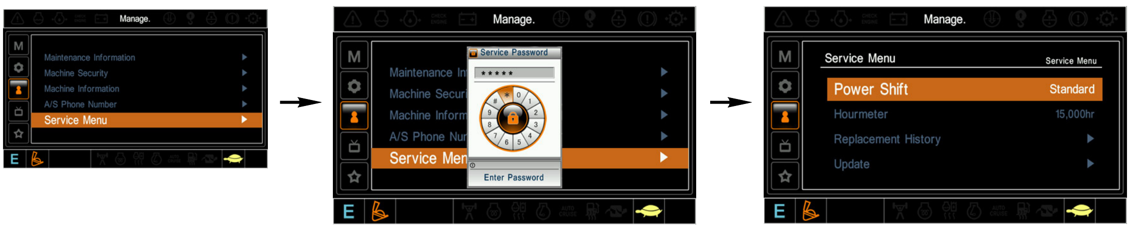
③ Machine Information



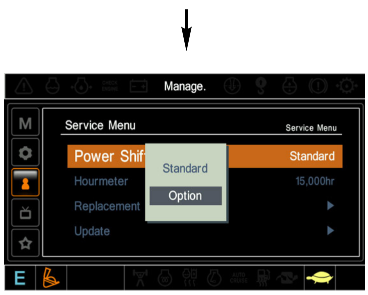
· This can confirm the identification of the cluster, MCU, engine and machine.

④ A/S phone number

⑤ Service menu



Enter the password



· Power shift (standard/option) : Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.
· Hourmeter : Operating hours since the machine line out can be checked by this menu.
· Replacement history : Replacement history of the MCU and cluster can be checked by this menu.
· Update : Firm ware can be upgraded by this menu. (the USB port is located under the cluster)

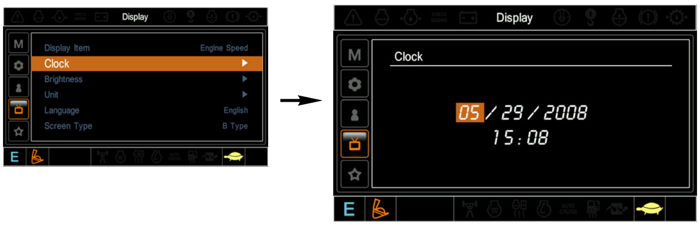
(5) Display

① Display item

Center display

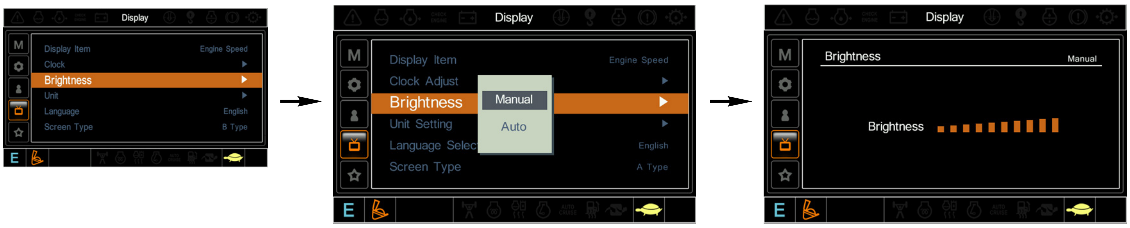
· The center display type of the LCD can be selected by this menu.
· The engine speed or each of the tripmeter (A,B,C) is displayed on the center display.

② Clock

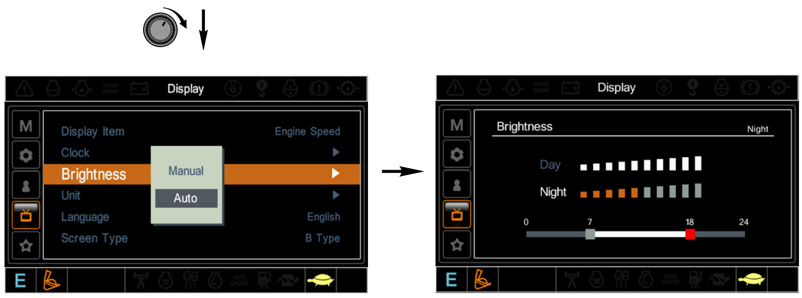


· The first line's three spots "**/**/****" represent Month/Day/Year each.
· The second line shows the current time. (0:00~23:59)

③ Brightness



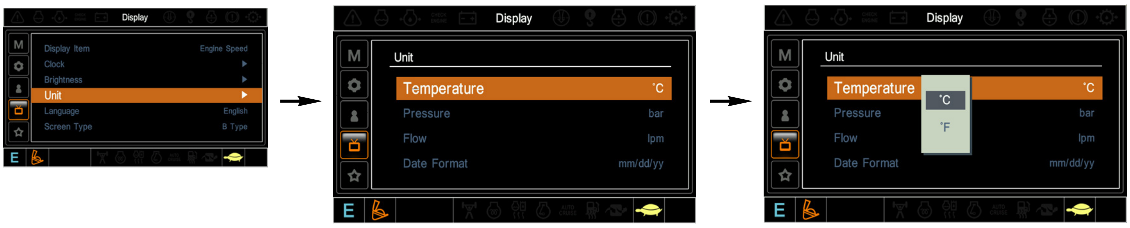
Manual (1st~10th step)



Auto (day/night)

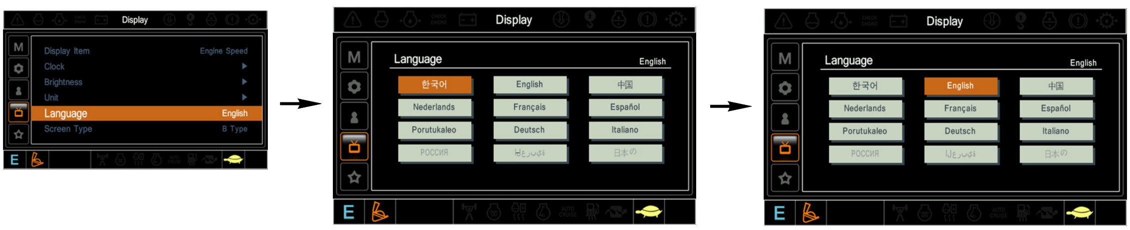
※ If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be differently set up. Also by using the bar in lower side, users can define which time interval belongs to day and night.
(in bar figure, gray area represents night time while white shows day time)

④ Unit



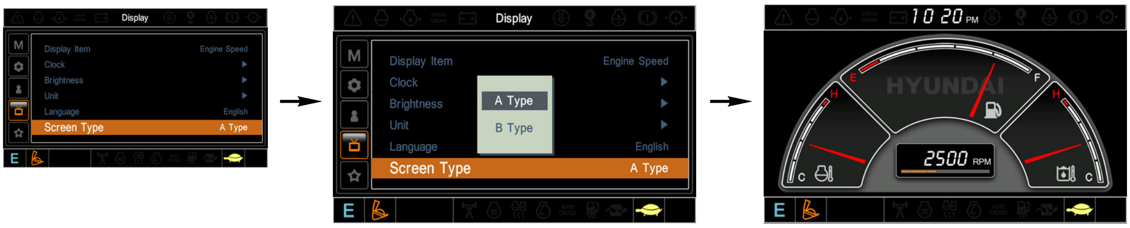
- Temperature : ˚C ↔ ˚F
- Pressure : bar ↔ MPa ↔ kgf/cm^2
- Flow : lpm ↔ gpm
- Date format : yy/mm/dd ↔ mm/dd/yy ↔ dd-Mar-yy

⑤ Language



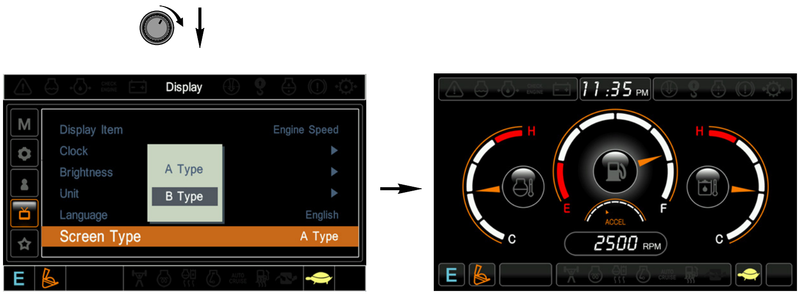
- User can select preferable language and all displays are changed the selected language.

⑥ Screen type



A Type

Standard

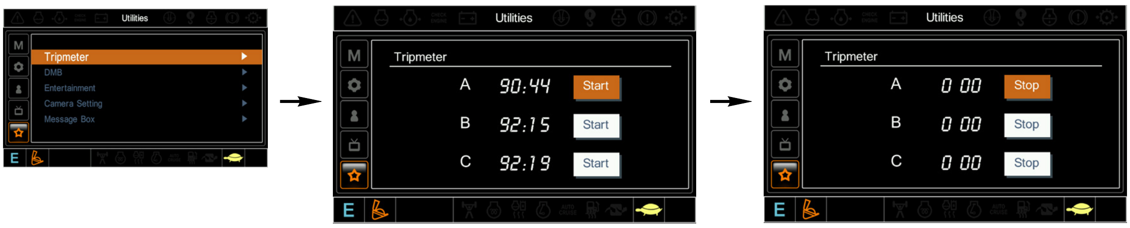


B Type

Option

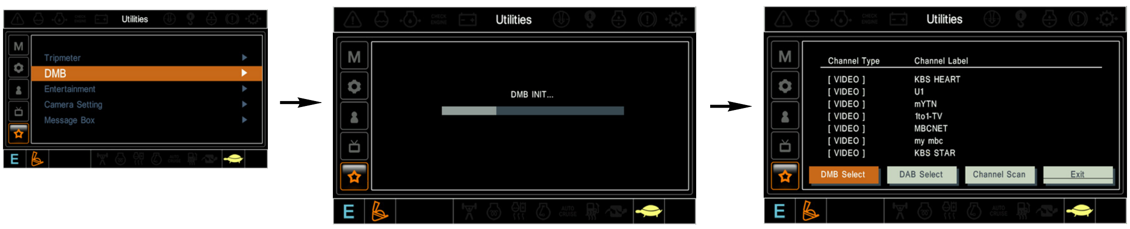
(6) Utilities

① Tripmeter



- Maximum 3 kinds of tripmeters can be used at the same time.
- Each tripmeter can be turned on by choosing "Start" while it also can be turned off by choosing "Stop".
- If the tripmeter icon is activated in the operation screen, it can be controlled directly there.

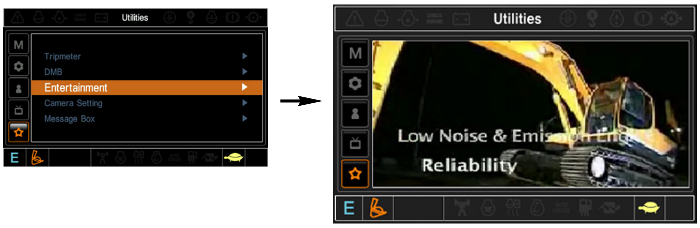
② DMB



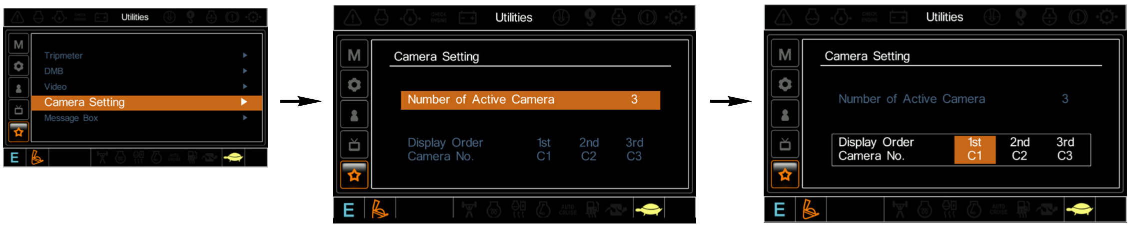
- DMB select : TV channel can be selected by this menu.
- DAB select : Audio channel can be selected by this menu.
- Channel scan : This menu can be used other region for TV/Audio.
- Exit : Exit DMB menu

③ Entertainment

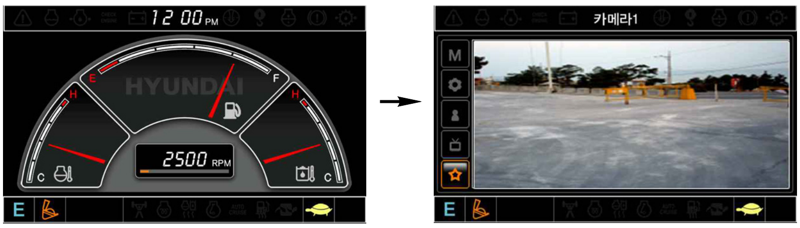
· Play MP4 or codec file of external hard disk through USB port.
· The USB port is located under the cluster.



④ Camera setting



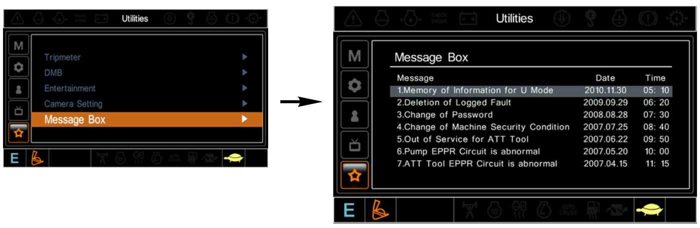
· Three cameras can be installed on the machine.
· The display order can be set by this menu.



· If the camera was not equipped, this menu is not useful.
· In the operation screen, if the ESC/CAM switch is pushed, the first ordered display camera will be viewed.
· Turning the select switch in clockwise direction, the next ordered will be shown and in counter-clockwise direction, the previously ordered will be shown.
· Push the select switch, the displayed screen will be enlargement.

⑤ Message box

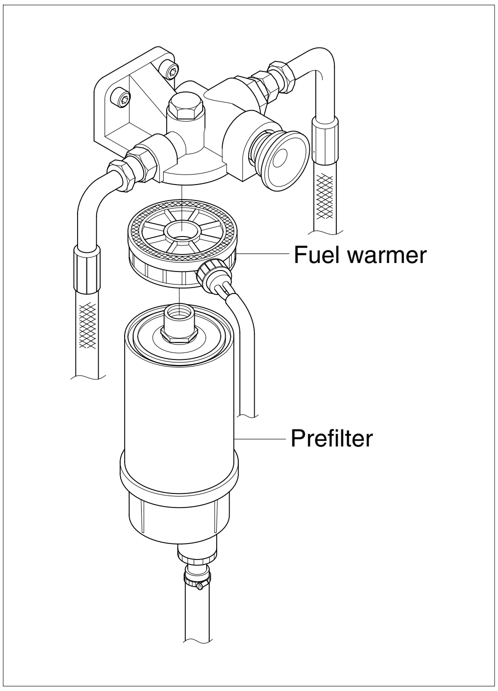
· The history of the machine operating status can be checked by this menu.



GROUP 15 FUEL WARMER SYSTEM

1. SPECIFICATION

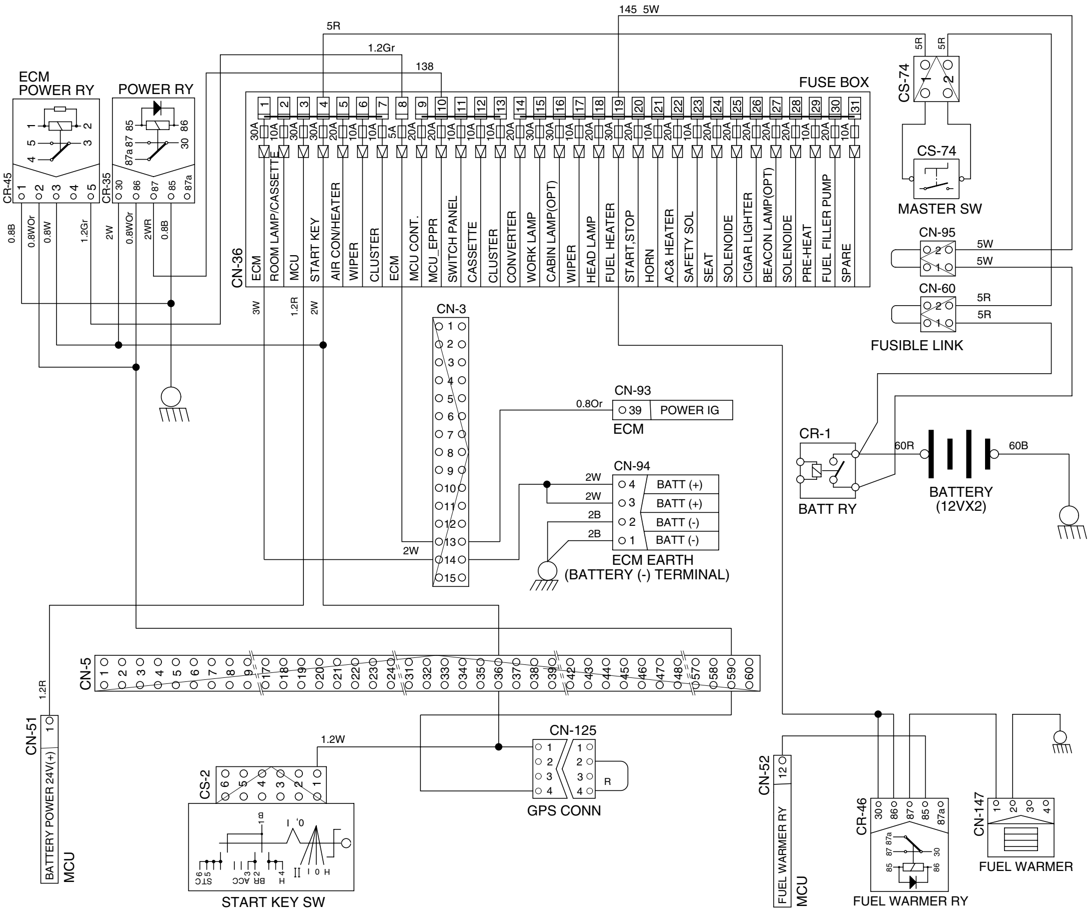
1) Operating voltage : 24±4 V
2) Power : 350±50 W
3) Current : 15 A



2. OPERATION

1) The current of fuel warmer system is automatically controlled without thermostat according to fuel temperature.
2) At the first state, the 15 A current flows to the fuel warmer and engine may be started in 1~2 minutes.
3) If the fuel starts to flow, ceramic-disk in the fuel warmer heater senses the fuel temperature to reduce the current as low as 1.5 A.
   So, fuel is protected from overheating by this mechanism.

3. ELECTRIC CIRCUIT



SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

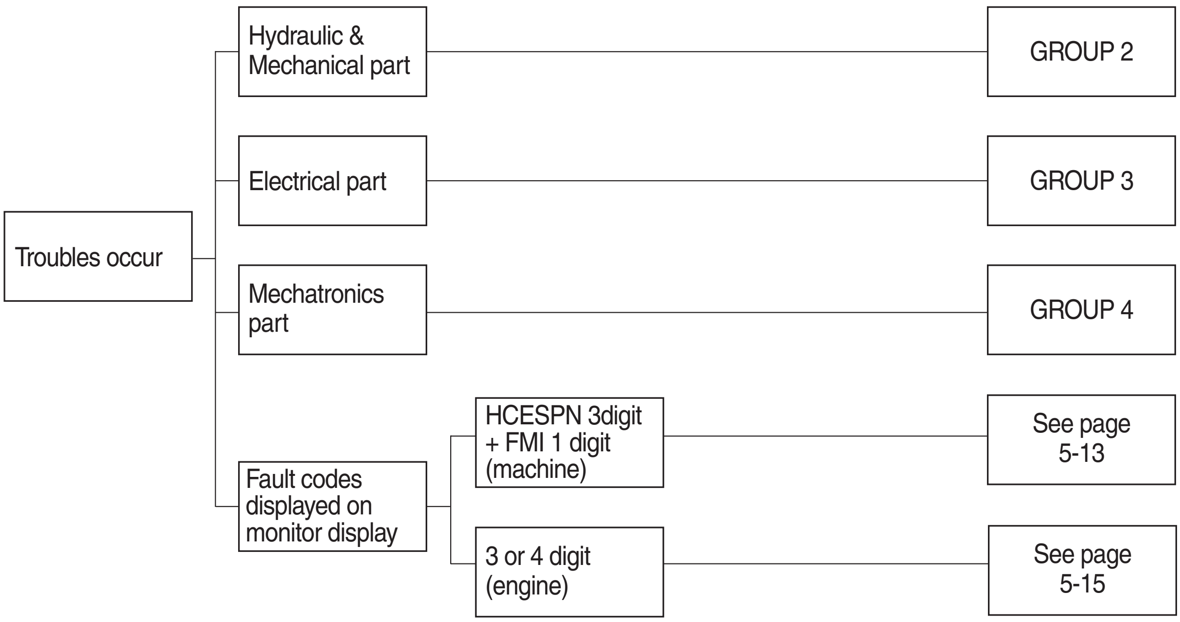
GROUP 1 BEFORE TROUBLESHOOTING

1. INTRODUCTION

When a trouble is occurred in the machine, this section will help an operator to maintain the machine with easy.

The trouble of machine is parted Hydraulic & Mechanical system, Electrical system and Mechatronics system. At each system part, an operator can check the machine according to the troubleshooting process diagram.

※ **Before carring out troubleshooting procedure, check monitoring menu in the cluster.**

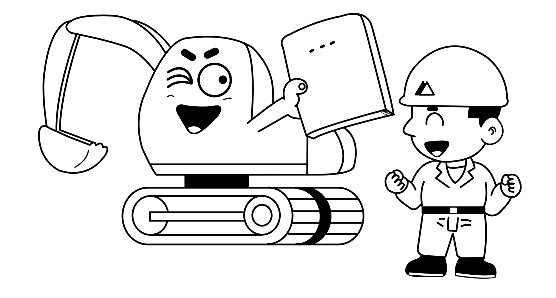


2. DIAGNOSING PROCEDURE

To carry out troubleshooting efficiently, the following steps must be observed.

STEP 1. Study the machine system

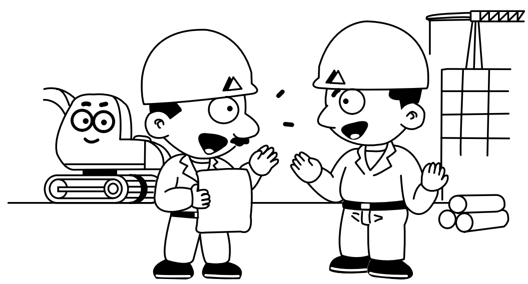
Study and know how the machine is operating, how the system is composing, what kinds of function are installed in the machine and what are specifications of the system components by the machine service manual.
Especially, deepen the knowledge for the related parts of the trouble.


13031SH02

STEP 2. Ask the operator

Before inspecting, get the full story of malfunctions from a witness --- the operator.

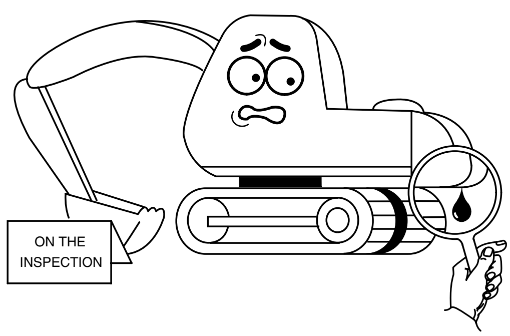
1) How the machine is used and when it is serviced?
2) When the trouble was noticed and what work the machine was doing at that time?
3) What is the phenomenon of the trouble? Was the trouble getting worse, or did it come out suddenly for the first time?
4) Did the machine have any troubles previously? If so, which parts were repaired before.


13031SH03

STEP 3. Inspect the machine

Before starting troubleshooting, check the machine for the daily maintenance points as shown in the operator's manual.

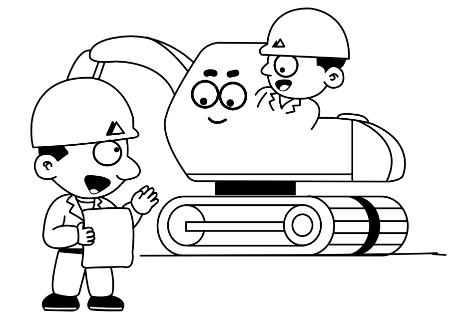
And also check the electrical system including batteries, as the troubles in the electrical system such as low battery voltage, loose connections and blown out fuses will result in malfunction of the controllers causing total operational failures of the machine.



(210-7) 6-2(3)

STEP 4. Inspect the trouble actually on the machine

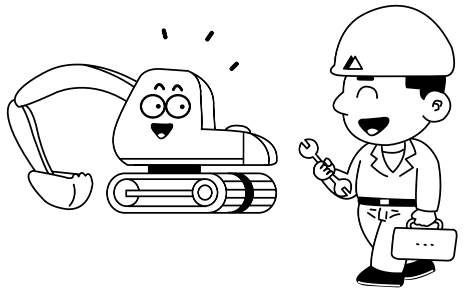
In case that some trouble cannot be confirmed, obtain the details of the malfunction from the operator.
Also, check if there are any in complete connections of the wire harnesses are or not.



(210-7) 6-3(1)

STEP 5. Perform troubleshooting

According to where the trouble parts are located, hydraulic & mechanical system part or electrical system part or mechatronics system part, perform troubleshooting the machine refer to the each system part's troubleshooting process diagram.

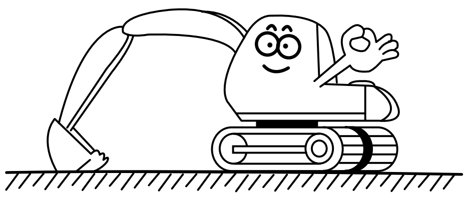


13031SH05

STEP 6. Trace a cause

Before reaching a conclusion, check the most suspectible causes again. Try to trace what the real cause of the trouble is.

Make a plan of the appropriate repairing procedure to avoid consequential malfunctions.



(210-7) 6-3(3)

GROUP 2 HYDRAULIC AND MECHANICAL SYSTEM

1. INTRODUCTION

1) MACHINE IN GENERAL

(1) If even a minor fault is left intact and operation is continued, a fatal failure may be caused, entailing a large sum of expenses and long hours of restoration.
Therefore when even a small trouble occurs, do not rely on your intuition and experience, but look for the cause based on the troubleshooting principle and perform maintenance and adjustment to prevent major failure from occurring. Keep in mind that a fault results from a combination of different causes.

(2) The following lists up commonly occurring faults and possible causes with this machine. For the troubleshooting of the engine, refer to the coming troubleshooting and repair.

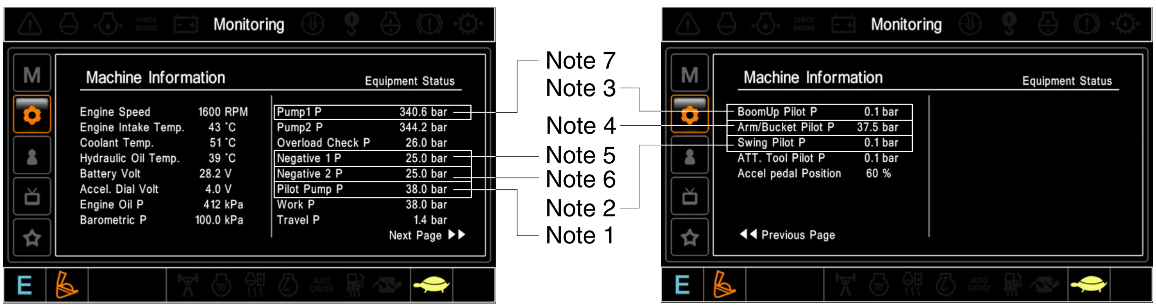
(3) When carrying out troubleshooting, do not hurry to disassemble the components.
It will become impossible to find the cause of the problem.

(4) Ask user or operator the following.
① Was there any strange thing about machine before failure occurred?
② Under what conditions did the failure occur?
③ Have any repairs been carried out before the failure?

(5) Check before troubleshooting.
① Check oil and fuel level.
② Check for any external leakage of oil from components.
③ Check for loose or damage of wiring and connections.

2) MACHINE STATUS MONITORING ON THE CLUSTER

(1) The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.



Analog 1 Analog 2

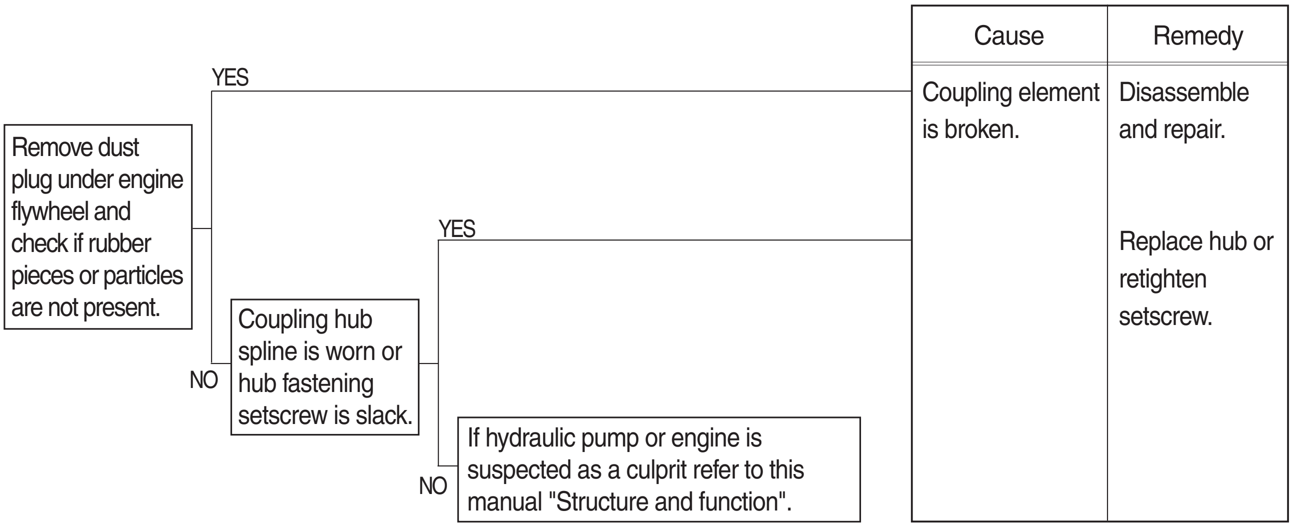
21096HS01

(2) Specification

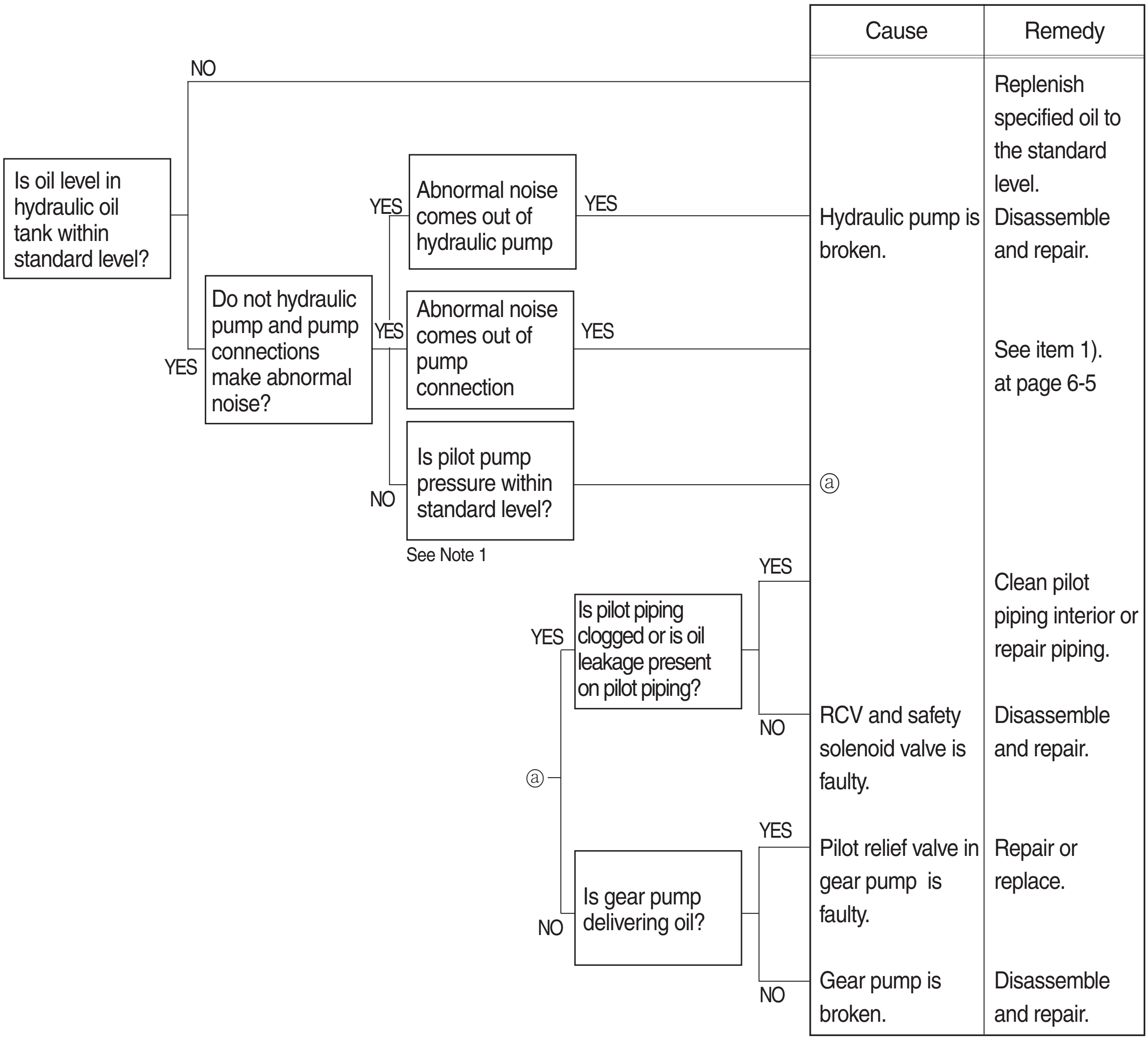
No.	Description	Specification
Note 1	Pilot pump pressure	40^{+2}_{0} bar
Note 2	Swing pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 3	Boom up pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 4	Arm/bucket pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 5	P1 pump control pressure	0~25 bar
Note 6	P2 pump control pressure	0~25 bar
Note 7	Pump 1 pressure	350 bar

2. DRIVE SYSTEM

1) UNUSUAL NOISE COMES OUT OF PUMP CONNECTION

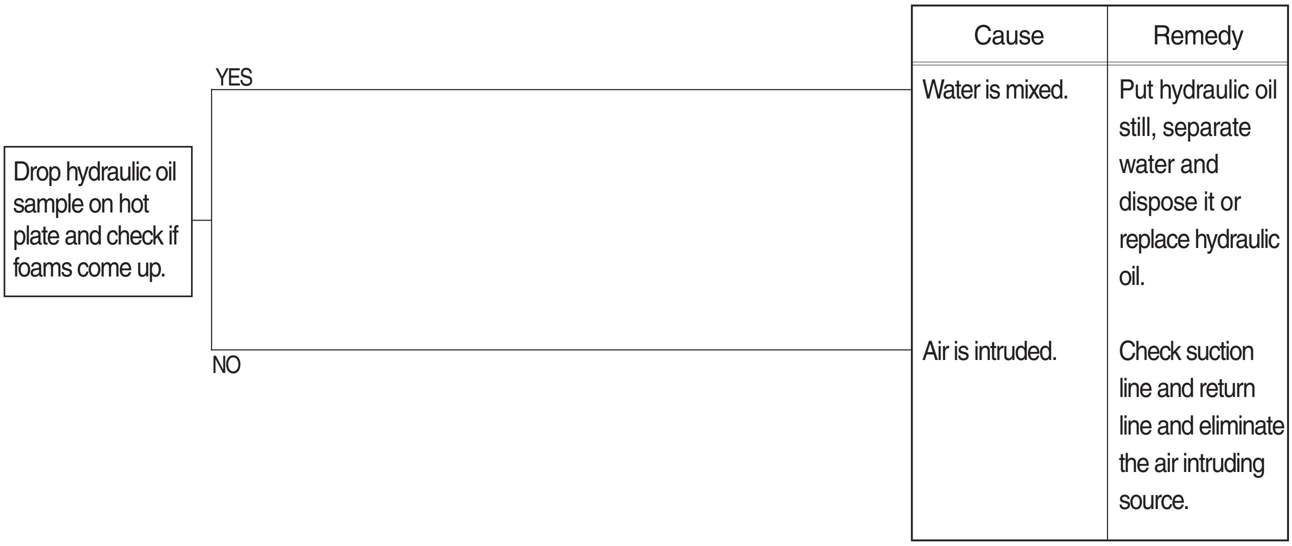


2) ENGINE STARTS BUT MACHINE DOES NOT OPERATE AT ALL

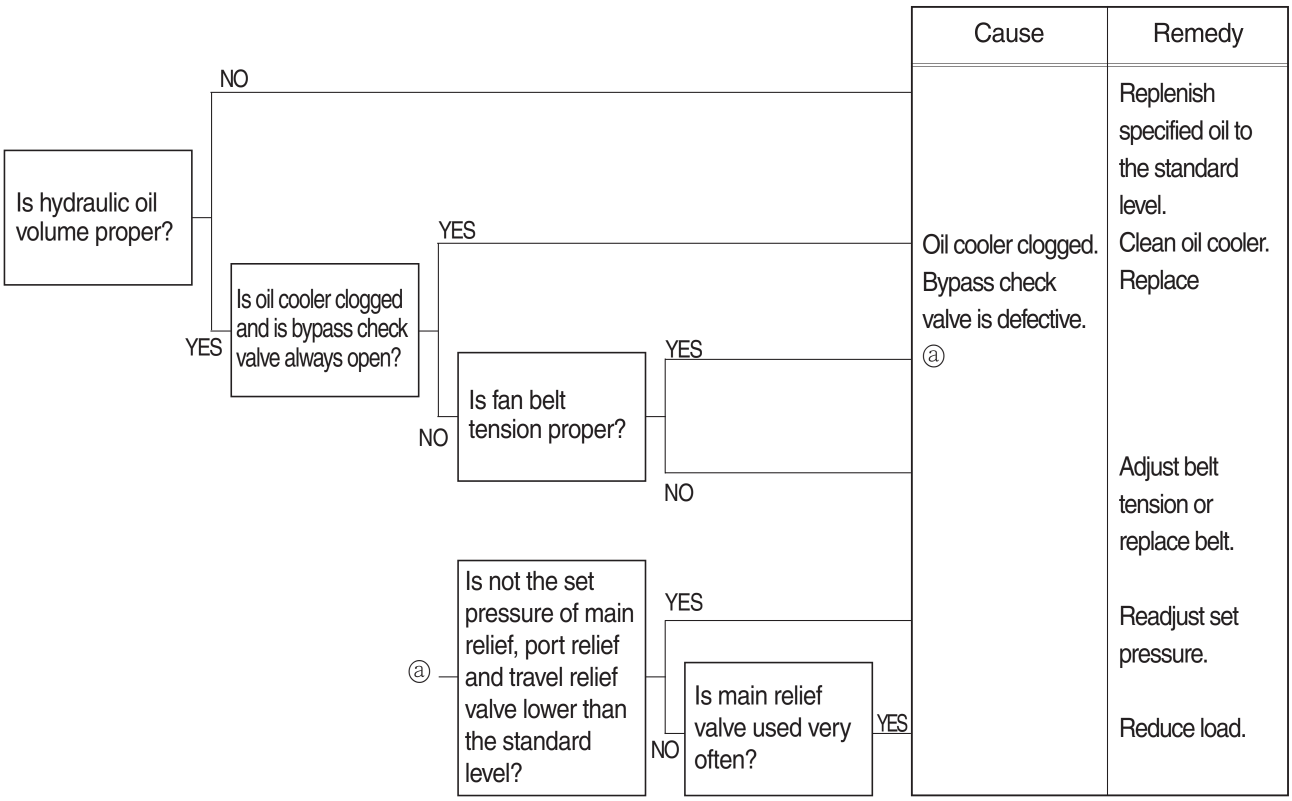


3. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

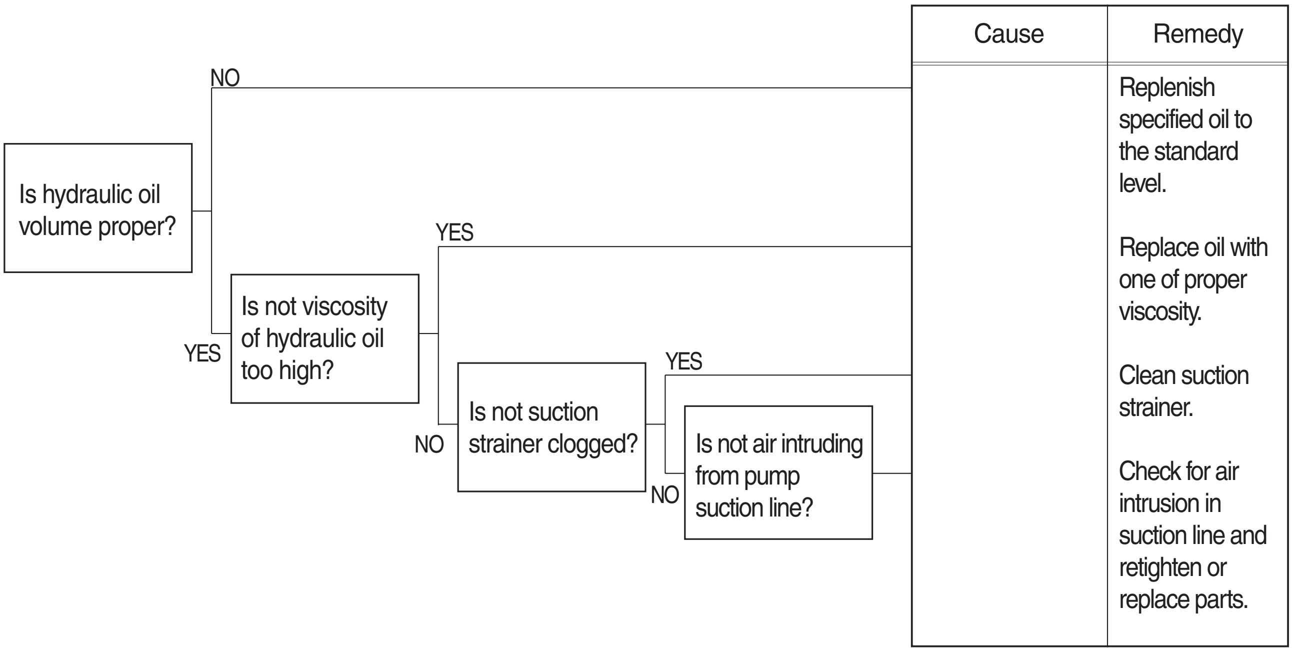
1) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CLOUDY



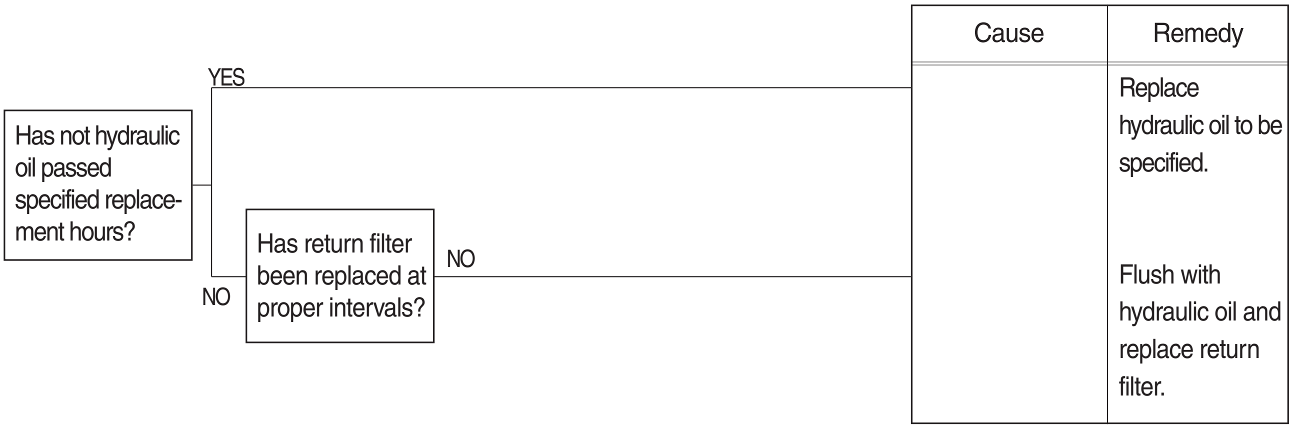
2) HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE HAS RISEN ABNORMALLY



3) CAVITATION OCCURS WITH PUMP

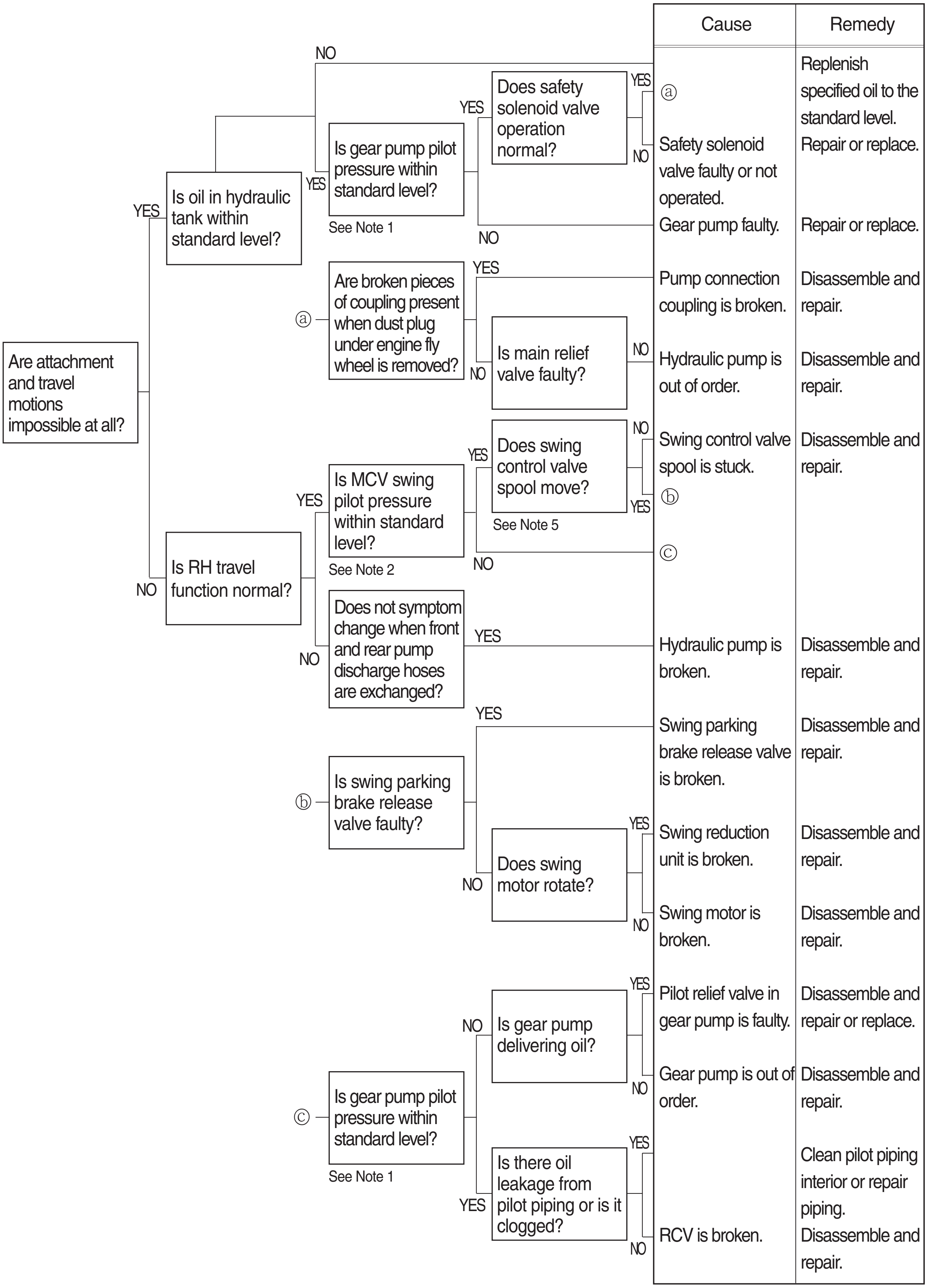


4) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CONTAMINATED

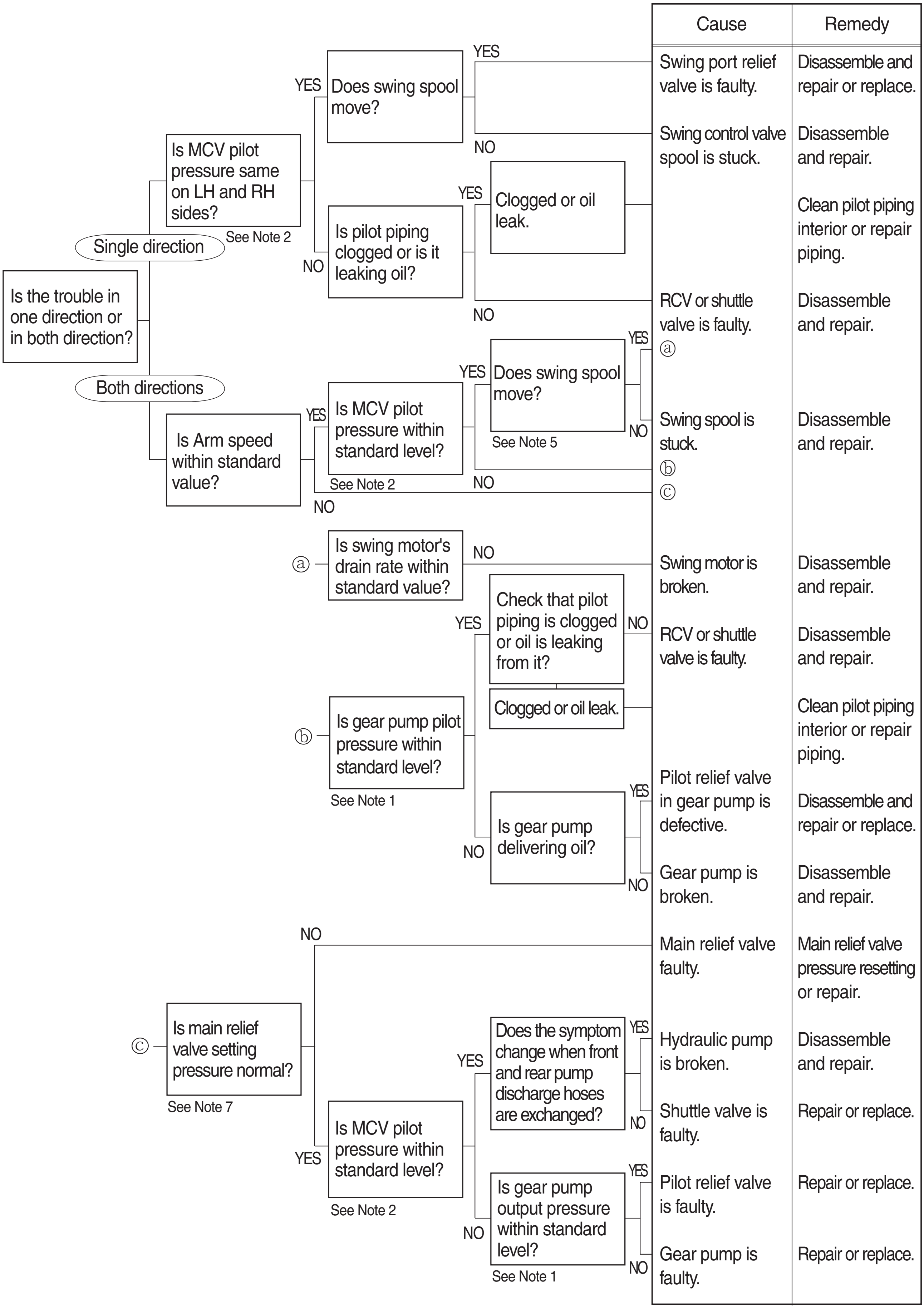


4. SWING SYSTEM

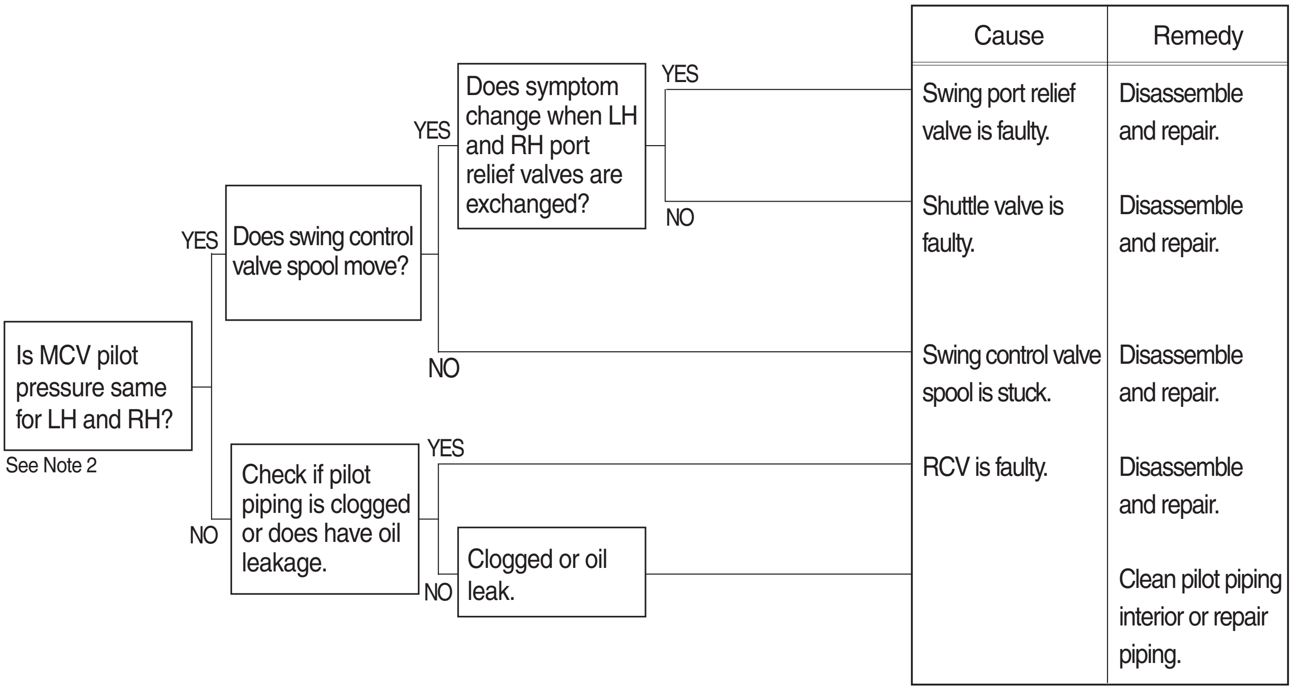
1) BOTH LH AND RH SWING ACTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE



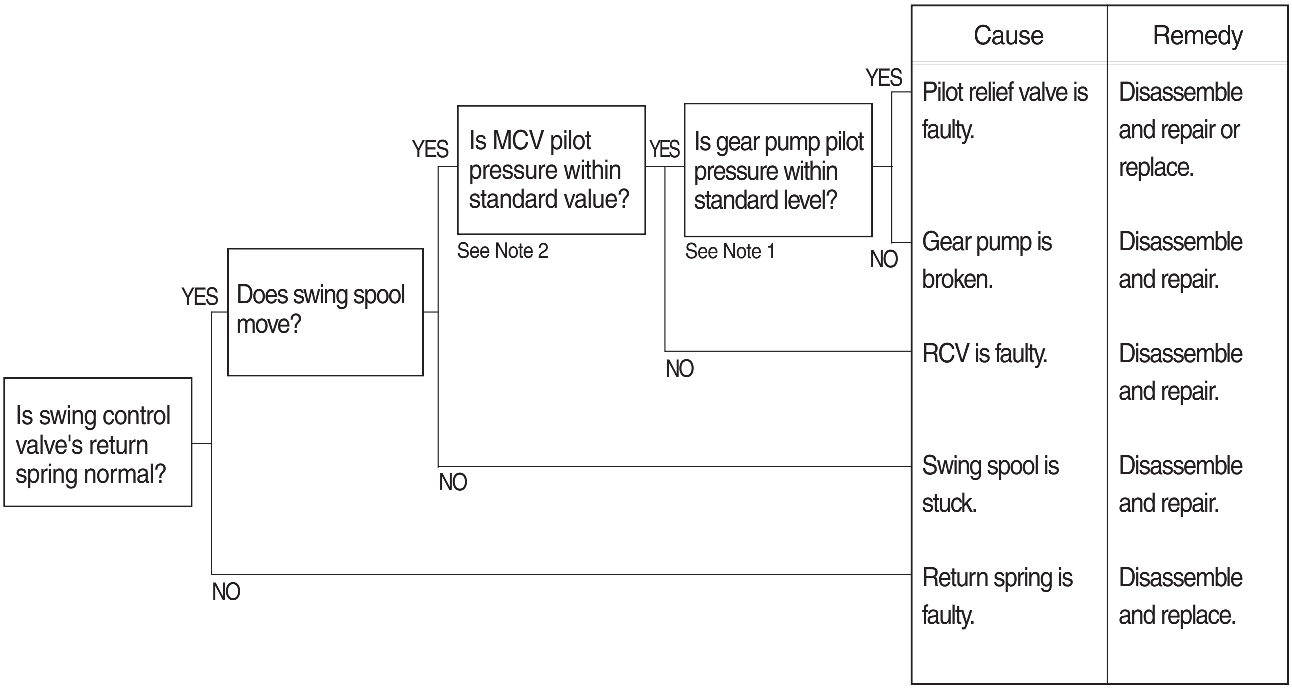
2) SWING SPEED IS LOW



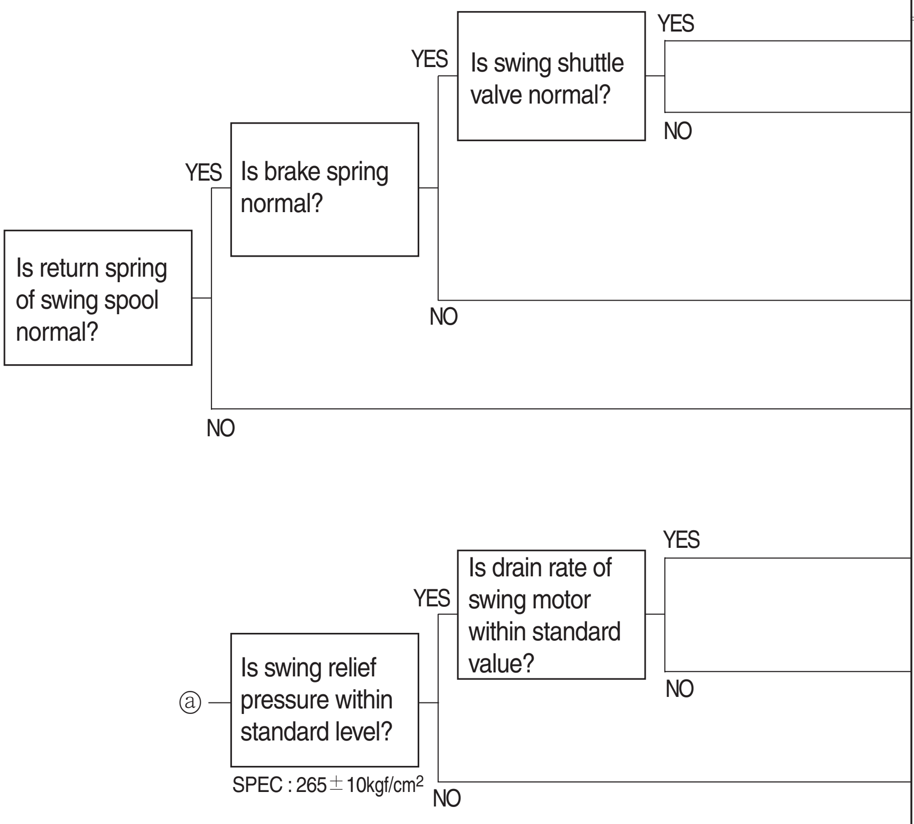
3) SWING MOTION IS IMPOSSIBLE IN ONE DIRECTION



4) MACHINE SWINGS BUT DOES NOT STOP



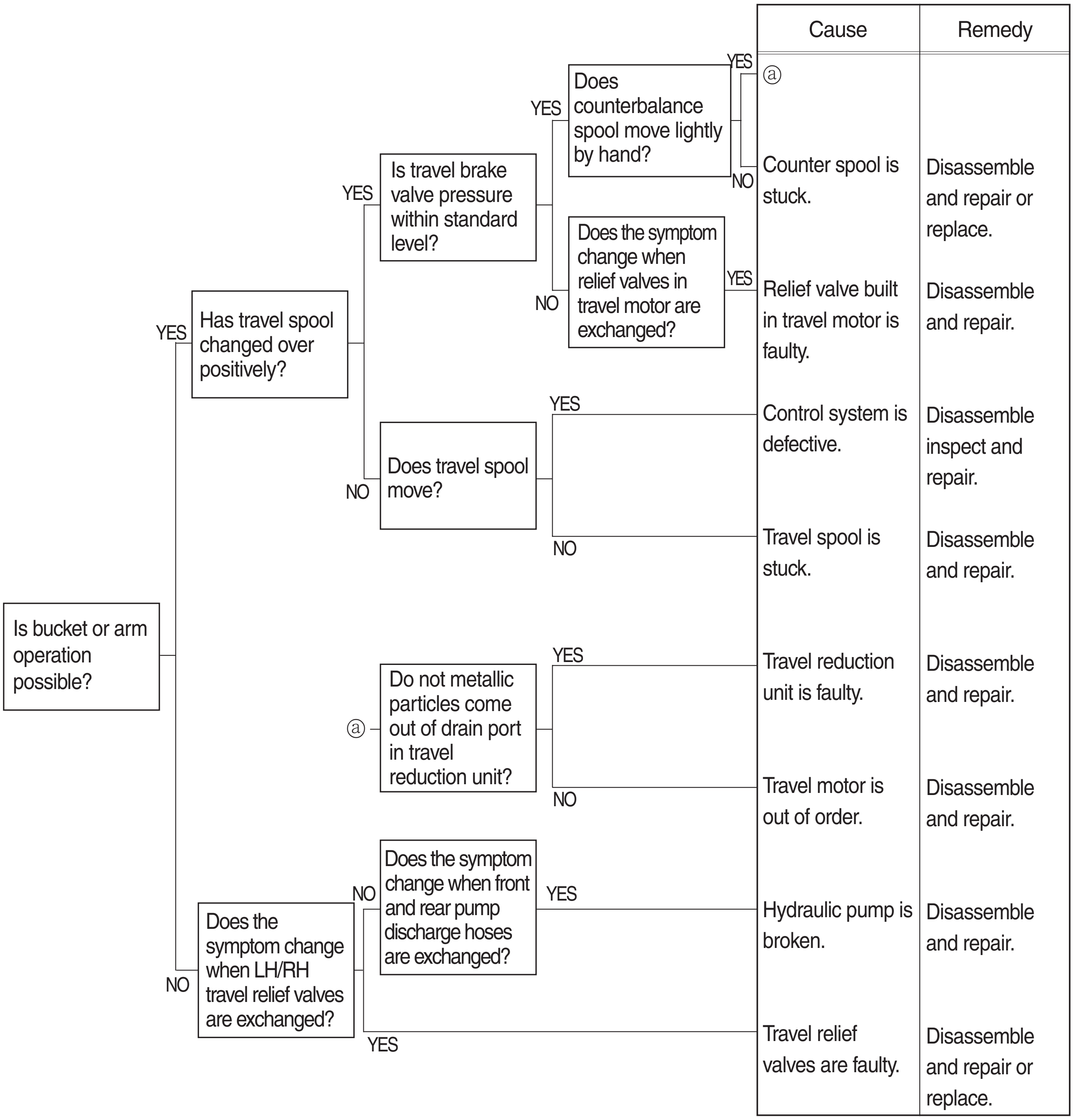
5) THE SWING UNIT DRIFTS WHEN THE MACHINE IS AT REST ON A SLOPE



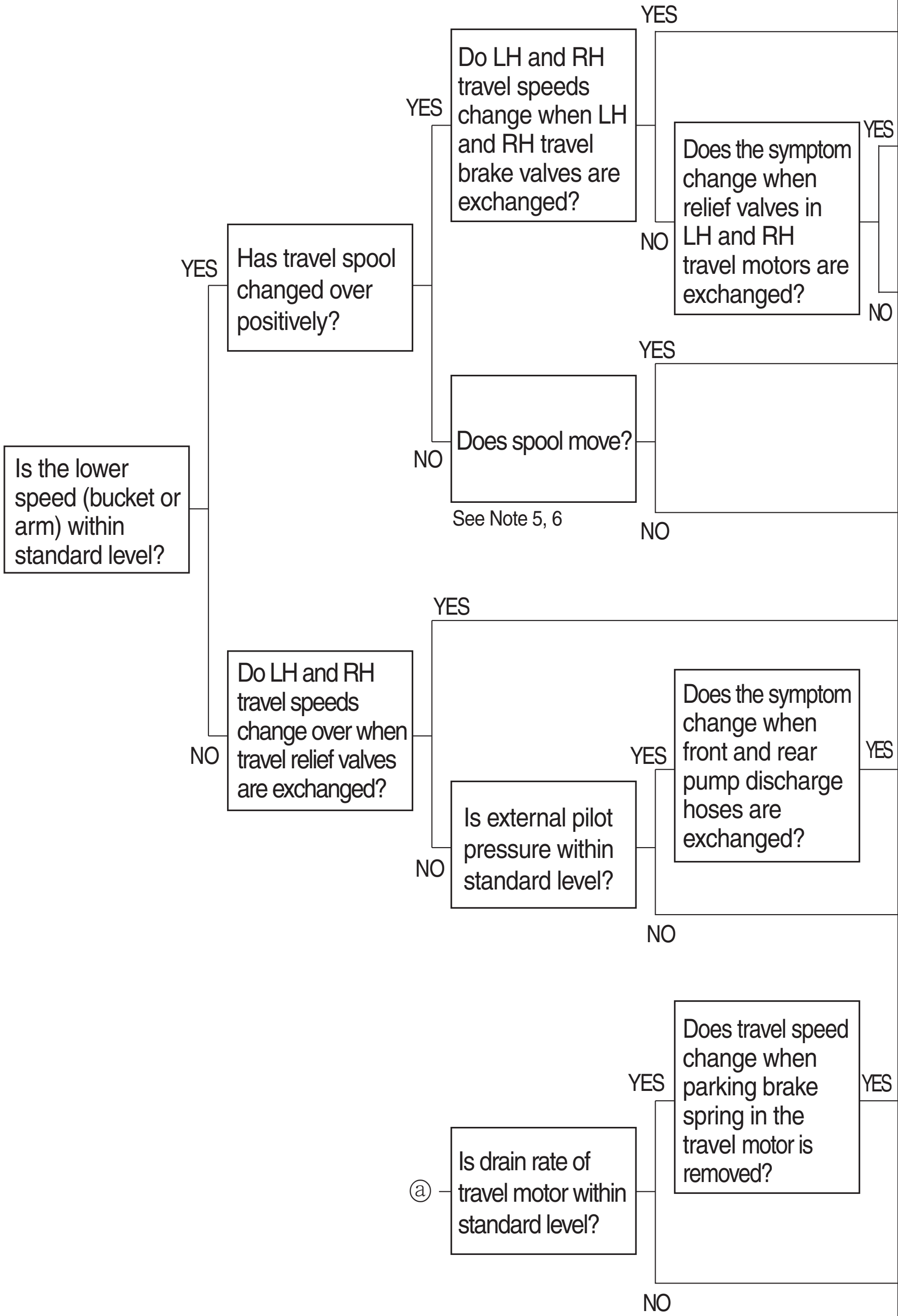
Cause	Remedy
ⓐ	
Shuttle valve is faulty.	Disassemble and replace.
Brake spring is faulty.	Disassemble and replace.
Return spring of swing control valve is faulty.	Disassemble and replace.
Swing port relief valve is faulty.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Swing motor is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
	Adjust swing relief valve pressure or replace swing relief valve.

5. TRAVEL SYSTEM

1) TRAVEL DOES NOT FUNCTION AT ALL ON ONE SIDE



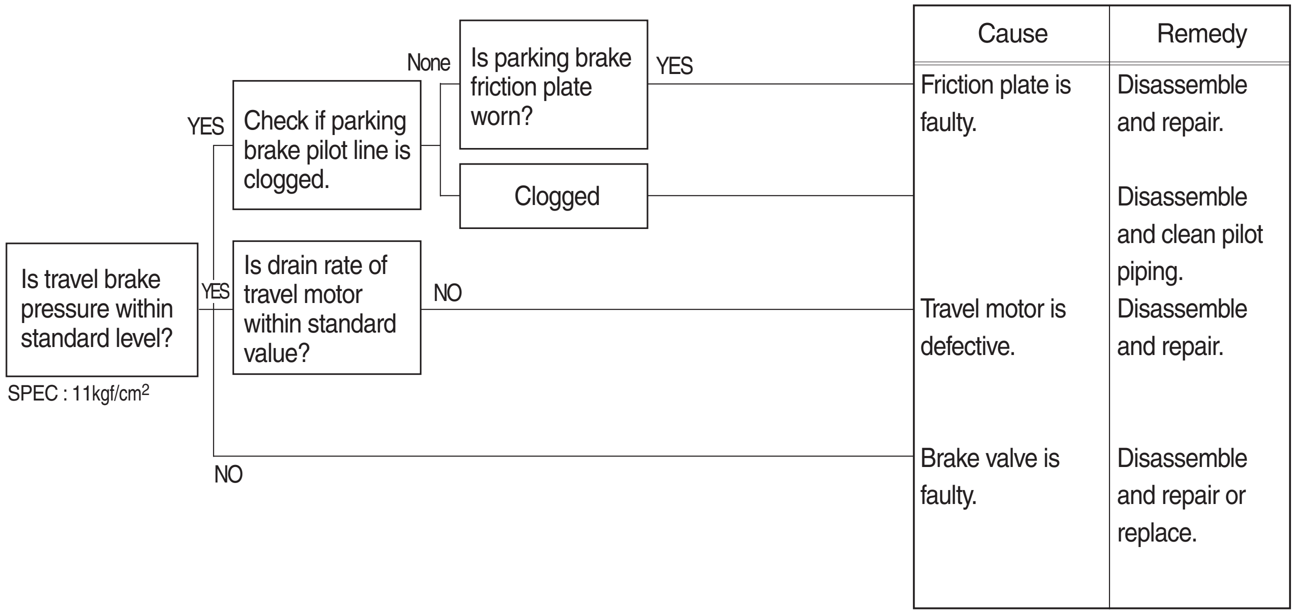
2) SPEED ON ONE SIDE FALLS AND THE MACHINE CURVES



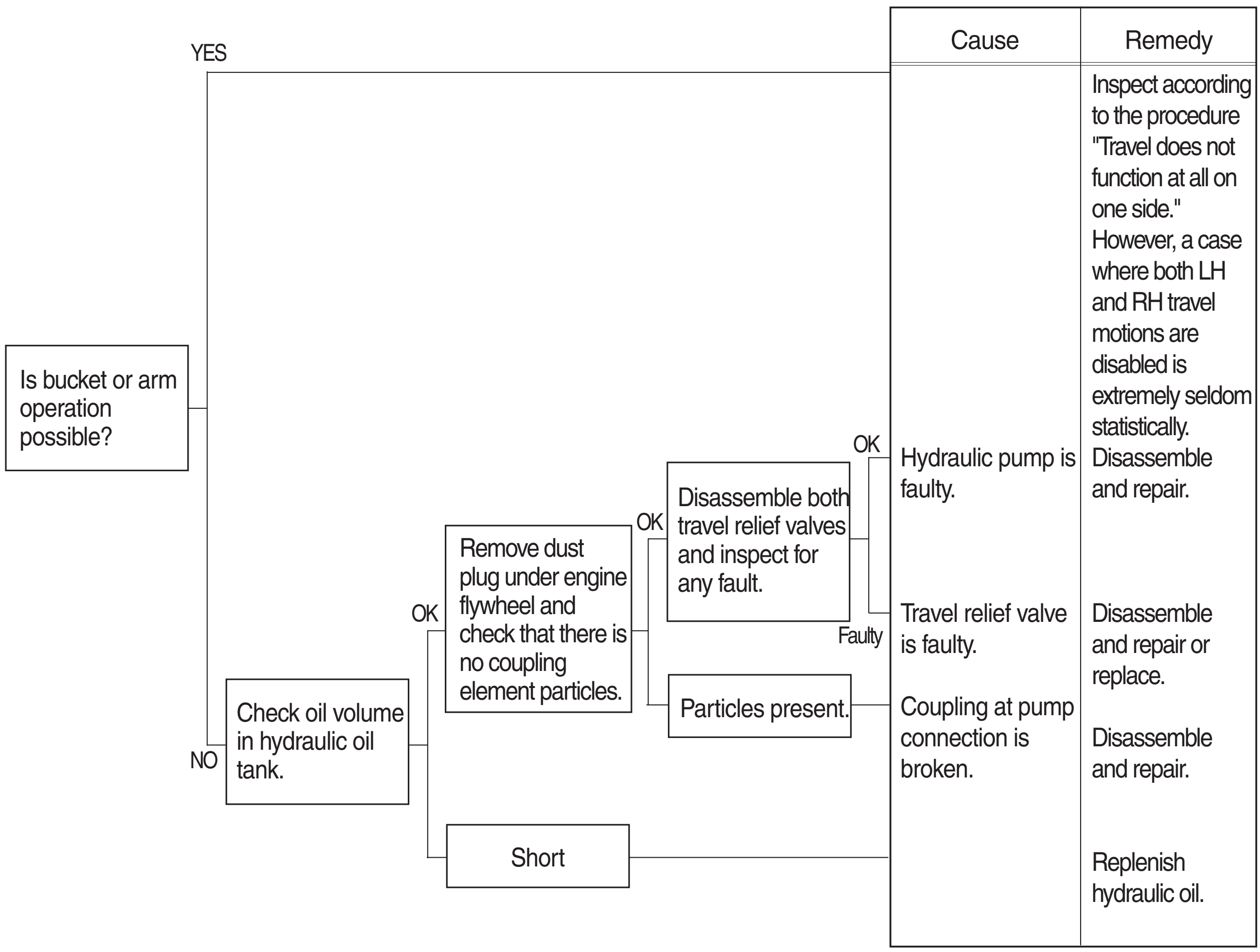
Cause	Remedy
Brake valve is defective.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Relief valve built in travel motor is faulty.	Disassemble and repair.
ⓐ	
Control system is faulty .	Disassemble, inspect and repair.
Control valve spool is stuck.	Disassemble and repair.
Travel relief valve is faulty.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Hydraulic pump is broken.	Disassemble and repair.
External pilot piping is clogged or oil is leaking from it.	Disassemble and clean.
Travel motor's parking brake is not released properly.	Disassemble and clean pilot piping.
Travel motor is faulty.	Disassemble and repair.

3) MACHINE DOES NOT STOP ON A SLOPE

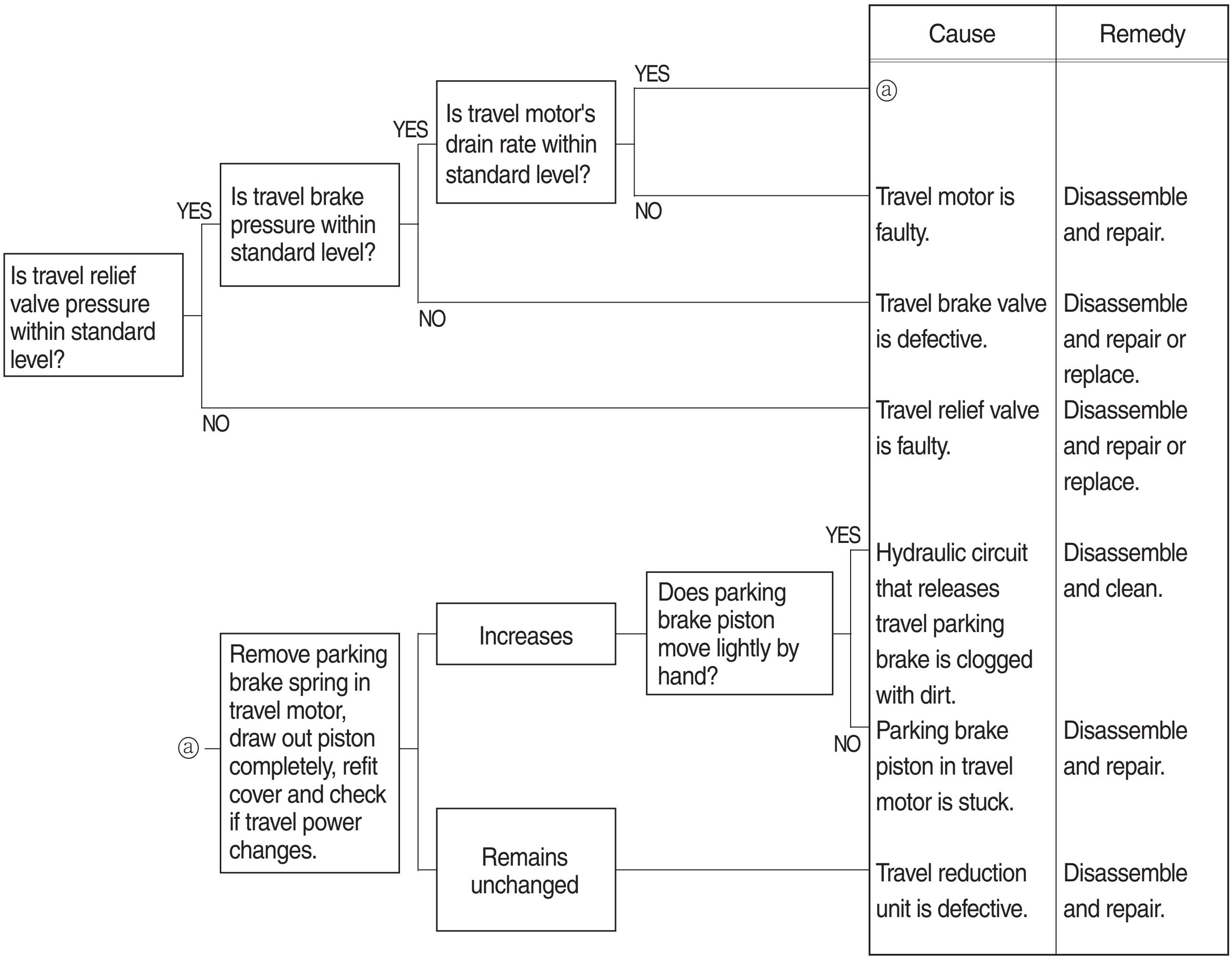
Machine is pulled forward as sprocket rotates during digging operation.



4) LH AND RH TRAVEL MOTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE

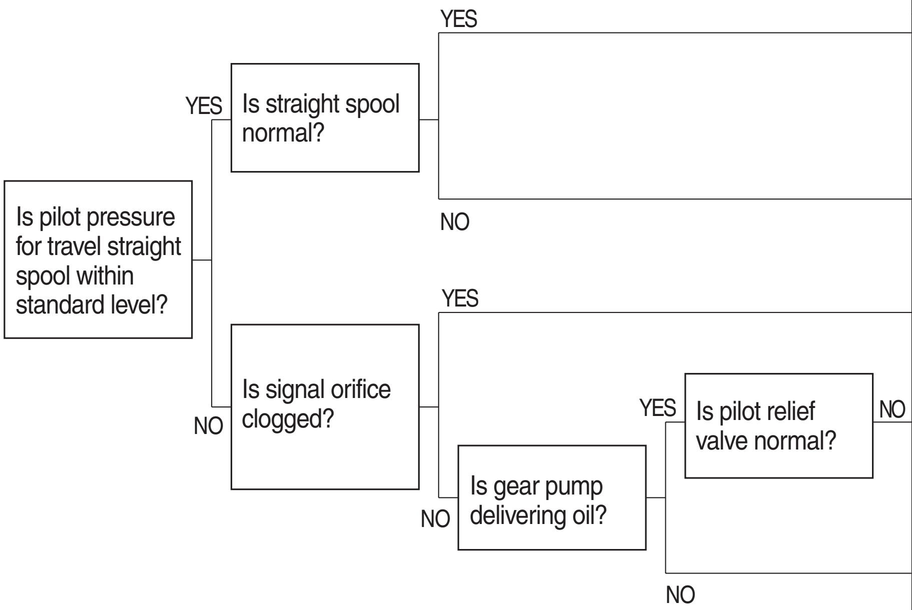


5) TRAVEL ACTION IS POWERLESS (travel only)



6) MACHINE RUNS RECKLESSLY ON A SLOPE

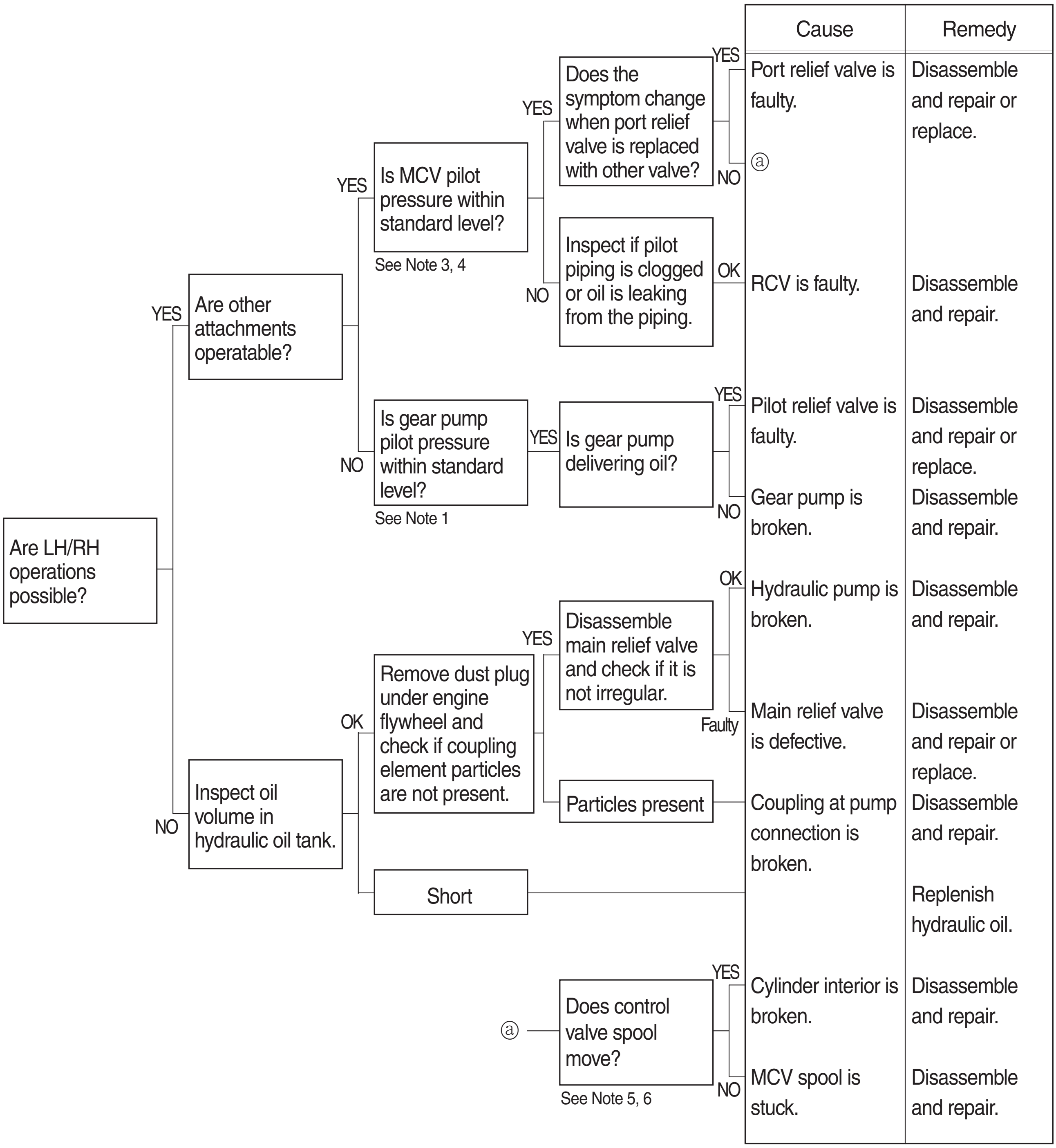
7) MACHINE MAKES A CURVED TRAVEL OR DOES NOT TRAVEL AT ALL WHEN TRAVEL AND ATTACHMENT OPERATIONS ARE EXECUTED AT THE SAME TIME



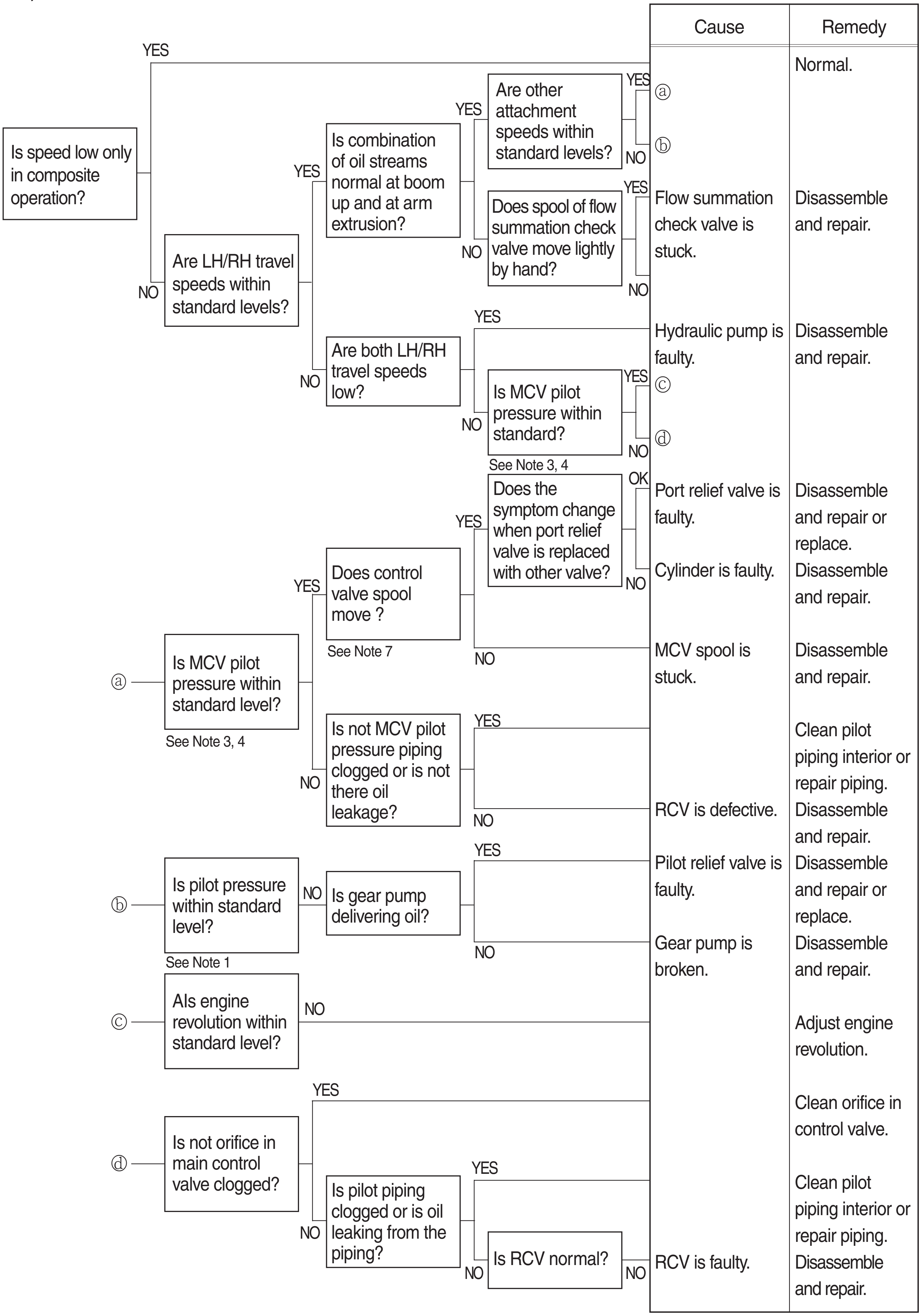
Cause	Remedy
	Normal.
Straight spool is faulty.	Repair or replace.
	Remove dirt on signal orifice.
Pilot relief valve is defective.	Disassemble and repair or replace.
Gear pump is broken.	Disassemble and repair.

6. ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

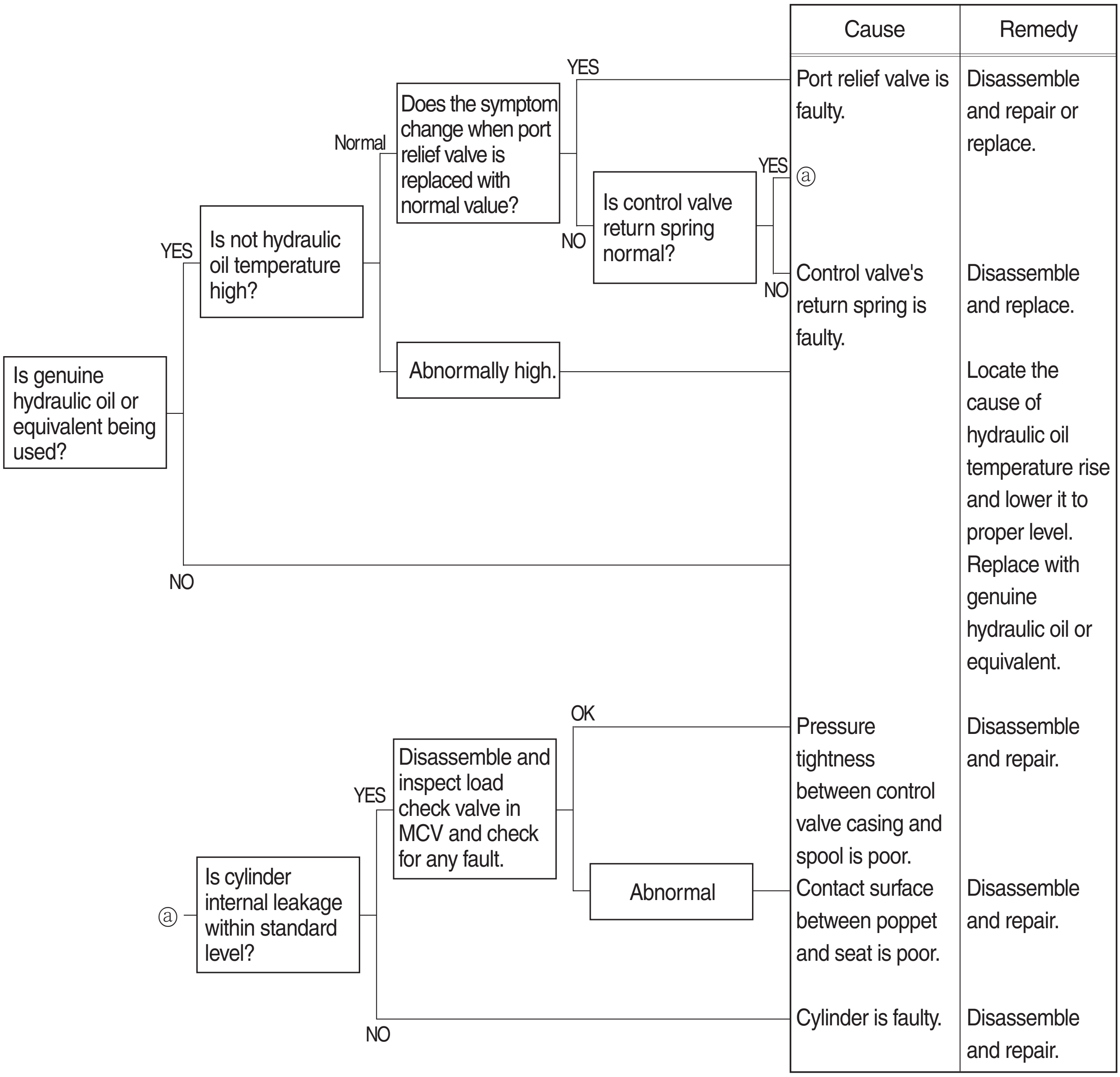
1) BOOM OR ARM ACTION IS IMPOSSIBLE AT ALL



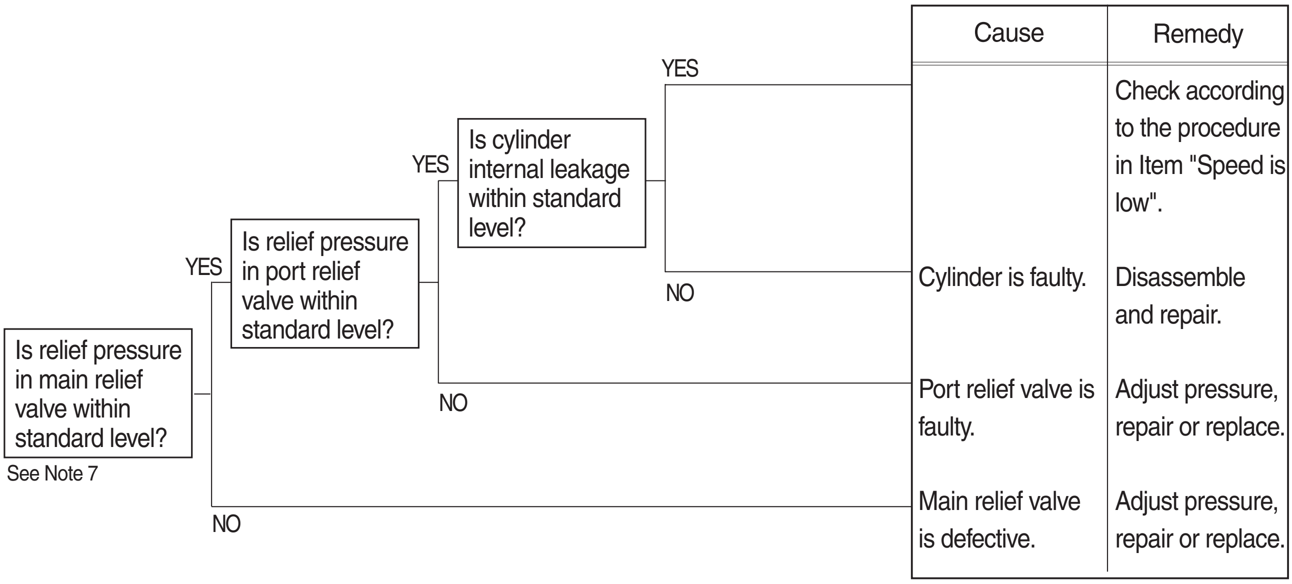
2) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET SPEED IS LOW



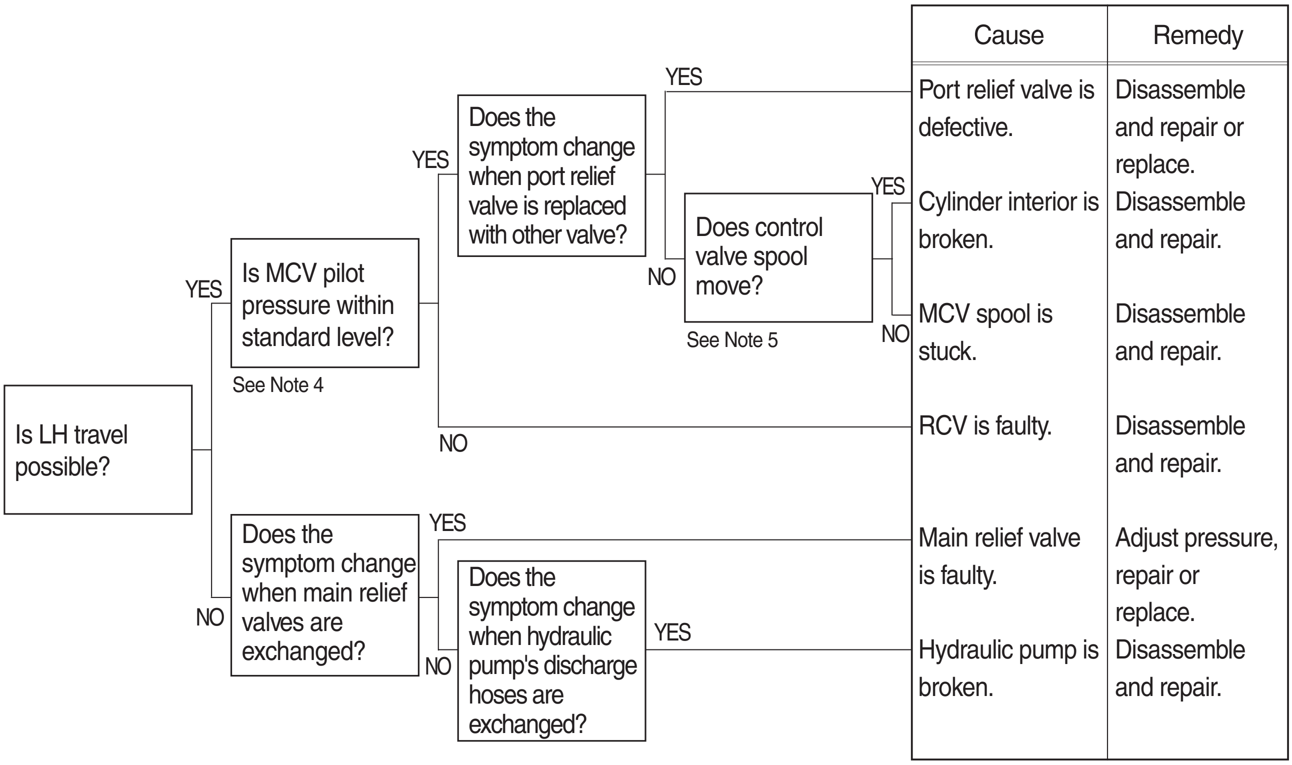
3) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET CYLINDER EXTENDS OR CONTRACTS ITSELF AND ATTACHMENT FALLS



4) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET POWER IS WEAK



5) ONLY BUCKET OPERATION IS TOTALLY IMPOSSIBLE

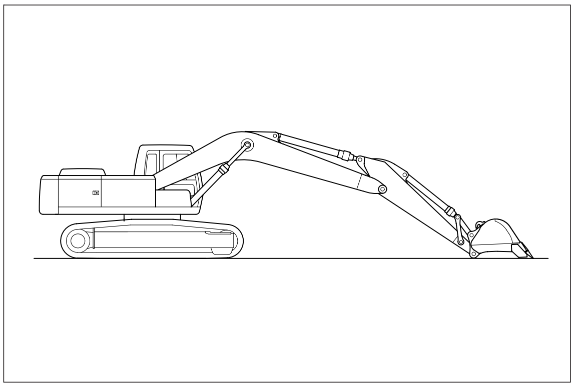


6) BOOM MAKES A SQUEAKING NOISE WHEN BOOM IS OPERATED

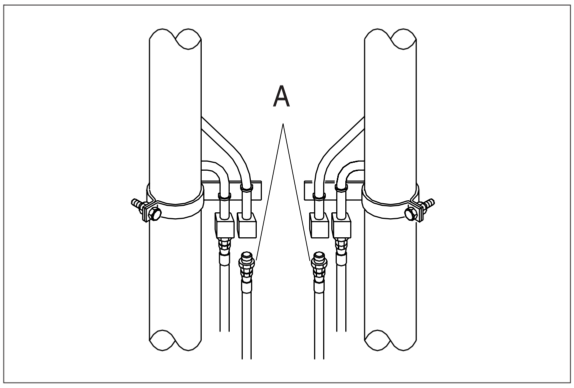
Check		Cause	Remedy
Is boom foot pin greased sufficiently?	YES		Frictional noise occurs between the sliding faces of boom cylinder's oil seal and boom proper. ※ Frictional noise will disappear if they are kept used.
	NO	Boom foot pin has run out of grease.	Supply grease to it. ※ If seizure is in an initial stage, supply sufficient grease. If seizure is in a grown state, correct it by paper lapping or with an oil stone.

※ HOW TO CHECK INTERNAL BOOM CYLINDER LEAKAGE

1. Lower the bucket teeth to the ground with bucket cylinder fully retracted and arm cylinder rod retracted almost in full.

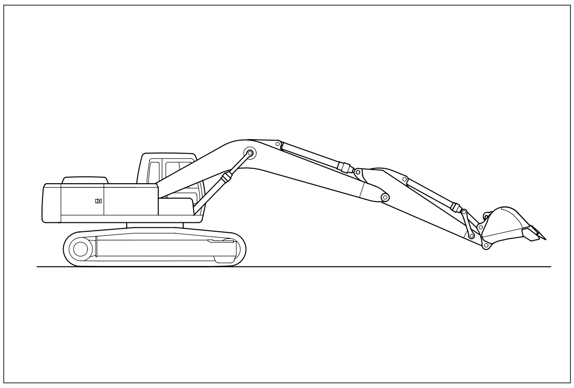


2. Disconnect hose (A) from rod side of boom cylinder and drain oil from cylinders and hose. (put cups on piping and hose ends)



3. Raise bucket OFF the ground by retracting the arm cylinder rod.

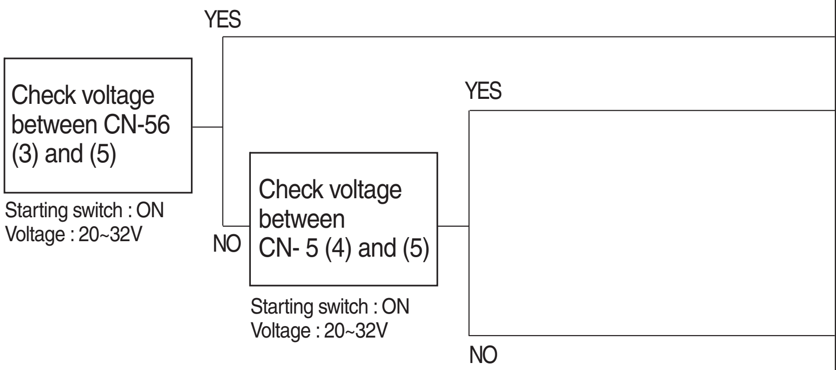
   If oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted there is an internal leak in the cylinder.
   If no oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted, there is an internal leak in the control valve.



GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

1. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, MONITOR PANEL DISPLAY DOES NOT APPEAR

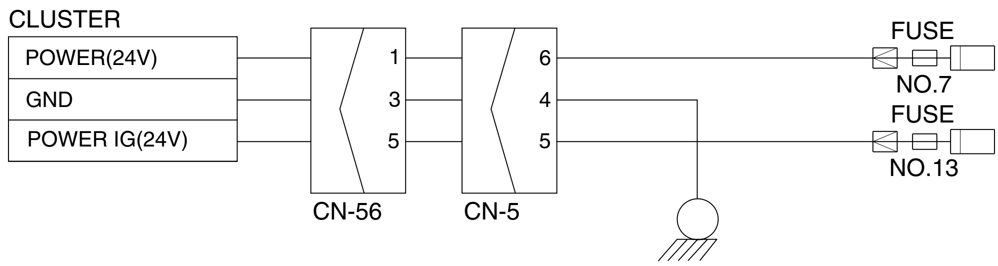
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.7, 13.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Defective cluster	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5-CN-56	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5 (4) -GND or fuse No.7, 13	Repair or replace (after clean)

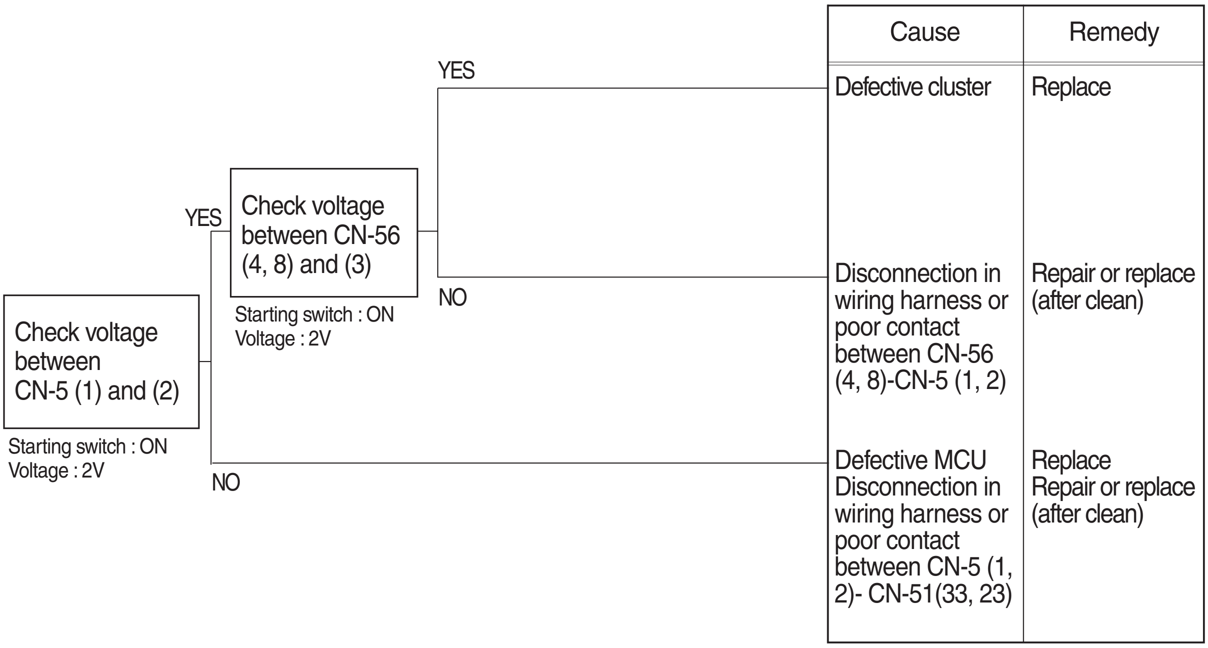
Check voltage

YES	20~32V
NO	0V



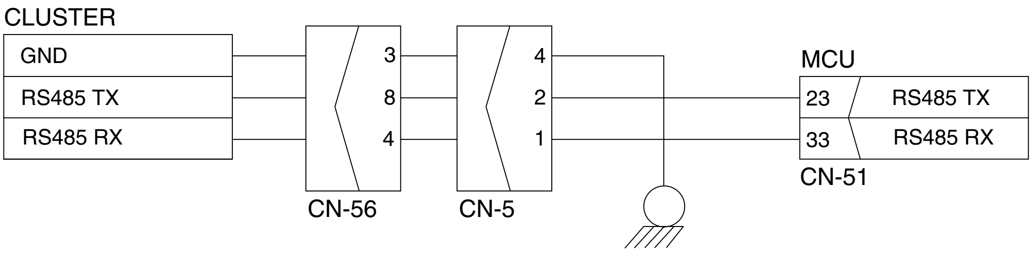
2. COMMUNICATION ERROR FLASHES ON THE CLUSTER (HCESPN 840, FMI 2)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



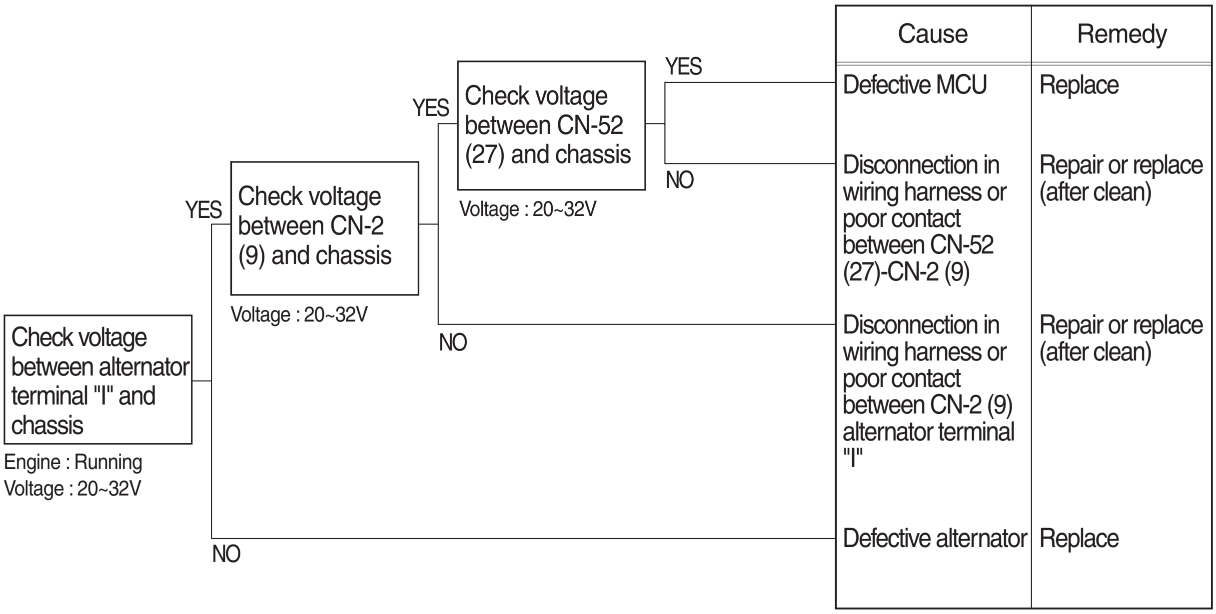
Check voltage

YES	2V
NO	0V



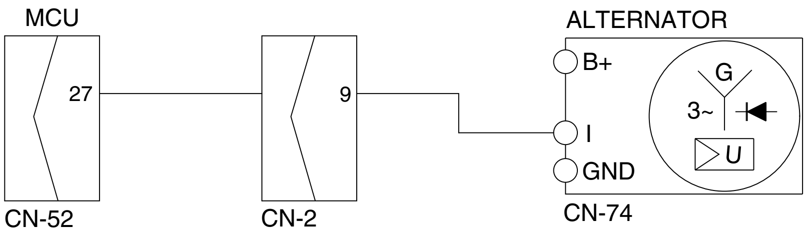
3. BATTERY CHARGING WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP(Starting switch : ON)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



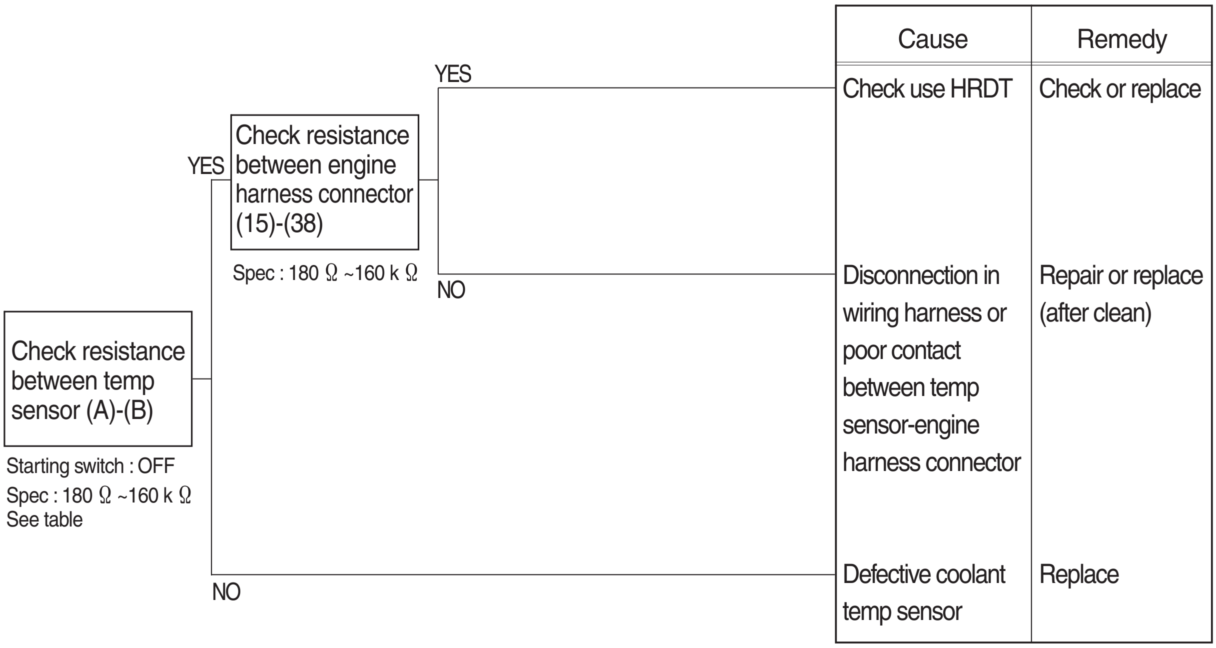
Check voltage

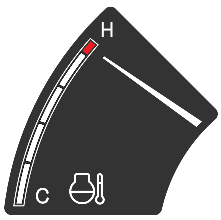
YES	20~32V
NO	0V



4. WHEN COOLANT OVERHEAT WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

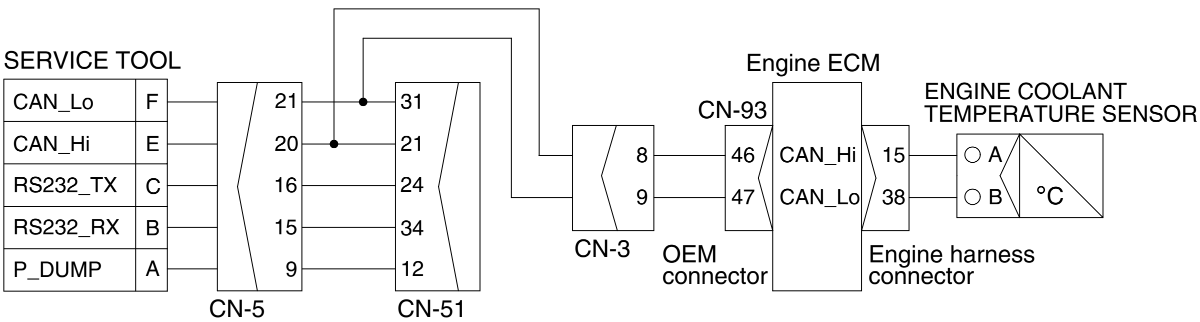
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





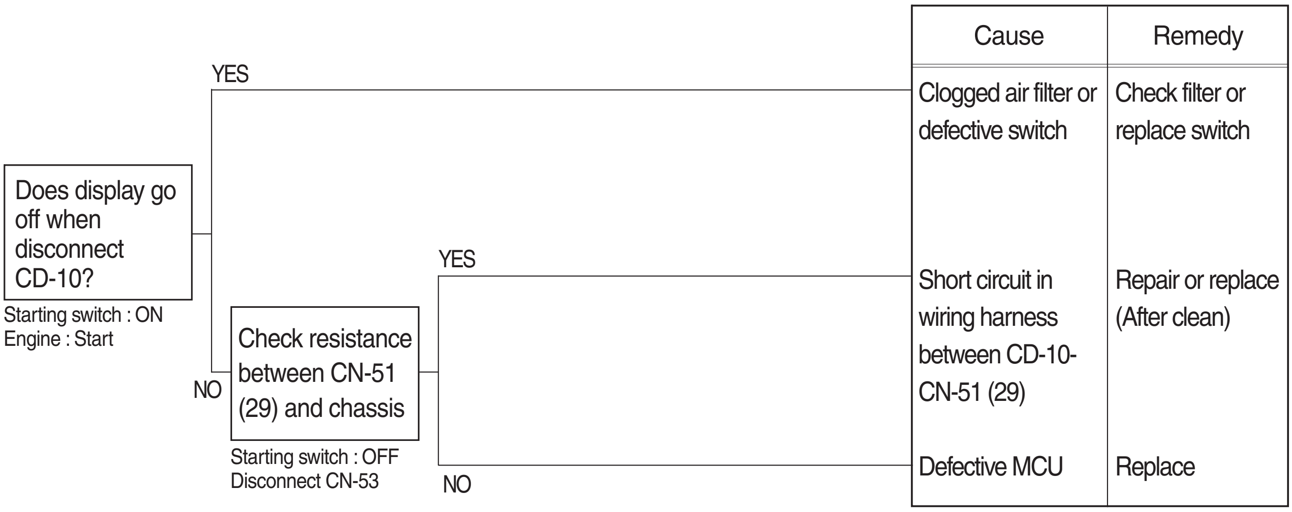
Check Table

Temperature (˚C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (k Ω)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8



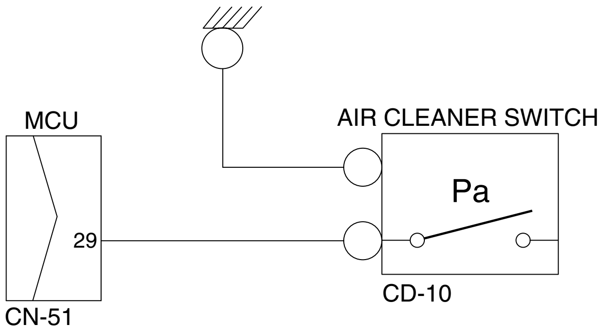
5. WHEN AIR CLEANER WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



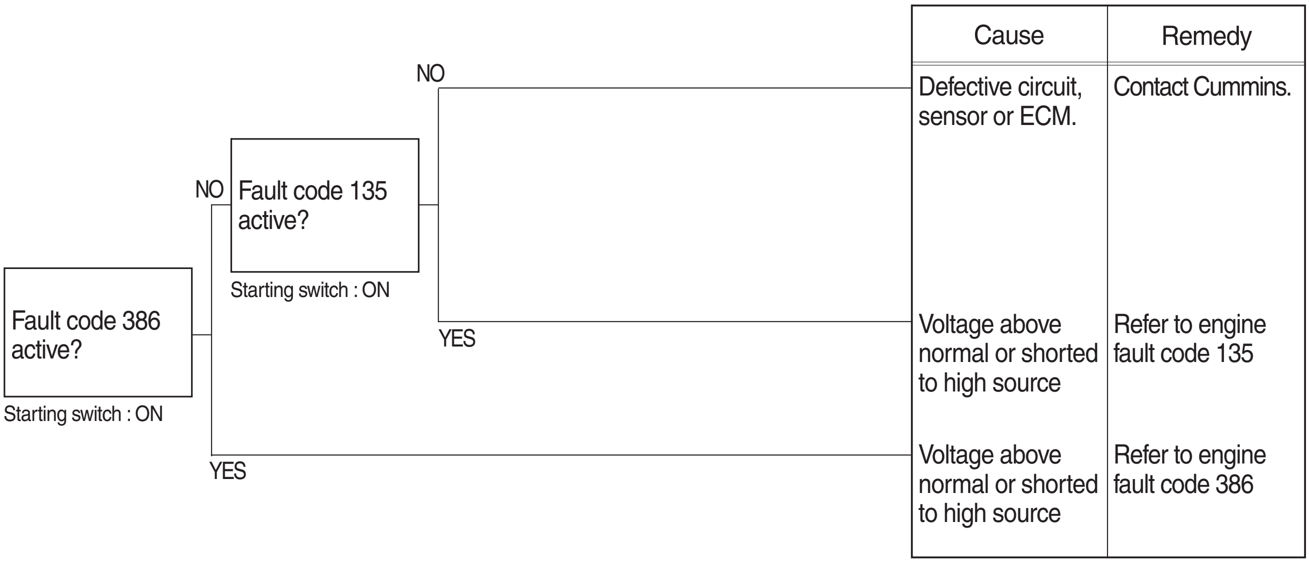
Check resistance

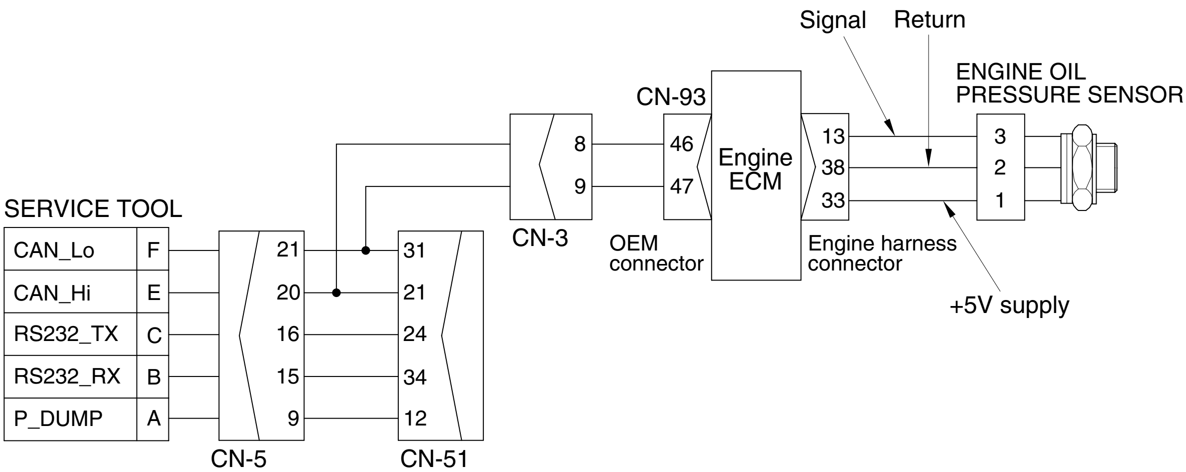
YES	MAX 1Ω
NO	MIN 1MΩ



6. WHEN ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

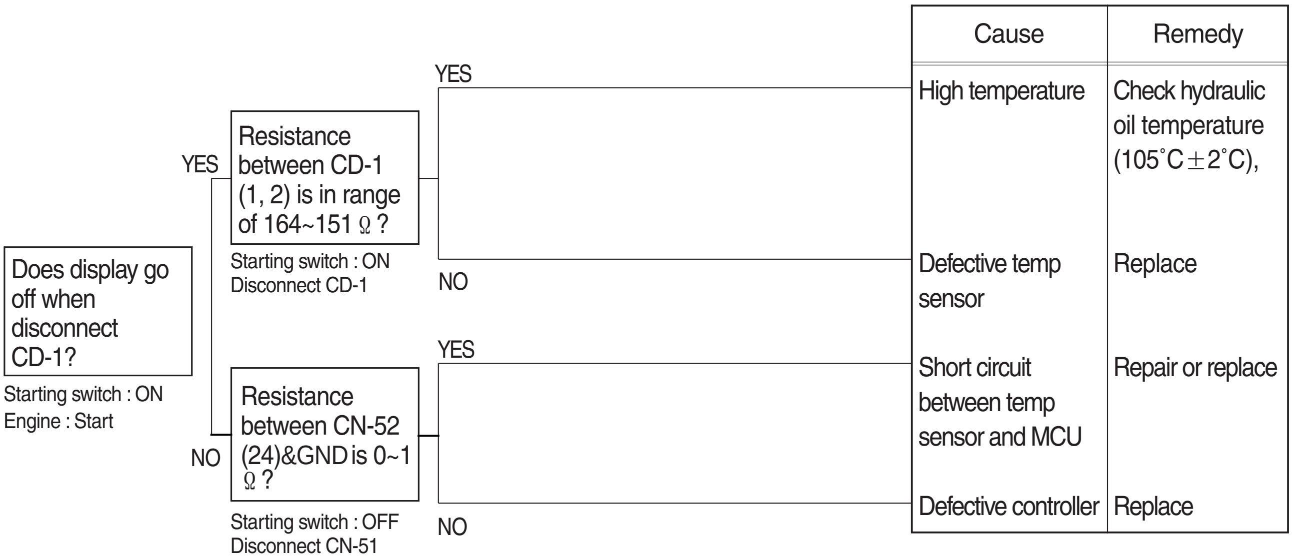
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

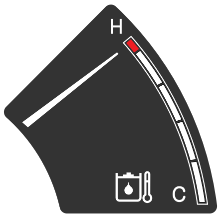




7. WHEN HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

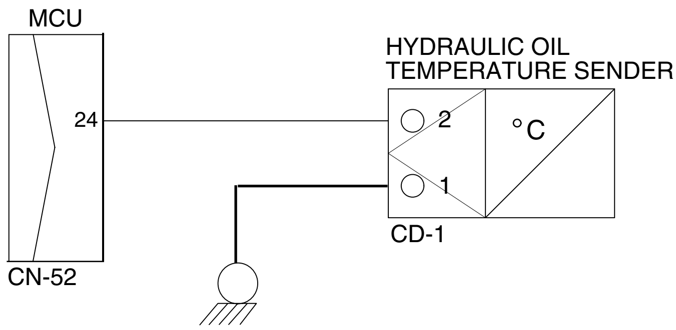
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





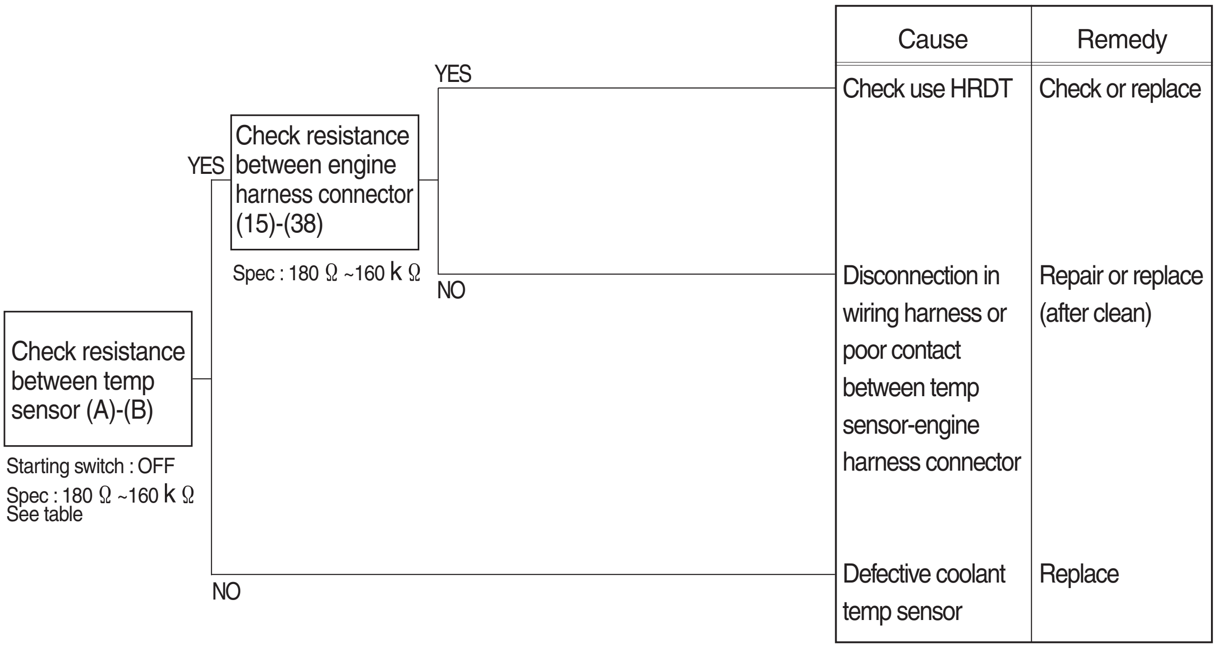
Check Table

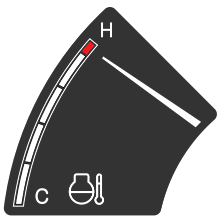
Temperature (˚C)	~ -30	~ -10	~ 0	~ 40	~ 70	~ 80	~ 90	~ 100	105~
Resistance (kΩ)	22.22 ~31.78	8.16 ~10.74	5.18 ~ 6.6	1.06 ~1.28	0.39 ~0.476	0.322 ~0.298	0.243 ~0.219	0.185 ~0.167	0.164 0.151



8. WHEN COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 304, FMI 3 or 4)

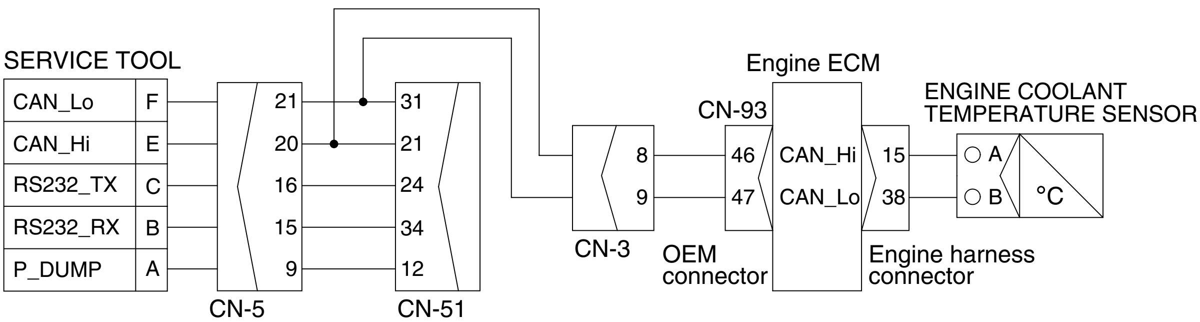
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





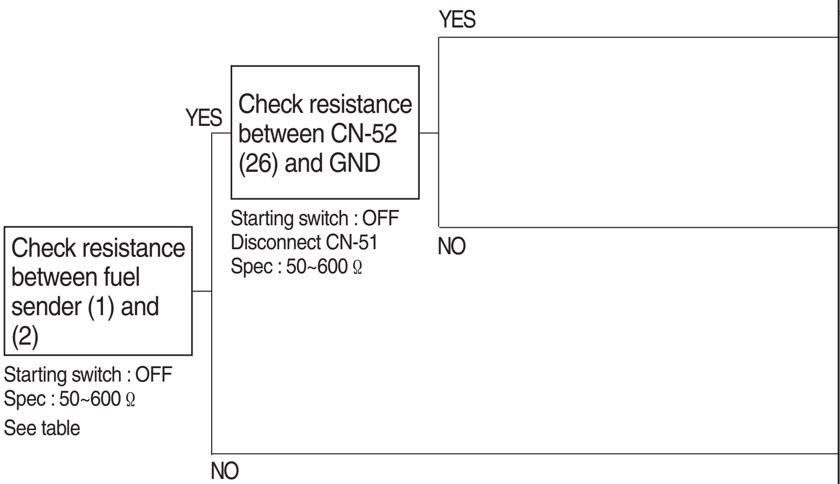
Check Table

Temperature (˚C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (kΩ)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8

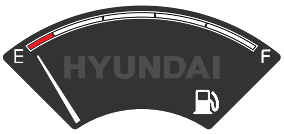


9. WHEN FUEL GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE(HCESPN 301, FMI 3 or 4)

· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

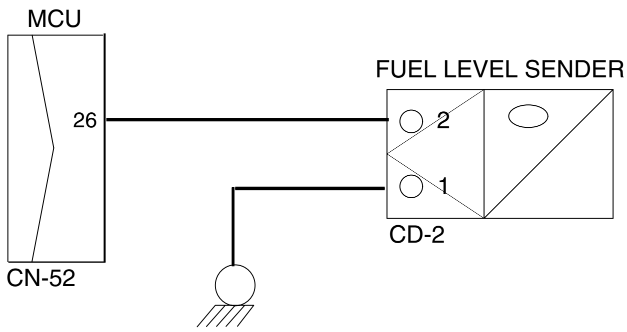


Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU or cluster	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between fuel sender-MCU	Repair or replace
Defective fuel sender	Replace



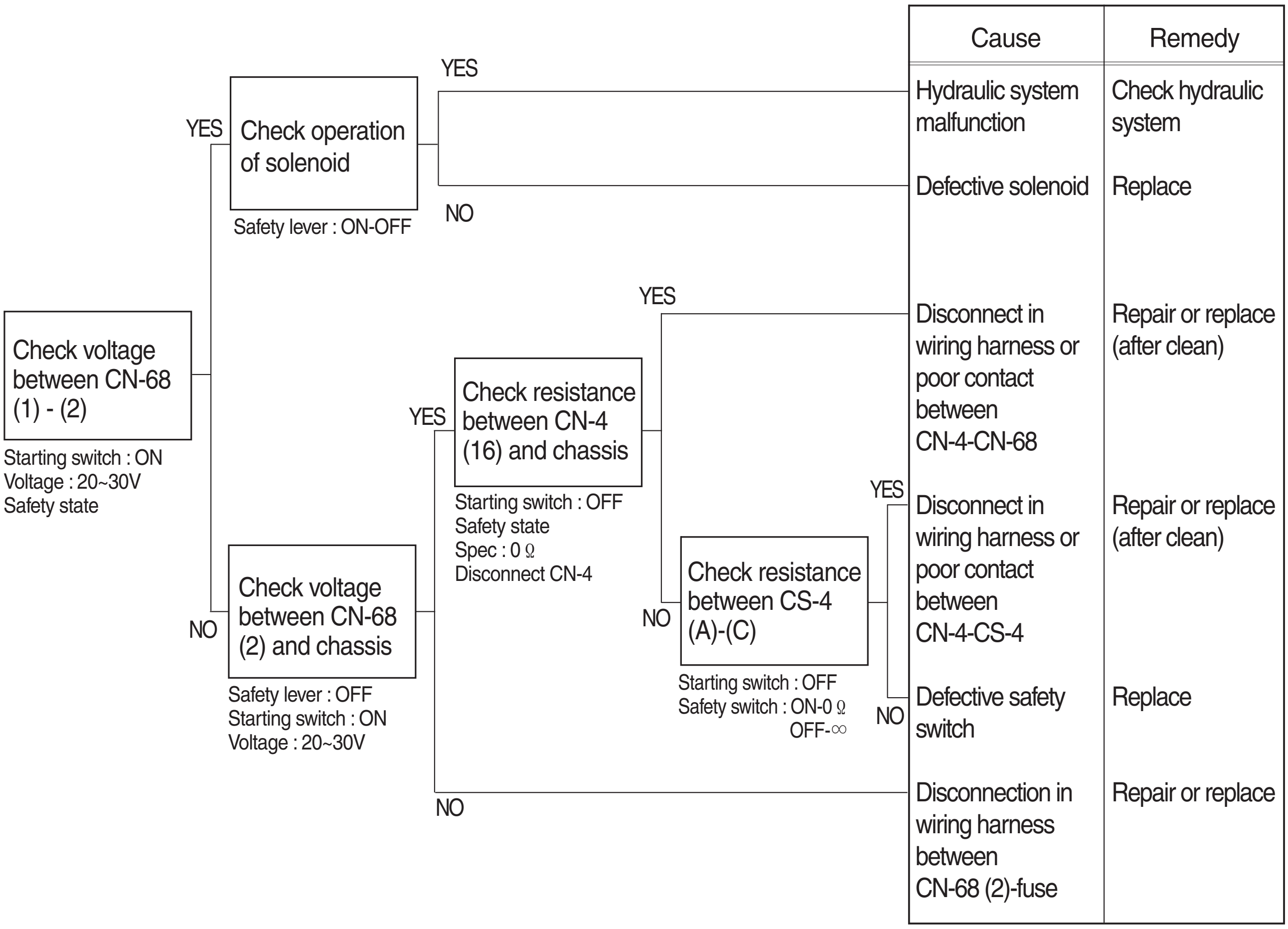
Check Table

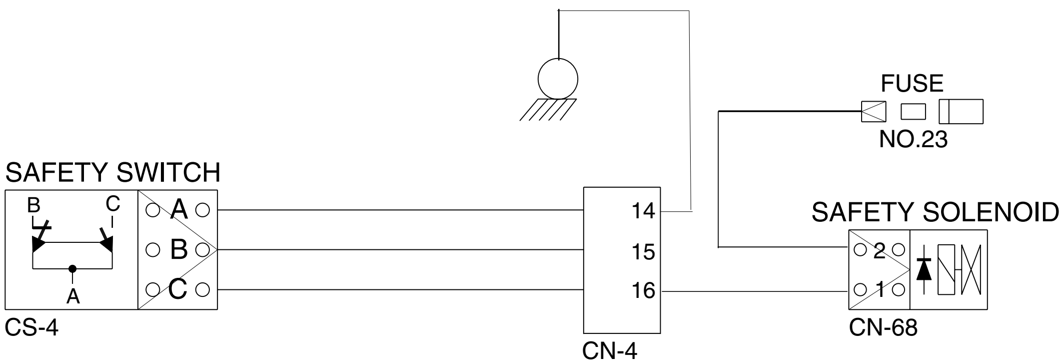
Range	Resistance (Ω)	Range	Resistance (Ω)
Full	50	5/12	400
11/12	100	4/12	450
10/12	150	3/12	500
9/12	200	2/12	550
8/12	250	1/12	600
7/12	300	Empty warning	700
6/12	350	-	-



10. WHEN SAFETY SOLENOID DOES NOT OPERATE

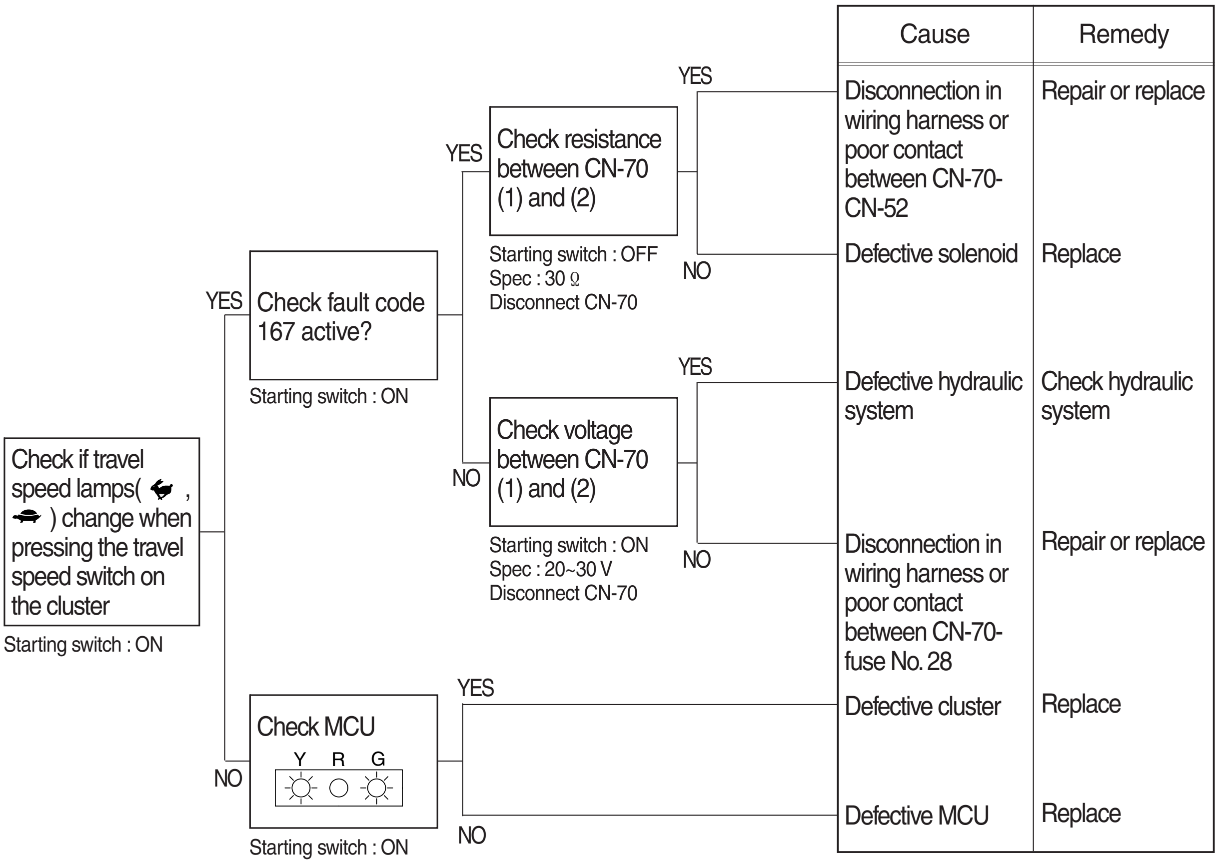
- Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.23.
- After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

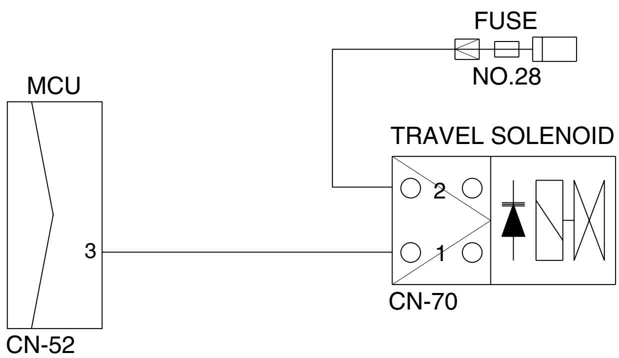




11. WHEN TRAVEL SPEED 1, 2 DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 167, FMI 5 or 6)

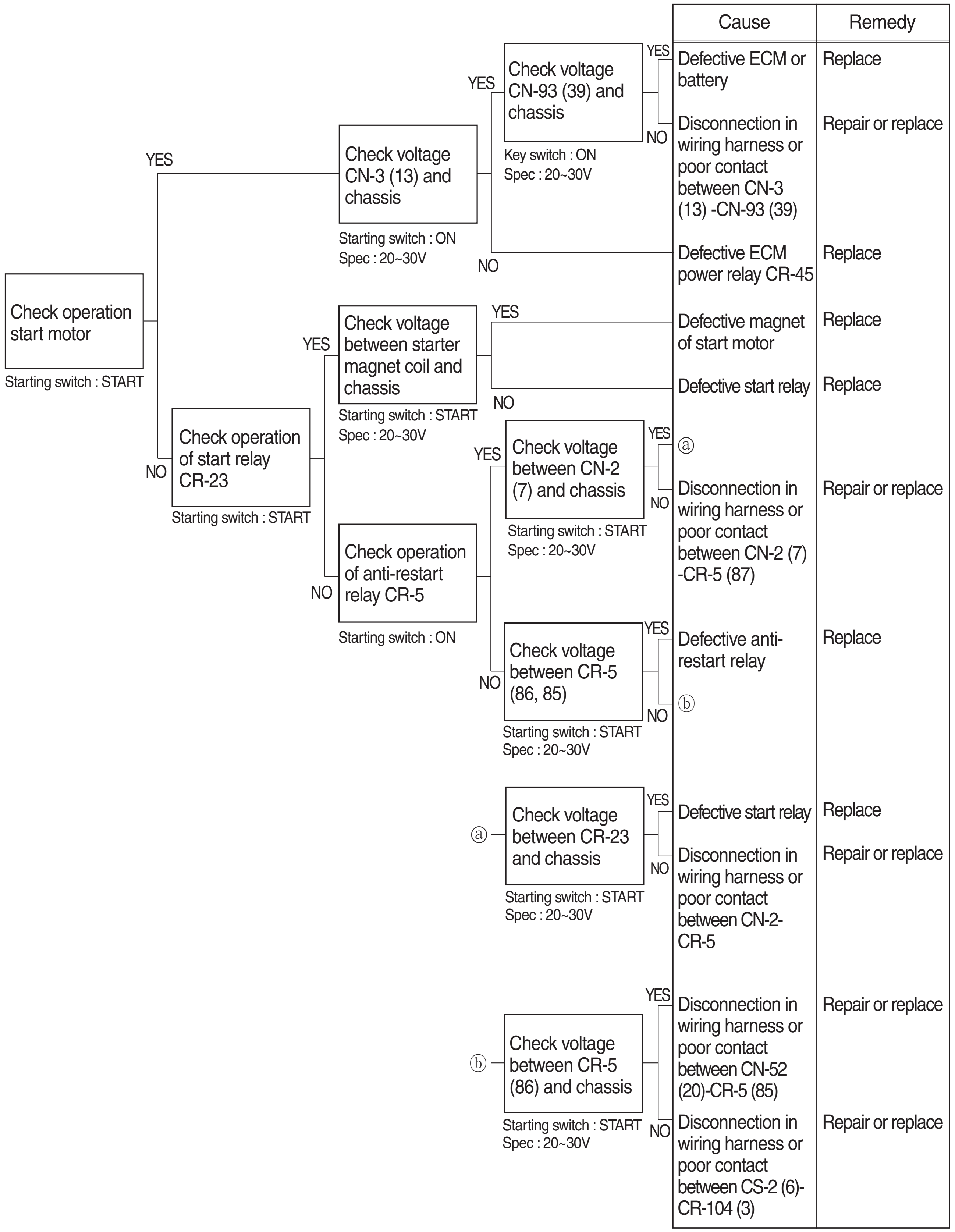
· Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
· Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.28 .
· After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

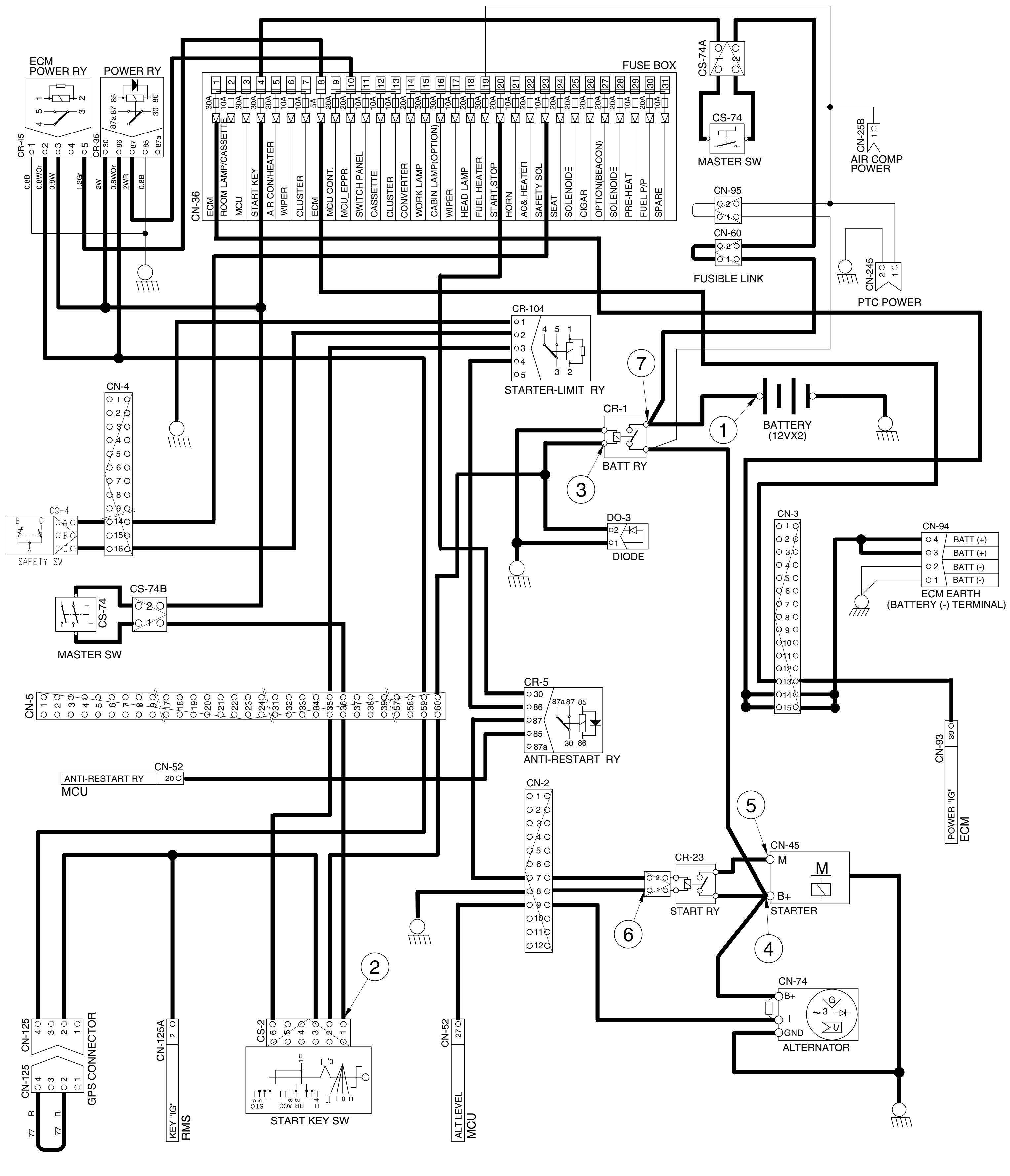




12. WHEN ENGINE DOES NOT START (lights up condition)

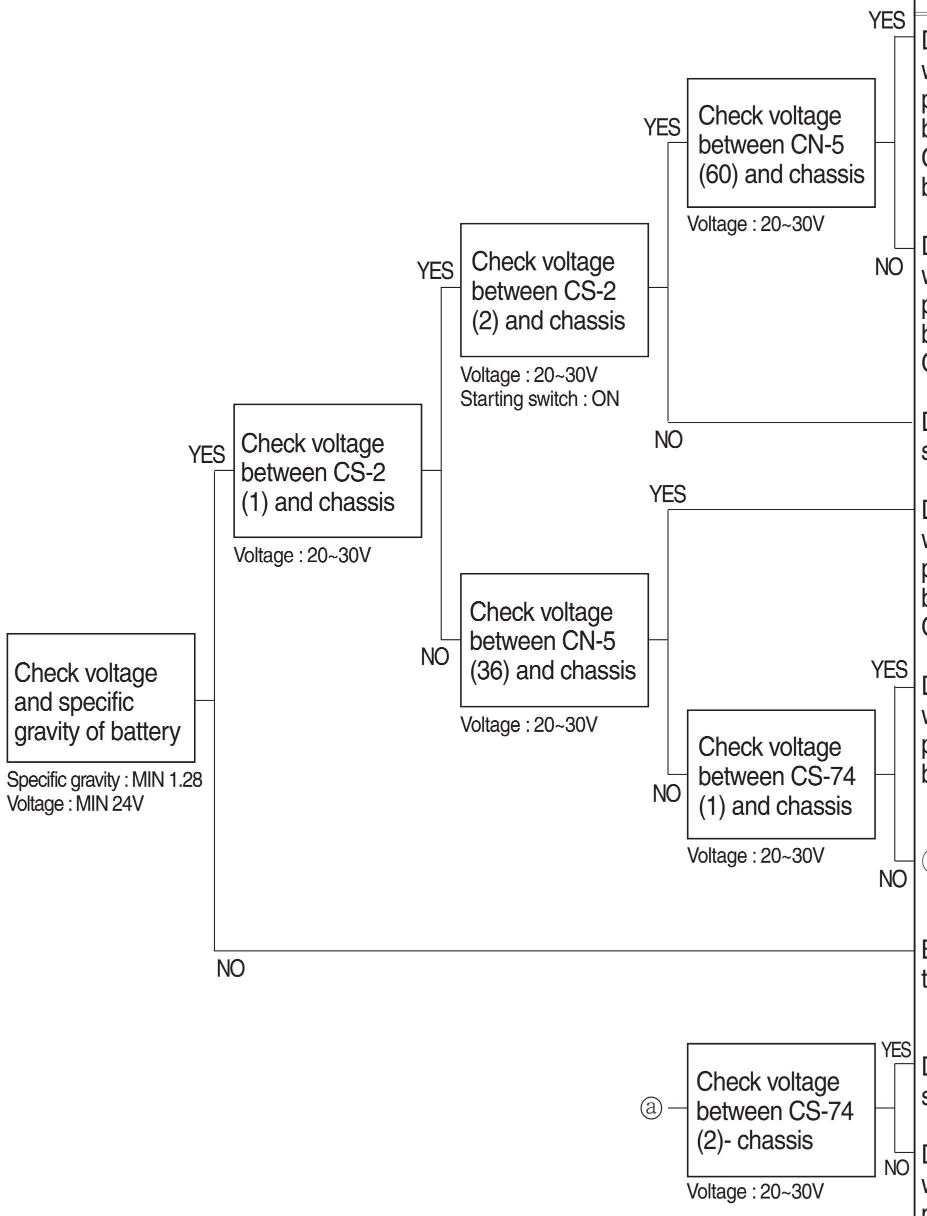
- Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 1, 4, 8, 20.
- After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



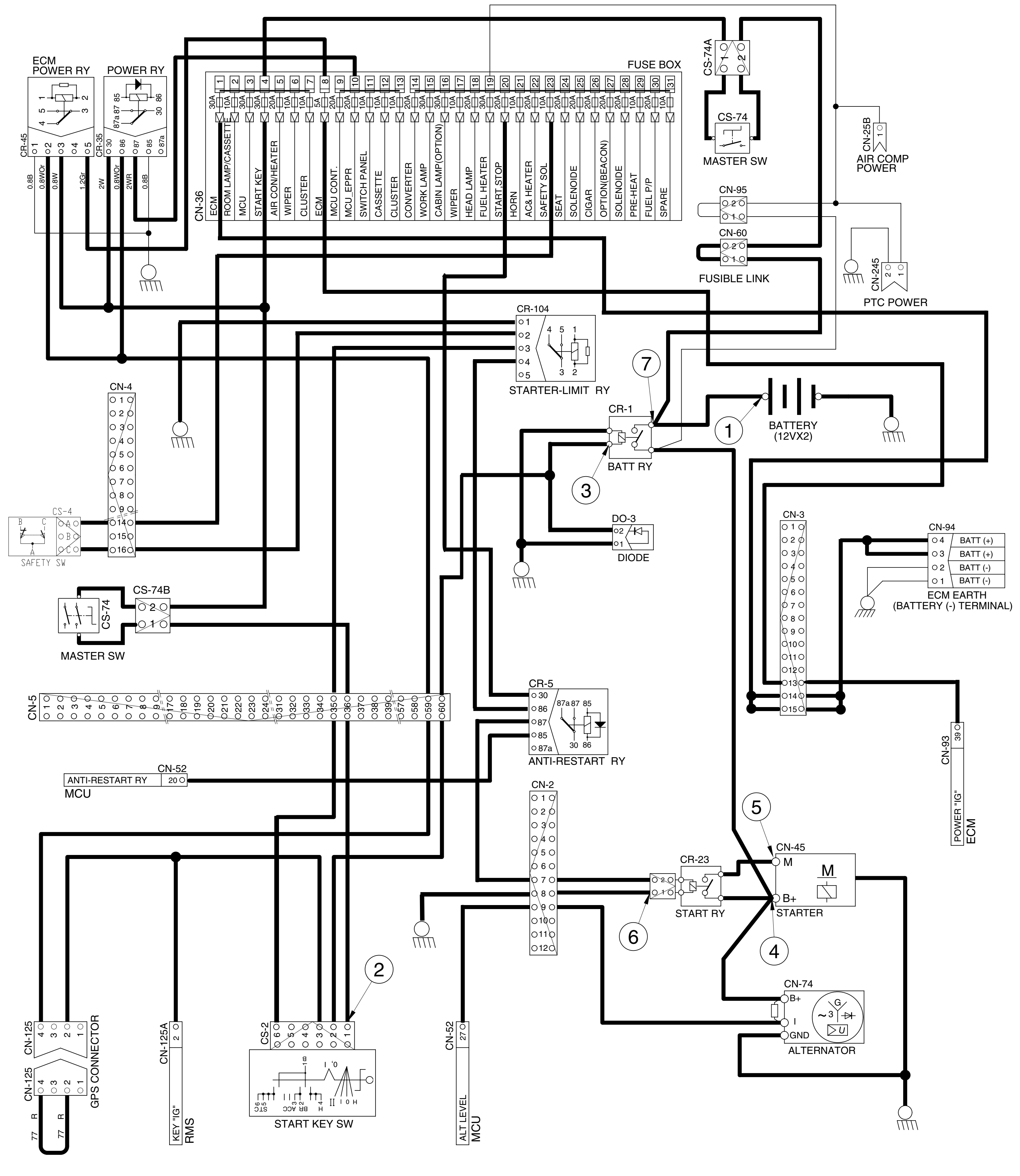


13. WHEN STARTING SWITCH ON DOES NOT OPERATE

- Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted, master switch ON and check open circuit of fusible link (CN-60).
- After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Cause	Remedy
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CN-5 (60)-CR-1 or defective battery relay	Repair or replace (after clean)
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-2 (2)-CN-5(60)	Repair or replace (after clean)
Defective start switch	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-2 (1)-CN-5 (36)	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-74B (1)-CN-5 (36) ⓐ	Charge or replace (after clean)
Battery capacity too low	Charge or replace (after clean)
Defective master switch	Replace
Disconnection in wiring harness or poor contact between CS-74 (2) -CR-1	Charge or replace (after clean)



GROUP 4 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

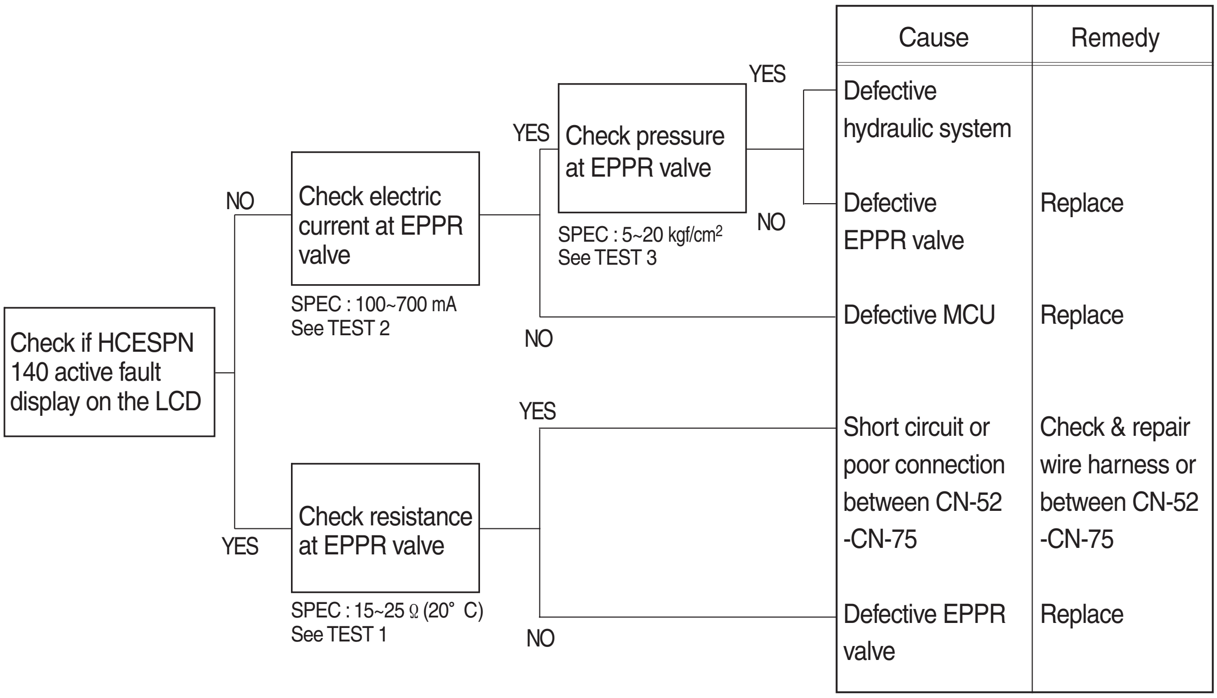
1. ALL ACTUATORS SPEED ARE SLOW

※ Boom, Arm, Bucket, Swing and travel speed are slow, but engine speed is good.

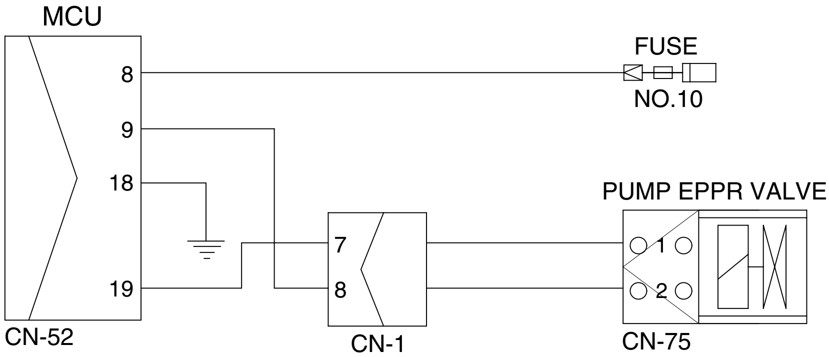
※ Spec : P-mode 1800 ± 50 rpm S -mode 1700 ± 50 rpm E-mode 1550 ± 50 rpm

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and fault code on the cluster.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



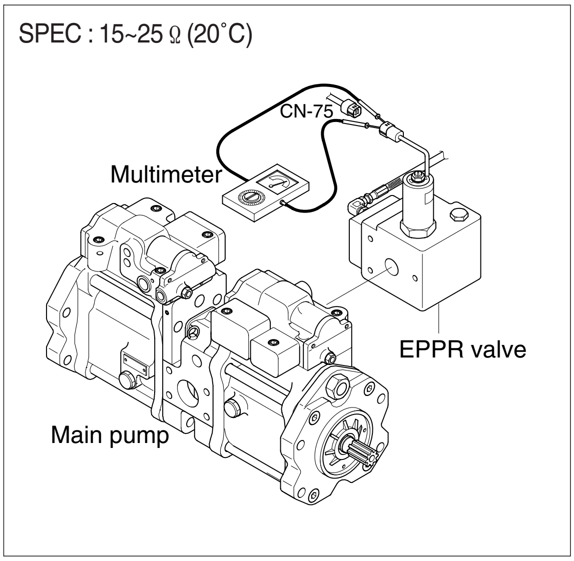
Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

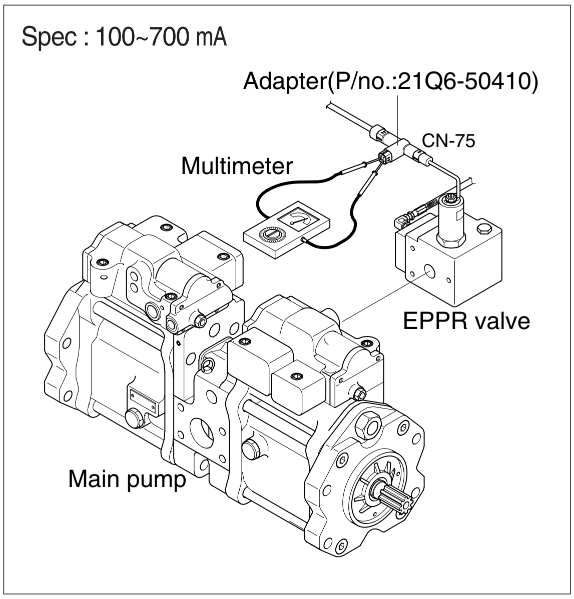
(1) Test 1 : Check resistance at connector CN-75.

① Starting key OFF.
② Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve at main hydraulic pump.
③ Check resistance between 2 lines as figure.



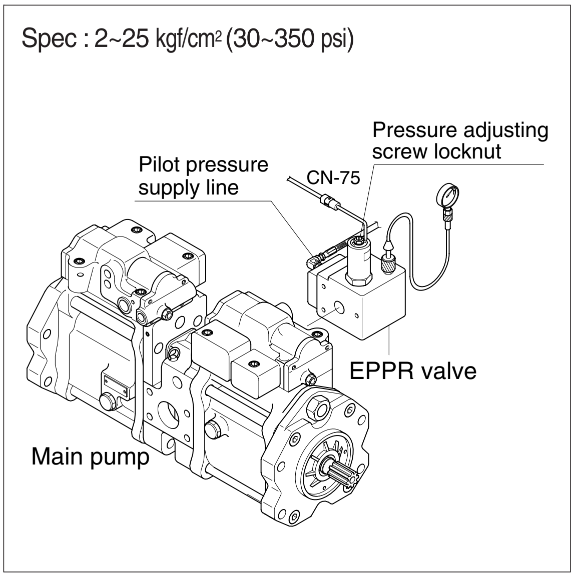
(2) Test 2 : Check electric current at EPPR valve.

① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.
② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.
③ Start engine.
④ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
⑤ Position the accel dial at 10.
⑥ If tachometer show approx 1700±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.
⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.



(3) Test 3 : Check pressure at EPPR valve.

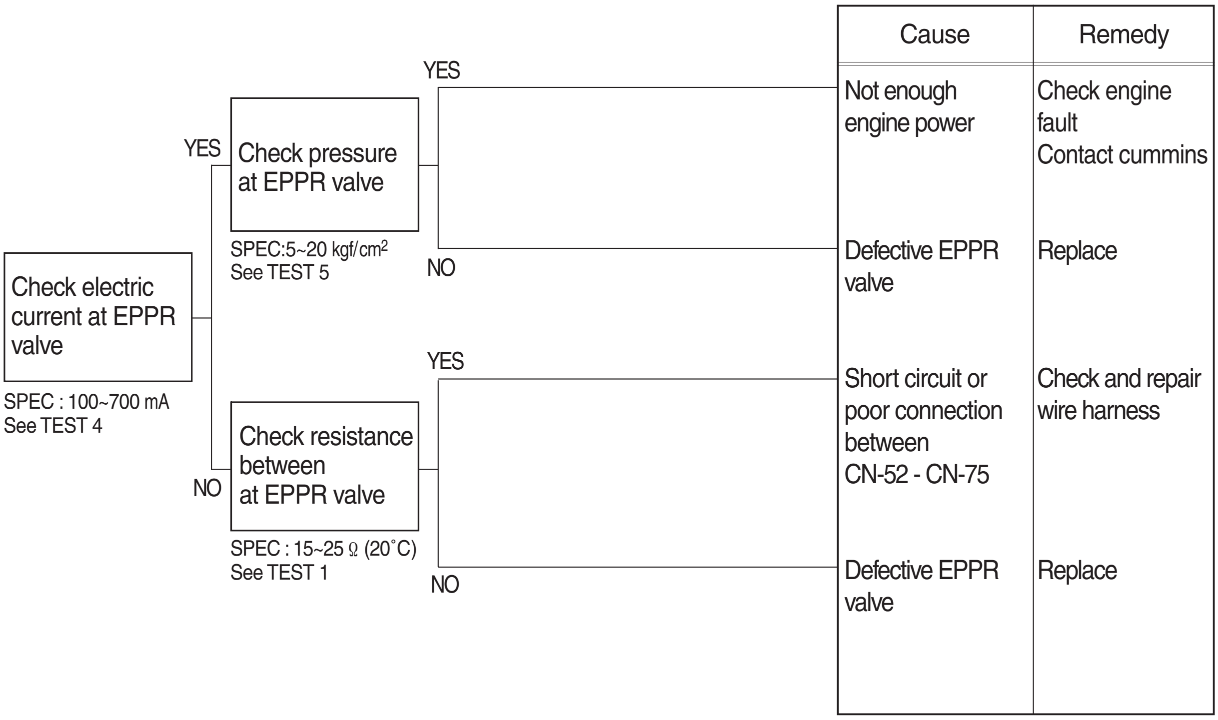
① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
 · Gauge capacity : 0 to 50 kgf/cm^2 (0 to 725 psi)
② Start engine.
③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
④ Position the accel dial at 10.
⑤ If tachometer show approx 1700±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.
⑥ If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
⑦ After adjust, test the machine.



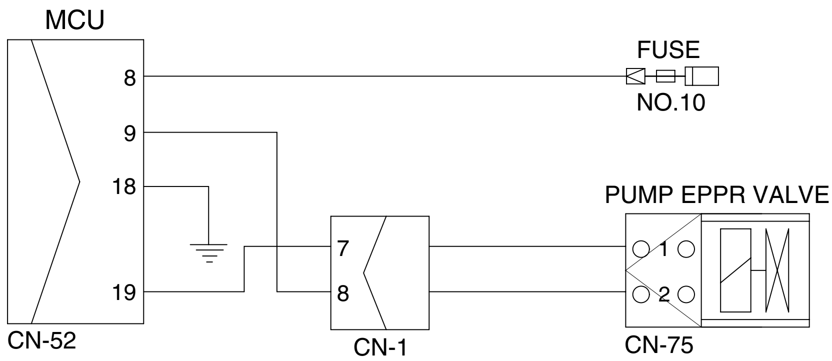
2. ENGINE STALL

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



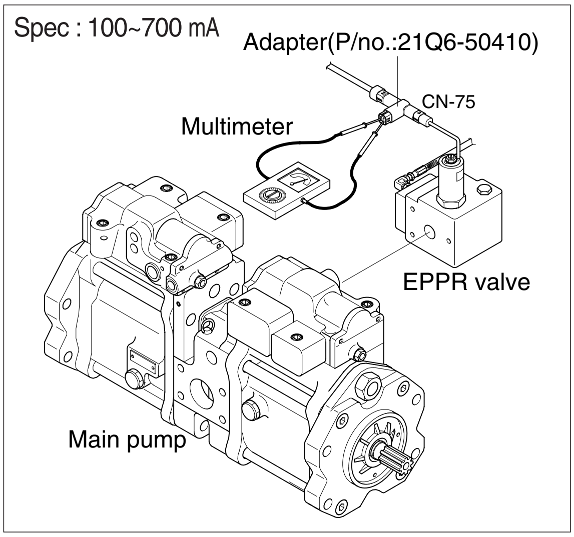
Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

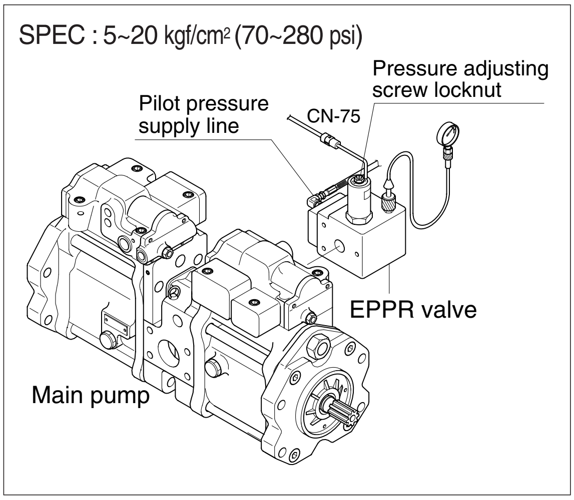
(1) Test 4 : Check electric current at EPPR valve at S-mode

① Install multimeter as figure.
② Start engine.
③ Set the accel dial at "10" (max)
④ Set S-mode with 1700±50 rpm.
⑤ Check electric current.



(2) Test 5 : Check pressure at EPPR valve at S-mode

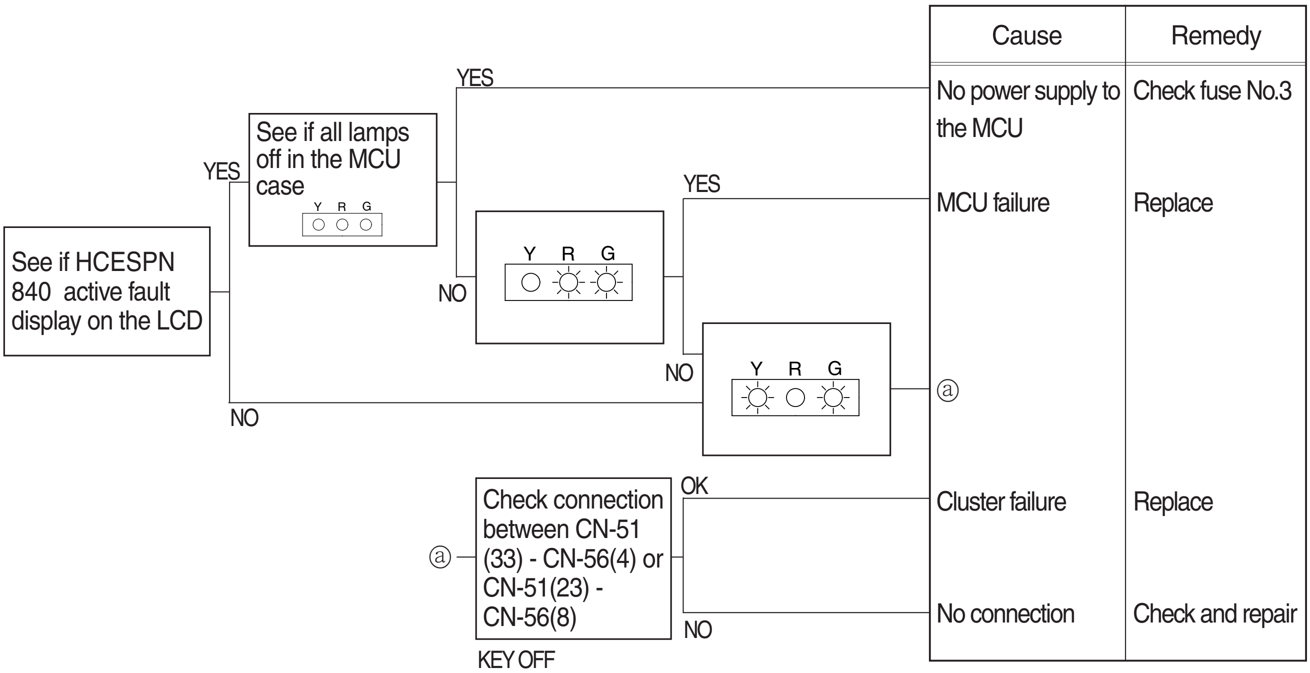
① Connect pressure gauge at EPPR valve.
② Start engine.
③ Set the accel dial at "10" (max)
④ Set S-mode with 1700±50 rpm.
⑤ Operate bucket lever completely push or pull.
⑥ Hold arm lever at the end of stroke.
⑦ Check pressure at relief position.



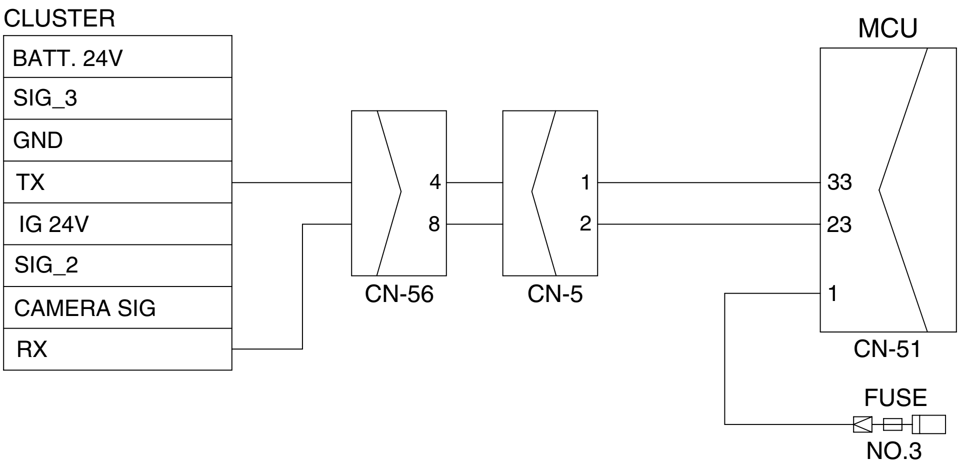
3. MALFUNCTION OF CLUSTER OR MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



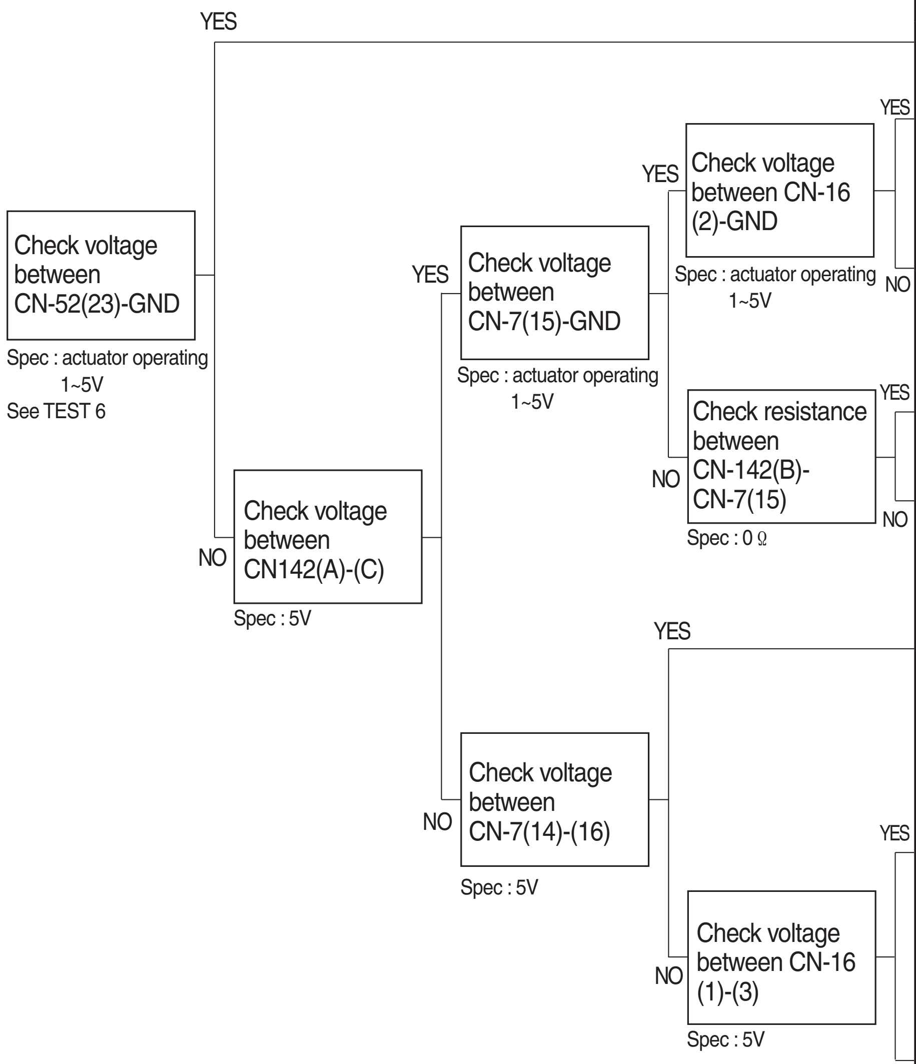
Wiring diagram



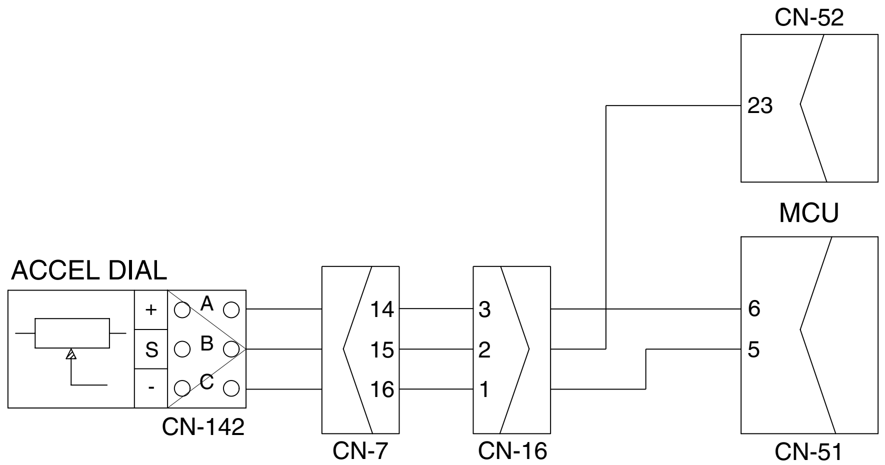
4. MALFUNCTION OF ACCEL DIAL

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-16 (2) -CN-52 (23)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-7 (15) -CN-16 (2)	Replace or repair
Defective accel dial	Replace
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-142 (B) -CN-7 (15)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-142 (A) -CN-7 (14) or CN-142 (C)- CN-7 (16)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-7 (14) -CN-16 (3) or CN-7 (16)- CN-16 (1)	Replace or repair
Open circuit or poor connection between CN-16 (3) -CN-51 (6) or CN-16 (1)- CN-51 (5)	Replace or repair



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 6 : Check voltage at CN-52(23) and ground.

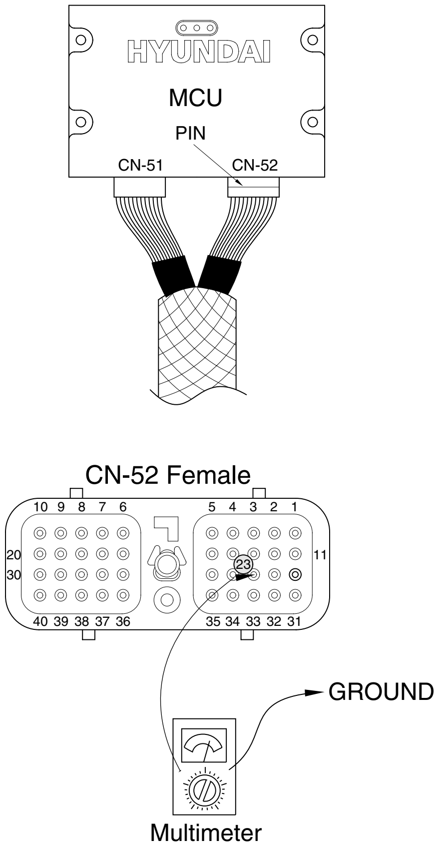
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (23) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

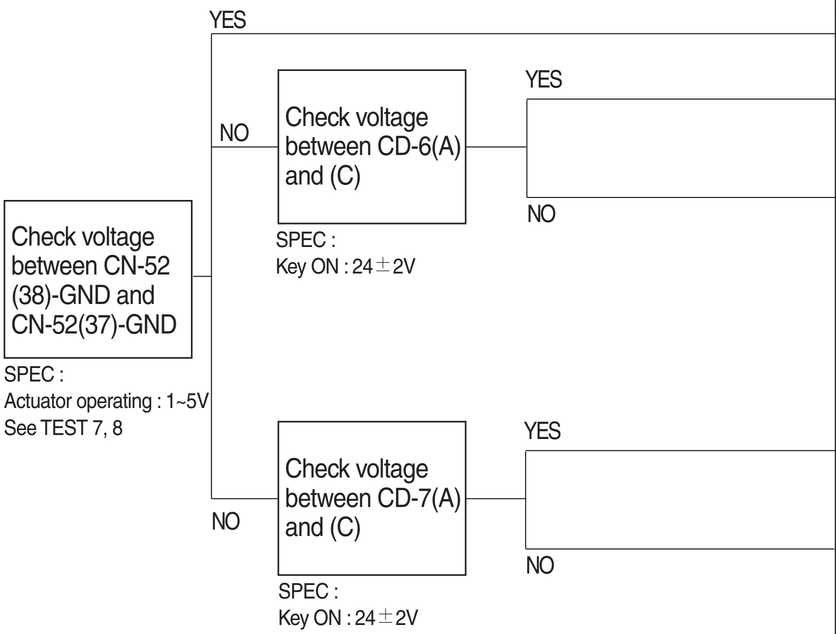


5. AUTO DECEL SYSTEM DOES NOT WORK

· Fault code : HCESPN 105, FMI 0~4 (work pressure sensor)
HCESPN 108, FMI 0~4 (travel oil pressure sensor)

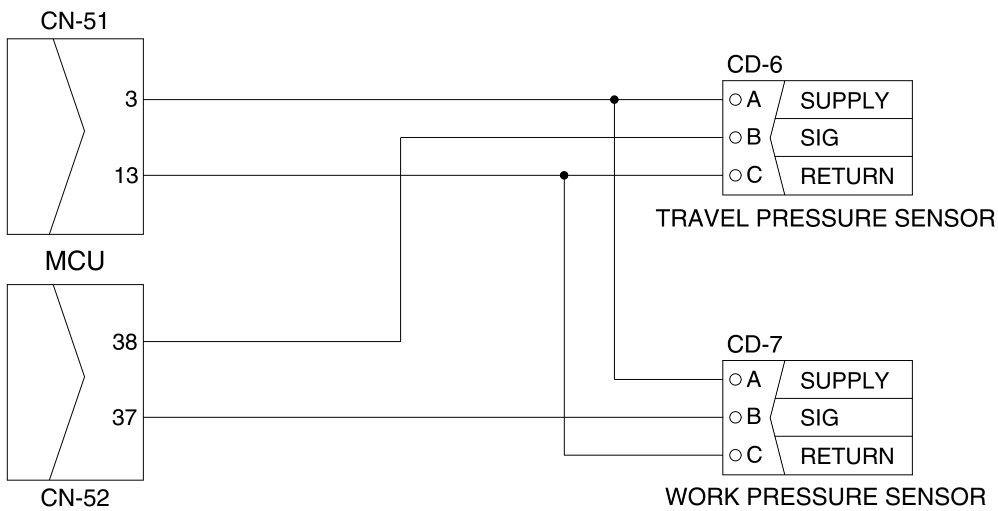
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Defective travel pressure switch	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-6(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-6(C) (fault code 108 displayed)	Replace or repair
Defective work pressure sensor	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(3)-CD-7(A) and / or CN-51(13)-CD-7(C) (fault code 105 displayed)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

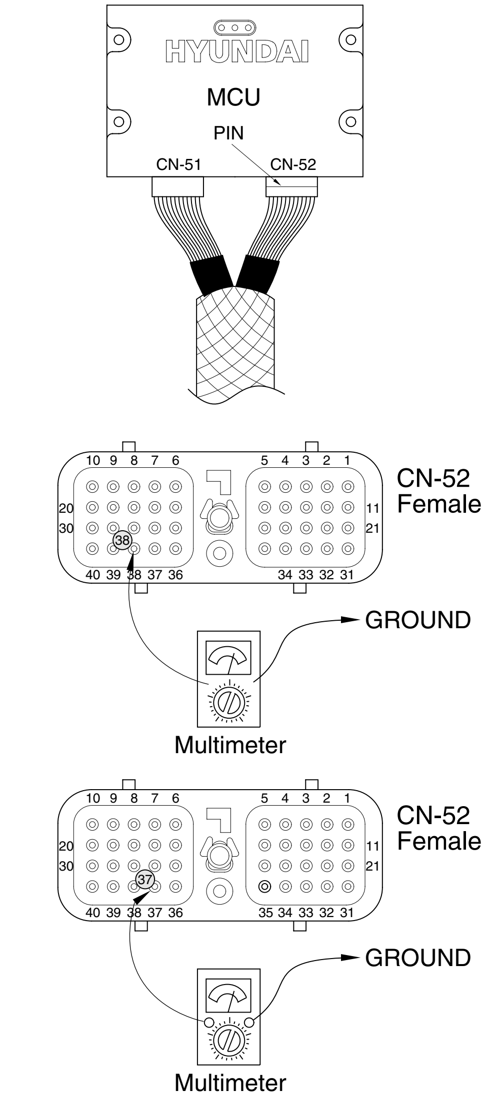
(1) Test 7 : Check voltage at CN-52(38) and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (38) of CN-52.
③ Starting key ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

(2) Test 8 : Check voltage at CN-52(37)and ground.

① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper
② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (37) of CN-52.
③ Starting key ON.
④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

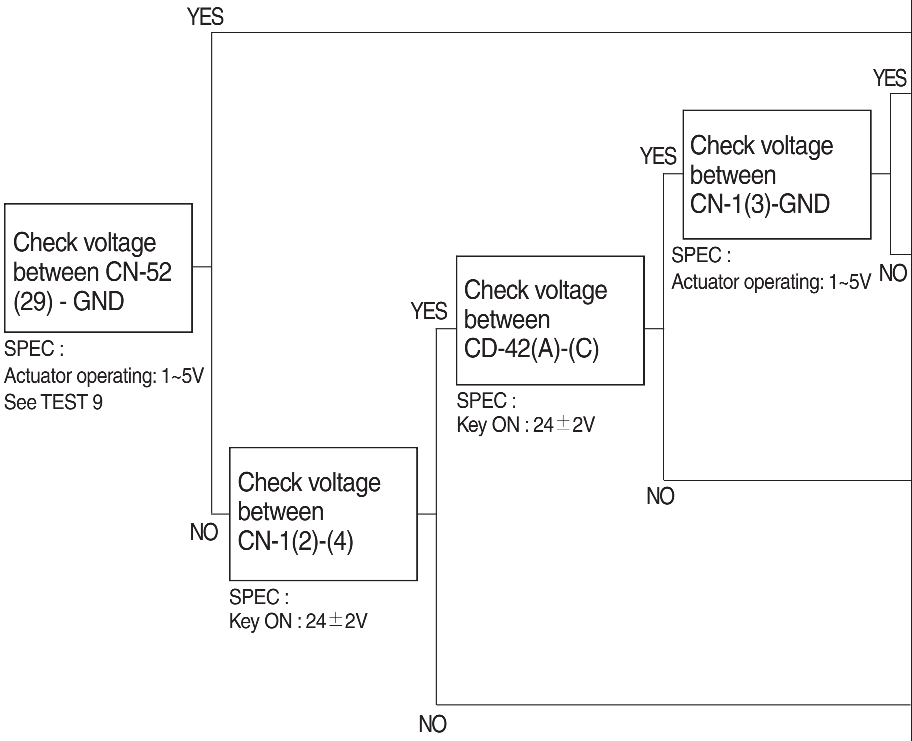


6. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 120, FMI 0~4

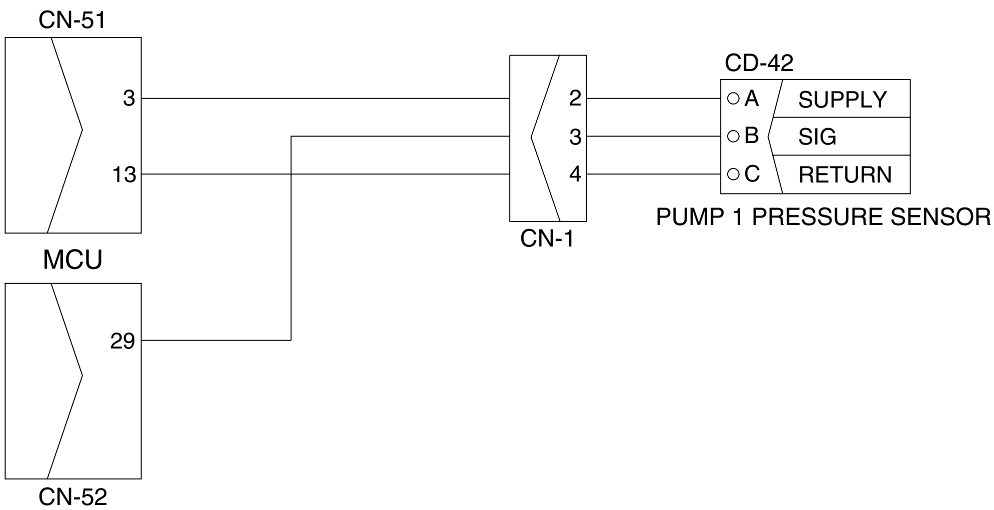
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(29)-CN-1(3)	Replace or repair
Detective P1 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(3)-CD-42(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-42(A)-CN-1(2) or CD-42(C)-CN-1(4)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(2)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (4) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 9 : Check voltage at CN-52(29) and ground.

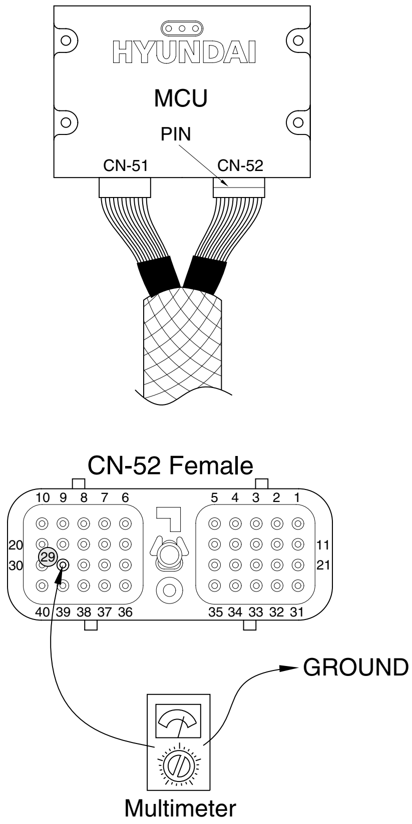
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (29) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

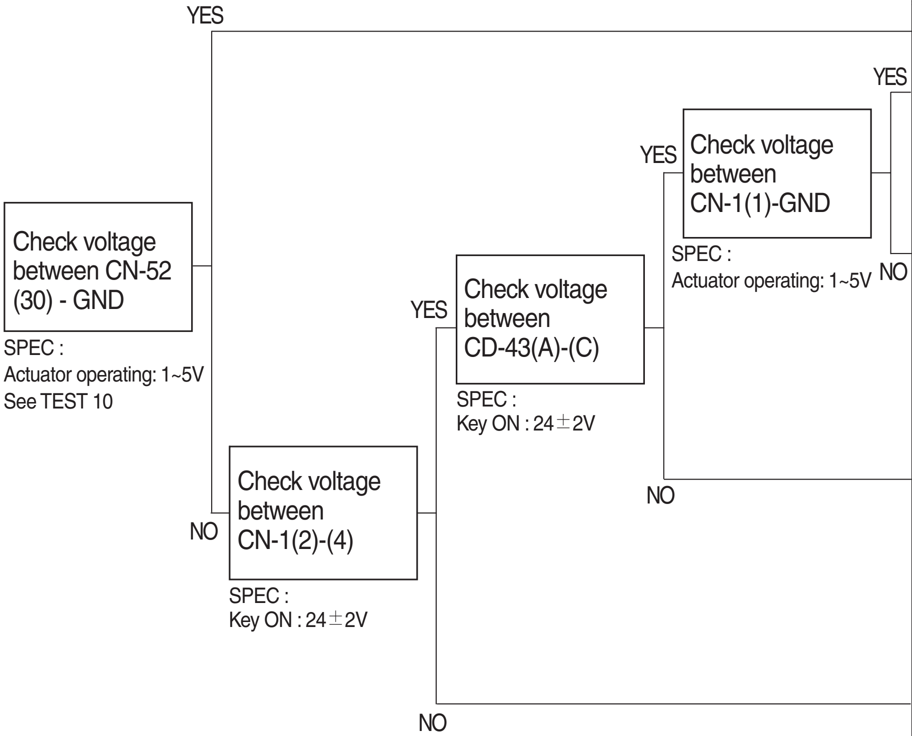


7. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 121, FMI 0~4

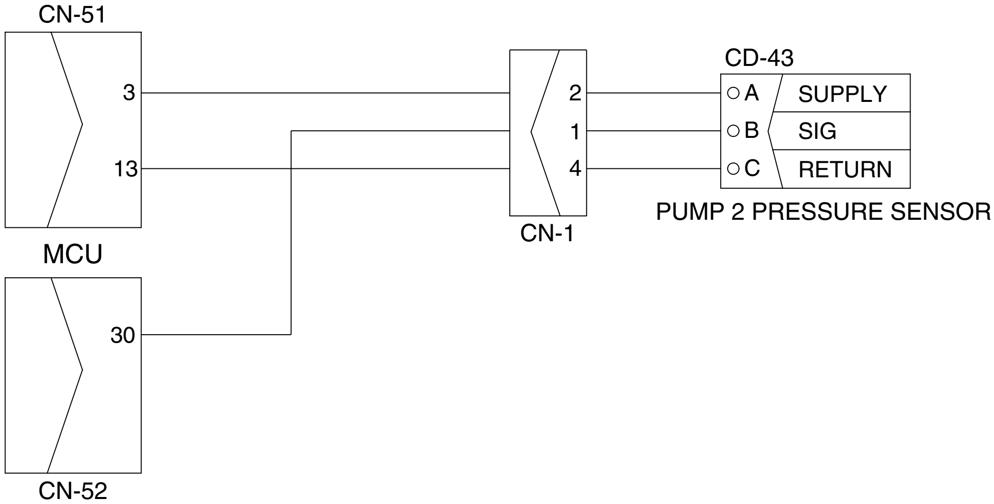
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(30)-CN-1(1)	Replace or repair
Detective P2 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(1)-CD-43(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-43(A)-CN-1(2) or CD-43(C)-CN-1(4)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(2)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (4) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 10 : Check voltage at CN-52(30) and ground.

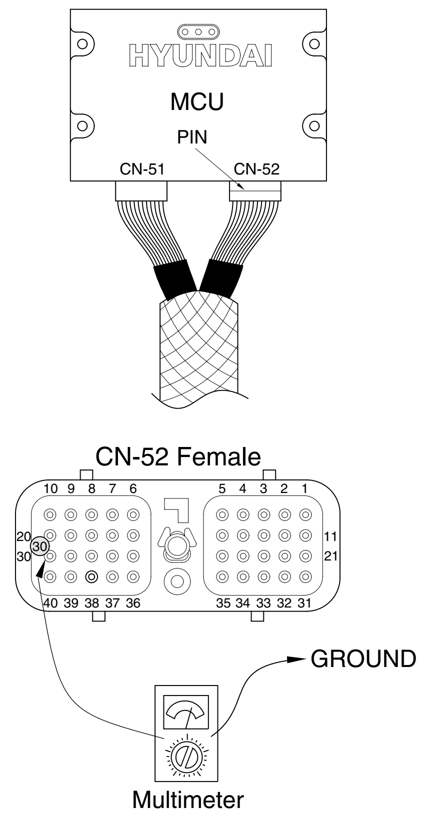
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (38) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

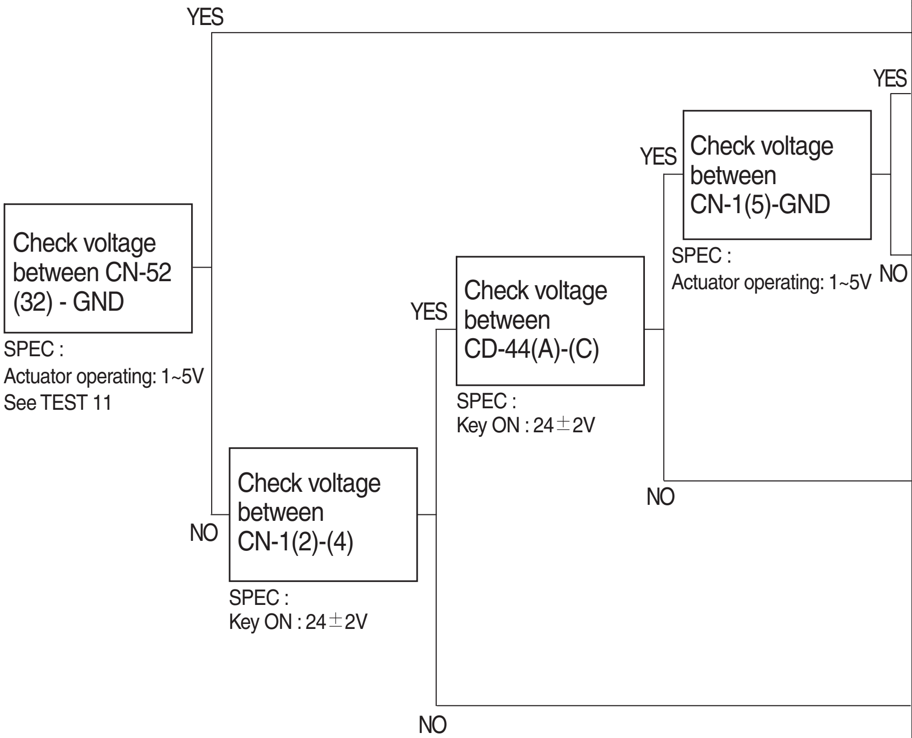


8. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 3 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 125, FMI 0~4

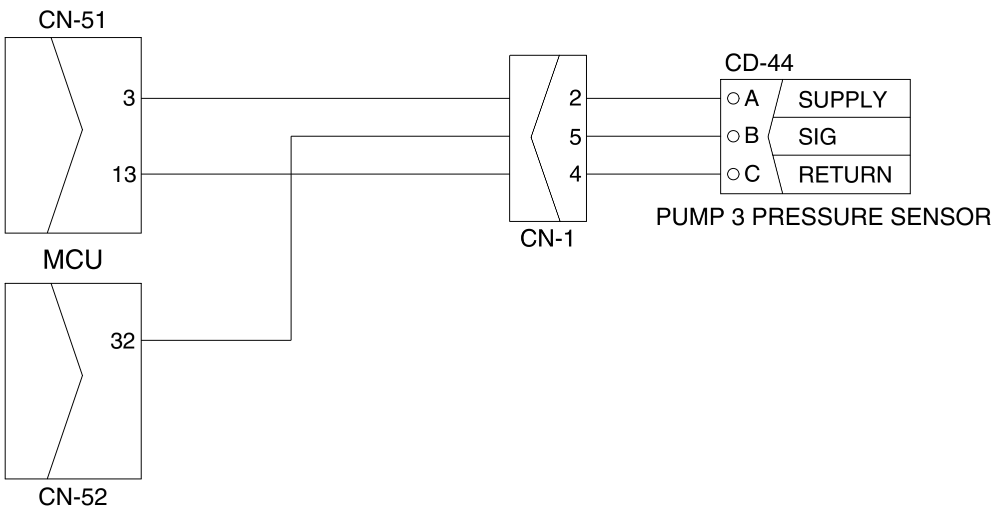
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52-(32)-CN-1(5)	Replace or repair
Detective P3 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(5)-CD-44(B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-44(A)-CN-1(2) or CD-44(C)-CN-1(4)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-1(2)-CN-51(3) or CN-1 (4) - CN-51(13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 11 : Check voltage at CN-52(32) and ground.

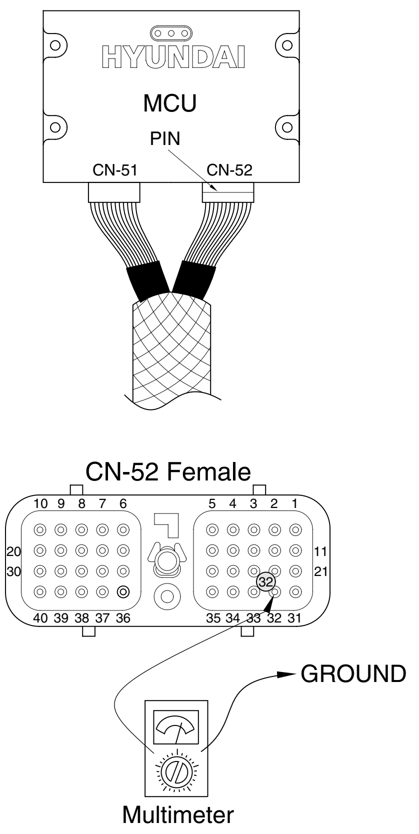
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (36) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

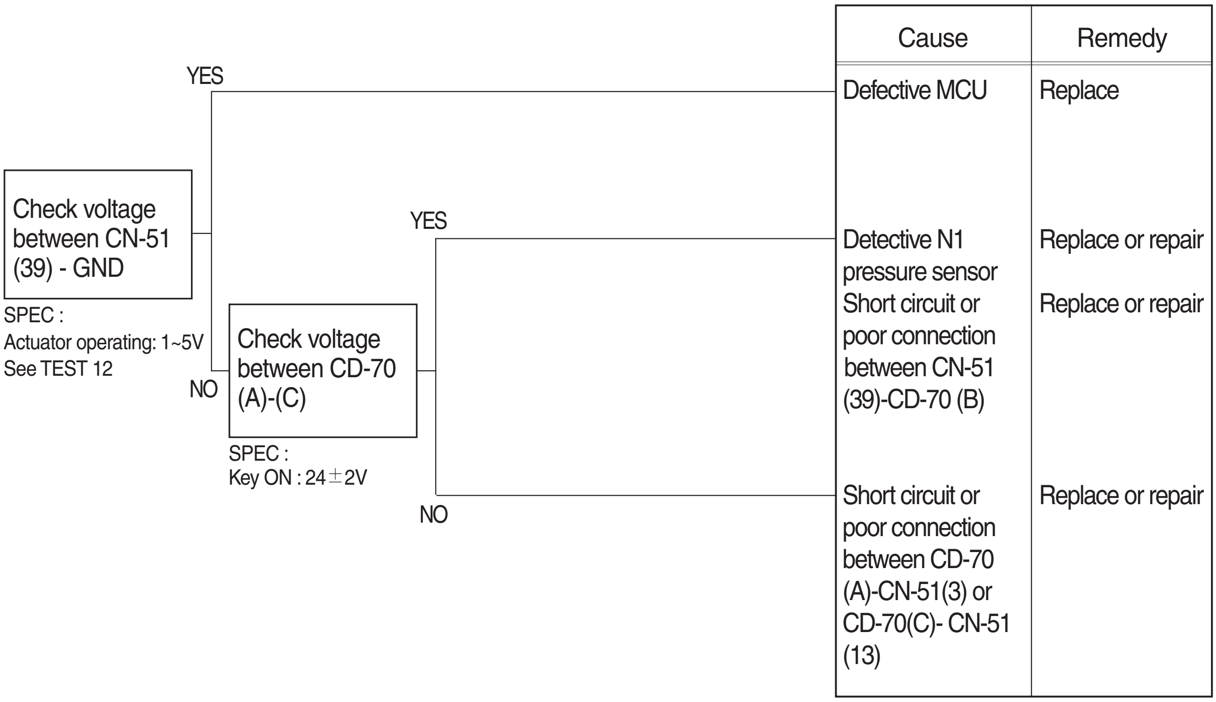


9. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

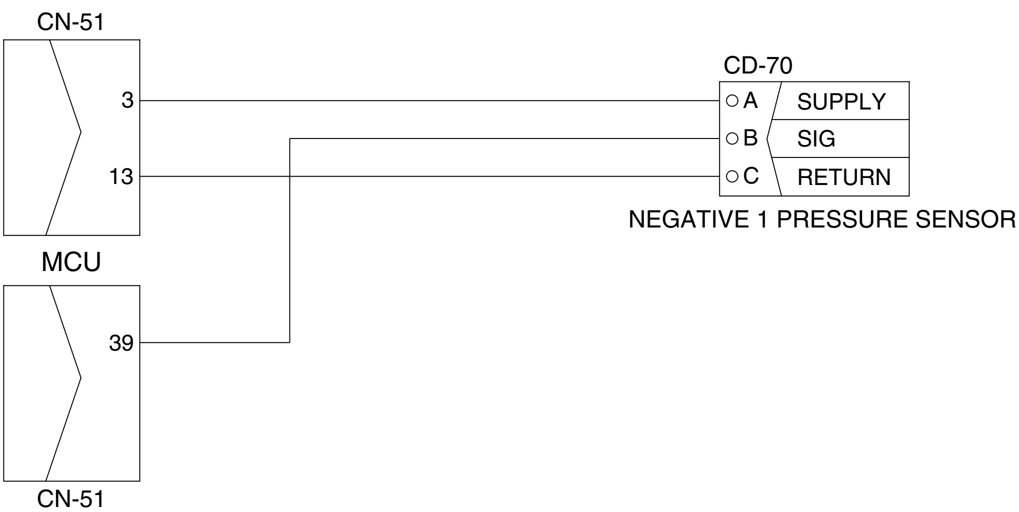
· Fault code : HCESPN 123, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 12 : Check voltage at CN-51(39) and ground.

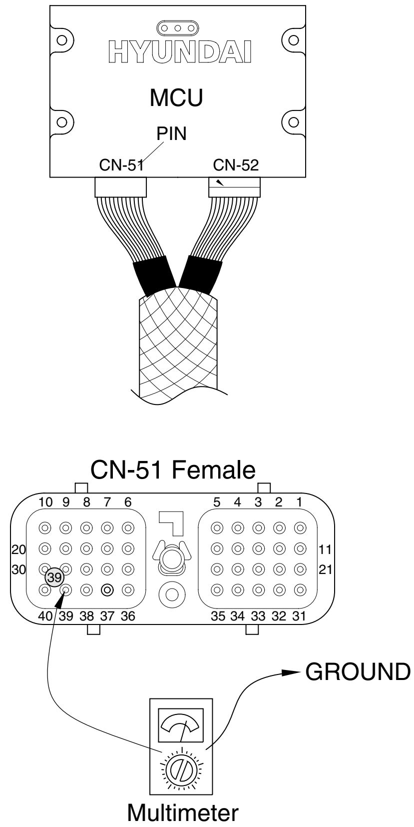
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (39) of CN-51.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

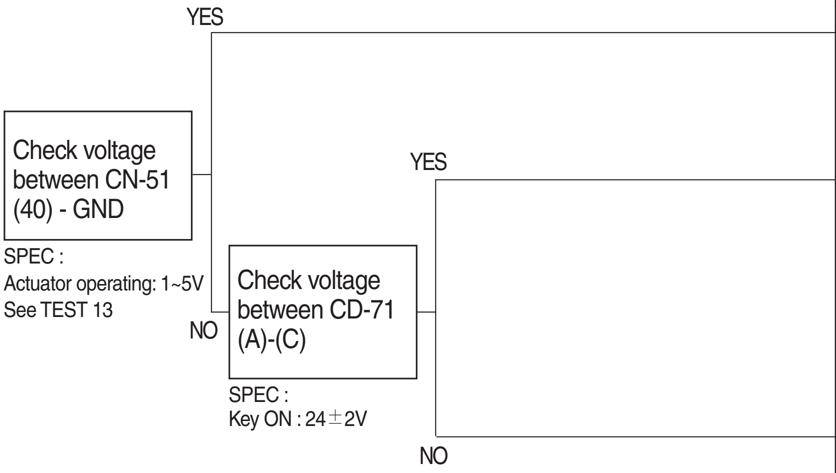


10. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 124, FMI 0~4

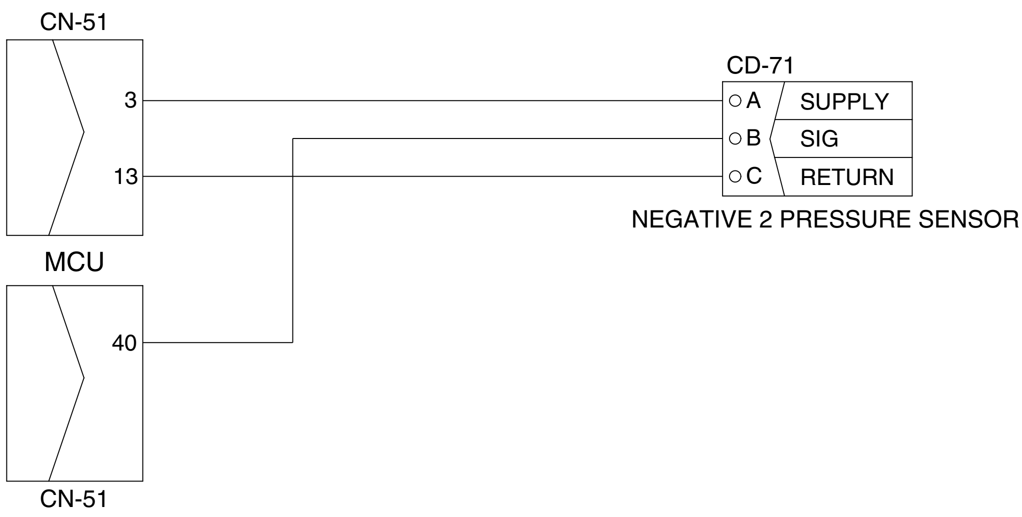
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective N2 pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51 (40)-CD-71 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-71 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-71(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) **Test 13** : Check voltage at CN-51(40) and ground.

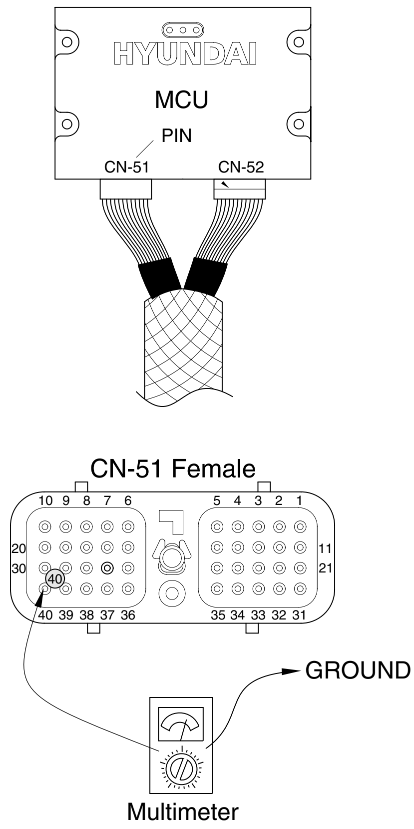
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (40) of CN-51.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

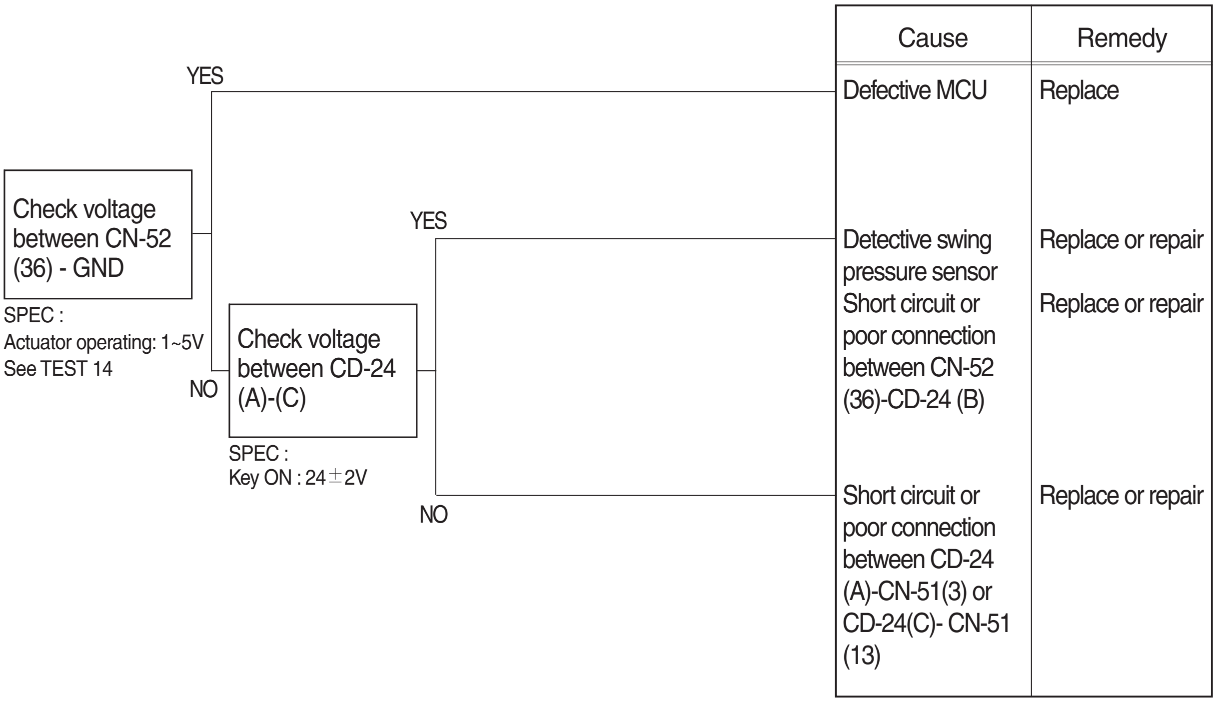


11. MALFUNCTION OF SWING PRESSURE SENSOR

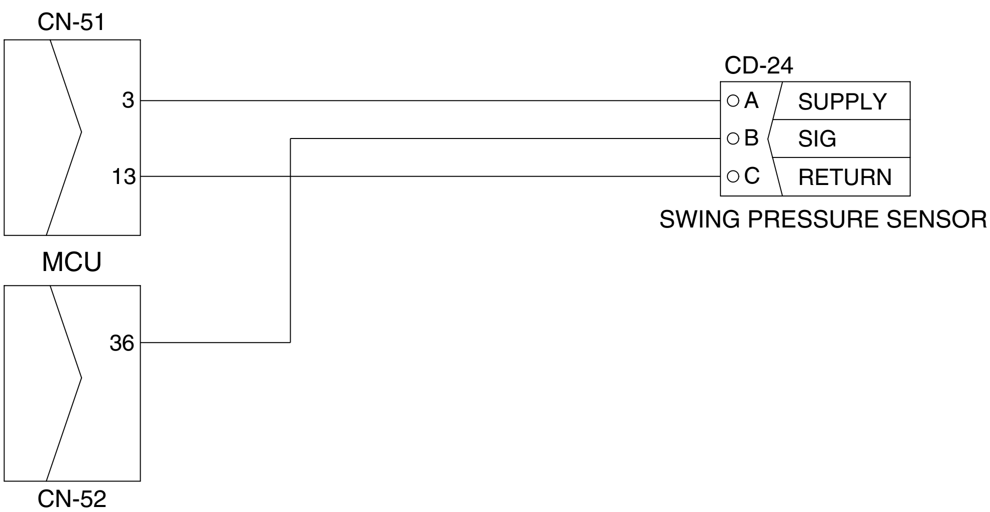
· Fault code : HCESPN 135, FMI 0~4

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 14 : Check voltage at CN-52(36) and ground.

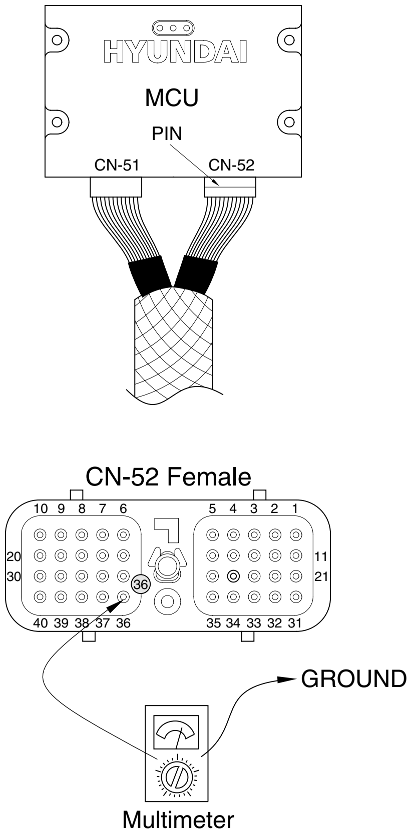
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (36) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

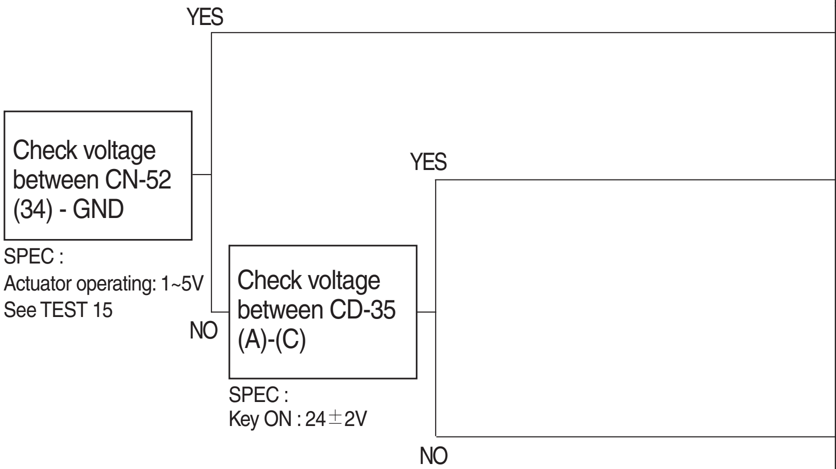


12. MALFUNCTION OF ARM IN/OUT & BUCKET IN PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 133, FMI 0~4

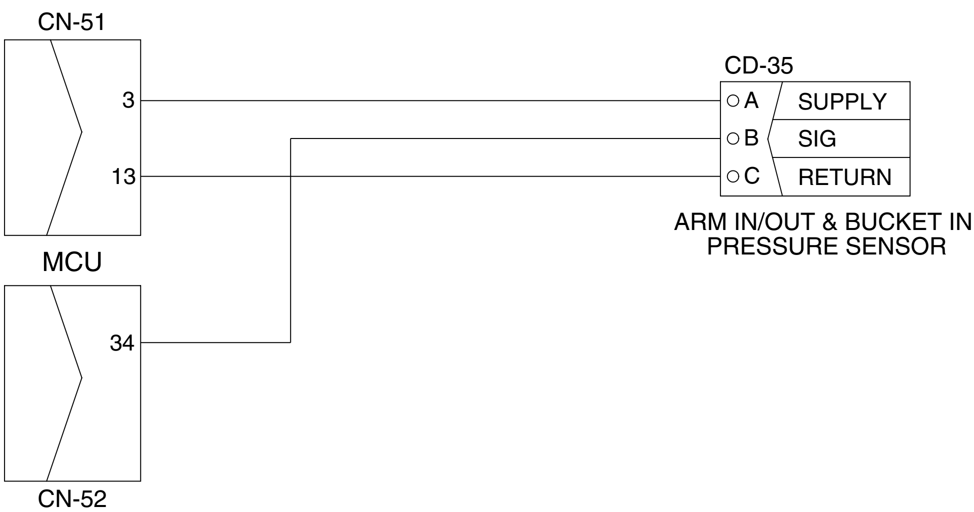
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective arm in/out & bucket in pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (34)-CD-35 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-35 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-35(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 15 : Check voltage at CN-52(34) and ground.

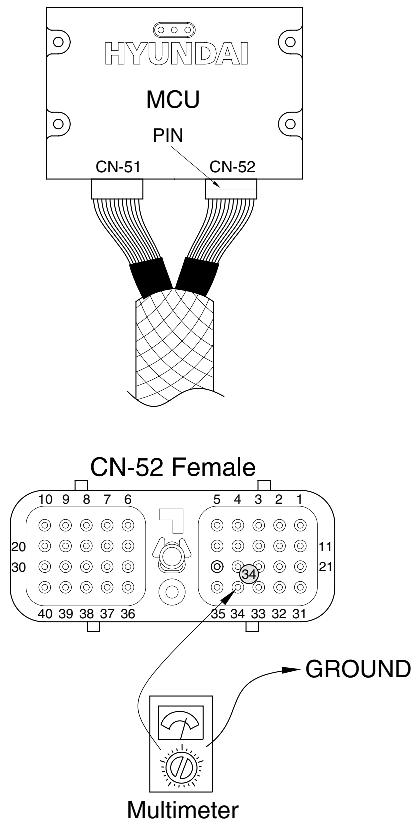
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (34) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

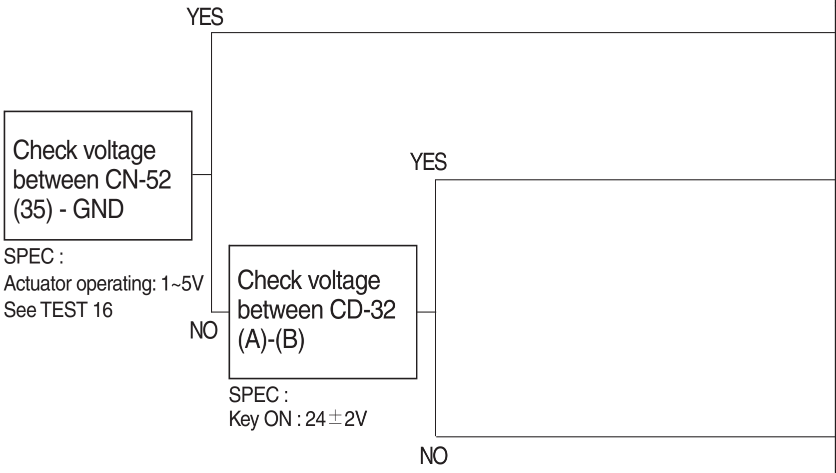


13. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM UP PRESSURE SENSOR

· Fault code : HCESPN 127, FMI 0~4

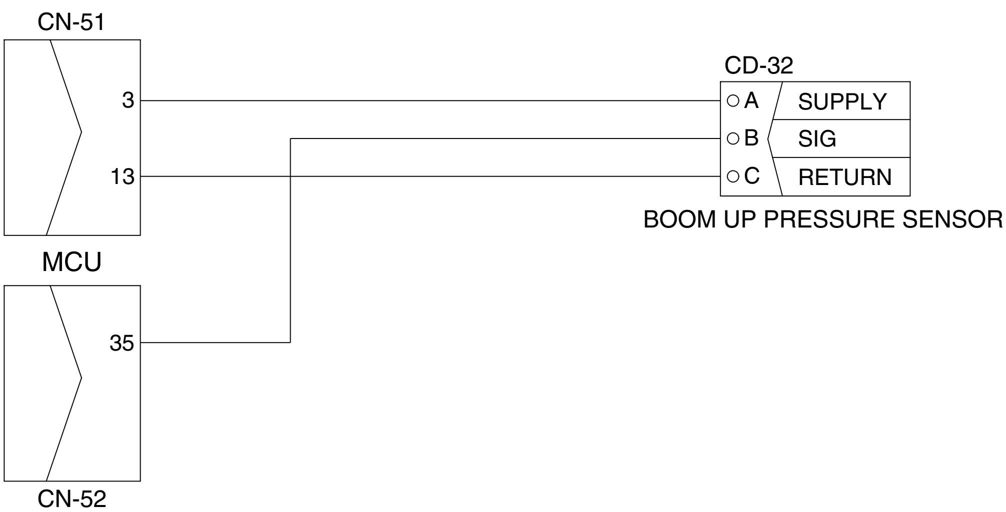
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Defective MCU	Replace
Detective boom up pressure sensor	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52 (35)-CD-32 (B)	Replace or repair
Short circuit or poor connection between CD-32 (A)-CN-51(3) or CD-32(C)- CN-51 (13)	Replace or repair

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

(1) Test 16 : Check voltage at CN-52(35) and ground.

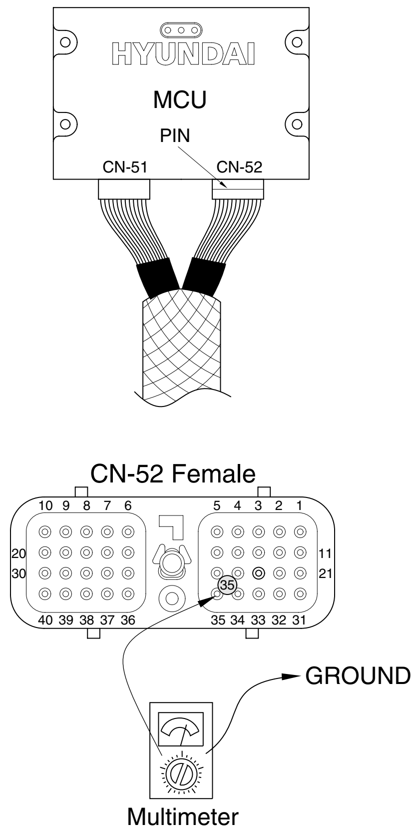
① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.

② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (35) of CN-52.

③ Starting key ON.

④ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Actuator operating : 1~5 V

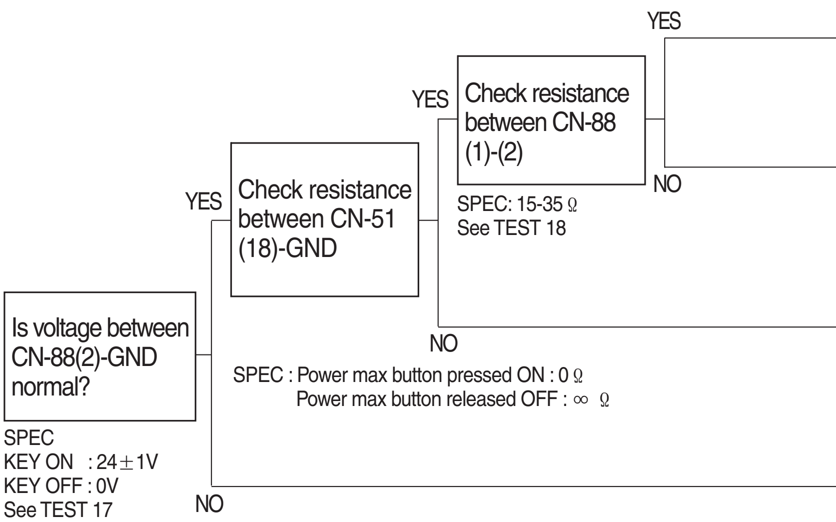


14. MALFUNCTION OF POWER MAX

· Fault code : HCESPN 166, FMI 4 or 6

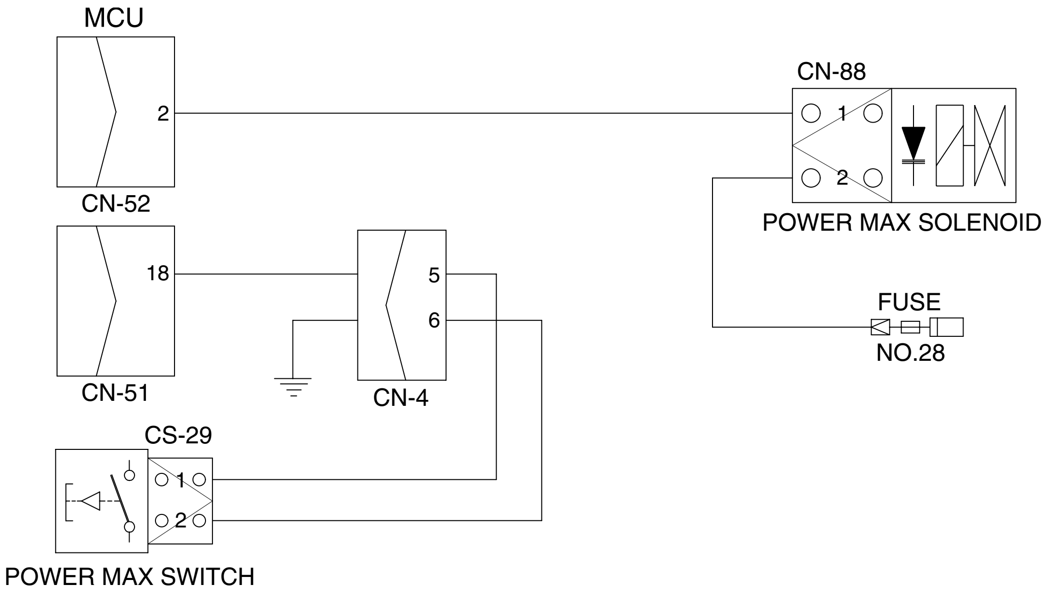
※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Cause	Remedy
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-88(1)-CN-52 (2)	Repair or replace
Defective power max. solenoid valve Check hydraulic system	Repair or replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-51(18)-CS-29	Repair or replace
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-88(2)-Fuse No. 28	Repair or replace

Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

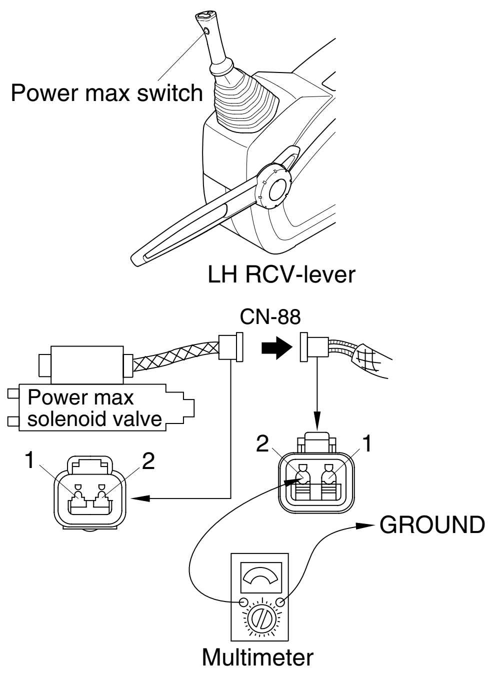
(1) Test 17: Check voltage between connector CN-88(2) - GND.

① Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.

② Start key ON.

③ Check voltage as figure.

SPEC : Key ON : 24±1V
Key OFF : 0V



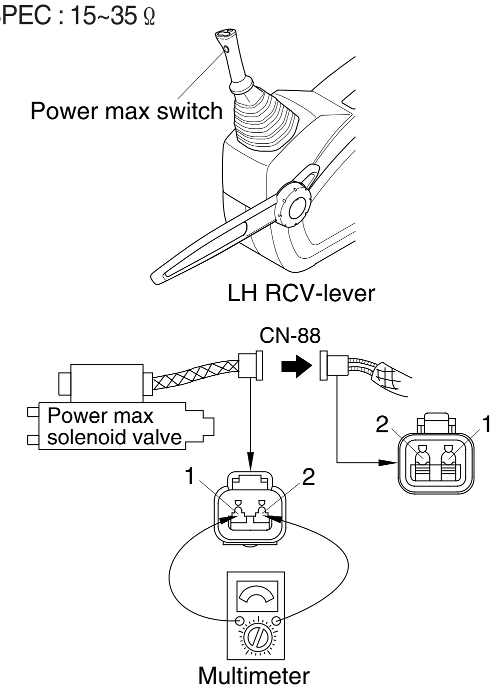
(2) Test 18: Check resistance of the solenoid valve between CN-88(1)-(2).

① Starting key OFF.

② Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.

③ Check resistance as figure.

SPEC : 15~35 Ω



15. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

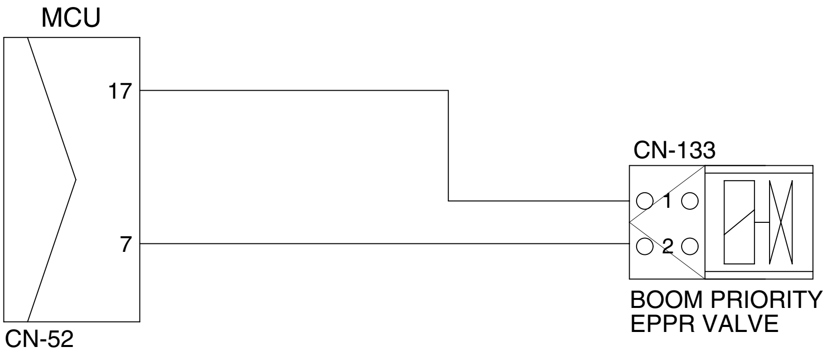
· Fault code : HCESPN 141, FMI 5 or 6

※ Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

Cause	Remedy
Short circuit or poor connection between CN-52(17)-CN-133 (1) or CN-52(7)-CN-133(2)	Repair or replace
Defective EPPR valve	Repair or replace

Wiring diagram



SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

GROUP 1 OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST

1. PURPOSE

Performance tests are used to check:

1) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A NEW MACHINE

Whenever a new machine is delivered in parts and reassembled at a customer's site, it must be tested to confirm that the operational performance of the machine meets Hyundai spec.

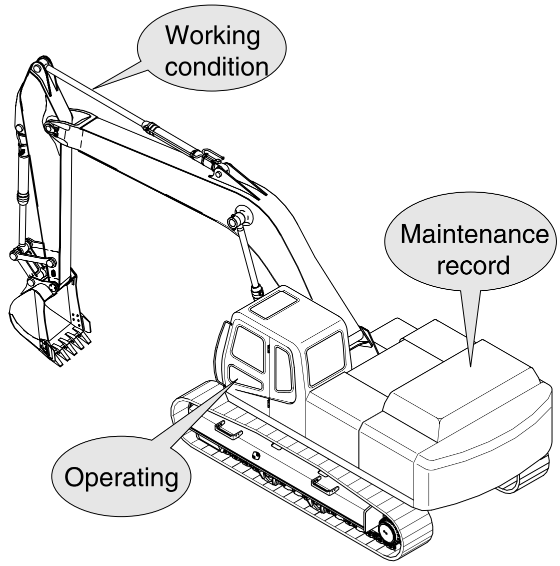
2) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A WORKING MACHINE

With the passage of time, the machine's operational performance deteriorates, so that the machine needs to be serviced periodically to restore it to its original performance level.

Before servicing the machine, conduct performance tests to check the extent of deterioration, and to decide what kind of service needs to be done (by referring to the "Service Limits" in this manual).

3) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A REPAIRED MACHINE

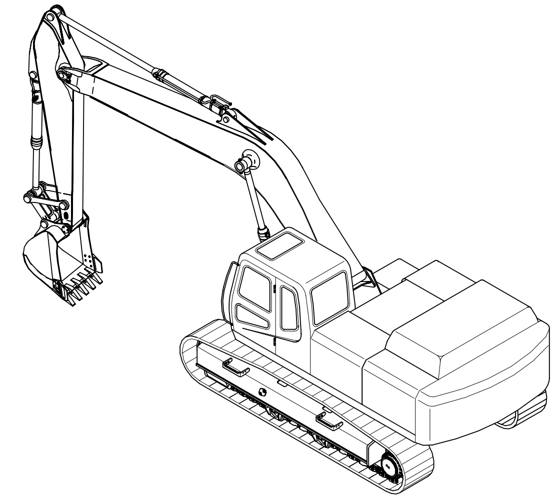
After the machine is repaired or serviced, it must be tested to confirm that its operational performance was restored by the repair and/or service work done.



2. TERMINOLOGY

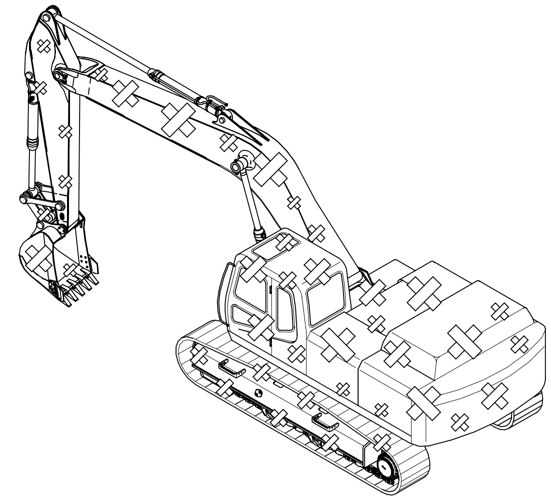
1) STANDARD

Specifications applied to the brand-new machine, components and parts.



2) SERVICE LIMIT

The lowest acceptable performance level. When the performance level of the machine falls below this level, the machine must be removed from work and repaired. Necessary parts and components must be replaced.



3. OPERATION FOR PERFORMANCE TESTS

1) Observe the following rules in order to carry out performance tests accurately and safely.

(1) The machine

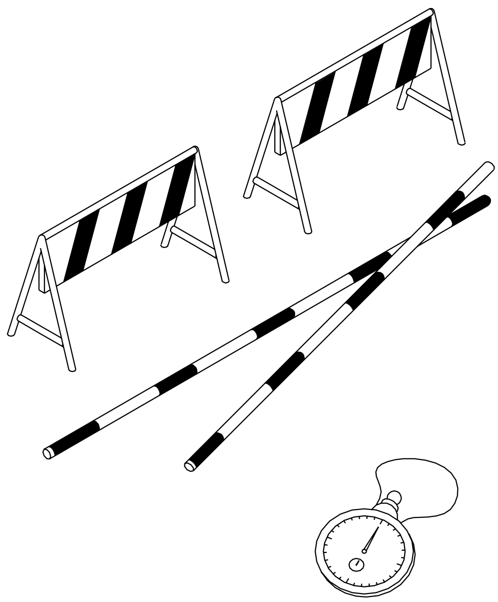
Repair any defects and damage found, such as oil or water leaks, loose bolts, cracks and so on, before starting to test.

(2) Test area

① Select a hard, flat surface.

② Secure enough space to allow the machine to run straight more than 20 m, and to make a full swing with the front attachment extended.

③ If required, rope off the test area and provide signboards to keep unauthorized personnel away.



(3) Precautions

① Before starting to test, agree upon the signals to be employed for communication among coworkers. Once the test is started, be sure to communicate with each other using these signals, and to follow them without fail.

② Operate the machine carefully and always give first priority to safety.

③ While testing, always take care to avoid accidents due to landslides or contact with high voltage power lines. Always confirm that there is sufficient space for full swings.

④ Avoid polluting the machine and the ground with leaking oil. Use oil pans to catch escaping oil. Pay special attention to this when removing hydraulic pipings.

(4) Make precise measurements

① Accurately calibrate test instruments in advance to obtain correct data.

② Carry out tests under the exact test conditions prescribed for each test item.

③ Repeat the same test and confirm that the test data obtained can be procured repeatedly. Use mean values of measurements if necessary.

2) ENGINE SPEED

(1) Measure the engine speed at each power mode

※ The engine speed at each power mode must meet standard RPM; if not, all other operational performance data will be unreliable. It is essential to perform this test first.

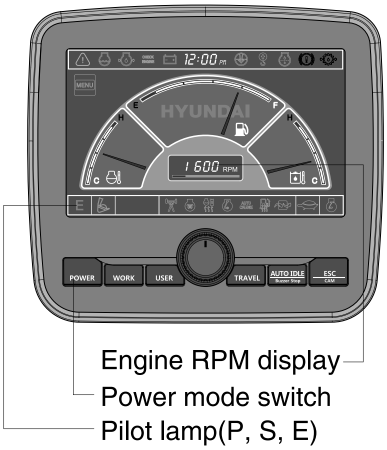
(2) Preparation

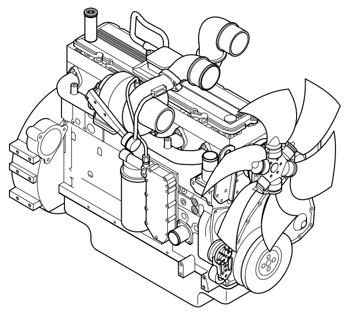
① Warm up the machine, until the engine coolant temperature reaches 50˚C or more, and the hydraulic oil is 50±5˚C.
② Set the accel dial at 10 (max) position.
③ Select the P-mode switch.
④ Measure the engine RPM.

(3) Measurement

① Start the engine. The engine will run at start idle speed. Measure engine speed with a engine rpm display.
② Measure and record the engine speed at each mode (P, S, E).
③ Select the P-mode.
④ Lightly operate the bucket control lever a few times, then return the control lever to neutral; The engine will automatically enter the auto-idle speed after 4 seconds.
⑤ Measure and record the auto deceleration speed.

CLUSTER





(4) Evaluation

The measured speeds should meet the following specifications.

Unit : rpm

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Remarks
R350LVS	Start idle	800±50	
	P mode	1650±50	
	S mode	1550±50	
	E mode	1450±50	
	Auto decel	1000±50	
	One touch decel	800±50	

Condition : Set the accel dial at 10 (max) position.

3) TRACK REVOLUTION SPEED

(1) Measure the track revolution cycle time with the track raised off ground.

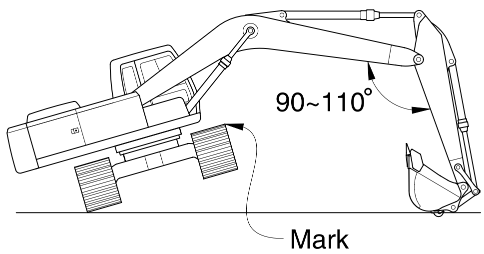
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both side tracks to be equal.

② On the track to be measured, mark one shoe with chalk.

③ Swing the upperstructure 90° and lower the bucket to raise the track off ground. Keep the boom-arm angle between 90 to 110° as shown. Place blocks under machine frame.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Travel mode switch : 1 or 2 speed

· Power mode switch : P mode

· Auto decel switch : OFF

② Operate the travel control lever of the raised track in full forward and reverse.

③ Rotate 1 turn, then measure time taken for next 3 revolutions.

④ Raise the other side of machine and repeat the procedure.

⑤ Repeat steps ③ and ④ three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The revolution cycle time of each track should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable
R350LVS	1 Speed	31.8±2.0	—
	2 Speed	18.2±2.0	—

4) TRAVEL DEVIATION

(1) Measure the deviation by the tracks from a 20m straight line.

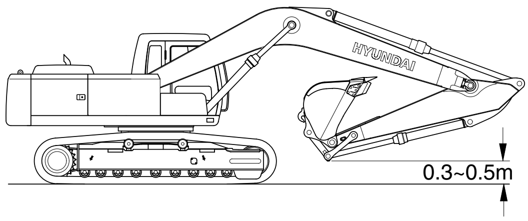
(2) Preparation

① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.

② Provide a flat, solid test yard 20 m in length, with extra length of 3 to 5 m on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.

③ Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 m above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Measure the amount of mistracking at high and low travel speeds.

② Before beginning each test, select the following switch positions.

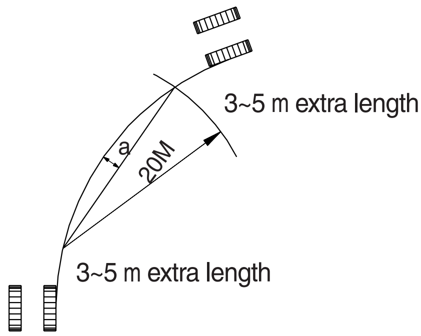
· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.

④ Measure the distance between a straight 20m line and the track made by the machine. (dimension a)

⑤ After measuring the tracking in forward travel, turn the upperstructure 180° and measure that in reverse travel.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times and calculate the average values.



(4) Evaluation

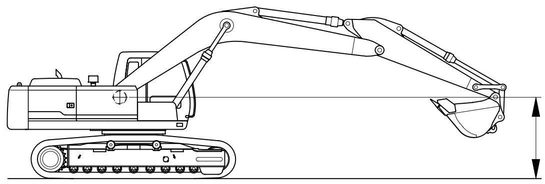
Mistrack should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm / 20 m

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	200 below	—	

5) SWING SPEED

(1) Measure the time required to swing three complete turns.



(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Operate swing control lever fully.

③ Swing 1 turn and measure time taken to swing next 3 revolutions.

④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three time and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

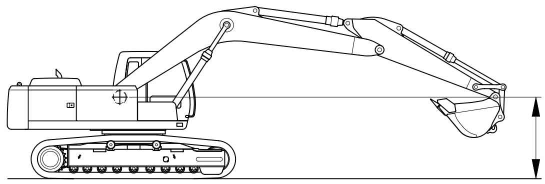
The time required for 3 swings should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable
R350LVS	P mode	18.1±1.5	—

6) SWING FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure the swing drift on the bearing outer circumference when stopping after a 360° full speed swing.



(2) Preparation

① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.

② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.

③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.

④ Make two chalk marks: one on the swing bearing and one directly below it on the track frame.

⑤ Swing the upperstructure 360˚.

⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(3) Measurement

① Conduct this test in the P mode.

② Select the following switch positions.

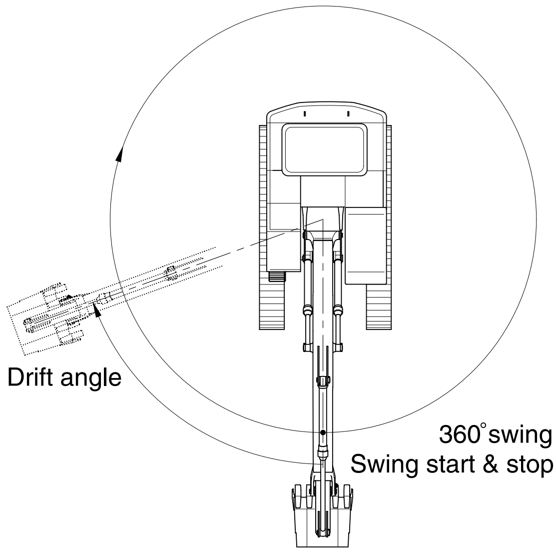
· Power mode switch : P mode

③ Operate the swing control lever fully and return it to the neutral position when the mark on the upperstructure aligns with that on track frame after swinging 360˚.

④ Measure the distance between the two marks.

⑤ Align the marks again, swing 360˚, then test the opposite direction.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times each and calculate the average values.



(4) Evaluation

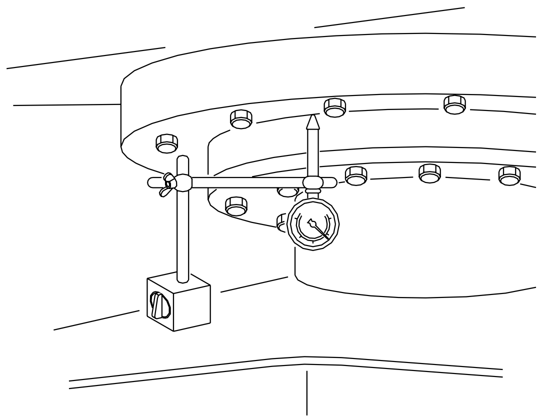
The measured drift angle should be within the following specifications.

Unit : Degree

Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	P mode	90 below	—	

7) SWING BEARING PLAY

(1) Measure the swing bearing play using a dial gauge to check the wear of bearing races and balls.



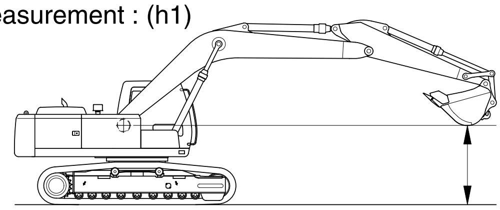
(2) Preparation

① Check swing bearing mounting cap screws for loosening.
② Check the lubrication of the swing bearing. Confirm that bearing rotation is smooth and without noise.
③ Install a dial gauge on the track frame as shown, using a magnetic base.
④ Position the upperstructure so that the boom aligns with the tracks facing towards the front idlers.
⑤ Position the dial gauge so that its needle point comes into contact with the bottom face of the bearing outer race.
⑥ Bucket should be empty.

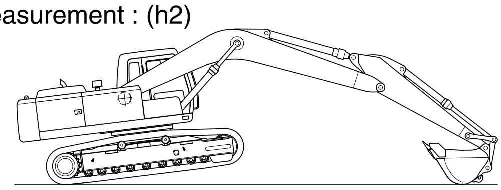
(3) Measurement

① With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bottom face of the bucket to the same height of the boom foot pin.
Record the dial gauge reading (h1).
② Lower the bucket to the ground and use it to raise the front idler 50㎝.
Record the dial gauge reading (h2).
③ Calculate bearing play(H) from this data (h1 and h2) as follows.
H=h2-h1

Measurement : (h1)



Measurement : (h2)



(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit : mm

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	0.5 ~ 1.5	3.0	

8) HYDRAULIC CYLINDER CYCLE TIME

(1) Measure the cycle time of the boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders.

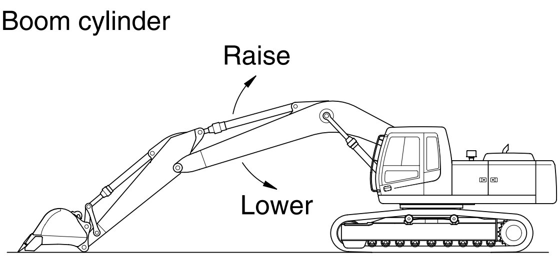
(2) Preparation

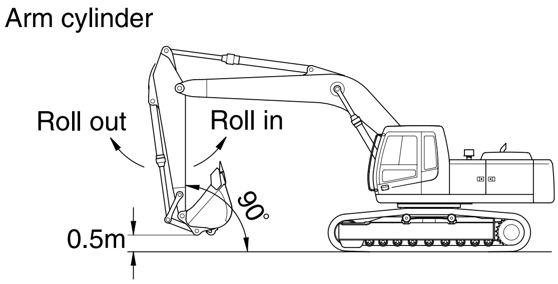
① To measure the cycle time of the boom cylinders:
With the arm rolled out and the empty bucket rolled out, lower the bucket to the ground, as shown.

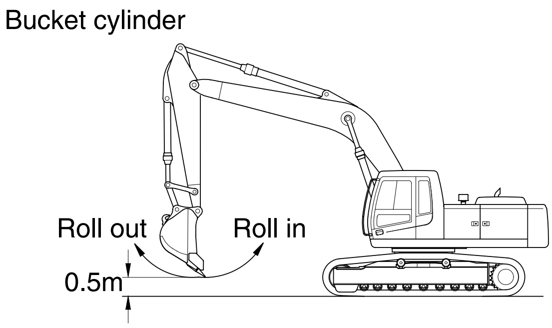
② To measure the cycle time of the arm cylinder.
With the empty bucket rolled in, position the arm so that it is vertical to the ground. Lower the boom until the bucket is 0.5 m above the ground.

③ To measure the cycle time of the bucket cylinder.
The empty bucket should be positioned at midstroke between roll-in and roll-out, so that the sideplate edges are vertical to the ground.

④ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.







(3) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
· Power mode switch : P mode

② To measure cylinder cycle times.
- Boom cylinders.
Measure the time it takes to raise the boom, and the time it takes to lower the boom. To do so, position the boom at one stroke end then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Arm cylinder.
Measure the time it takes to roll in the arm, and the time it takes to roll out the arm. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.

- Bucket cylinders
  Measure the time it takes to roll in the bucket, and the time it takes to roll out the bucket. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Repeat each measurement 3 times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit : Seconds

Model	Function	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	Boom raise	3.8±0.4	—	
	Boom lower	2.6±0.4	—	
	Arm in	3.6±0.4	—	
	Arm out	3.3±0.4	—	
	Bucket load	2.8±0.4	—	
	Bucket dump	2.6±0.3	—	

9) DIG FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure dig function drift, which can be caused by oil leakage in the control valve and boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders, with the loaded bucket.
When testing the dig function drift just after cylinder replacement, slowly operate each cylinder to its stroke end to purge air.

(2) Preparation

① Load bucket fully. Instead of loading the bucket, weight (W) of the following specification can be used.

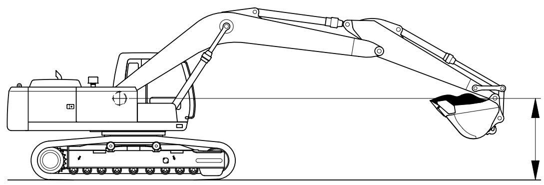
・W=$M^3 \times 1.5$
Where :
M^3 = Bucket heaped capacity (m^3)
1.5 = Soil specific gravity

② Position the arm cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm extended from the fully retracted position.

③ Position the bucket cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm retracted from the fully extended position.

④ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin.

⑤ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(3) Measurement

① Stop the engine.

② Five minutes after the engine has been stopped, measure the changes in the positions of the boom, arm and bucket cylinders.

③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(4) The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

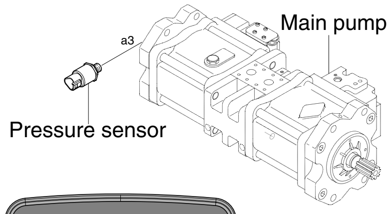
Unit : mm / 5 min

Model	Drift to be measured	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	Boom cylinder	10 below	—	
	Arm cylinder	10 below	—	
	Bucket cylinder	40 below	—	

10) PILOT PRIMARY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

· Auto decel switch : OFF

② Measure the primary pilot pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster.

Cluster

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications:

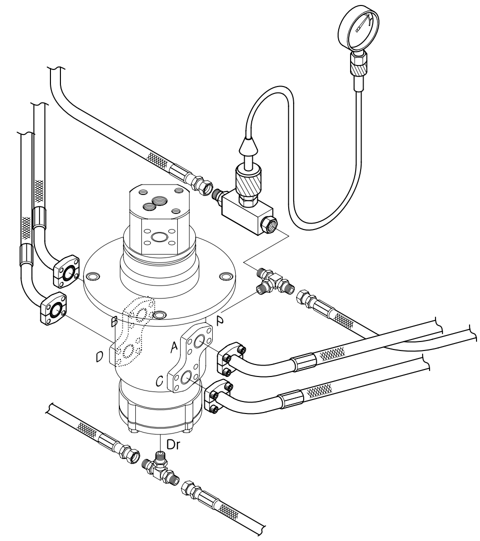
Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R350LVS	P mode	40±5	-	

11) FOR TRAVEL SPEED SELECTING PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Stop the engine.
② Remove the top cover of the hydraulic tank oil supply port with a wrench.
③ Push the pressure release button to bleed air.
④ To measure the speed selecting pressure: Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to turning joint P port as shown.
⑤ Start the engine and check for on leakage from the adapter.
⑥ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
Travel mode switch : 1 speed
2 speed
· Power mode switch : P mode
② Measure the travel speed selecting pressure in the Hi or Lo mode.
③ Lower the bucket to the ground to raise the track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the fast speed pressure.
④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

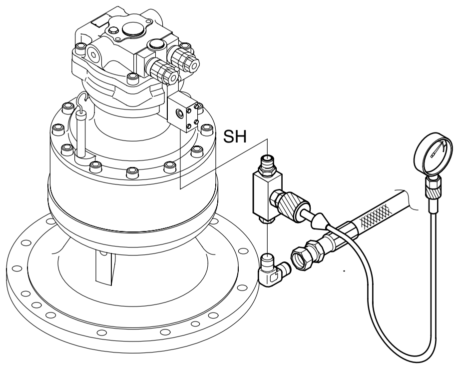
Unit : kgf / cm^2

Model	Travel speed mode	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
R350LVS	1 Speed	0	-	
	2 Speed	40±5	-	

12) SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASING PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Stop the engine.
② Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
③ Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to swing motor SH port, as shown.
④ Start the engine and check for oil leakage from the adapter.
⑤ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.



(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.
· Power mode switch: P mode
② Operate the swing function or arm roll in function and measure the swing brake control pressure with the brake disengaged. Release the control lever to return to neutral and measure the control pressure when the brake is applied.
Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

Unit : kgf/cm^2

Model	Description	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R350LVS	Brake disengaged	40	-	
	Brake applied	0	-	

13) MAIN PUMP DELIVERY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

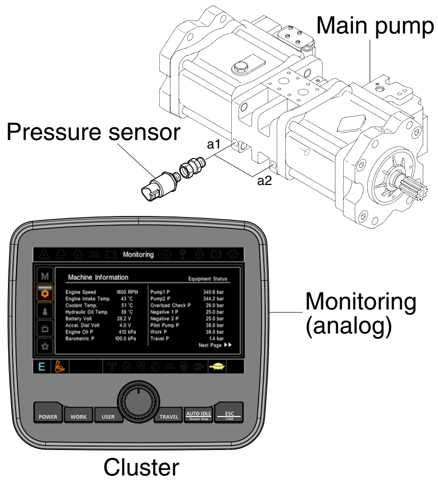
① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Measure the main pump delivery pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster.



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications.

Unit : kgf / cm²

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
R350LVS	High ilde	40±5	-	

14) SYSTEM PRESSURE REGULATOR RELIEF SETTING

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at 50±5˚C.

(2) Measurement

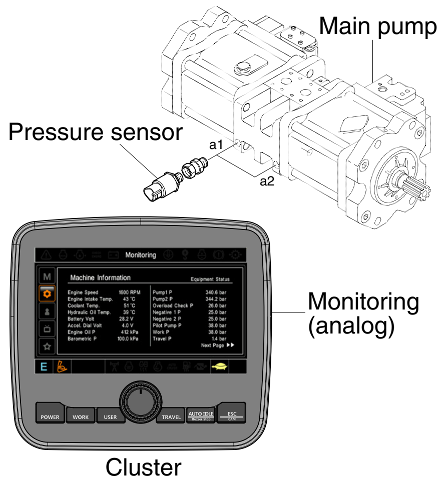
① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

② Slowly operate each control lever of boom, arm and bucket functions at full stroke over relief and measure the pressure.

③ In the swing function, place bucket against an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.

④ In the travel function, lock undercarriage with an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

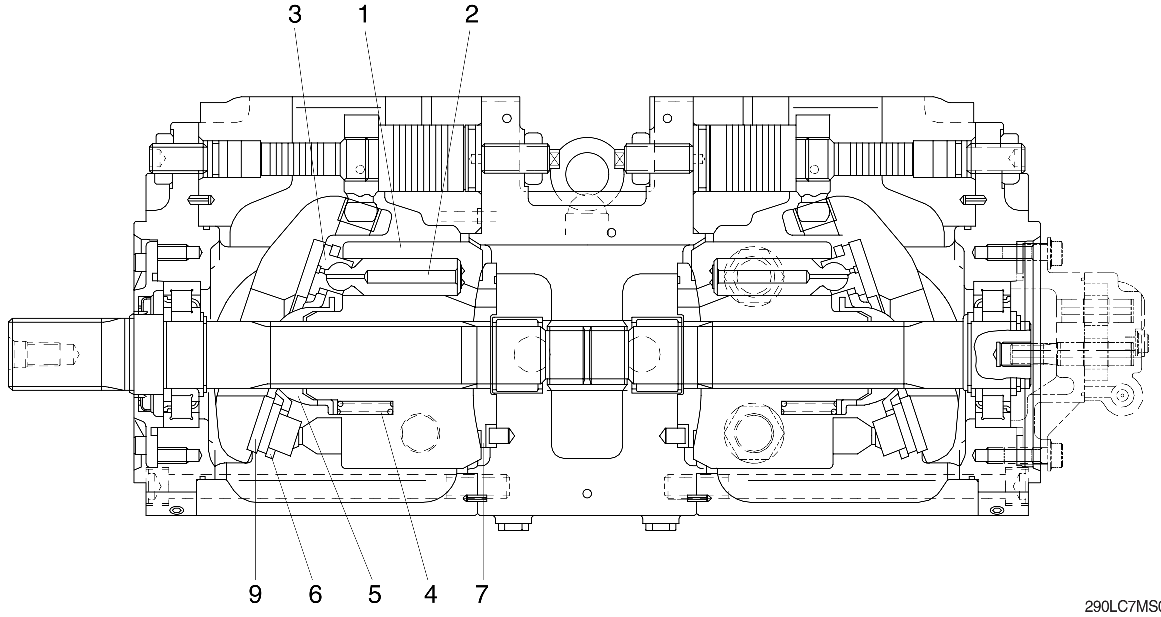
Unit : kgf / cm²

Model	Function to be tested	Standard	Allowable allowable
R350LVS	Boom, Arm, Bucket	350(380)±10	380±10
	Travel	350±10	-
	Swing	300±10	-

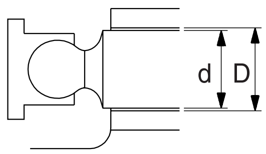
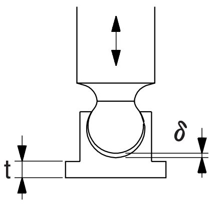
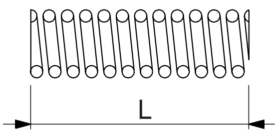
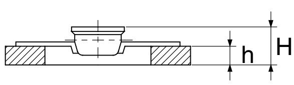
(　) : Power boost

GROUP 2 MAJOR COMPONENT

1. MAIN PUMP



290LC7MS08

Part name & inspection item		Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston(1) & cylinder bore(2) (D-d)		0.043	0.070	Replace piston or cylinder.
Play between piston(1) & shoe caulking section(3) (δ)		0-0.1	0.3	Replace assembly of piston & shoe.
Thickness of shoe (t)		5.4	5.0	
Free height of cylinder spring(4) (L)		47.9	47.1	Replace cylinder spring.
Combined height of set plate(5) & spherical bushing(6) (H-h)		23.8	22.8	Replace retainer or set plate.
Surface roughness for valve plate (sliding face) (7,8), swash plate (shoe plate area) (9), & cylinder(2) (sliding face)	Surface roughness necessary to be corrected	3z		Lapping
	Standard surface roughness (corrected value)	0.4z or lower		

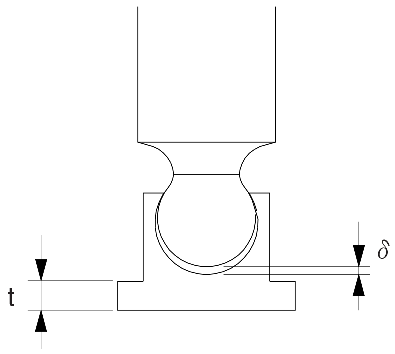
2. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

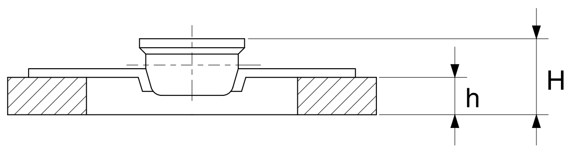
Part name	Inspection item	Criteria & measure
Casing	· Existence of scratches, rust or corrosion.	· In case of damage in following section, replace casing. - Sliding sections of casing hole and spool, especially land sections applied with held pressure. - Seal pocket section where spool is inserted. - Sealing section of port where O-ring contacts. - Sealing section of each relief valve for main and port. - Sealing section of plug. - Other damages that may damage normal function.
Spool	· Existence of scratch, gnawing, rusting or corrosion. · O-ring seal sections at both ends. · Insert spool into casing hole, rotate and reciprocate it.	· Replacement when its outside sliding section has scratch (especially on seals-contacting section). · Replacement when its sliding section has scratch. · Correction or replacement when O-ring is damaged or when spool does not move smoothly.
Poppet	· Damage of spring · Damage of poppet · Insert poppet into casing and function it.	· Replacement. · Correction or replacement when sealing is incomplete. · Normal when it can function lightly and smoothly without sticking.
Spring and related parts	· Rusting, corrosion, deformation or breakage of spring, spring seat, plug or cover.	· Replacement for significant damage.
Around seal for spool	· External oil leakage. · Rusting, corrosion or deformation of seal plate.	· Correction or replacement. · Correction or replacement.
Main relief valve, port relief valve & control relief valve	· External rusting or damage. · Contacting face of valve seat. · Contacting face of poppet. · O-rings and back up rings.	· Replacement. · Replacement when damaged. · Replacement when damaged. · Replacement in principle.

3. SWING DEVICE

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.028	0.058	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (δ)	0	0.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	5.5	5.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of retainer plate and spherical bushing (H-h)	6.5	6.0	Replace set of retainer plate and sperical bushing
Thickness of friction plate	4.0	3.6	Replace





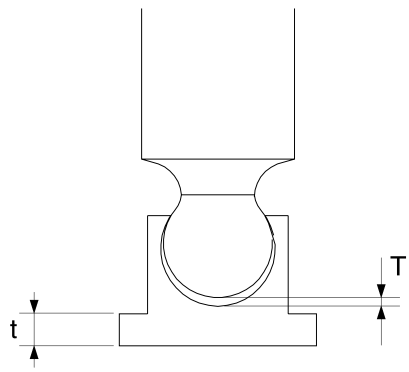
2) SLIDING PARTS

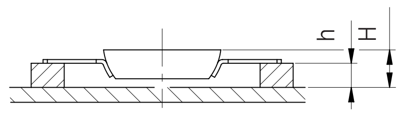
Part name	Standard roughness	Allowable roughness	Remark
Shoe	0.8-Z (Ra=0.2) (LAPPING)	3-Z (Ra=0.8)	
Shoe plate	0.4-Z (Ra=0.1) (LAPPING)	3-Z (Ra=0.8)	
Cylinder	1.6-Z (Ra=0.4) (LAPPING)	12.5-Z (Ra=3.2)	
Valve plate	0.8-Z (Ra=0.2) (LAPPING)	6.3-Z (Ra=1.6)	

4. TRAVEL MOTOR

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.028	0.058	Replace piston or cylinder block
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (T)	0	0.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	5.5	5.3	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of set plate and ball guide (H)	6.5	6.0	Replace set of set plate and ball guide
Thickness of friction plate	4.0	3.6	Replace

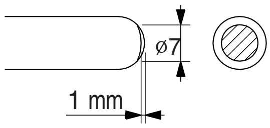




2) SLIDING PARTS

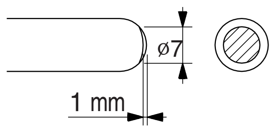
Part name	Standard roughness	Remark
Shoe	0.8S	-
Shoe plate	0.4S	-
Cylinder	1.6S	-
Valve plate	0.8S	-

5. RCV LEVER

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage becomes more than 1000 cc/m at neutral handle position, or more than 2000 cc/m during operation.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 40 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

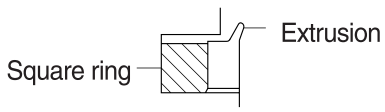
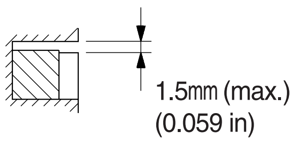
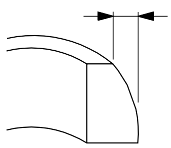
Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

6. RCV PEDAL

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage effect to the system. For example, the primary pressure drop.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 40 kgf/cm^2 Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	 This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

7. TURNING JOINT

Part name		Maintenance standards	Remedy
Body, Stem	Sliding surface with sealing sections.	Plating worn or peeled due to seizure or contamination.	Replace
	Sliding surface between body and stem other than sealing section.	· Worn abnormality or damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth due to seizure contamination.	Replace
		· Damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth.	Smooth with oilstone.
	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
		· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		· Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Smooth
Cover	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
		· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		· Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Replace
Seal set	-	· Extruded excessively from seal groove square ring. 	Replace
	-	· Slipper ring 1.5 mm (0.059 in) narrower than seal groove, or narrower than back ring. 	Replace
	-	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) ~ 1.5 mm (MAX.) (0.059 in) 	Replace

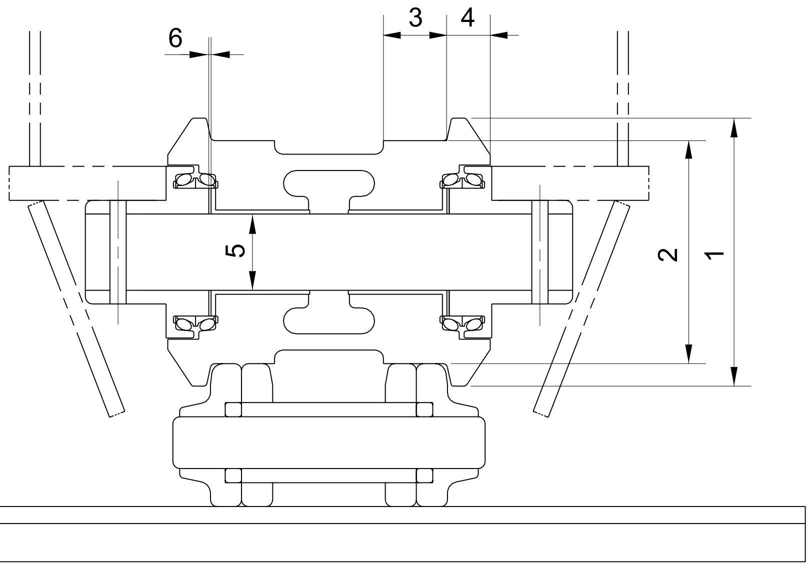
8. CYLINDER

Part name	Inspecting section	Inspection item	Remedy
Piston rod	· Neck of rod pin	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on rod hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Stepped part to which piston is attached.	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Threads	· Presence of crack	· Recondition or replace
	· Plated surface	· Plating is not worn off to base metal.	· Replace or replate
		· Rust is not present on plating.	· Replace or replate
		· Scratches are not present.	· Recondition, replate or replace
	· Rod	· Wear of O.D.	· Recondition, replate or replace
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear of I.D.	· Replace
Cylinder tube	· Weld on bottom	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on head	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Tube interior	· Presence of faults	· Replace if oil leak is seen
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear on inner surface	· Replace
Gland	· Bushing	· Flaw on inner surface	· Replace if flaw is deeper than coating

GROUP 3 TRACK AND WORK EQUIPMENT

1. TRACK

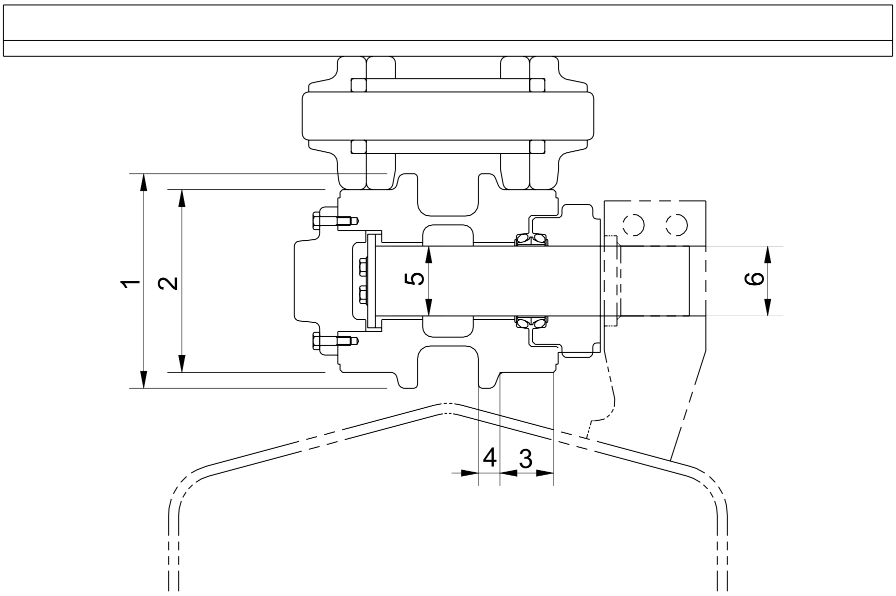
1) TRACK ROLLER



Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="4">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">Outside diameter of flange</td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="4">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">ø 216</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Outside diameter of tread</td><td colspan="2">ø 180</td><td colspan="2">ø 168</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Width of tread</td><td colspan="2">50</td><td colspan="2">56</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Width of flange</td><td colspan="2">57</td><td colspan="2">-</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td rowspan="3">Clearance between shaft and bushing</td><td colspan="2">Standard size & tolerance</td><td rowspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td rowspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace bushing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shaft</td><td>Hole</td></tr>
<tr><td>$ø 75 ^{0}_{-0.055}$</td><td>$ø 75.35 ^{+0.05}_{0}$</td><td>0.35 to 0.455</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">6</td><td rowspan="2">Side clearance of roller (both side)</td><td colspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td colspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="2">Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0.16~1.24</td><td colspan="2">2.0</td></tr>
</table>

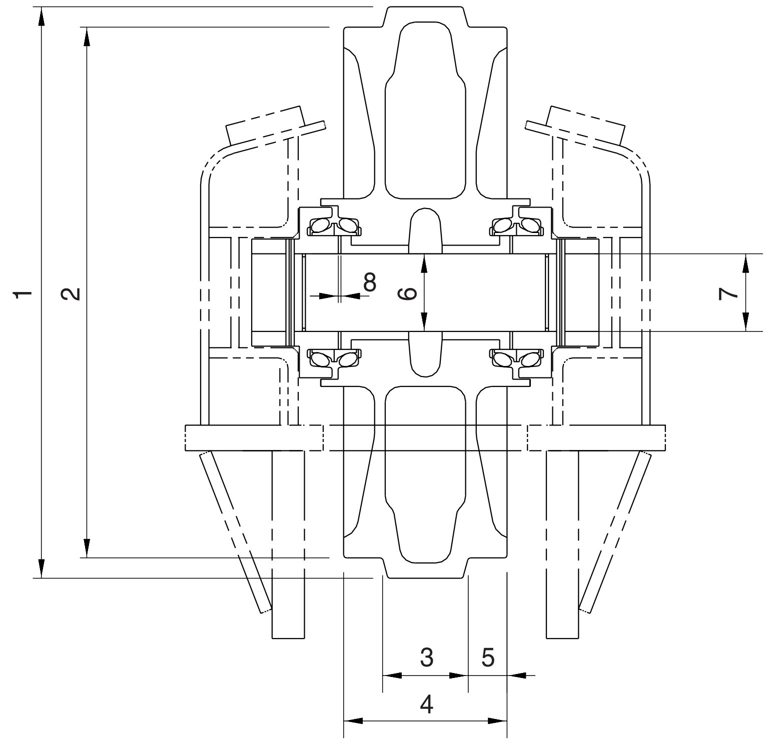
2) CARRIER ROLLER



Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="4">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">Outside diameter of flange</td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="5">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">ø 200</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Outside diameter of tread</td><td colspan="2">ø 168</td><td colspan="2">ø 158</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Width of tread</td><td colspan="2">54</td><td colspan="2">59</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Width of flange</td><td colspan="2">19</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td rowspan="3">Clearance between shaft and bushing</td><td colspan="2">Standard size & tolerance</td><td rowspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td rowspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace bushing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shaft</td><td>Hole</td></tr>
<tr><td>ø 55 $^{+0.085}_{+0.066}$</td><td>ø 55 $^{+0.37}_{+0.33}$</td><td>0.245 to 0.304</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>Clearance between shaft and support</td><td>ø 58 $^{0}_{-0.1}$</td><td>ø 58 $^{+0.5}_{+0.3}$</td><td>0.3 to 0.6</td><td>1.2</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
</table>

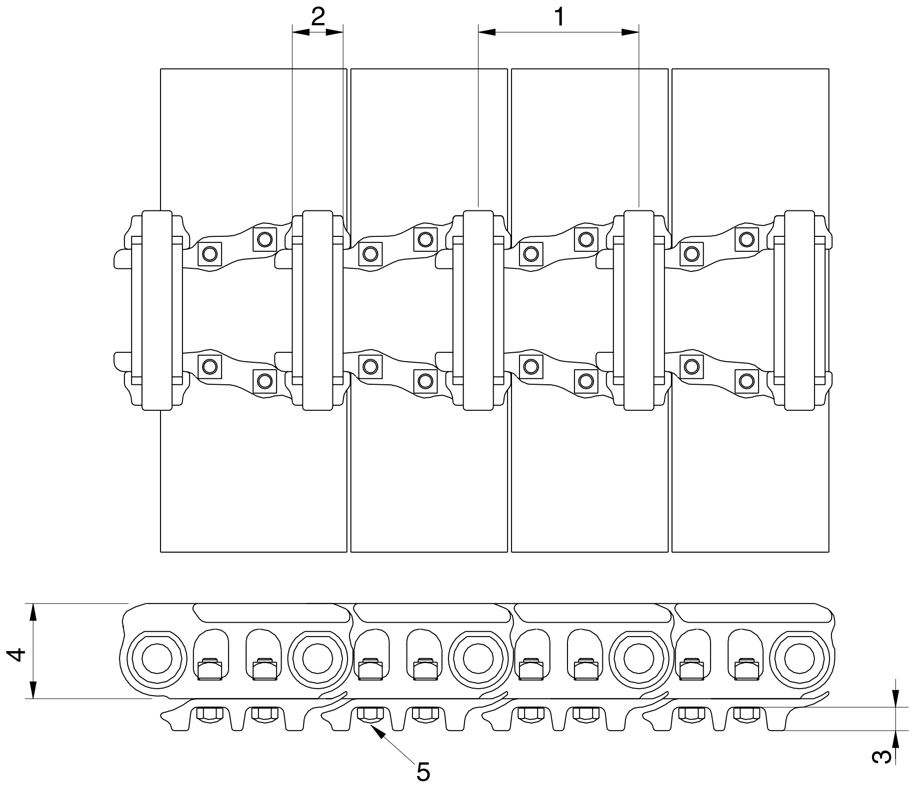
3) IDLER



Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="4">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td rowspan="2">Outside diameter of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="6">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">ø 646</td><td colspan="2">ø 636</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Outside diameter of tread</td><td colspan="2">ø 594</td><td colspan="2">ø 588</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Width of protrusion</td><td colspan="2">102</td><td colspan="2">92</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Total width</td><td colspan="2">203</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Width of tread</td><td colspan="2">50.5</td><td colspan="2">55.5</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td rowspan="3">Clearance between shaft and bushing</td><td colspan="2">Standard size & tolerance</td><td rowspan="2">Standard clearance</td><td rowspan="2">Clearance limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace bushing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shaft</td><td>Hole</td></tr>
<tr><td>ø 90 $^{0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>ø 90.35 $^{+0.05}_{0}$</td><td>0.35 to 0.435</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Clearance between shaft and support</td><td>ø 90 $^{0}_{-0.035}$</td><td>ø 90 $^{+0.09}_{+0.036}$</td><td>0.036 to 0.125</td><td>1.2</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>Side clearance of idler (both side)</td><td colspan="2">Standard clearance
0.4 to 1.2</td><td colspan="2">Clearance limit
2.0</td><td>Replace</td></tr>
</table>

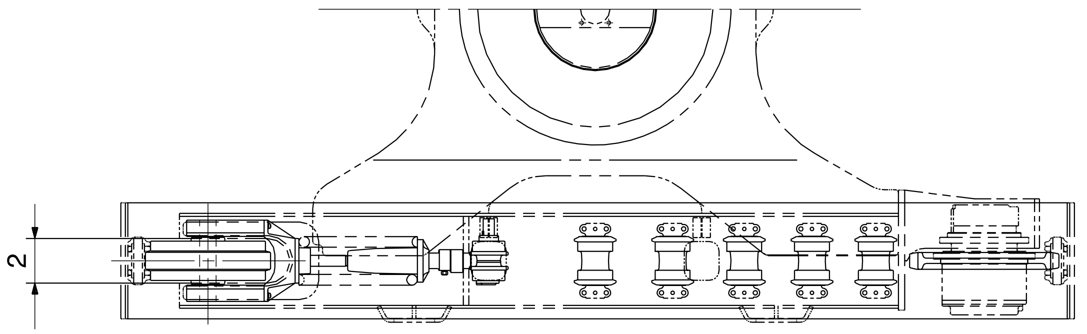
4) TRACK

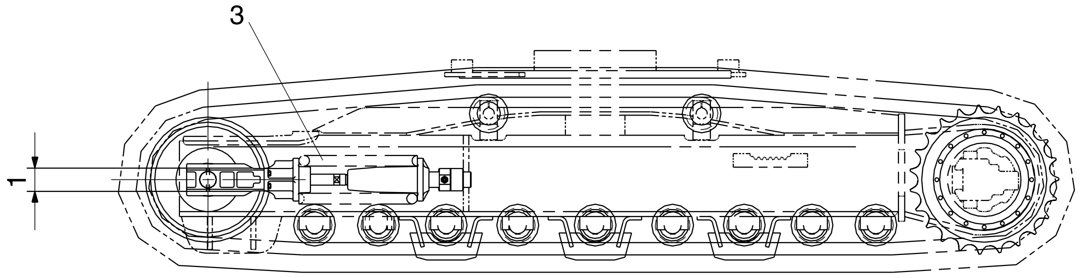


Unit : mm

No.	Check item	Criteria		Remedy
1	Link pitch	Standard size	Repair limit	Turn or replace
		216	223	
2	Outside diameter of bushing	ø 66.5	ø 58.5	Rebuild or replace
3	Height of grouser	30	21	
4	Height of link	116	104	
5	Tightening torque	Initial tightening torque : 115 ± 5 kgf · m		Retighten

5) TRACK FRAME AND RECOIL SPRING

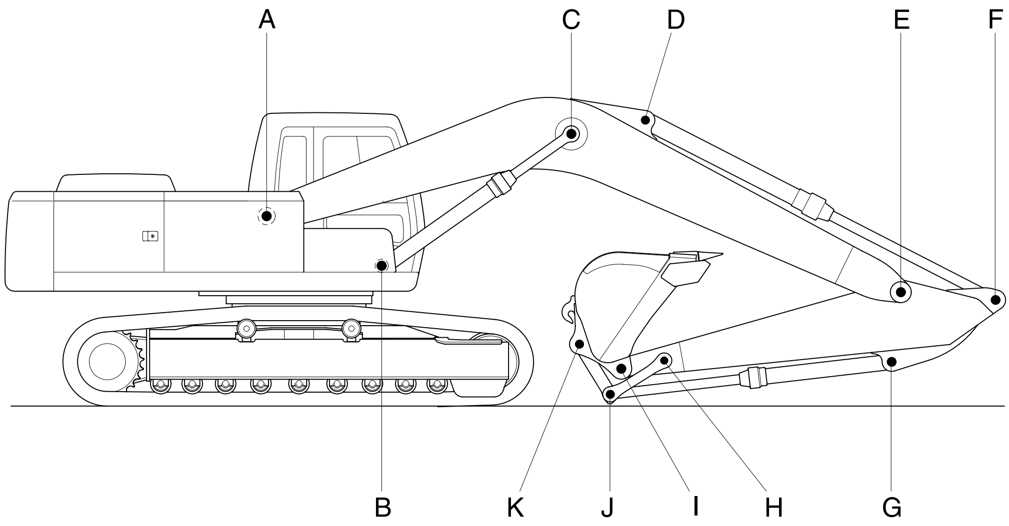




Unit : ㎜

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Check item</th><th colspan="5">Criteria</th><th>Remedy</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1</td><td rowspan="3">Vertical width of idler guide</td><td></td><td>Standard size</td><td>Tolerance</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="5">Rebuild or replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Track frame</td><td>132</td><td>+2
0</td><td colspan="2">138</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td>130</td><td>0
- 1.5</td><td colspan="2">124</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td rowspan="2">Horizontal width of idler guide</td><td>Track frame</td><td>292</td><td>+2
0</td><td colspan="2">298</td></tr>
<tr><td>Idler support</td><td>290</td><td>-</td><td colspan="2">286</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td rowspan="3">Recoil spring</td><td colspan="3">Standard size</td><td colspan="2">Repair limit</td><td rowspan="3">Replace</td></tr>
<tr><td>Free length</td><td>Installation length</td><td>Installation load</td><td>Free length</td><td>Installation load</td></tr>
<tr><td>ø 253×710</td><td>580</td><td>19012 kg</td><td>-</td><td>15210 kg</td></tr>
</table>

2. WORK EQUIPMENT



Unit : ㎜

Mark	Measuring point (Pin and Bushing)	Normal value	Pin		Bushing		Remedy & Remark
			Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	
A	Boom Rear	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	Replace
B	Boom Cylinder Head	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
C	Boom Cylinder Rod	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
D	Arm Cylinder Head	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
E	Boom Front	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
F	Arm Cylinder Rod	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
G	Bucket Cylinder Head	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	
H	Arm Link	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	
I	Bucket and Arm Link	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	
J	Bucket Cylinder Rod	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	
K	Bucket Link	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

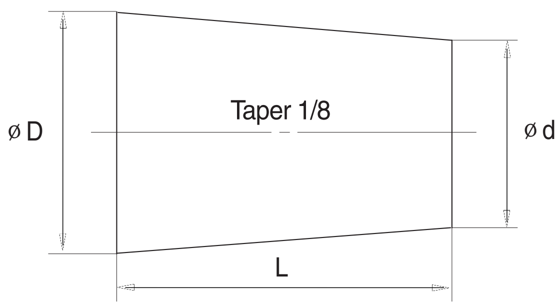
SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

GROUP 1 PRECAUTIONS

1. REMOVAL WORK

1) Lower the work equipment completely to the ground.
   If the coolant contains antifreeze, dispose of it correctly.
2) After disconnecting hoses or tubes, cover them or fit blind plugs to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
3) When draining oil, prepare a container of adequate size to catch the oil.
4) Confirm the match marks showing the installation position, and make match marks in the necessary places before removal to prevent any mistake when assembling.
5) To prevent any excessive force from being applied to the wiring, always hold the connectors when disconnecting the connectors.
6) Fit wires and hoses with tags to show their installation position to prevent any mistake when installing.
7) Check the number and thickness of the shims, and keep in a safe place.
8) When raising components, be sure to use lifting equipment of ample strength.
9) When using forcing screws to remove any components, tighten the forcing screws alternately.
10) Before removing any unit, clean the surrounding area and fit a cover to prevent any dust or dirt from entering after removal.
11) When removing hydraulic equipment, first release the remaining pressure inside the hydraulic tank and the hydraulic piping.
12) If the part is not under hydraulic pressure, the following corks can be used.

Nominal number	Dimensions		
	D	d	L
06	6	5	8
08	8	6.5	11
10	10	8.5	12
12	12	10	15
14	14	11.5	18
16	16	13.5	20
18	18	15	22
20	20	17	25
22	22	18.5	28
24	24	20	30
27	27	22.5	34



2. INSTALL WORK

1) Tighten all bolts and nuts (sleeve nuts) to the specified torque.

2) Install the hoses without twisting or interference.

3) Replace all gaskets, O-rings, cotter pins, and lock plates with new parts.

4) Bend the cotter pin or lock plate securely.

5) When coating with adhesive, clean the part and remove all oil and grease, then coat the threaded portion with 2-3 drops of adhesive.

6) When coating with gasket sealant, clean the surface and remove all oil and grease, check that there is no dirt or damage, then coat uniformly with gasket sealant.

7) Clean all parts, and correct any damage, dents, burrs, or rust.

8) Coat rotating parts and sliding parts with engine oil.

9) When press fitting parts, coat the surface with antifriction compound (LM-P).

10) After installing snap rings, check that the snap ring is fitted securely in the ring groove (check that the snap ring moves in the direction of rotation).

11) When connecting wiring connectors, clean the connector to remove all oil, dirt, or water, then connect securely.

12) When using eyebolts, check that there is no deformation or deterioration, and screw them in fully.

13) When tightening split flanges, tighten uniformly in turn to prevent excessive tightening on one side.

14) When operating the hydraulic cylinders for the first time after repairing and reassembling the hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or other hydraulic equipment or piping, always bleed the air from the hydraulic cylinders as follows:

   (1) Start the engine and run at low idling.

   (2) Operate the control lever and actuate the hydraulic cylinder 4-5 times, stopping 100mm before the end of the stroke.

   (3) Next, operate the piston rod to the end of its stroke to relieve the circuit. (The air bleed valve is actuated to bleed the air.)

   (4) After completing this operation, raise the engine speed to the normal operating condition.

   ※ If the hydraulic cylinder has been replaced, carry out this procedure before assembling the rod to
   ※ the work equipment.
   Carry out the same operation on machines that have been in storage for a long time after completion of repairs.

3. COMPLETING WORK

1) If the coolant has been drained, tighten the drain valve, and add water to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the water through the system. Then check the water level again.

2) If the hydraulic equipment has been removed and installed again, add engine oil to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the oil through the system. Then check the oil level again.

3) If the piping or hydraulic equipment, such as hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or motors, have been removed for repair, always bleed the air from the system after reassembling the parts.

4) Add the specified amount of grease (molybdenum disulphied grease) to the work equipment related parts.

GROUP 2 TIGHTENING TORQUE

1. MAJOR COMPONENTS

No.	Descriptions		Bolt size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	Engine	Engine mounting bolt, nut	M24 × 3.0	90 ± 7.0	651 ± 51
2		Radiator mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5
3		Coupling mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ± 2.5	336 ± 18.1
4		Main pump housing mounting bolt	M10 × 1.5	5.3 ± 0.5	38.3 ± 3.6
5	Hydraulic system	Main pump mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	42 ± 4.5	304 ± 32.5
6		Main control valve mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12.2 ± 1.3	88.9 ± 9.4
7		Fuel tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	46 ± 5.1	333 ± 36.9
8		Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	46 ± 5.1	333 ± 36.9
9		Turning joint mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3 ± 1.3	88.9 ± 9.4
10	Power train system	Swing motor mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	58.4 ± 6.4	422 ± 46.2
11		Swing bearing upper part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	97.8 ± 10	707 ± 72.3
12		Swing bearing lower part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	97.8 ± 10	707 ± 72.3
13		Travel motor mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	84 ± 8.0	607 ± 58
14		Sprocket mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57 ± 6.0	412 ± 43.4
15	Under carriage	Carrier roller mounting bolt, nut	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.4	215 ± 31.8
16		Track roller mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.6	419 ± 62.2
17		Track tension cylinder mounting bolt	M12 × 1.25	15 ± 5.0	108 ± 3.6
18		Track shoe mounting bolt, nut	M22 × 1.5	115 ± 5.0	831 ± 36
19		Track guard mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	46 ± 5.0	333 ± 36
20	Others	Counterweight mounting bolt	M36 × 3.0	308 ± 46	2228 ± 333
21		Cab mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7
22		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3 ± 5.8

2. TORQUE CHART

Use following table for unspecified torque.

1) BOLT AND NUT

(1) Coarse thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf · m	lbf·ft	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M 6×1.0	0.85 ~ 1.25	6.15 ~ 9.04	1.14 ~ 1.74	8.2 ~ 12.6
M 8×1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.7	2.7 ~ 4.1	19.5 ~ 29.7
M10×1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	28.9 ~ 43.4	5.5 ~ 8.3	39.8 ~ 60.0
M12×1.75	7.4 ~ 11.2	53.5 ~ 81.0	9.8 ~ 15.8	70.9 ~ 114
M14×2.0	12.2 ~ 16.6	88.2 ~ 120	16.7 ~ 22.5	121 ~ 163
M16×2.0	18.6 ~ 25.2	135 ~ 182	25.2 ~ 34.2	182 ~ 247
M18×2.0	25.8 ~ 35.0	187 ~ 253	35.1 ~ 47.5	254 ~ 344
M20×2.5	36.2 ~ 49.0	262 ~ 354	49.2 ~ 66.6	356 ~ 482
M22×2.5	48.3 ~ 63.3	349 ~ 458	65.8 ~ 98.0	476 ~ 709
M24×3.0	62.5 ~ 84.5	452 ~ 611	85.0 ~ 115	615 ~ 832
M30×3.0	124 ~ 168	898 ~ 1214	169 ~ 229	1223 ~ 1656
M36×4.0	174 ~ 236	1261 ~ 1704	250 ~ 310	1808 ~ 2242

(2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8T		10T	
	kgf·m	lbf·ft	kgf·m	lbf·ft
M 8×1.0	2.2 ~ 3.4	15.9 ~ 24.6	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8
M10×1.2	4.5 ~ 6.7	32.5 ~ 48.5	5.9 ~ 8.9	42.7 ~ 64.4
M12×1.25	7.8 ~ 11.6	56.4 ~ 83.9	10.6 ~ 16.0	76.7 ~ 116
M14×1.5	13.3 ~ 18.1	96.2 ~ 131	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174
M16×1.5	19.9 ~ 26.9	144 ~ 195	26.6 ~ 36.0	192 ~ 260
M18×1.5	28.6 ~ 43.6	207 ~ 315	38.4 ~ 52.0	278 ~ 376
M20×1.5	40.0 ~ 54.0	289 ~ 391	53.4 ~ 72.2	386 ~ 522
M22×1.5	52.7 ~ 71.3	381 ~ 516	70.7 ~ 95.7	511 ~ 692
M24×2.0	67.9 ~ 91.9	491 ~ 665	90.9 ~ 123	658 ~ 890
M30×2.0	137 ~ 185	990 ~ 1339	182 ~ 248	1314 ~ 1796
M36×3.0	192 ~ 260	1390 ~ 1880	262 ~ 354	1894 ~ 2562

2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130
1"	41	21	152
1-1/4"	50	35	253

3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS TYPE)

Thread size(UNF)	Width across flat(mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130
1-7/16-12	41	21	152
1-11/16-12	50	35	253

4) FITTING

Thread size	Width across flat(mm)	kgf·m	lbf·ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130
1"	41	21	152
1-1/4"	50	35	253

GROUP 3 PUMP DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

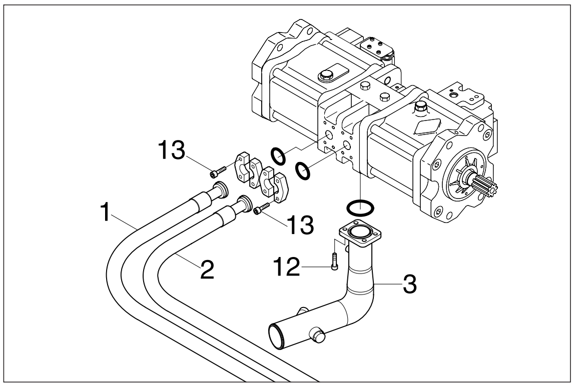
(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

(4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensors and so on.

(5) Loosen the drain plug under the hydraulic tank and drain the oil from the hydraulic tank.

· Hydraulic tank quantity : 190 l

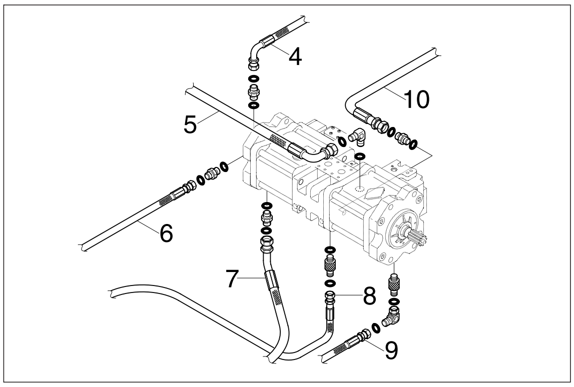


(6) Remove bolts (13) and disconnect pipe (1,2).

(7) Disconnect pilot line hoses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10).

(8) Remove bolts(12) and disconnect pump suction tube (3).

※ **When pump suction tube is disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.**



(9) Sling the pump assembly and remove the pump mounting bolts.

· Weight : 200 kg (440 lb)

※ **Pull out the pump assembly from housing. When removing the pump assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.**

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal

(2) Remove the suction strainer and clean it.

(3) Replace the return filter with a new one.

(4) Remove breather and clean it.

(5) After adding oil to the hydraulic tank to the specified level.

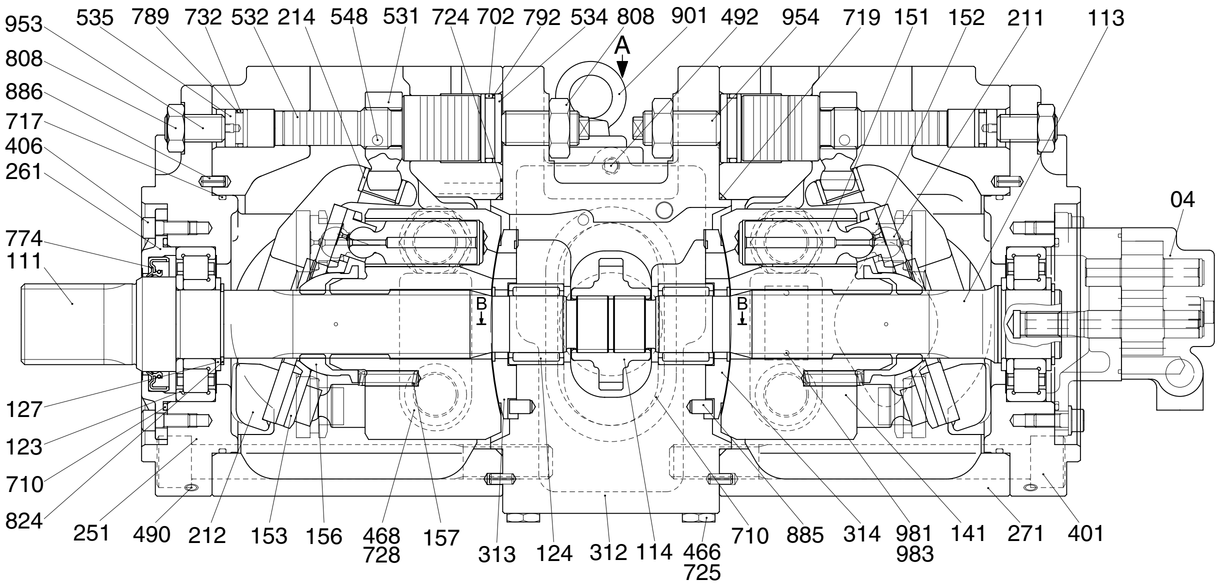
(6) Bleed the air from the hydraulic pump.
① Remove the air vent plug (2EA)
② Tighten plug lightly
③ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
④ Tighten plug.

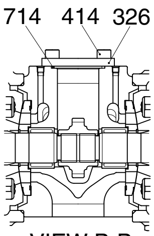
(7) Start the engine, run at low idling (3~5 minutes) to circulate the oil through the system.

(8) Confirmed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leaks or not.

2. MAIN PUMP (1/2)

1) STRUCTURE

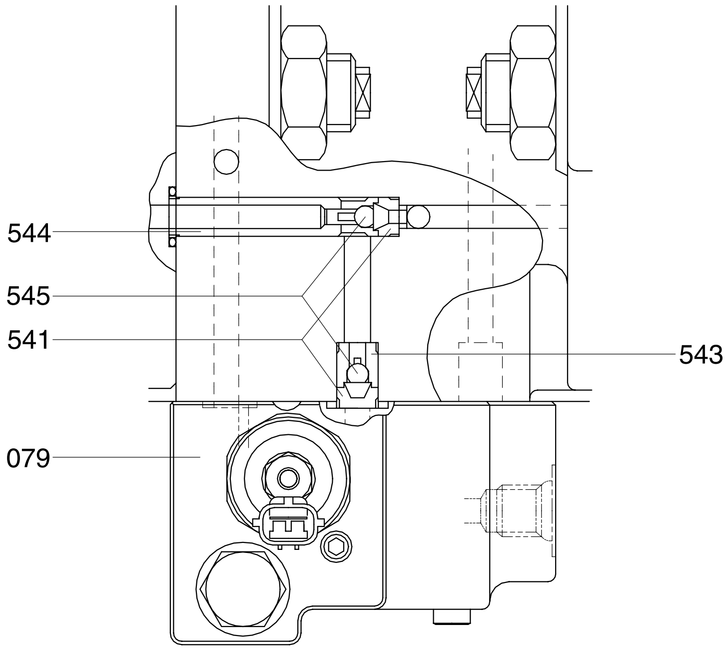




VIEW B-B

04	Gear pump	312	Valve block	717	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	313	Valve plate (R)	719	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	314	Valve plate (L)	724	O-ring
114	Gear	326	Cover	725	O-ring
123	Roller bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	406	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	414	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
141	Cylinder block	466	VP plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	VP plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	VP plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Pin	954	Set screw
251	Swash plate support	702	O-ring	981	Name plate
261	Seal cover (F)	710	O-ring	983	Pin
271	Pump casing	714	O-ring		

MAIN PUMP (2/2)



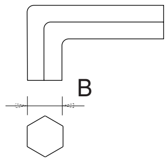
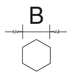
VIEW A

079	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Tool name & size</th><th colspan="12">Part name</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Allen wrench
</td><td>B</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head bolt</td><td colspan="3">PT plug (PT thread)</td><td colspan="3">PO plug (PF thread)</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head setscrew</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">M 5</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/16</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">M 6</td><td colspan="3">BP1/ 8</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M10</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/ 4</td><td colspan="3">PO-1/4</td><td colspan="3">M12, M14</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="3">M10</td><td colspan="3">BP-3/ 8</td><td colspan="3">PO-3/8</td><td colspan="3">M16, M18</td></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td colspan="3">M20, M22</td><td colspan="3">BP-1</td><td colspan="3">PO-1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2</td><td colspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Double ring spanner, socket wrench, double (single) open end spanner
</td><td>-</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon head bolt</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon head bolt</td><td colspan="4">VP plug (PF thread)</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td colspan="4">M12</td><td colspan="4">M12</td><td colspan="4">VP-1/4</td></tr>
<tr><td>24</td><td colspan="4">M16</td><td colspan="4">M16</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>27</td><td colspan="4">M18</td><td colspan="4">M18</td><td colspan="4">VP-1/2</td></tr>
<tr><td>30</td><td colspan="4">M20</td><td colspan="4">M20</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>36</td><td colspan="4">-</td><td colspan="4">-</td><td colspan="4">VP-3/4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Adjustable angle wrench</td><td colspan="12">Medium size, 1 set</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Screw driver</td><td colspan="12">Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Hammer</td><td colspan="12">Plastic hammer, 1 set</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Pliers</td><td colspan="12">For snap ring, TSR-160</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Steel bar</td><td colspan="12">Steel bar of key material approx. 10×8×200</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Torque wrench</td><td colspan="12">Capable of tightening with the specified torques</td></tr>
</table>

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12
	M16	24.0	173.6	0.55	14
	M18	34.0	245.9	0.55	14
	M20	44.0	318.3	0.67	17
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6
	PT 3/ 8	3.5	25.3	0.31	8
	PT 1/ 2	5.0	36.2	0.39	10
PF plug (material : S45C)	PF 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	PF 1/ 2	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	PF 3/ 4	15.0	108.5	0.55	14
	PF 1	19.0	137.4	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/4	27.0	195.3	0.67	17
	PF 1 1/2	28.0	202.5	0.67	17

3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Select place suitable to disassembling.

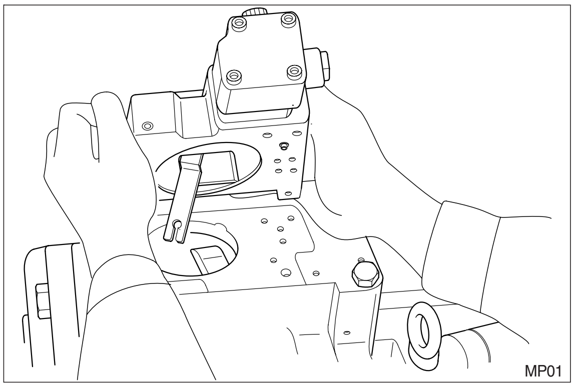
※ Select clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth or so on, on overhaul workbench top to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc, from pump surfaces with cleaning oil or so on.

(3) Remove drain port plug (468) and let oil out of pump casing. (front and rear pump).

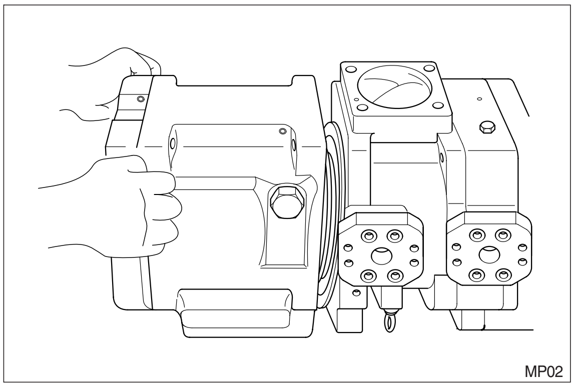
(4) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413) and remove regulator.
Remove hexagon socket head bolts (416) and remove gear pump.


MP01

(5) Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (401) fixing swash plate support (251), pump casing (271) and valve block (312).

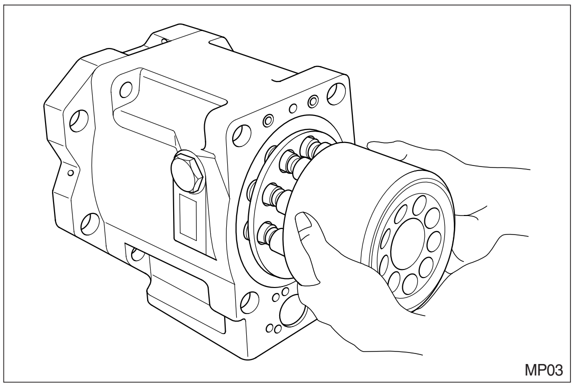
(6) Place pump horizontally on workbench with its regulator-fitting surface down, and separate pump casing (271) from valve block (312).

※ Before bringing this surface down, spread rubber sheet on workbench without failing to prevent this surface from being damaged.


MP02

(7) Pull cylinder (141) out of pump casing (271) straightly over drive shaft (111). Pull out also pistons (151), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder springs (157) simultaneously.

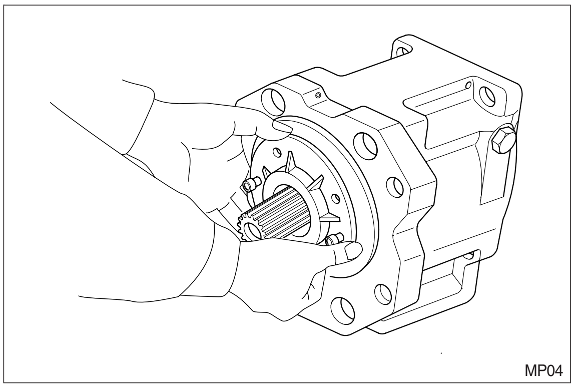
※ Take care not to damage sliding surfaces of cylinder, spherical bushing, shoes, swash plate, etc.



MP03

(8) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (406) and then seal cover (F) (261).
Fit bolt into pulling out tapped hole of seal cover (F), and cover can be removed easily.

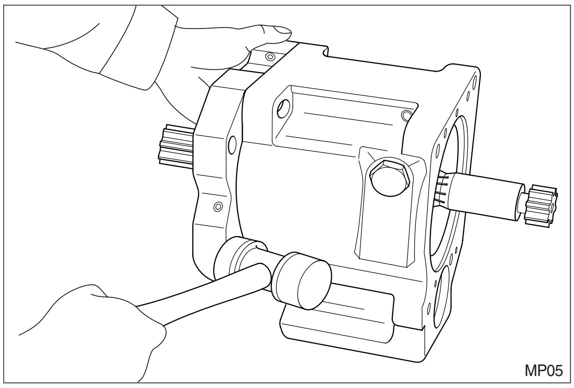
※ Since oil seal is fitted on seal cover (F), take care not to damage it when removing cover.



MP04

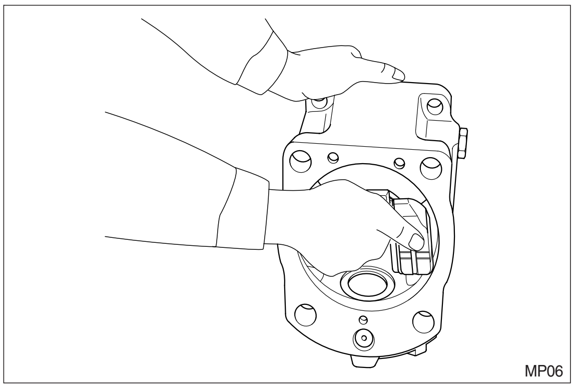
(9) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (408) and then seal cover (R, 262).
In case of fitting a gear pump, first, remove gear pump.

(10) Tapping lightly fitting flange section of swash plate support (251) on its pump casing side, separate swash plate support from pump casing.



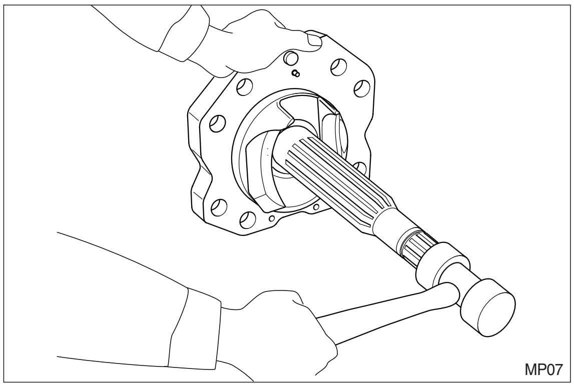
MP05

(11) Remove shoe plate (211)and swash plate (212) from pump casing (271).



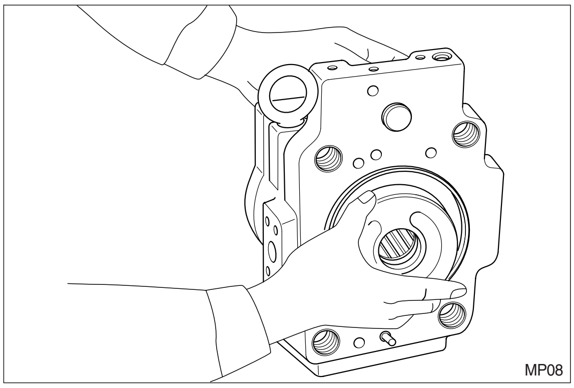
MP06

(12) Tapping lightly shaft's end of drive shafts (111, 113) with plastic hammer, take out drive shafts from swash plate supports.



(13) Remove valve plates (313, 314) from valve block (312).

※ These may be removed in work 6.



(14) If necessary, remove stopper (L, 534), stopper (S, 535), servo piston (532) and tilting pin(531) from pump casing (271), and needle bearing (124) and gear (116) from valve block (312).

※ In removing tilting pin, use a protector to prevent pin head from being damaged.

※ Since loctite is applied to fitting areas of tilting pin and servo piston, take care not to damage servo piston.

※ Do not remove needle bearing as far as possible, except when it is considered to be out of its life span.

※ Do not loosen hexagon nuts of valve block and swash plate support.
Once loosened, flow setting will be changed.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For reassembling reverse the disassembling procedures, paying attention to the following items.

① Do not fail to repair the parts damaged during disassembling, and prepare replacement parts in advance.

② Clean each part fully with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.

③ Do not fail to apply clean working oil to sliding sections, bearings, etc. before assembling them.

④ In principle, replace seal parts, such as O-rings, oil seals, etc.

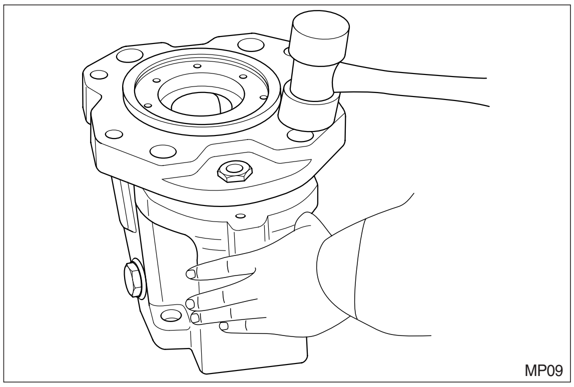
⑤ For fitting bolts, plug, etc., prepare a torque wrench or so on, and tighten them with torques shown in Section 2-3.

⑥ For the double-pump, take care not to mix up parts of the front pump with those of the rear pump.

(2) Fit swash plate support (251) to pump casing (271), tapping the former lightly with a hammer.

※ After servo piston, tilting pin, stopper (L) and stopper (S) are removed, fit them soon to pump casing in advance for reassembling.

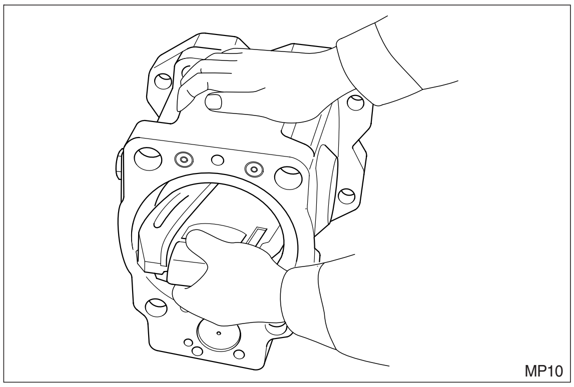
※ In tightening servo piston and tilting pin, use a protector to prevent tilting pin head and feedback pin from being damaged. In addition, apply lock-tight (medium strength) to their threaded sections.



(3) Place pump casing with its regulator fitting surface down, fit tilting bush of swash plate to tilting pin (531), and fit swash plate (212) to swash plate support (251) correctly.

※ Confirm with fingers of both hands that swash plate can be removed smoothly.

※ Apply grease to sliding sections of swash plate and swash plate support, and drive shaft can be fitted easily.



MP10

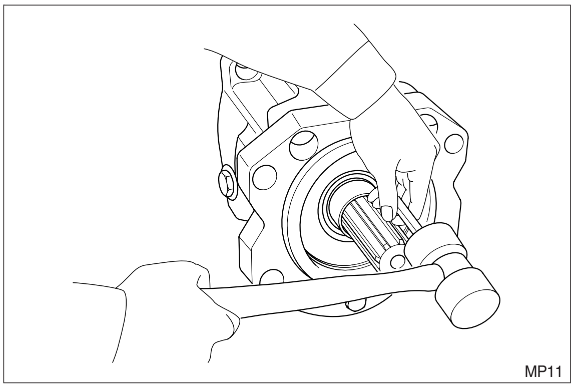
(4) To swash plate support (251), fit drive shaft (111) set with bearing (123), bearing spacer (127) and snap ring (824).

※ Do not tap drive shaft with hammer or so on.

※ Assemble them into support, tapping outer race of bearing lightly with plastic

※ hammer.

Fit them fully, using steel bar or so on.



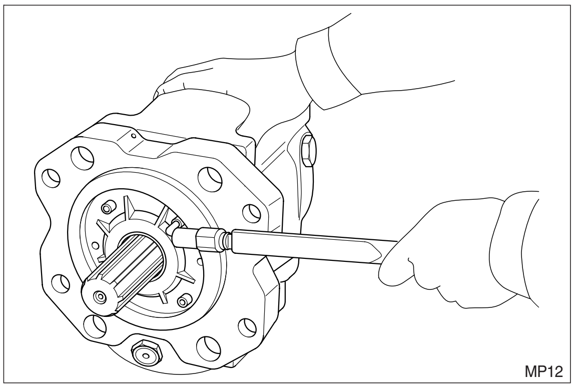
MP11

(5) Assemble seal cover (F, 261) to pump casing (271) and fix it with hexagon socket head bolts (406).

※ Apply grease lightly to oil seal in seal cover (F).

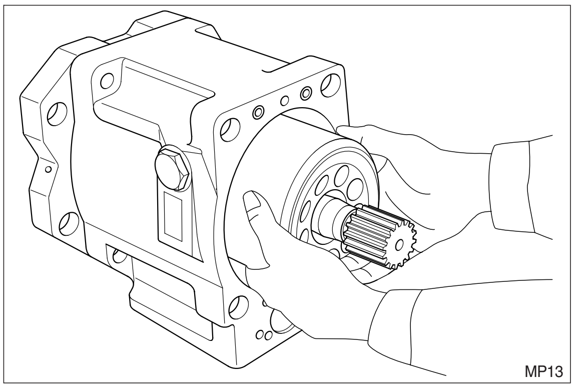
※ Assemble oil seal, taking full care not to damage it.

※ For tandem type pump, fit rear cover (263) and seal cover (262).



MP12

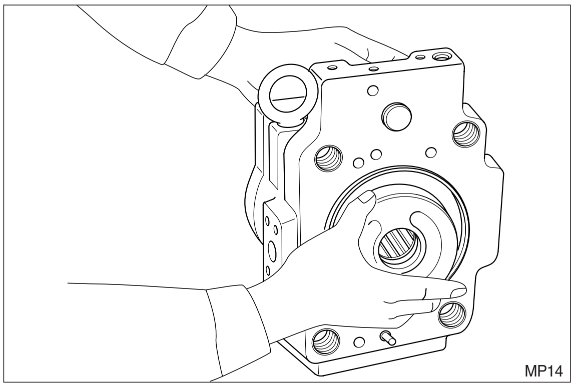
(6) Assemble piston cylinder subassembly 〔Cylinder (141), piston subassembly (151, 152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder spring (157).〕
Fit spline phases of retainer and cylinder.
Then, insert piston cylinder subassembly into pump casing.



MP13

(7) Fit valve plate (313) to valve block (312), entering pin into pin hole.

※ Take care not to mistake suction / delivery directions of valve plate.

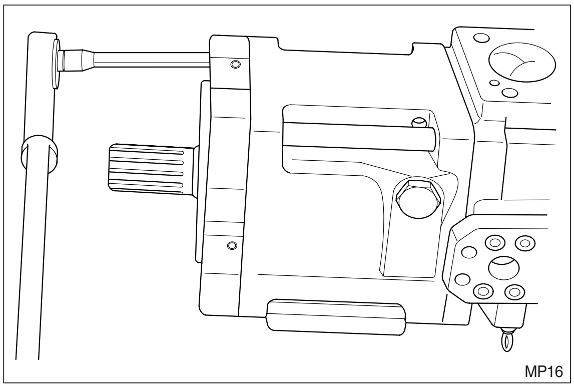


MP14

(8) Fit valve block (312) to pump casing (271) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (401).

※ At first assemble this at rear pump side, and this work will be easy.

※ Take care not to mistake direction of valve block.



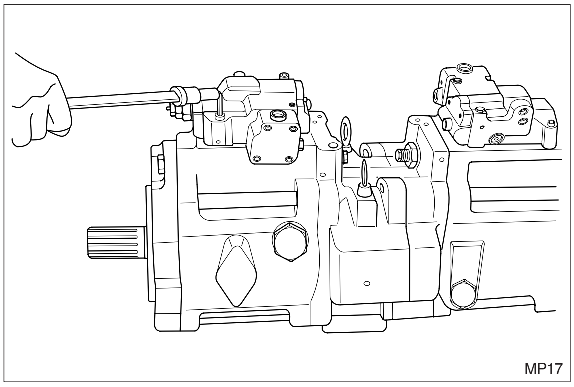
MP16

※ Clockwise rotation (viewed from input shaft side)

※ Fit block with regulator up and with delivery flange left, viewed from front side.

(9) Putting feedback pin of tilting pin into feedback lever of regulator, fit regulator and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413).

※ Take care not to mistake regulator of front pump for that of rear pump.



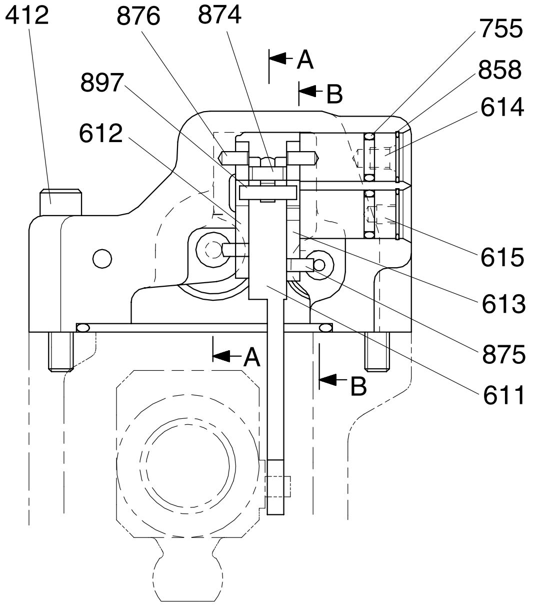
MP17

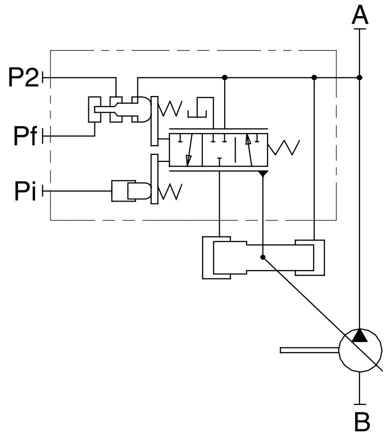
(10) Fit drain port plug (468).

This is the end of reassembling procedures.

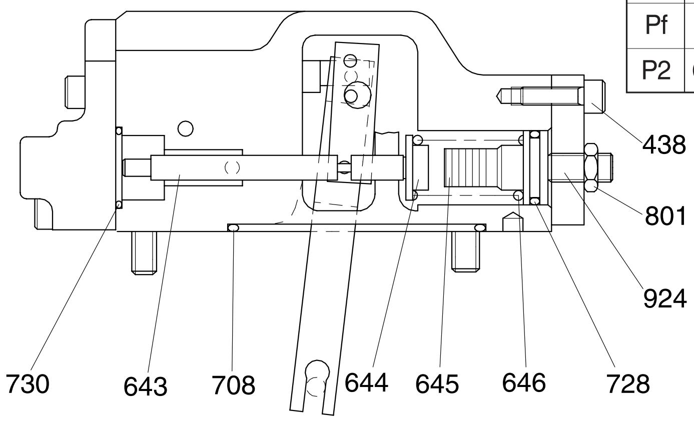
3. REGULATOR

1) STRUCTURE(1/2)

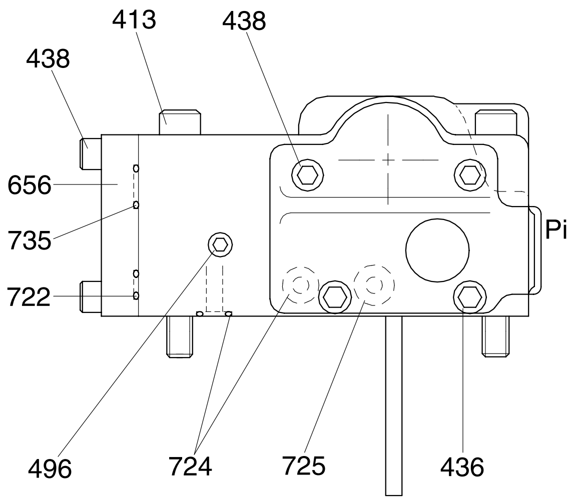




Port	Port name	Port size
A	Delivery port	1"
B	Suction port	3"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-

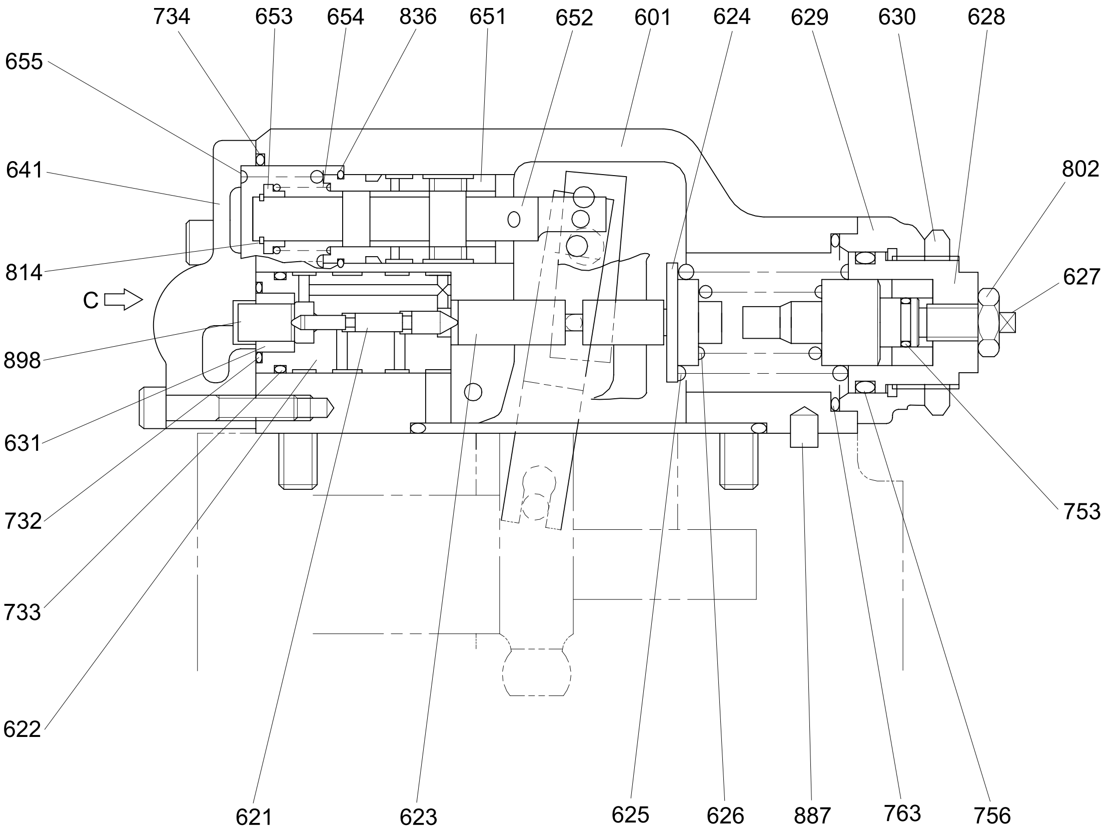


SECTION B-B



VIEW C

REGULATOR (2/2)



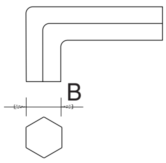
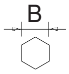
SECTION A-A

412	Hexagon socket screw	630	Lock nut	733	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket screw	631	Sleeve, pf	734	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket screw	641	Pilot cover	735	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket screw	643	Pilot piston	753	O-ring
496	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	755	O-ring
601	Casing	645	Adjust stem (Q)	756	O-ring
611	Feed back lever	646	Pilot spring	763	O-ring
612	Lever (1)	651	Sleeve	801	Nut
613	Lever (2)	652	Spool	802	Nut
614	Fulcrum plug	653	Spring seat	814	Snap ring
615	Adjust plug	654	Return spring	836	Snap ring
621	Compensator piston	655	Set spring	858	Snap ring
622	Piston case	656	Block cover	874	Pin
623	Compensator rod	708	O-ring	875	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	722	O-ring	876	Pin
625	Outer spring	724	O-ring	887	Pin
626	Inner spring	725	O-ring	897	Pin
627	Adjust stem (C)	728	O-ring	898	Pin
628	Adjust screw (C)	730	O-ring	924	Set screw
629	Cover (C)	732	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Tool name & size</th><th colspan="12">Part name</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Allen wrench
</td><td>B</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head bolt</td><td colspan="3">PT plug (PT thread)</td><td colspan="3">PO plug (PF thread)</td><td colspan="3">Hexagon socket head setscrew</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">M 5</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/16</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">M 6</td><td colspan="3">BP1/ 8</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td colspan="3">M10</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">M 8</td><td colspan="3">BP-1/ 4</td><td colspan="3">PO-1/4</td><td colspan="3">M12, M14</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Socket wrench,
double (single) open end
</td><td>-</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon head bolt</td><td colspan="4">Hexagon nut</td><td colspan="4">VP plug (PF thread)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="4">M 8</td><td colspan="4">M 8</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Adjustable angle wrench</td><td colspan="12">Small size, Max 36 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Screw driver</td><td colspan="12">Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Hammer</td><td colspan="12">Plastic hammer, 1 set</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Pliers</td><td colspan="12">For snap ring, TSR-160</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Steel bar</td><td colspan="12">Steel bar of key material approx. 10×8×200</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Torque wrench</td><td colspan="12">Capable of tightening with the specified torques.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Pincers</td><td colspan="12">-</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Bolt</td><td colspan="12">M4, Length : 50 mm</td></tr>
</table>

(2) Tightening torque

Part name	Bolt size	Torque		Wrench size	
		kgf · m	lbf · ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt (material : SCM435)	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12
PT plug (material : S45C) ※ Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6
PF plug (material : S45C)	PT 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6

3) DISASSEMBLY

Since the regulator consists of small precision finished parts, disassembly and assembly are rather complicated.

For this reason, replacement of a regulator assembly is not recommended, unless there is a special reason, but in case disassembly is necessary for an unavoidable reason, read through this manual to the end before starting disassembly.

(1) Choose a place for disassembly.

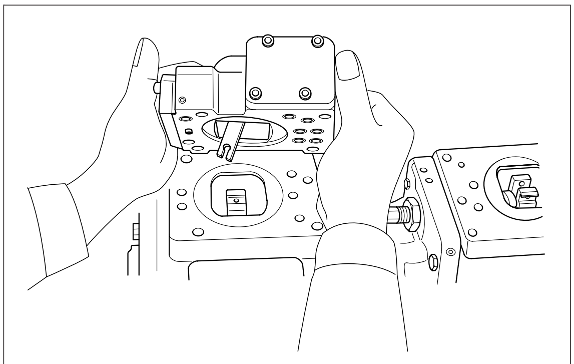
※ Choose a clean place.

※ Spread rubber sheet, cloth, or so on on top of work-bench to prevent parts from being damaged.

(2) Remove dust, rust, etc. from surfaces of regulator with clean oil.

(3) Remove hexagon socket head screw (412, 413) and remove regulator main body from pump main body.

※ Take care not to lose O-ring.



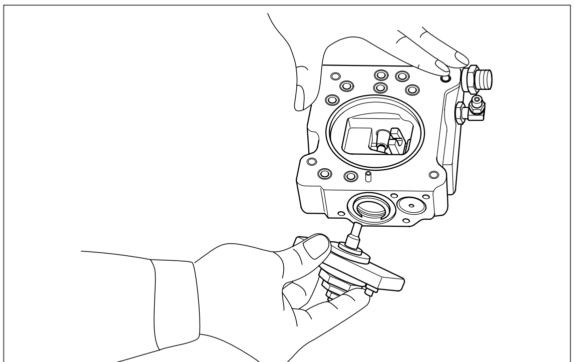
REG01

(4) Remove hexagon socket head screw (438) and remove cover (C, 629).

※ Cover (C) is fitted with adjusting screw (C, 628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (801) and adjusting screw (924).

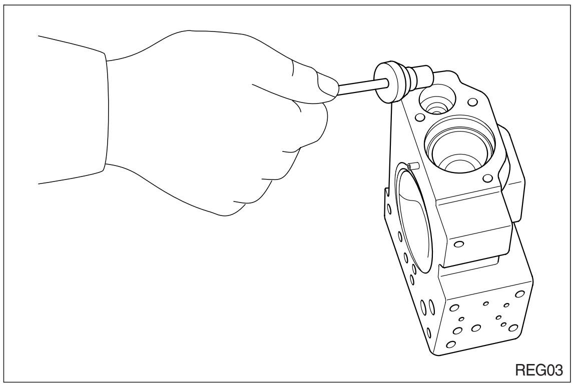
Do not loosen these screws and nuts.

If they are loosened, adjusted pressure-flow setting will vary.

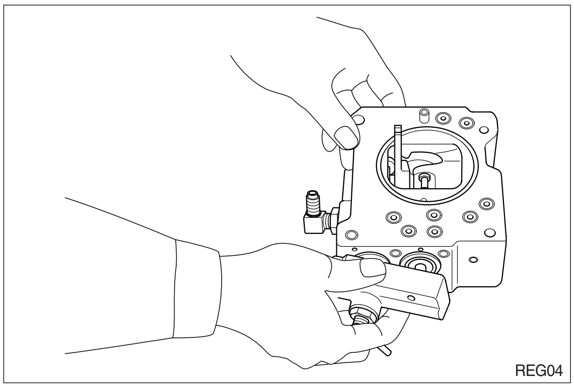


REG02

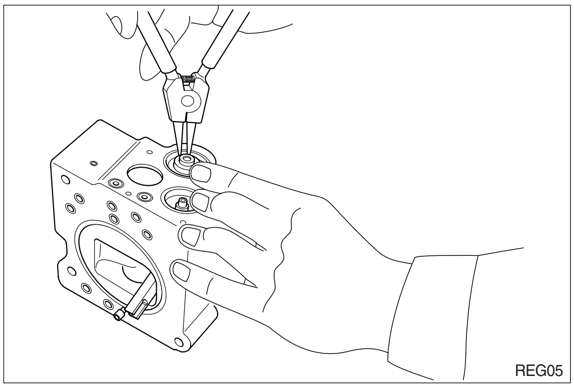
(5) After removing cover (C, 629) subassembly, take out outer spring (625), inner spring (626) and spring seat (C, 624) from compensating section.
Then draw out adjusting stem (Q, 645), pilot spring (646) and spring seat (644) from pilot section.
※ Adjusting stem (Q, 645) can easily be drawn out with M4 bolt.


REG03

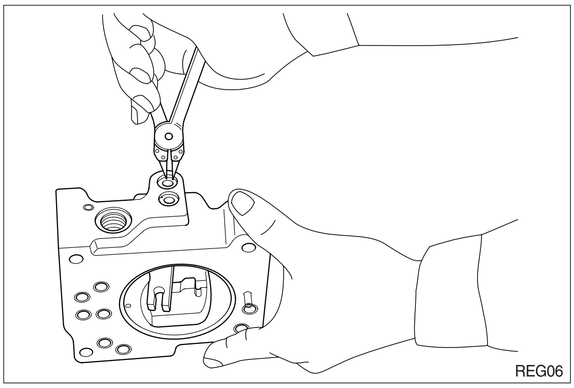
(6) Remove hexagon socket head screws (436, 438) and remove pilot cover (641).
After removing pilot cover, take out set spring (655) from pilot section.

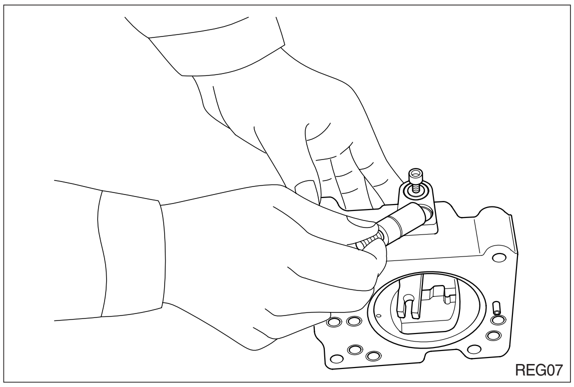

REG04

(7) Remove snap ring (814) and take out spring seat (653), return spring (654) and sleeve (651).
Sleeve (651) is fitted with snap ring (836).
※ When removing snap ring (814), return spring (654) may pop out.
※ Take care not to lose it.


REG05

(8) Remove locking ring (858) and take out fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615).
※ Fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615) can easily be taken out with M6 bolt.

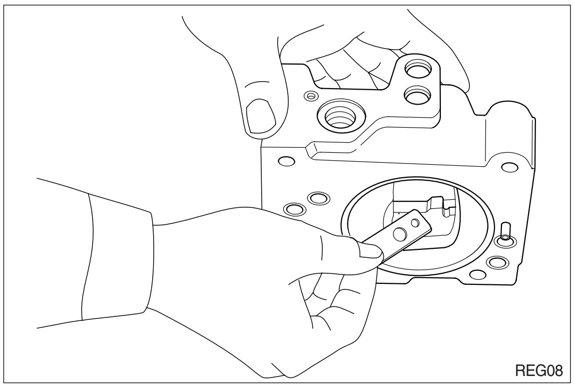

REG06



REG07

(9) Remove lever (2, 613). Do not draw out pin (875).

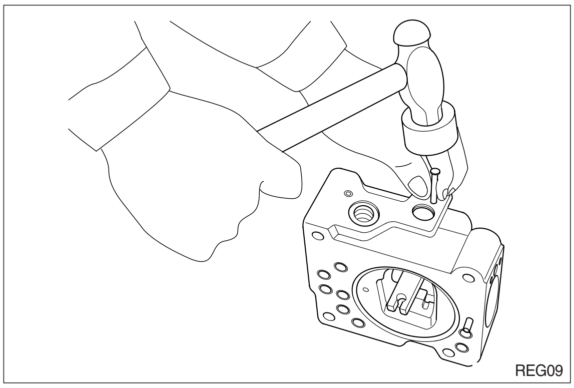
※ Work will be promoted by using pincers or so on.



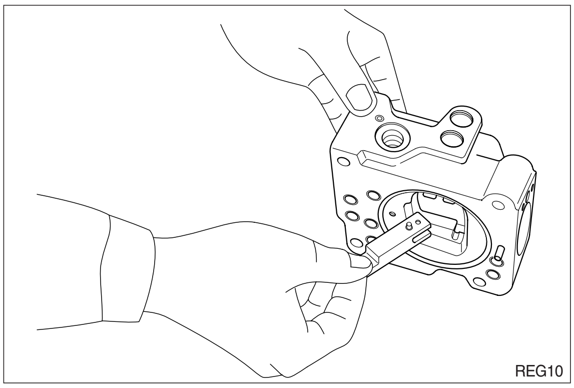
REG08

(10) Draw out pin (874) and remove feedback lever (611).

※ Push out pin (874, 4 mm in dia.) from above with slender steel bar so that it may not interfere with lever (1, 612).



REG09



REG10

(11) Remove lever (1, 612). Do not draw out pin (875).

(12) Draw out pilot piston (643) and spool (652).

(13) Draw out piston case (622), compensating piston (621) and compensating rod (623).

※ Piston case (622) can be taken out by pushing compensating rod (623) at opposite side of piston case.

This completes operation.

4) ASSEMBLY

(1) For assembly, reverse disassembly procedures, but pay attention to the following items.

① Always repair parts that were scored at disassembly.
Get replacement parts ready beforehand.

② Mixing of foreign matter will cause malfunction.
Therefore, wash parts well with cleaning oil, let them dry with jet air and handle them in clean place.

③ Always tighten bolts, plugs, etc. to their specified torques.

④ Do not fail to coat sliding surfaces with clean hydraulic oil before assembly.

⑤ Replace seals such as O-ring with new ones as a rule.

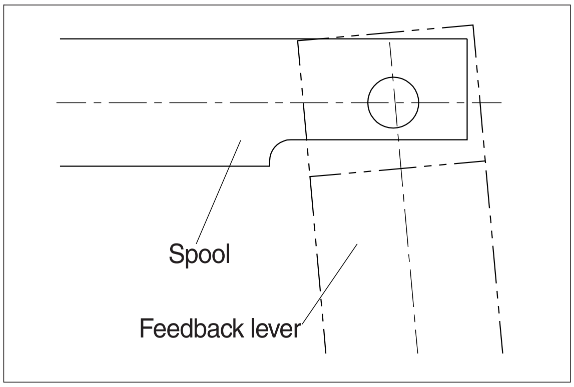
(2) Put compensating rod (623) into compensating hole of casing (601).

(3) Put pin force-fitted in lever (1, 612) into groove of compensating rod and fit lever (1) to pin force-fitted in casing.

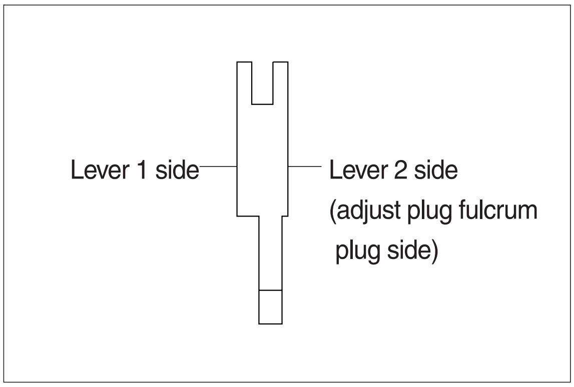
(4) Fit spool (652) and sleeve (651) into hole in spool of casing.

※ Confirm that spool and sleeve slide smoothly in casing without binding.

※ Pay attention to orientation of spool.

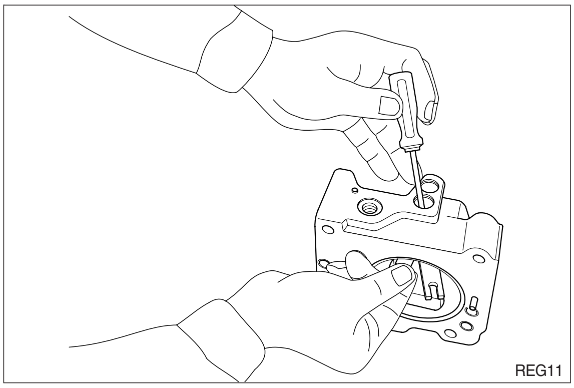


(5) Fit feedback lever (611), matching its pin hole with pin hole in spool.
Then insert pin (874).
※ Insert pin in feedback lever a little to ease operation.
※ Take care not to mistake direction of feedback lever.



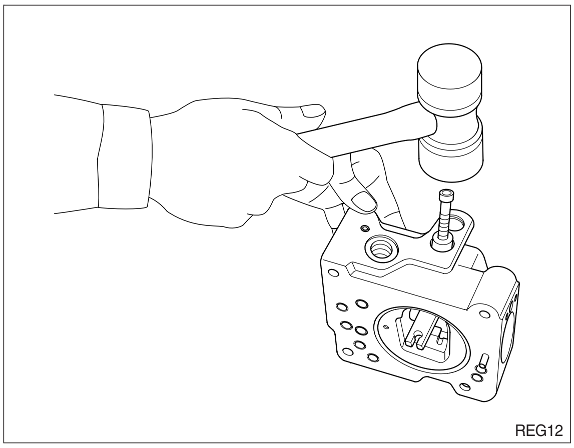
(6) Put pilot piston (643) into pilot hole of casing.
※ Confirm that pilot piston slides smoothly without binding.

(7) Put pin force-fitted in lever (2, 613) into groove of pilot piston.
Then fix lever (2).

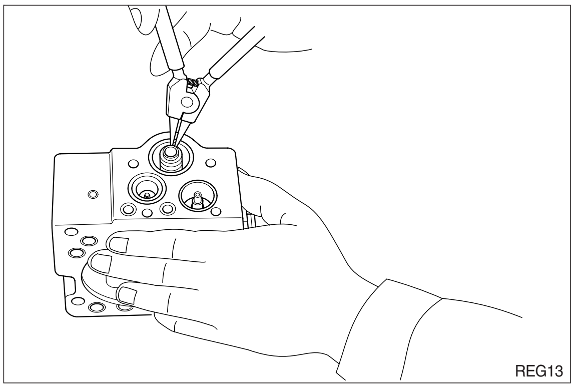

REG11

(8) Fit fulcrum plug (614) so that pin force-fitted in fulcrum plug(614) can be put into pin hole of lever (2).
Then fix locking ring (858).

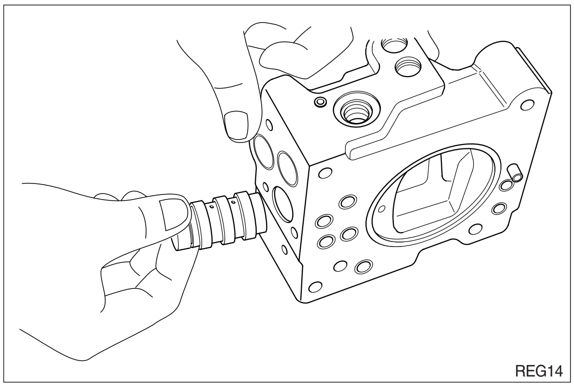
(9) Insert adjusting plug (615) and fit locking ring.
※ Take care not to mistake inserting holes for fulcrum plug and adjusting plug.
At this point in time move feedback lever to confirm that it has no large play and is free from binding.


REG12

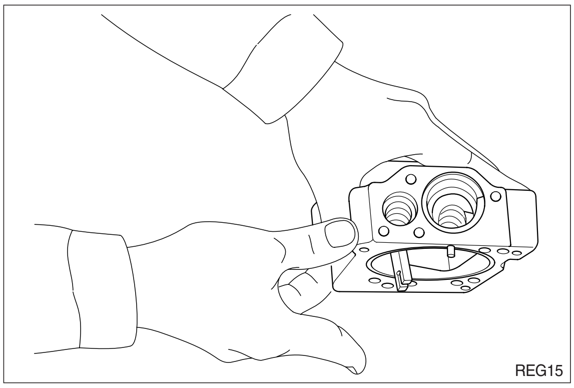
(10) Fit return spring (654) and spring seat (653) into spool hole and attach snap ring (814).


REG13

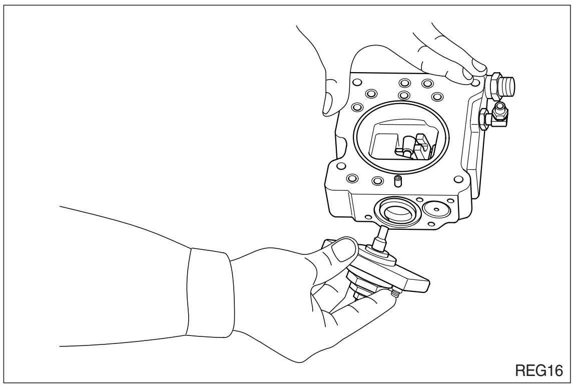
(11) Fit set spring (655) to spool hole and put compensating piston (621) and piston case (622) into compensating hole.
Fit pilot cover (641) and tighten it with hexagonal socket head screws (436, 438).


REG14

(12) Put spring seat (644), pilot spring (646) and adjusting stem (Q, 645) into pilot hole. Then fix spring seat (624), inner spring (626) and outer spring (625) into compensating hole.
※ When fitting spring seat, take care not to mistake direction of spring seat.


REG15

(13) Install cover (C, 629) fitted with adjusting screws (628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (802) and adjusting screw (924).
Then tighten them with hexagonal socket head screws (438).
This completes assembly.


REG16

GROUP 4 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

1) REMOVAL

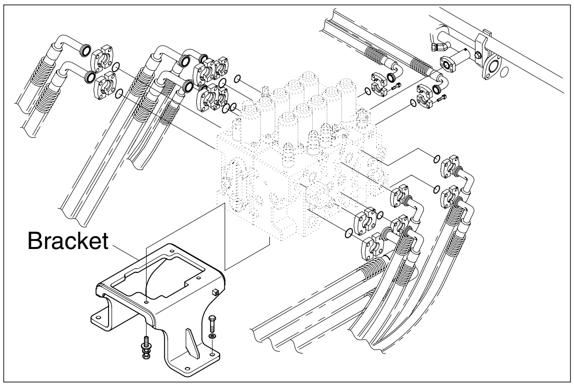
(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



(4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensor and so on.

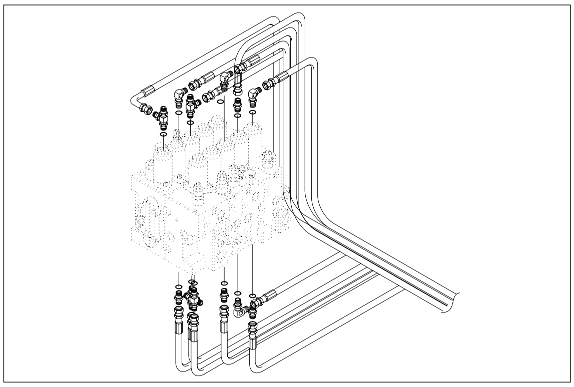
(5) Remove bolts and disconnect pipe.

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses.

(7) Disconnect pilot piping.

(8) Sling the control valve assembly and remove the control valve mounting bolt and bracket.

· Weight : 220kg(485lb)



(9) Remove the control valve assembly. When removing the control valve assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

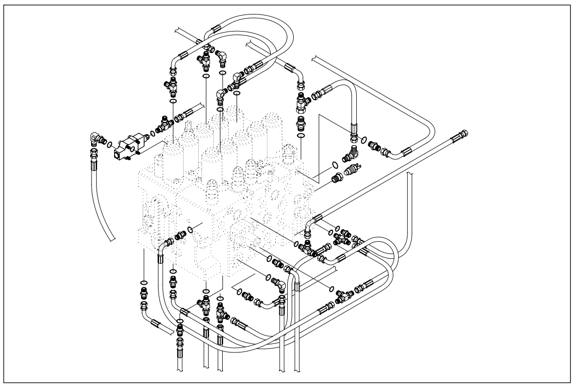
(2) Bleed the air from below items.

① Cylinder (Boom, arm, bucket)

② Swing motor

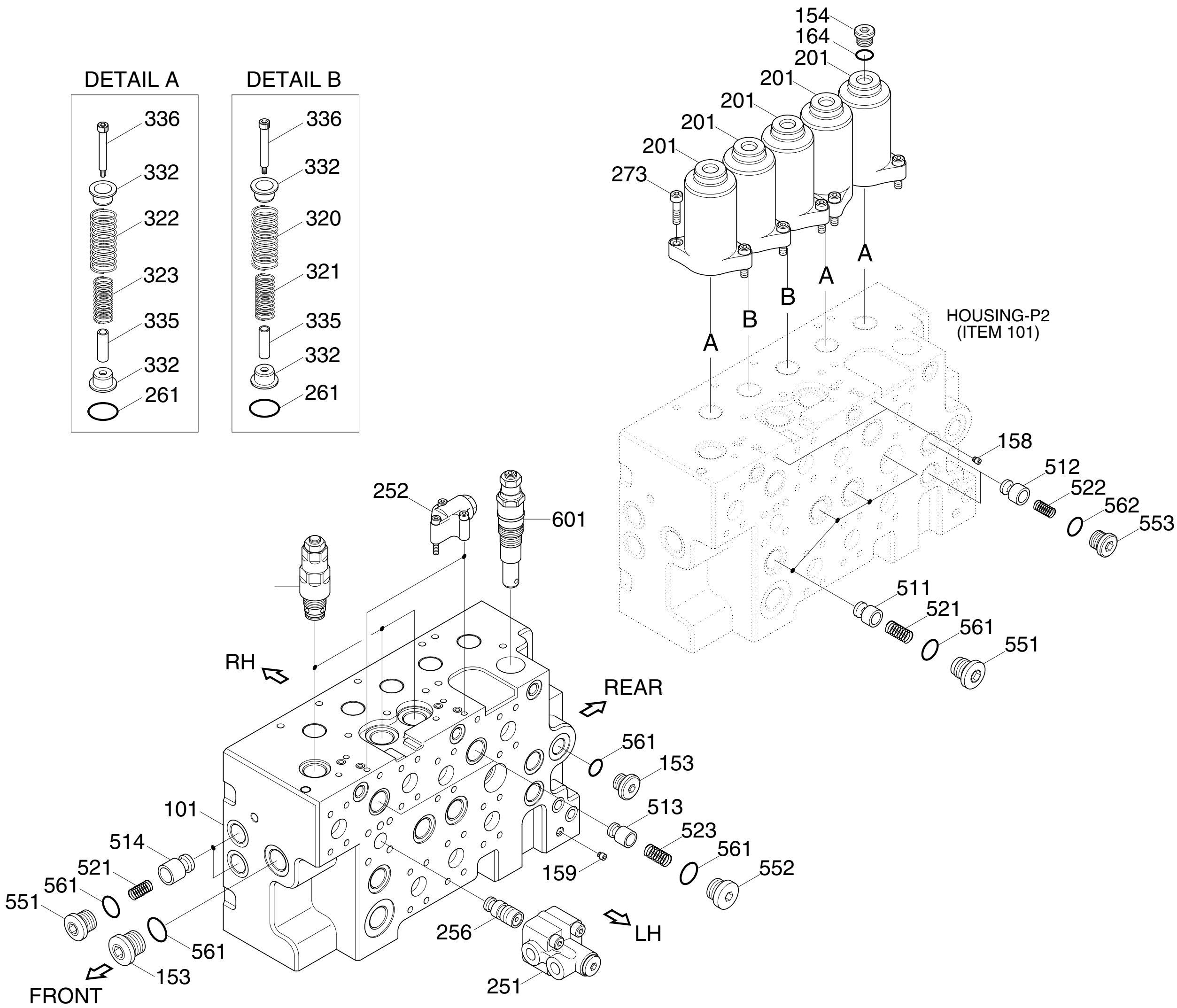
③ Travel motor

※ See each item removal and install.



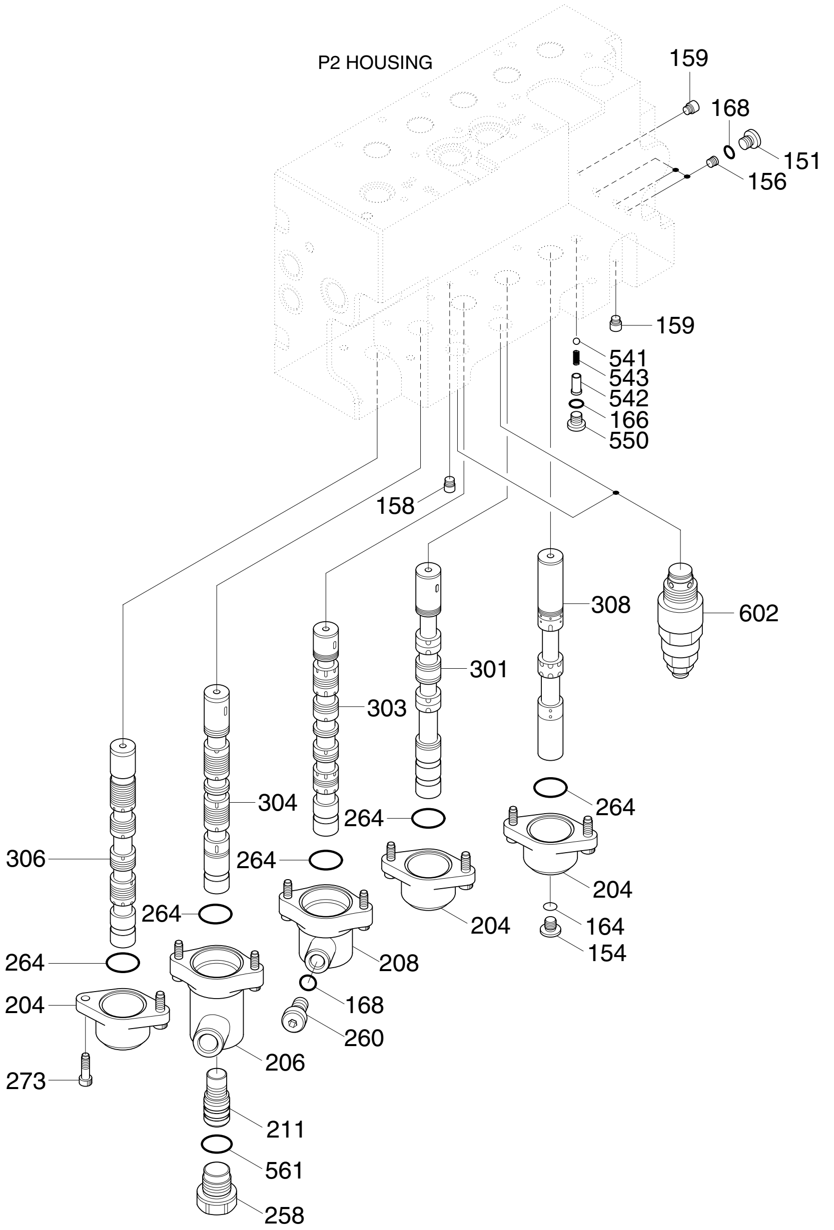
(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and recheck the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. STRUCTURE (1/4)



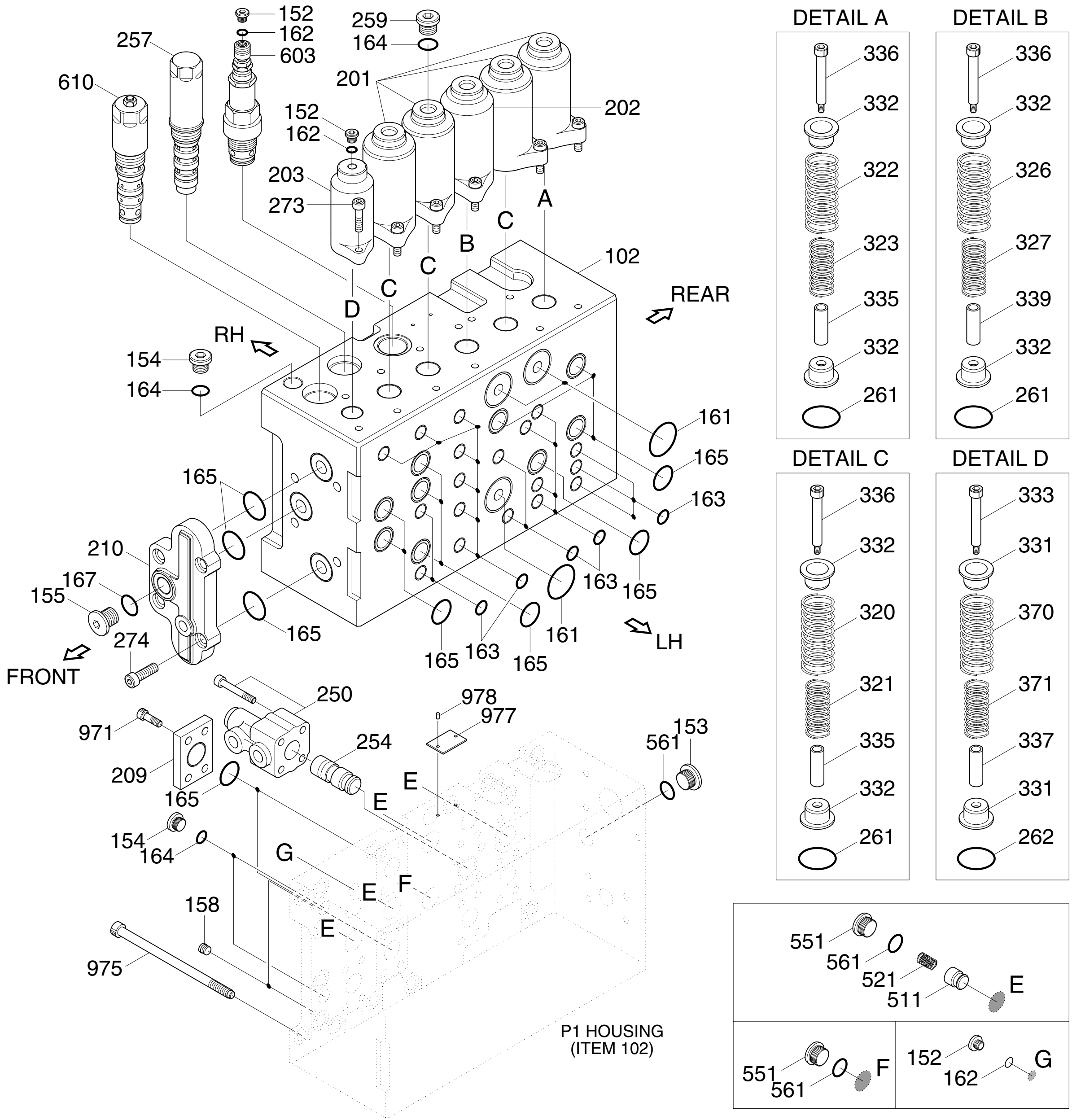
101	P2 housing (casing A)	273	Socket screw	514	Poppet
153	Plug	320	Spring	521	Spring
154	Plug	321	Spring	522	Spring
158	Plug	322	Spring	523	Spring
159	Plug	323	Spring	551	Plug
164	O-ring	332	Seat	552	Plug
201	Spring cover	335	Stopper	553	Plug
251	Logic control valve	336	Bolt	561	O-ring
252	Selector lock valve	511	Poppet	562	O-ring
256	Logic poppet	512	Poppet	601	Main relief valve
261	O-ring	513	Poppet	602	Port relief valve

STRUCTURE (2/4)



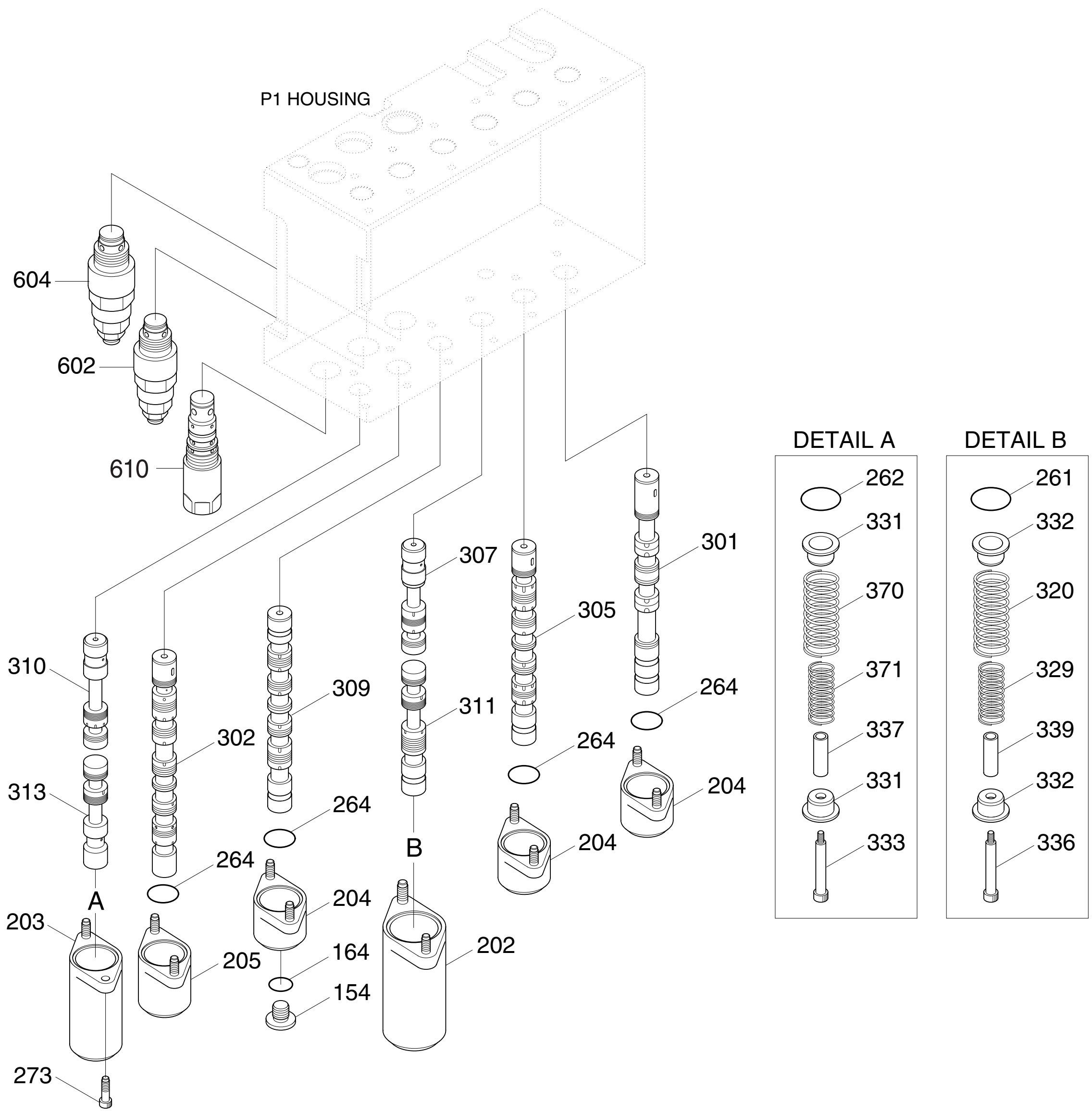
151	Plug	206	Cover	304	Bucket spool
154	Plug	208	Cover-spool	306	Arm 2 spool
156	Orifice	211	Piston	308	Straight travel spool
158	Plug	258	Plug	541	Steel ball
159	Plug	260	Plug	542	Spring seat
164	O-ring	264	O-ring	543	Spring
166	O-ring	273	Socket screw	550	Plug
168	O-ring	301	Travel, LH spool	561	O-ring
204	Cover	303	Boom 1 spool	602	Port relief valve

STRUCTURE (3/4)



102	P1 housing (casing B)	201	Spring cover	274	Socket screw	337	Stopper
152	Plug	202	Spring cover	320	Spring	339	Stopper
153	Plug	203	Spring cover	321	Spring	370	Spring
154	Plug	209	Flange	322	Spring	371	Spring
155	Plug	210	Plate	323	Spring	511	Poppet
158	Plug	250	Logic control valve	326	Spring	521	Spring
161	O-ring	254	Logic poppet	327	Spring	551	Plug
162	O-ring	257	Arm regen cut sub	331	Seat	561	O-ring
163	O-ring	259	Plug	332	Seat	603	Port relief valve
164	O-ring	261	O-ring	333	Spacer bolt	610	Nega control relief valve
165	O-ring	262	O-ring	335	Stopper	971	Screw
167	O-ring	273	Socket screw	336	Bolt	975	Socket screw

STRUCTURE(4/4)



154	Plug	302	Arm 1 spool	333	Spacer bolt
164	O-ring	305	Swing spool	336	Bolt
202	Spring cover	307	Boom 2 spool	337	Stopper
203	Spring cover	309	Option spool	339	Stopper
204	Cover	310	Bypass cut spool	370	Spring
205	Cover	311	Swing priority spool	371	Spring
261	O-ring	313	Bypass cut spool	602	Port relief valve
262	O-ring	320	Spring	604	Port relief valve assembly
264	O-ring	329	Spring	610	Nega control relief valve
273	Socket screw	331	Seat		
301	Travel, LH spool	332	Seat		

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

(1) All hydraulic components must be worked with precision working. Then, before disassembling and assembling them, it is essential to select an especially-clean place.

(2) In handling a control valve, pay full attention to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering into it.

(3) When a control valve is to be remove from the machine, apply caps and masking seals to all ports. Before disassembling the valve, recheck that these caps and masking seals are fitted completely, and then clean the outside of the assembly. Use a proper bench for working, spread a paper or rubber mat on the bench, and disassemble the valve on it.

(4) Support the body section carefully when carrying, transferring and so on of the control valve. Do not support the lever, exposed spool, end cover section or so on without fail.

(5) After disassembling and assembling of the component, it is desired to carry out various tests (for the relief characteristics, leakage, flow resistance, etc.), but the hydraulic test equipment is necessary to these tests. Therefore, even when its disassembling can be carried out technically, do not disassemble such components that cannot be tested, adjusted, and so on. Besides, prepare clean cleaning oil, hydraulic oil, grease, etc. beforehand.

2) TOOLS

Before disassembling the control valve, prepare the following tools beforehand.

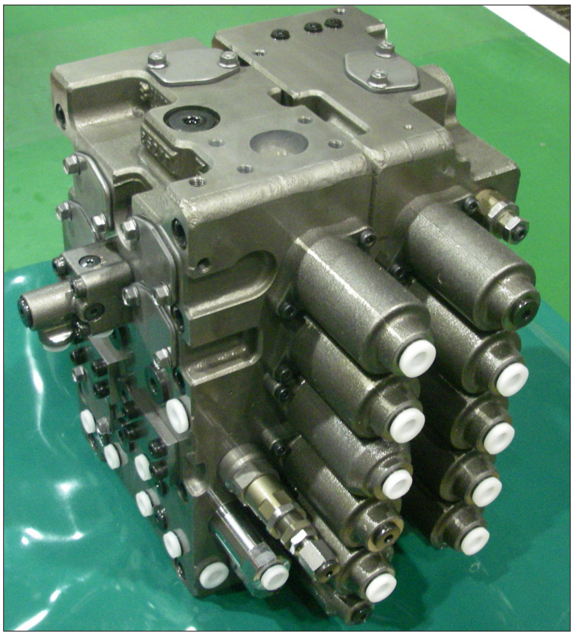
Name of tool	Quantity	Size (mm)
Vice mounted on bench (soft jaws)	1 unit	
Box wrench	Each 1 piece	24, 32, 36
Hexagon key wrench	Each 1 piece	4, 5, 6, 8, 10 and 12
Loctite #262	1 piece	-
Spanner	Each 1 piece	32 (main relief valve, 601) 36 (port relief valve, 603)

3) DISASSEMBLY

The figure in ( ) shown after the part name in the explanation sentence shows its number in the structure figures (8-31~34).

(1) Place control valve on working bench.

※ Disassemble it in clean place and pay attention not to damage flange faces and plate faces.

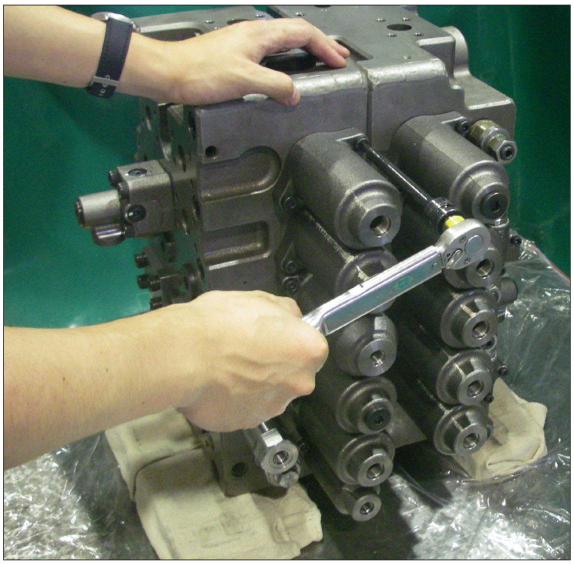


(2) Disassembling of main spools

· Travel (301), bucket (304), swing (305), option (308), arm 2 (306), boom 2 (307), swing priority (311).

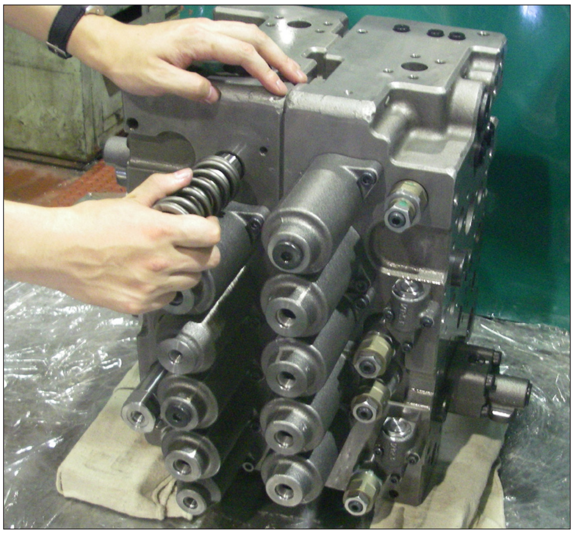
① Loosen the hexagon the socket head bolts (273) and remove the spring cover (201, 202) and the O-ring (261).

· Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

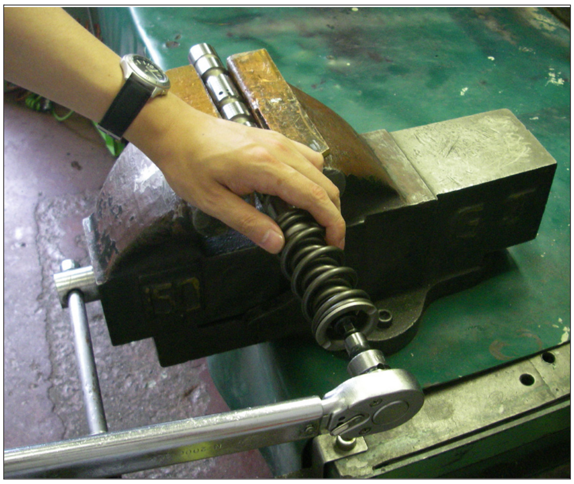


② Pull out the spool, spring, spring seats (322), stopper (335 or 339) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the casing.

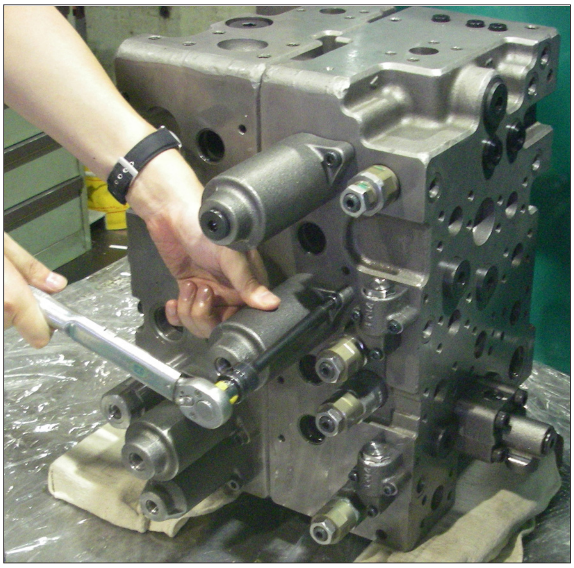
※ When pulling out the spool assembly from housing, pay attention not to damage the housing.



③ Hold the spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336) and disassemble the stopper (335 or 339) and spring seats (332).
   · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm



(3) Disassembling of boom 1 spool (303):



① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
   · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

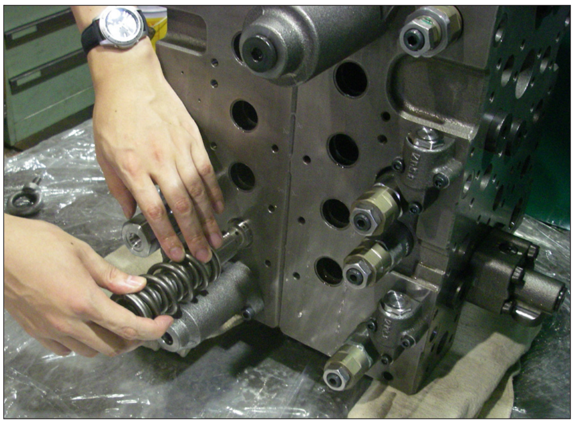
② Pull out the boom 1 spool (303), spring (320, 321), spring seats (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P2 housing (101).

※ When pulling out the spool assembly from P2 housing (101), pay attention not to damage housing.

③ Hold the boom1 spool (303) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336), and disassemble the spring (320, 321), spring seats (332) and stopper (335).
   · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

④ Do not disassemble the boom1 spool (303) more than these conditions.

(4) Disassembling of arm 1 spool (302):



① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

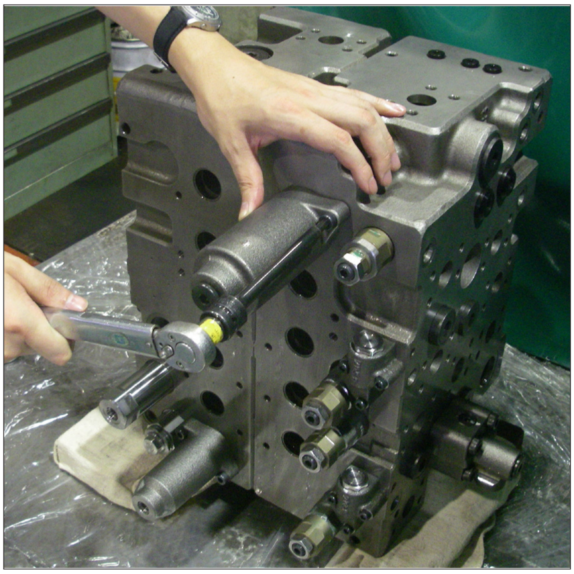
② Pull out the arm 1 spool (302), spring (320, 321), spring seats (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P1 housing (102).

※ When pulling out the spool assembly from P1 housing(102), pay attention not to damage housing.

③ Hold the arm 1 spool (302) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336), and disassemble the spring (320, 321), spring seats (332) and stopper (335).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

④ Do not disassemble the arm 1 spool (302) more than these conditions.

(5) Disassembling of travel straight spool (308):



① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

② Pull out the travel straight spool (308), spring (322, 323), spring seat (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P2 housing (101).

※ When pulling out the spool assembly from P2 housing (101), pay attention not to damage housing.

③ Hold the travel straight spool (308) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336) and disassemble the spring(322, 323), spring seats(332) and stopper (335).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

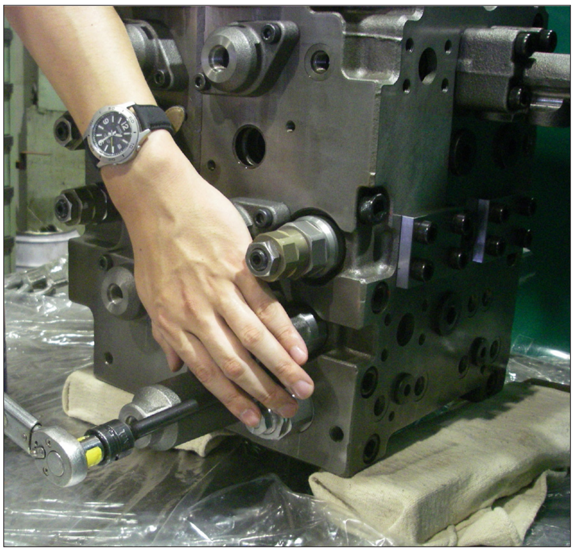
④ Do not disassemble the travel straight spool (308) more than these conditions.

(6) Disassembling of bypass cut spool (310, 313):

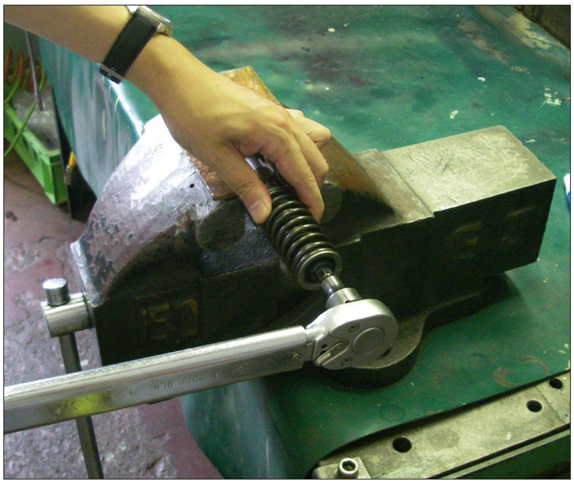
① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (203) and the O-ring (262).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

② Pull out the bypass cut spool (310, 313), spring (370, 371), spring seats (331), stopper (337) and spacer bolt (333) in the spool assembly condition from the P1 housing (102).

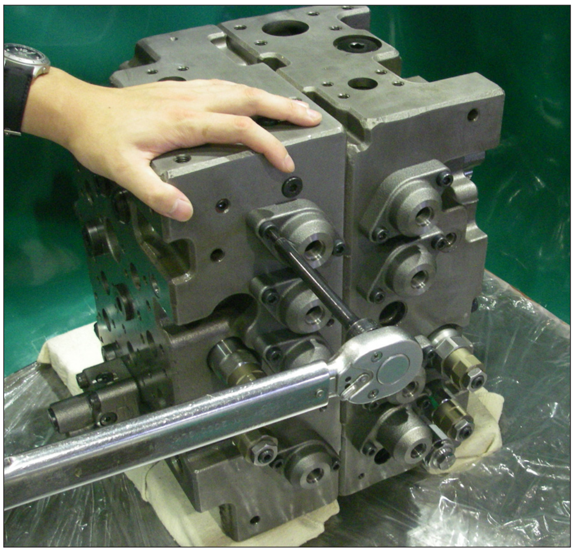
※ When pulling out the spool assembly from P1 housing (102), pay attention not to damage housing.



③ Hold the bypass cut spool (310,313) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (333) and disassemble the spring (370, 371), spring seats (331) and stopper (337).
 · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm



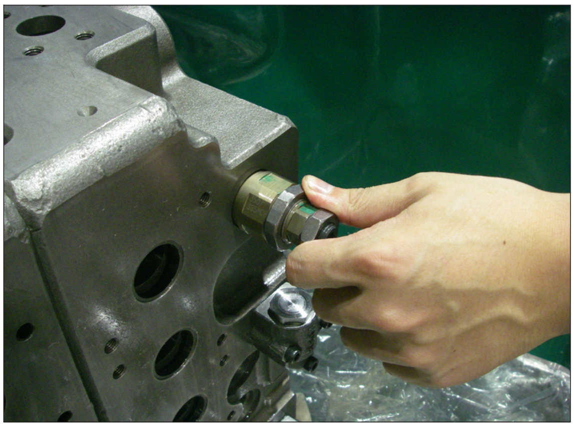
(7) Disassembling of spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208):



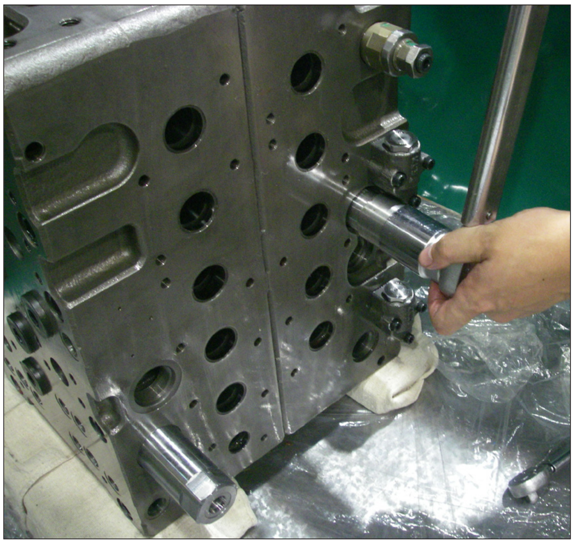
① Remove the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spool cover (204, 205, 206, 208) and the O-ring (264).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm

② In removing the bucket spool cover (206), at first loosen the plug (258) before it is removed from the P1 housing (102). After removing the bucket spring cover (206) remove the plug (551), and take out the piston (211).
  · Box wrench : 32 mm

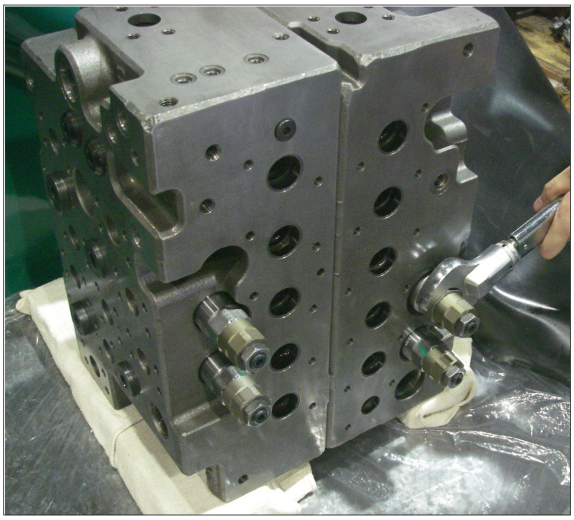
(8) Removal of main relief valve (601) port relief valves (602, 603, 604) :



① Remove the main relief valve (601) and the port relief valves (602, 603, 604) from the housing.
Main relief valve (601) : spanner 32mm
Port relief valve (602) : spanner or box wrench 32mm
Port relief valve (603) : spanner 36mm
Port relief valve (604) : spanner or box wrench 36mm



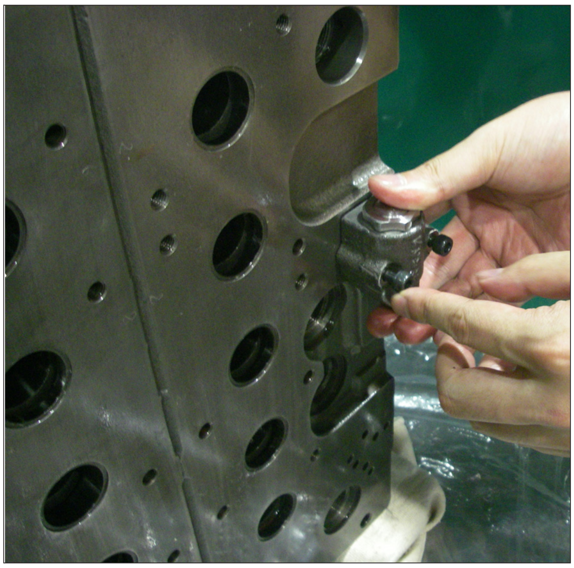
② Do not disassemble the relief valves more than these conditions.



(9) Removal of lock valve selector (252):

① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (252-171) and remove the lock valve selector (252) and the O-rings (252-161).
  · Hexagon key wrench : 5 mm

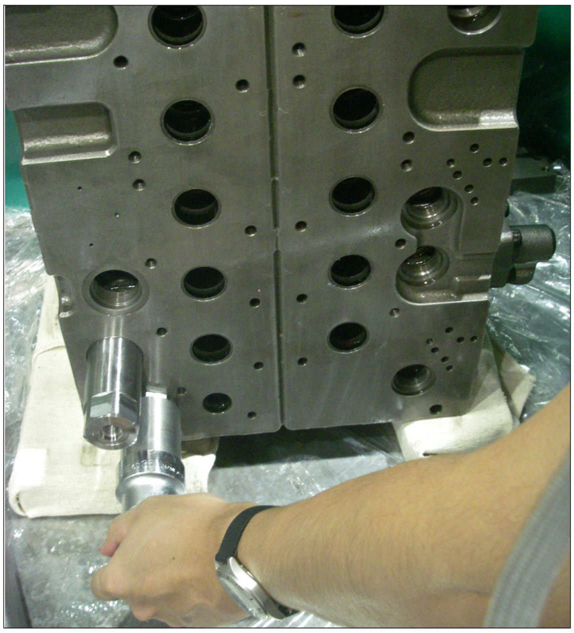
② Do not disassemble the lock valve selector (252) more than these conditions.



(10) Removal of negative control relief valve (610):

① Remove the negative control relief valve (610) from the P1 housing (102).
  · Box wrench : 36 mm

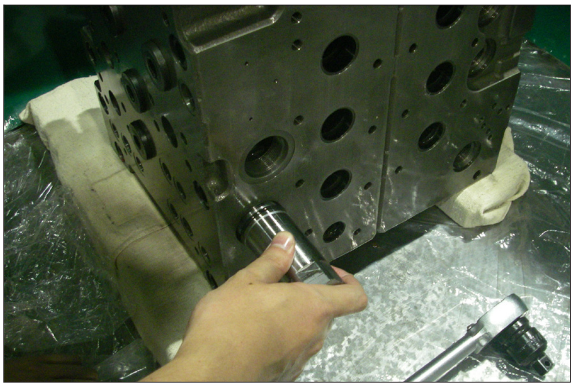
② Do not disassemble the negative control relief valve (610) more than these conditions.



(11) Removal of arm regeneration cut valve (257):

Remove the plug (253), spring (331), spool (211), and sleeve (392) from the P1 housing (102).

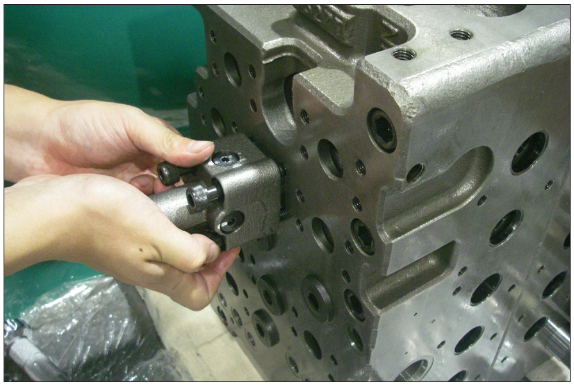
· Box wrench : 36 mm



(12) Disassembly of logic control valve (250, 251) and logic poppet (254, 256):

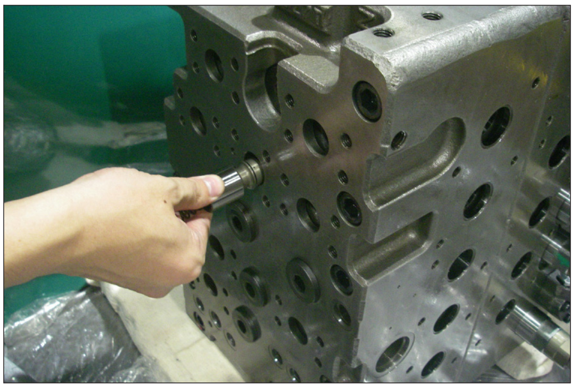
① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (250-120, 251-120) and remove the logic control valve (250, 251) and the O-rings (250-112 and 113, 251-112 and 113).

· Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm



② Pull out the logic poppet (254, 256), spring (254-106, 256-106) and spring seat (254-103, 256-103) from the housing.

③ Do not disassemble the logic control valve and the logic poppet more than these condition.



(13) Disassembly of check valve :

① CP1, C2, CCb, LCb, LCo, LCk, LCa, LCAT2

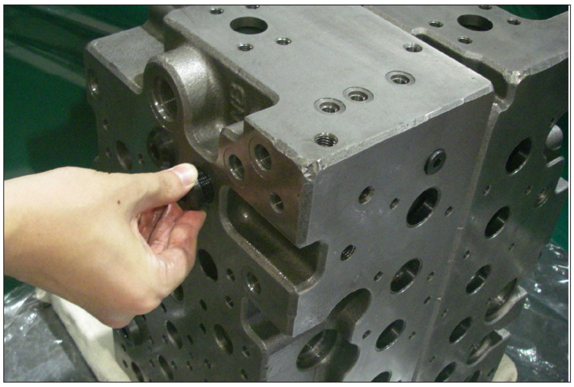
Remove the plug (551) and take out the poppet (511) and the spring (521).

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

② CMR1, CMR2

Remove the plug (553) and take out the poppet (512) and the spring (522).

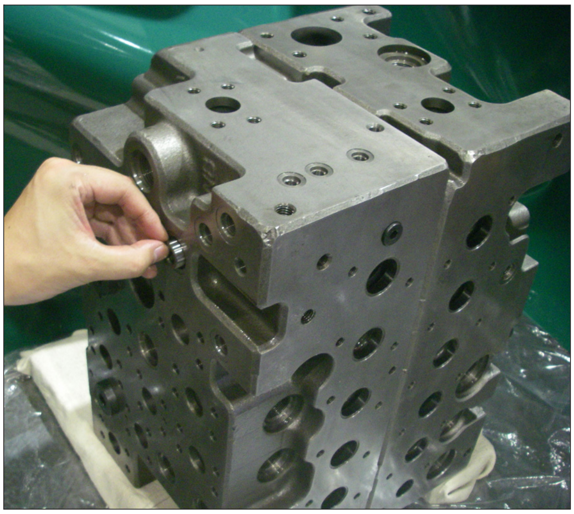
· Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm



③ CRa, CRb

Remove the plug (552) and take out the poppet (513) and the spring (523).

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm



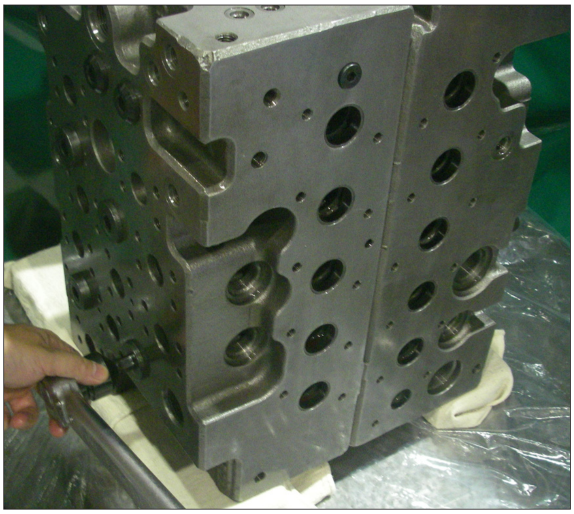
④ CCk, CCo

Remove the plug (551) and take out poppet (514) and the spring (521).

· Hexagon key wrench : 12 mm

⑤ Remove the plug (550) and take out the ball (541), spring (543) and spring seat (542).

· Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm



(14) **Disassembly of flanges (209) :**

Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (971) and remove the flange (209) and the O-ring (165).

· Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm

(15) **Disassembly of plate (210) :**

Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (274) and remove the plate (210) and the O-rings (165).

· Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

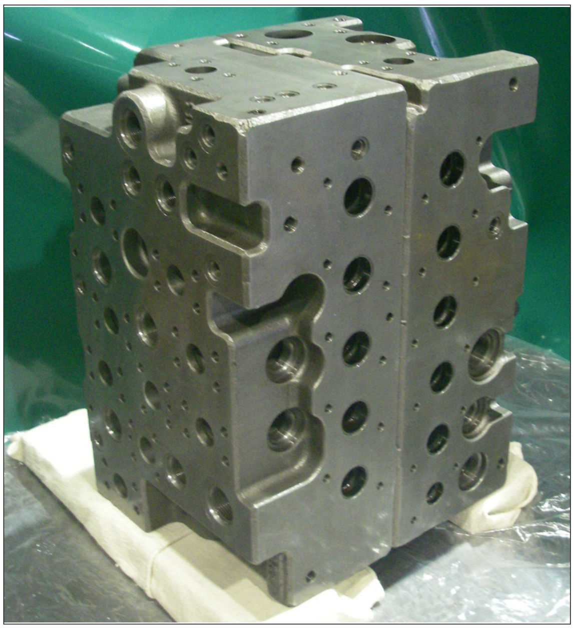
(16) **Disassembly of orifices for signal line :**

Do not disassemble the plug (151) and orifice (156) unless required specifically.

(17) Disassembly of casing :

① Except when required specially, do not disassemble the tie bolts of the P1 housing.

② Since the plugs not described in above disassembling procedures are the blind plugs for sacrifice holes and the blind plugs for the housing sanitation, do not disassemble them as far as not required specially.



(18) Inspection after disassembling

Clean all the disassembled parts with clean mineral oil fully, and dry them with compressed air. Then, place them on clean papers or cloths for inspection.

① Control valve

a. Check whole surfaces of all parts for burrs, scratches, notches and other defects.
b. Confirm that the seal groove faces of the housing and the covers are smooth and free of dust, dent, rust etc.
c. Correct dents and damages on check seat faces of housing, if any, by lapping.
※ Pay attention not to leave lapping agent in the housing.
d. Confirm that all sliding and fitting parts can be moved manually and that all grooves and paths are free from foreign matter.
e. If any spring is broken or deformed, replace it with new one.
f. When a relief valve does not function properly, repair it, following its inspection procedures.
g. Replace all the O-rings with new ones.

② Relief valve

a. Confirm that all seat faces at ends of all poppets and seats are free of defects and are uniform contact faces.
b. Confirm manually that main poppet and seat can slide lightly and smoothly.
c. Confirm that outside face of main poppet and inside face of seat are free from scratches and so on.
d. Confirm that orifices of the main poppet and seat section are not clogged with foreign matter.
e. Replace all O-rings with new ones.
f. When any light damage is found in above inspections, correct it by lapping.
g. When any abnormal part is found, replace it with a relief valve assembly.

4) ASSEMBLY

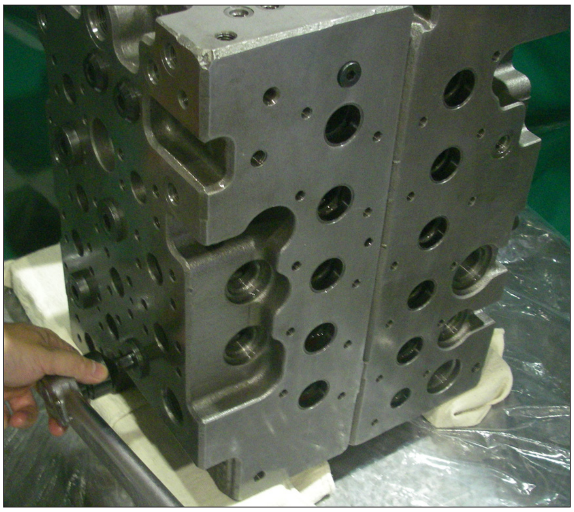
① In this assembling section, explanation only is shown. Refer to figures and photographs shown in disassembling section.
② Figure in ( ) shown after part name in explanation sentence shows number in structure figure.
③ Cautions in assembling O-rings
  a. Pay attention to keep O-rings free from defects in its forming and damages in its handling.
  b. Apply grease, hydraulic oil or so on to O-rings and seal-fitting sections for full lubrication.
  c. Do not stretch O-rings so much to deform them permanently.
  d. In fitting O-ring, pay attention not to roll it into its position. In addition, twisted O-ring cannot remove its twisting naturally with ease after being fitted, and causes oil leakage.
  e. Tighten fixing the bolts for all sections with a torque wrench to their respective tightening torque.

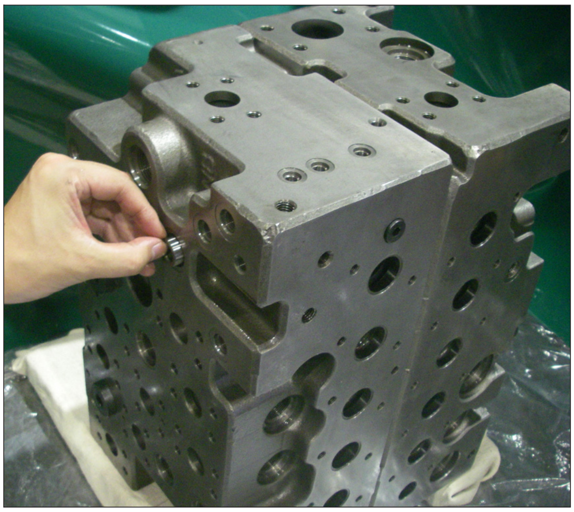
(1) Assembly of check valve :

① Assemble the poppets (511, 512, 513, 514) and the springs (521, 522, 523) : Put the O-rings (561) onto the plugs (551, 552). Put the O-rings (562) onto the plugs (553). Tighten the plugs (551, 552, 553) with their specified torques.
※ Use the poppets, springs and plugs in following groups.

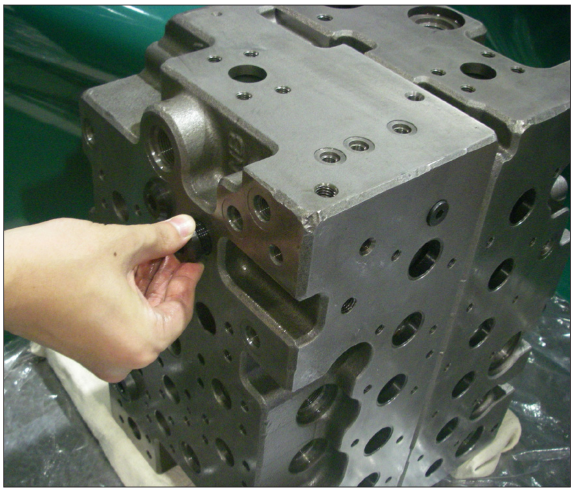
Poppet	Spring	Plug	Remember that
511	521	551	511 in 8 positions
512	522	553	512 in 2 positions
513	523	552	513 in 2 positions
514	521	551	514 in 2 positions

Plug No.	Hexagon key wrench (mm)	Tightening torque (kgf·m)
551	12	23.5 ~ 26.5
552	12	23.5 ~ 26.5
553	10	13.3 ~ 15.3





② Assemble of ball (541), spring Seat (542) and spring (543) : Put the O-ring (166) onto the plug (550), and tighten the plug (550) with specified torque.
 · Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm
 · Tightening torque : 2.55 ~ 2.96 kgf·m (18.4~21.4 lbf·ft)

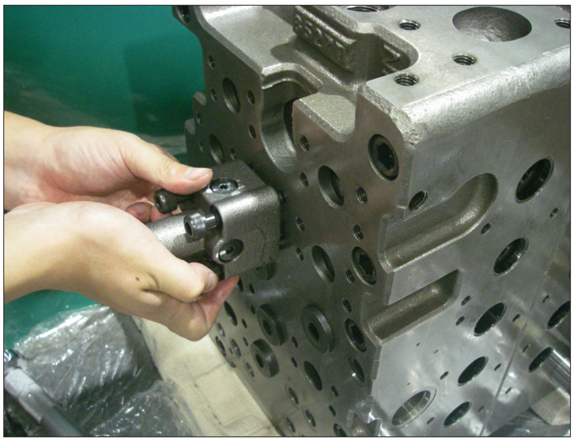


(2) Assembly of plate (210) :
Fit the O-rings (165) to the P1 housing (102), and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (274) with specified torque.
 · Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm
 · Tightening torque : 10.0 ~ 12.2 kgf·m (72.3~88.2 lbf·ft)

So turn the control valve that the plate face may be directed downward.

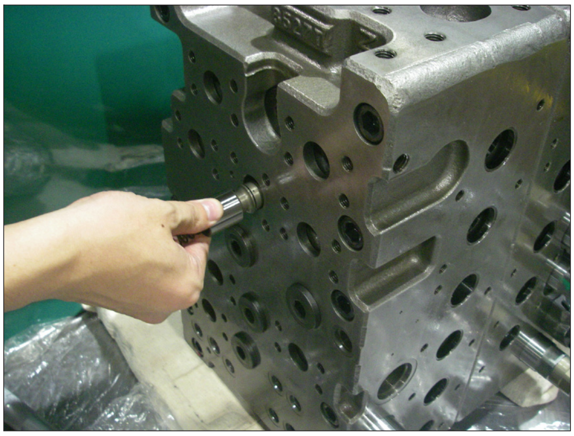
(3) Assembly of flange (209) :
Fit the O-rings (165) to the flange (209), and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (971) with specified torque.
 · Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
 · Tightening torque : 5.0 ~ 6.6 kgf·m (36.2~47.7 lbf·ft)

(4) Assemble of logic control valve (250, 251):
① Put the O-ring (250-115, 251-115) onto the plug (250-111, 251-111).



② Assemble the spool (250-102, 251-102), spring seat (250-104, 251-104) and spring (251-105, 251-105) into the casing (250-101, 251-101) of the logic control valve, and tighten the plug (250-111, 251-111) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
· Tightening torque : 7.0 ~ 8.1 kgf·m
(50.6~58.6 lbf·ft)



③ Assemble the logic poppet (254; poppet, spring, spring seat) into the housing of the control valve.

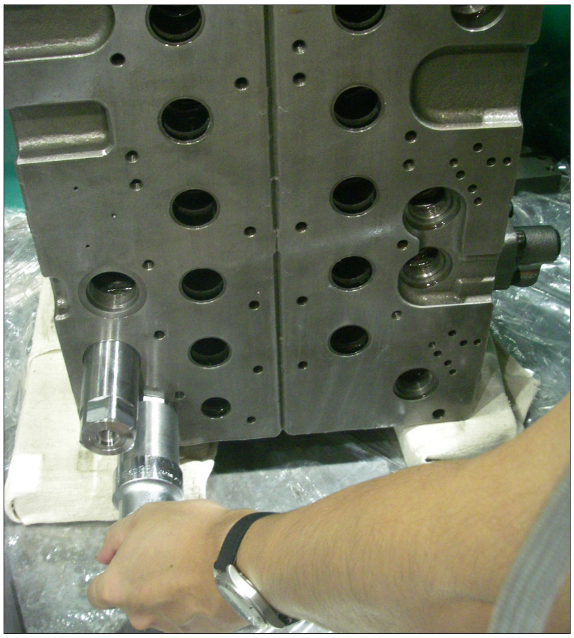
④ Fit the O-rings (250-112 and 113, 251-112 and 113) to the casing (250-101, 251-101) of the logic control valve, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (250-120, 251-120) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench : 8 mm
· Tightening torque : 5.0 ~ 6.6 kgf·m
(36.2~47.7 lbf·ft)

(5) Assembling of negative control relief valve (610) :

Assemble the negative control relief valve (610) into the P2 housing (101), and tighten it with specified torque.

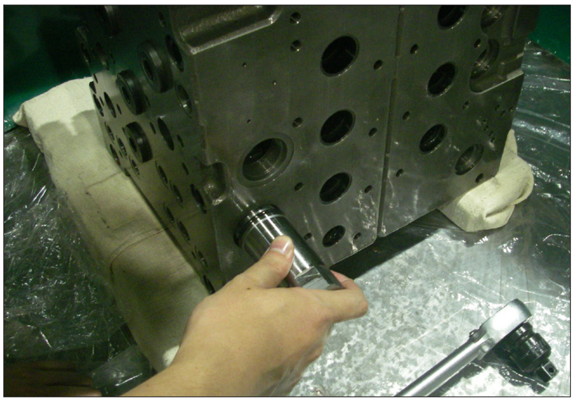
· Box wrench : 36 mm
· Tightening torque : 7.0 ~ 8.0 kgf·m
(50.6~57.9 lbf·ft)



(6) Assembly of arm regeneration cut valve (257) :

Assemble the sleeve (257-212), spool (257-211), and spring (257-231) into the P1 housing (102). Put the O-ring (265) onto the plug (257-253), and tighten with specified torque.

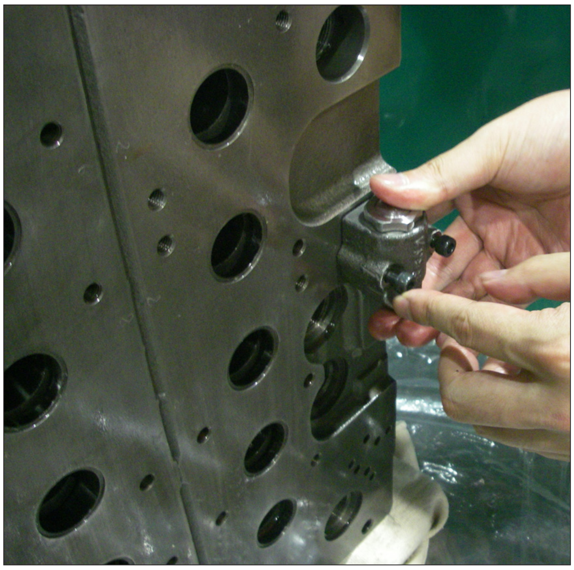
· Box wrench : 36 mm
· Tightening torque : 7.0 ~ 8.0 kgf·m (50.6~57.9 lbf·ft)



(7) Assembling of lock valve selector (252) :

Fit the O-rings (252-161) to the lock valve selector (252) and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (252-171) with specified torque.

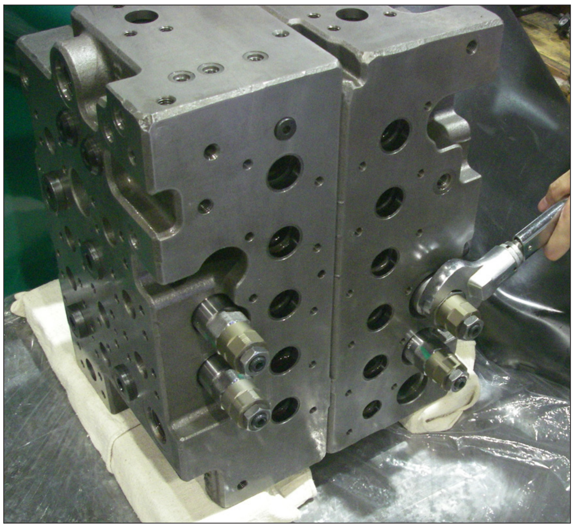
· Hexagon key wrench : 5 mm
· Tightening torque : 1.0 ~ 1.4 kgf·m (7.2~10.1 lbf·ft)



(8) Assembling of main relief valve (601) and port relief valve (602, 603, 604) :

Assemble the main relief valve (601) and the port relief valves (602, 603, 604) to the housing, and tighten them with specified torque.

Item	Tool	Tightening torque (kgf·m)
Main relief valve (601)	Spanner 32	7.0 ~ 8.1
Port relief valve (602)	Spanner 32 or box wrench 32	7.0 ~ 8.1
Port relief valve (603)	Spanner 36	12.2 ~14.3
Port relief valve (604)	Spanner 36 or box wrench 36	12.2 ~14.3



21098MC49

(9) Assemble of travel straight spool (308) :

① Hold the middle of the travel straight spool (308) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (322, 323) and stopper (335), and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 10 ㎜

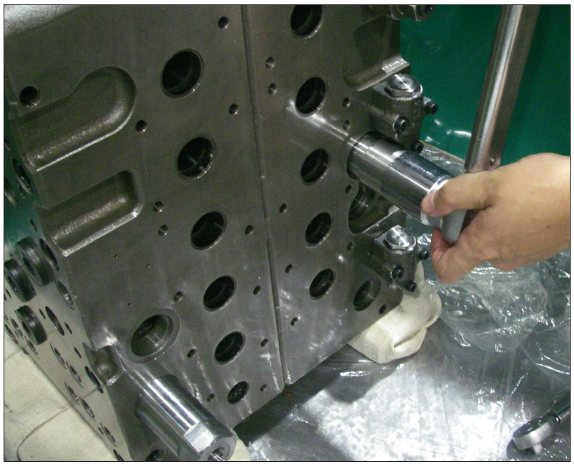
· Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m (11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

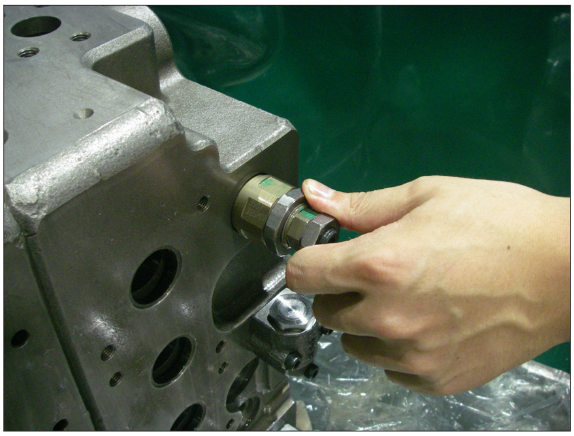
※ Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the travel straight spool (308) is deformed.

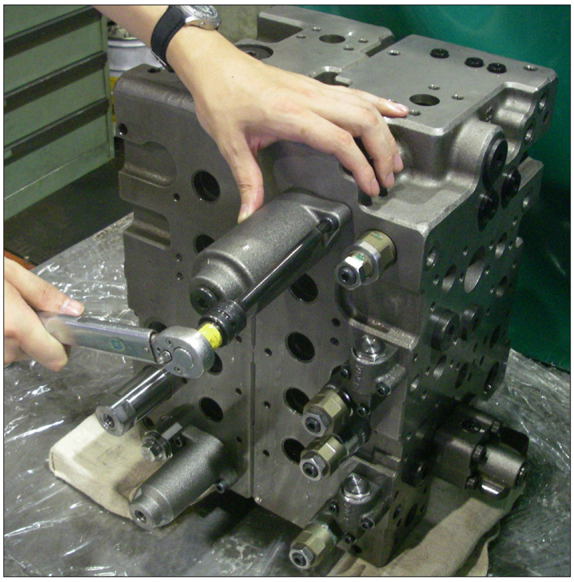
② Insert the spool assemblies of ① items above into the P2 housing (101).

※ Fit spool assemblies into P2 housing (101) carefully and slowly.

※ Do not push them forcibly without fail.







(10) Assembling of boom 1 spool (303) :

① Hold the middle of the boom1 spool (303) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (320, 321) and stopper (335), and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

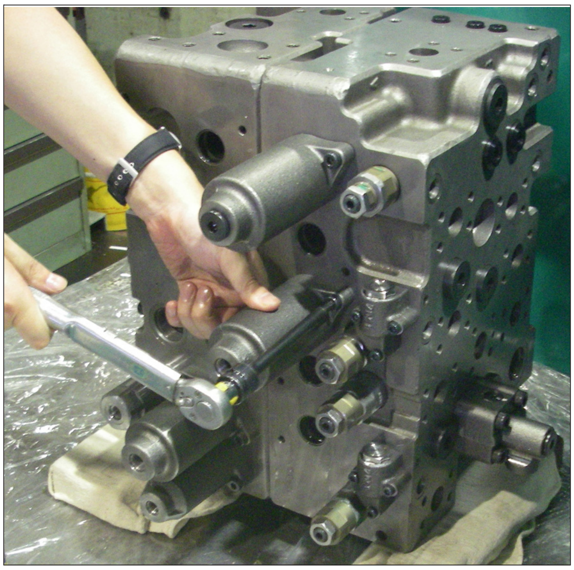
· Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m
(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

※ Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the boom 1 spool (303) is deformed.

② Insert the spool assemblies of items ① above into the P2 housing (101).

※ Fit spool assemblies into the P2 housing (101) carefully and slowly.

※ Do not push them forcibly without fail.



(11) Assembling of arm 1 spool (302) :

① Hold the middle of the arm1 spool (302) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (320, 321) and stopper (335) and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm

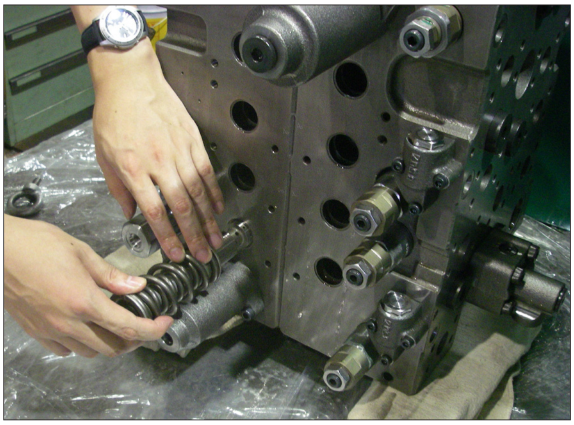
· Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m
(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

※ Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the arm 1 spool (302) is deformed.

② Insert the spool assemblies of items ① above into the P1 housing (102).

※ Fit spool assemblies into the P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.

※ Do not push them forcibly without fail.



(12) **Assembling of main spool (travel (301), bucket (304), swing (305), option (309), arm2 (306), boom2 (307), swing priority (311)):**

① Hold the middle of each spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs and stopper (335 or 339) and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.

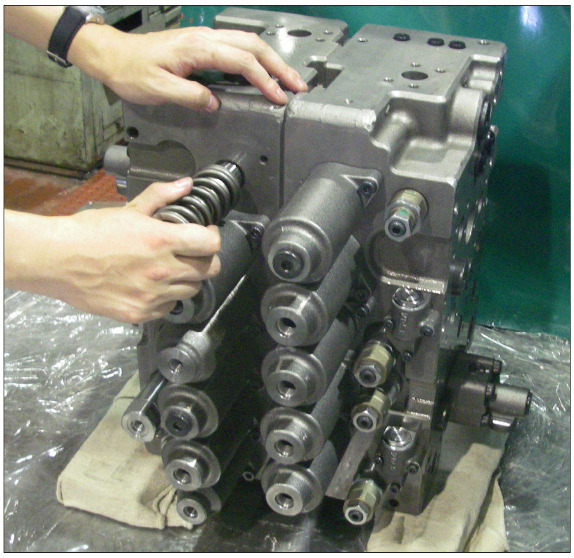
- Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm
- Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m (11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

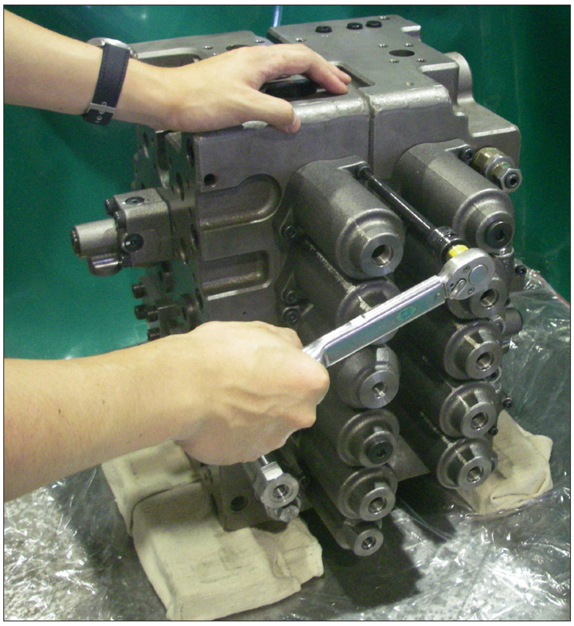
※ Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the spool is deformed.

② Insert the spool assemblies of Items ① above into the P2 housing (101) and P1 housing (102).

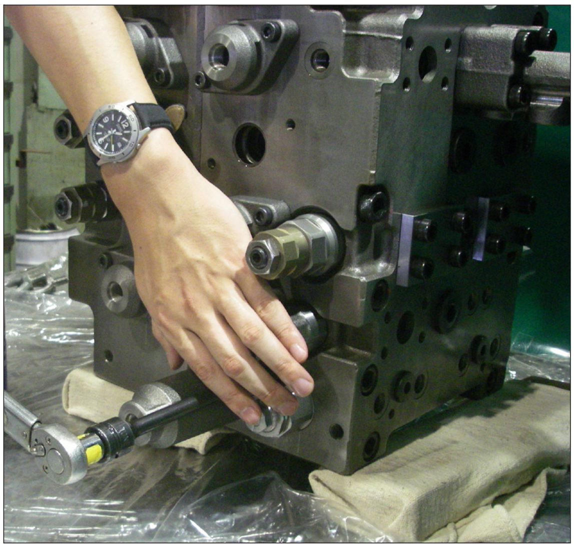
※ Fit spool assemblies into P2 housing (101) and P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.

※ Do not push them forcibly without fail.





(13) Assembling of bypass cut spool (310, 313) :



① Hold the middle of each spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (331), springs (370, 371) and stopper (337) and tighten the spacer bolt (333) with specified torque.

※ Before tightening the spacer bolt (333), apply loctite #262 to it.

· Hexagon key wrench : 10 mm
· Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m (11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

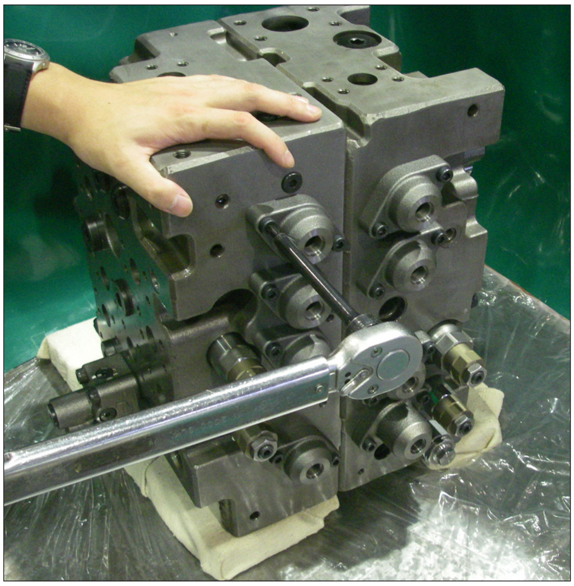
※ Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the bypass cut spool (310, 313) is deformed.

② Insert the spool assemblies of Items ① above into the P1 housing (102).

※ Fit spool assemblies into the P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.

※ Do not push them forcibly without fail.

(14) Assembling of covers :



① Fit the O-rings (264) to the spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208) to sides reverse to the spring sides of spools, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.

※ Confirm that O-rings (264) have been fitted to the spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208).

· Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm
· Tightening torque : 2.5 ~ 3.5 kgf·m (18.1~25.3 lbf·ft)

② Bucket spool cover (206) : Assemble piston (355) into bucket spool cover (206). Put O-ring (561) onto plug (258) and tighten it with specified torque.

· Box wrench : 32 mm
· Tightening torque : 15.3 ~ 18.4 kgf·m (111~133 lbf·ft)

③ Fit the O-rings (261, 262) to spring covers (201, 202, 203) to the spring sides of spools, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.

※ Confirm that O-rings (261,262) have been fitted to spring covers (204, 205, 206).

· Hexagon key wrench : 6 mm
· Tightening torque : 2.5 ~ 3.5 kgf·m (18.1~25.3 lbf·ft)

GROUP 5 SWING DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.

13031GE18

(4) Disconnect hose assembly (2).

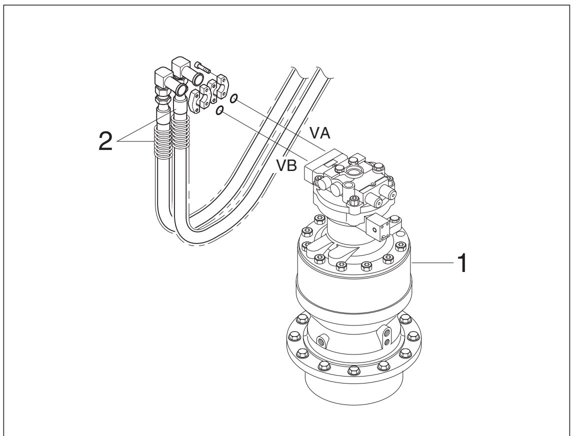
(5) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8).

(6) Sling the swing motor assembly (1) and remove the swing motor mounting socket bolts (9).

· Motor device weight : 61 ㎏ (135 ℔)

(7) Remove the swing motor assembly.

※ When removing the swing motor assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.



2209A8SM21

2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Bleed the air from the swing motor.

① Remove the air vent plug.

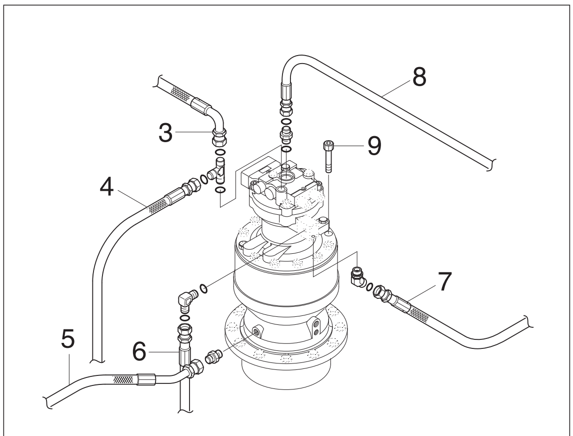
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.

③ Tighten plug lightly.

④ Start the engine, run at low idling and check oil come out from plug.

⑤ Tighten plug fully.

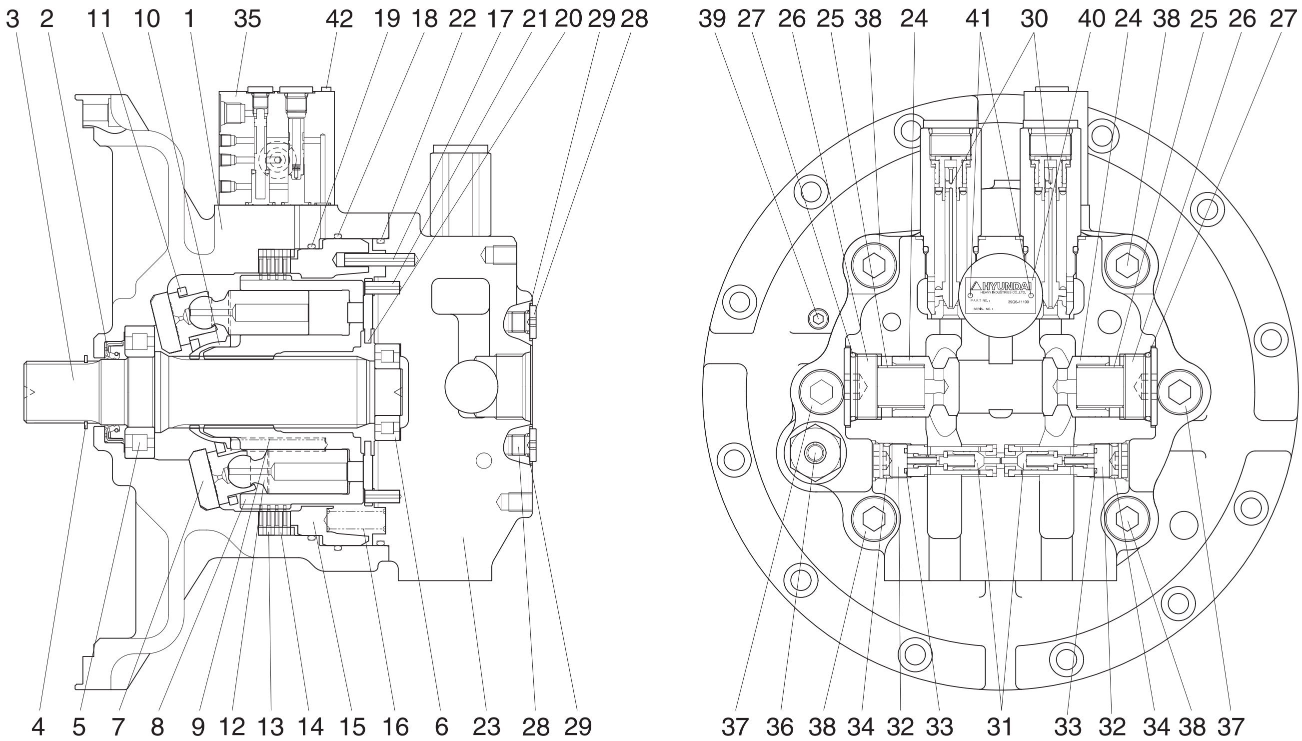
(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.



2209A8SM22

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF SWING MOTOR

1) STRUCTURE



300L2SM02

1	Casing	15	Parking piston	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Brake spring	30	Relief valve assy
3	Shaft	17	Spring pin	31	Reactionless valve assy
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Plug
5	Roller bearing	19	O-ring	33	O-ring
6	Needle bearing	20	Valve plate	34	O-ring
7	Swash plate	21	Spring pin	35	Time delay valve assy
8	Cylinder block	22	O-ring	36	Level gauge
9	Spring	23	Valve casing	37	Socket bolt
10	Ball guide	24	Check valve	38	Socket bolt
11	Retainer plate	25	Spring	39	Plug
12	Piston assy	26	Plug	40	Name plate
13	Friction plate	27	O-ring	41	Rivet
14	Separate plate	28	Plug	42	Socket bolt

2) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Disassemble drive shaft

① Unloosing socket bolt (time delay valve, 42) and disassemble time delay valve assy (35) from casing (1).

2209A8SM51

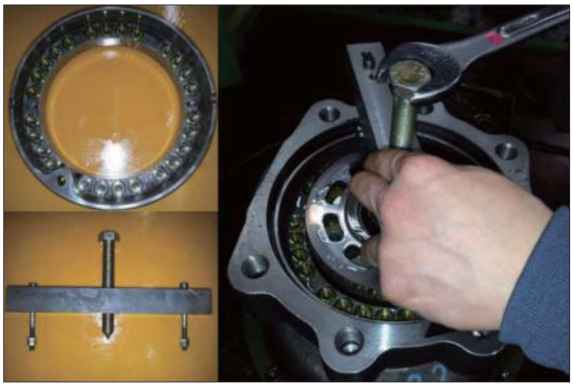
② Disassemble level gauge (36) from casing (1).

2209A8SM52

③ Hang valve casing (23) on hoist, unloose socket bolt (37, 38) and disassemble from casing (1).

2209A8SM53

④ Disassemble spring (16) and using a jig, disassemble parking piston (15) from casing (1).



2209A8SM54

⑤ Disassemble respectively cylinder block sub (8), friction plate (13), separate plate (14) from casing (1).

2209A8SM55

⑥ Disassemble swash plate (7) from casing (1).

2209A8SM56

⑦ Using a plier jig, disassemble snap ring (4) from casing (1).

2209A8SM57

⑧ Disassemble shaft assy (3), oil seal (2) and O-ring (18, 22) from casing (1).

2209A8SM58

(2) Disassemble cylinder block sub

① Disassemble piston assy (12) from cylinder block (8).

2209A8SM59

② Disassemble ball guide (10) and spring (cylinder block, 9) from cylinder block (8).

・Ball guide × 1EA
・Spring × 9EA

2209A8SM60

(3) Disassemble valve casing sub

① Disassemble spring pin (17, 21), valve plate (20), O-ring (22) from valve casing (23).

2209A8SM61

② Using a torque wrench, disassemble relief valve (30) from valve casing (23).

2209A8SM62

③ Using a torque wrench, disassemble plug (32) from valve casing (23) and disassemble O-ring (33, 34) and reactionless valve assy (31).

2209A8SM63

④ Using a torque wrench, disassemble check valve (24) from valve casing (23).

2209A8SM64

⑤ Disassemble plug (28), O-ring (29) from valve casing (23).

2209A8SM65

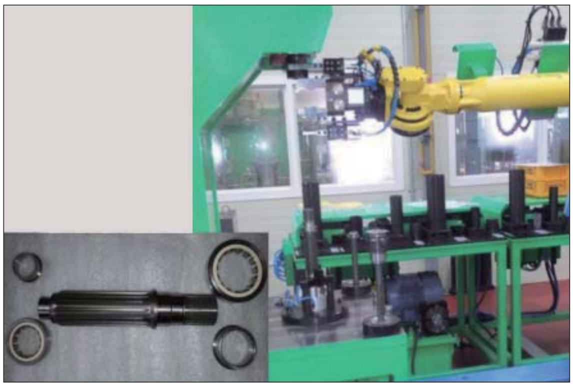
3) ASSEMBLING

(1) Assemble shaft sub

① Put roller bearing (3) on preheater and provide heat to inner race.
(Temperature in conveyor : 120°C for 3~5 minutes)

2209A8SM66

② Using a robot machine, assemble and press preheated roller bearing (3) into shaft (5).



2209A8SM67

(2) Assemble cylinder block sub

① Assemble 9 springs (cylinder block, 9) into cylinder block (8).

- Spring × 9EA

2209A8SM68

② Assemble ball guide (10) into cylinder block (8).

- Ball guide × 1EA

2209A8SM69

③ Assemble 9 piston assy (12) into retainer plate (11).

- Piston assy × 9EA
- Retainer plate × 1EA

2209A8SM70

④ Assemble parts of procedure ② and ③.

2209A8SM71

(3) Assemble valve casing sub

① **Assemble make up check valve sub**

Assemble check valve (24), O-ring (27), plug (26) in that order and then screw it torque wrench.

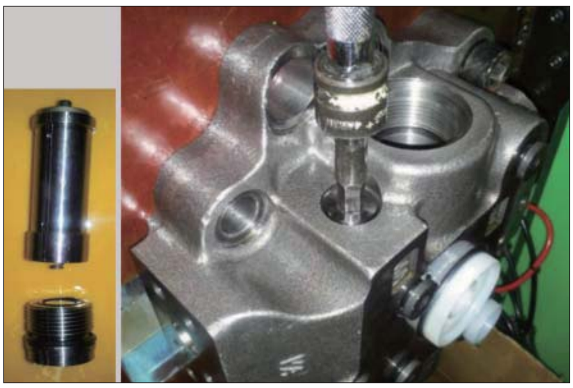
- Make up check valve × 2EA
- Spring × 2EA
- Plug × 2EA
- O-ring × 2EA
- Tightening torque : 38 ± 3.8 kgf · m
  (275 ± 27.5 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM72

② **Assemble reactionless valve assy**

Assemble reactionless valve assy (31), plug (32), O-ring (33, 34) in that order and then screw it a torque wrench.

- Reactionless valve assy (31) × 2EA
- Plug (32) × 2EA
- O-ring (33, 34) × 2EA
- Tightening torque : 22 ± 1.5 kgf · m
  (159 ± 11 lbf · ft)



2209A8SM73

③ Using a torque wrench, assemble relief valve (30) 2 sets into valve casing (23).
- Relief valve (30) × 2EA
- Tightening torque : 18±1.8 kgf · m (130±13 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM74

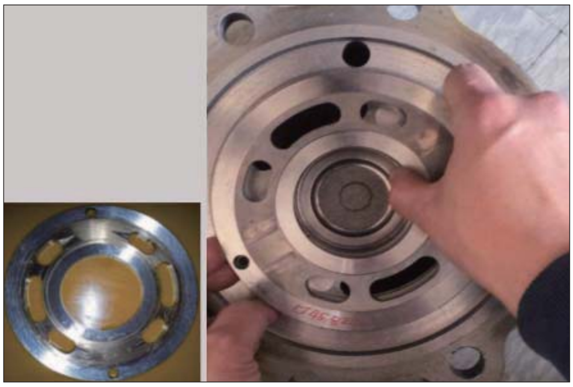
④ Assemble plug (28) and O-ring (27) into valve casing (23).
- Plug (28) × 3EA
- O-ring (27) × 3EA
- Tightening torque : 4.5±0.4 kgf · m (32.5±2.9 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM75

⑤ Assemble needle bearing (6) into valve casing (23) and assemble spring pin (17, 21) into valve casing (23).
- Needle bearing (6) × 1EA
- Spring pin (17, 21) × 1EA

2209A8SM76

⑥ Apply some grease valve plate (20) and assemble it into valve casing (23).



2209A8SM77

(4) Assemble drive shaft sub

① Using a jig, assemble oil sealing (2) into casing (1).

2209A8SM78

② Fit shaft sub (shaft+roller bearing) into casing (1).

2209A8SM79

③ Using a plier jig, assemble snap ring (4) to shaft (3).

・Snap ring × 1EA

2209A8SM80

④ Apply some grease swash plate (7) and assemble it into casing (1).

・Swash plate × 1EA

2209A8SM81

⑤ Insert O-ring (18, 19) into casing (1).
- O-ring (18) × 1EA
- O-ring (19) × 1EA


2209A8SM82

⑥ Assemble cylinder block (8) into casing (1).


2209A8SM83

⑦ Assemble separate plate (14) and friction plate (13) 4 sets into casing (1) and fit parking piston (15) into casing (1) by a jig or a press.
- Separate plate × 4EA
- Friction plate × 4EA
- Parking piston × 1EA


2209A8SM84

⑧ Assemble spring (parking piston, 16) into parking piston (15).
- Spring × 26EA


2209A8SM85

⑨ Lift up valve casing (23) on casing (1) by a crane and assemble it with socket bolts (37, 38).

- Tightening torque : 33±3.3 kgf · m (239±23.9 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM86

⑩ Assemble level gauge (36) and plug (39) into casing (1).

- Tightening torque (36) : 15±1.0 kgf · m (108.5±7.2 lbf · ft)
- Tightening torque (39) : 3±0.3 kgf · m (21.7±2.2 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM87

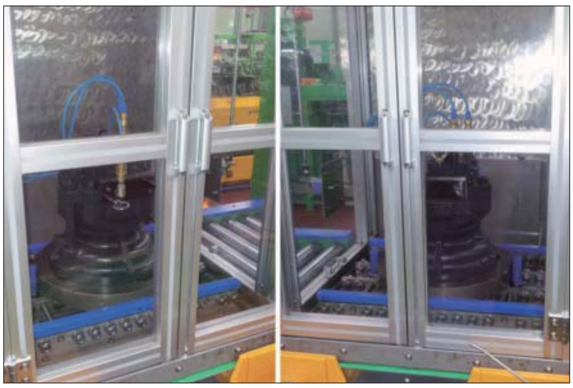
⑪ Assemble time delay valve assy (35) into valve casing (23) with socket bolt (42).

- Time delay valve × 1EA
- Socket bolt × 3EA
- Tightening torque (42) : 1.3±0.1 kgf · m (9.4±0.72 lbf · ft)

2209A8SM88

⑫ **Air pressing test**

Be sure of leakage, after press air into assembled motor and put it in water for 1 minute (pressure : 2 kgf/cm^2).



2209A8SM89

⑬ Leakage check

Place motor on a bench tester and after cleaning motor by color check No.1, paint No.3 and be sure of leakage.

2209A8SM90

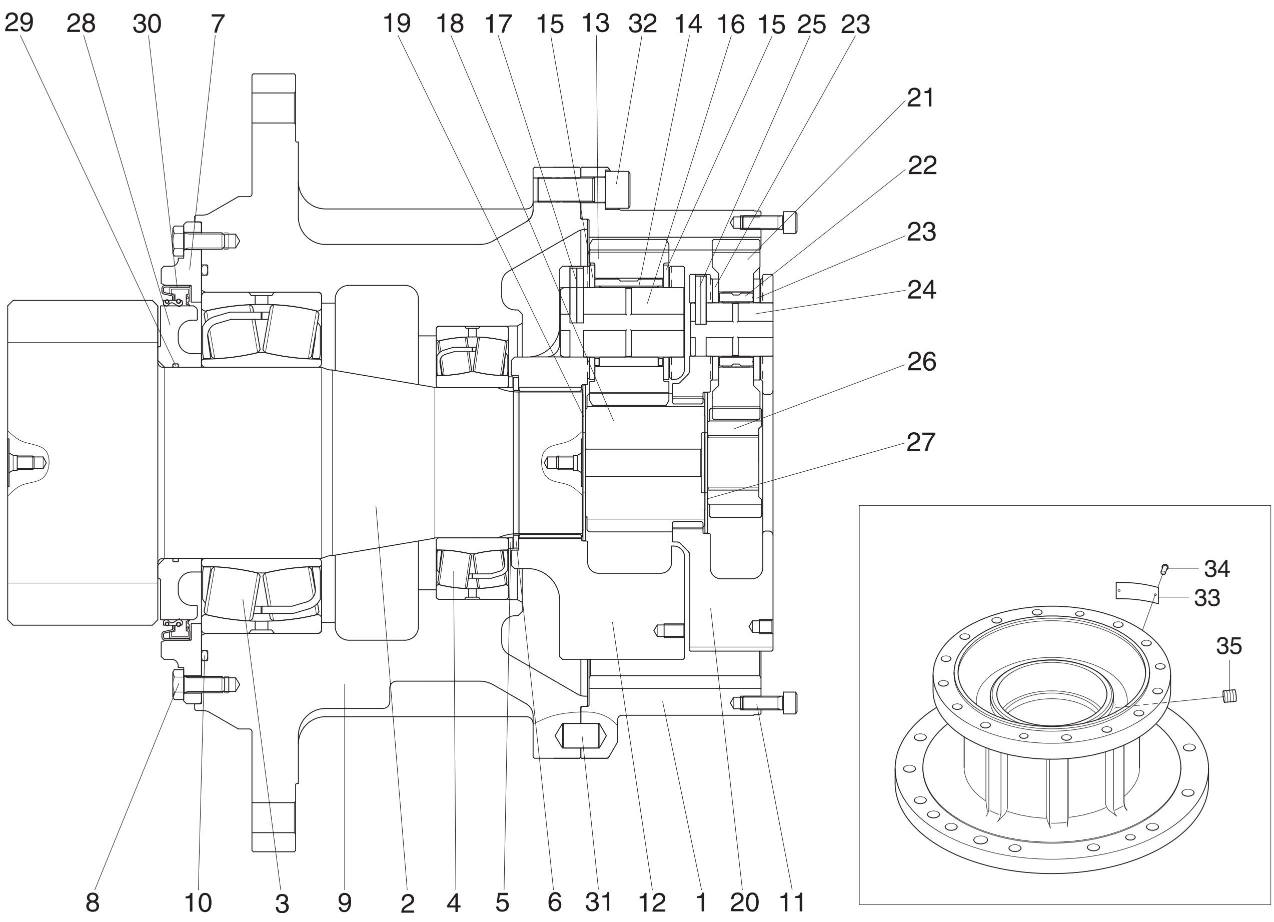
⑭ Mount test bench

Mounting motor a test bench, test the availability of each part.

2209A8SM91

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF REDUCTION GEAR

1) STRUCTURE



300L2SM03

1	Ring gear
2	Drive shaft
3	Bearing
4	Bearing
5	Thrust plate
6	Snap ring
7	Cover
8	Hex head bolt
9	Casing
10	O-ring
11	Hex socket head bolt
12	Carrier 2
13	Planetary gear 2
14	Needle bearing 2
15	Thrust washer 2
16	Carrier pin 2
17	Spring pin 2
18	Sun gear 2
19	Thrust plate 2
20	Carrier 1
21	Planetary gear 1
22	Needle bearing 1
23	Thrust washer 1
24	Carrier pin 1
25	Spring pin 1
26	Sun gear 1
27	Thrust plate 1
28	Sleeve
29	O-ring
30	Oil seal
31	Parallel pin
32	Hex socket head bolt
33	Name plate
34	Rivet
35	Plug

2) DISASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Preparation

① The reduction gear removed from machine is usually covered with mud.
Wash out side of reduction gear and dry it.

② Setting reduction gear on work stand for disassembling.

③ Mark for mating
Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.

⚠ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling not let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

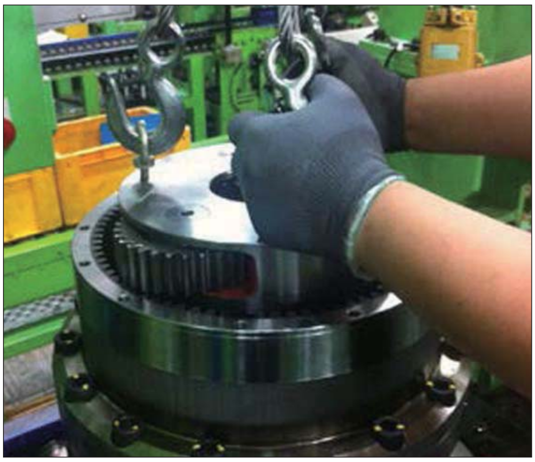
(2) Disassemble the swing motor

① Loosen the hex wrench bolt (11, M10), and remove the swing motor.

300L8SR01

(3) Disassemble the carrier No.1 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.1 (26), tightening eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.1 (20), then disassemble carrier No.1 assy.



300L8SR02

(4) Disassemble the carrier No.2 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.2 (18), tighten eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.2 (12), then disassemble carrier No.2 assy.

300L8SR03

(5) Disassemble carrier No.1 assy

① Hold jig to spring pin No.1 (26), then tap jig with a hammer, so that place spring pin in the center of carrier pin No.1 (24).

※ Do not reuse spring pin.

※ Disassemble method of carrier No.2 assy is same.

300L8SR04

② Disassemble carrier pin No.1 (24), then disassemble planetary gear No.1 (21), thrust washer No.1 (23) from the carrier No.1 (20).

300L8SR05

(6) Disassemble the ring gear (1).

① Separate ring gear (1) from casing (9).

※ Separate casing (9) by using the groove area because loctite is spread on joining surface of ring gear (1) and casing (9) to prevent oil leakage.

300L8SR06

(7) Disassemble the drive shaft (2).

① Using the snapring plier, disassemble snap ring (6),then disassemble thrust plate (5).

300L8SR07

② Turn casing (9) over to face pinion gear upward. Then unscrew hex.head bolt (8) 12ea by using the tool.

300L8SR08

③ Disassemble drive shaft sub assy by using the press machine.

※ The drive shaft sub assy fall all together, so becareful when removing it.

300L8SR09

④ Disassemble sph. roller bearing (3), cover (7), oil seal (30), and sleeve (28) from the drive shaft (2).

※ Do not reuse oil seal (30).

300L8SR10

(8) Separate sph. roller bearing (4) from casing (9) by using the press machine.

300L8SR11

3) ASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Even though assembly is accomplished by reversing disassembly steps, be careful of the following.

① Repair the damaged part when disassembling, prepare parts for the exchange in advance.

② All parts should be cleaned with cleaner, and dried with compressed air.

③ Sliding surface, O-ring, bearing and oil seal should be lubricated with clean hydraulic oil, prior to final assembly.

④ Replacement O-ring and oil seal with new parts is generally recommended.

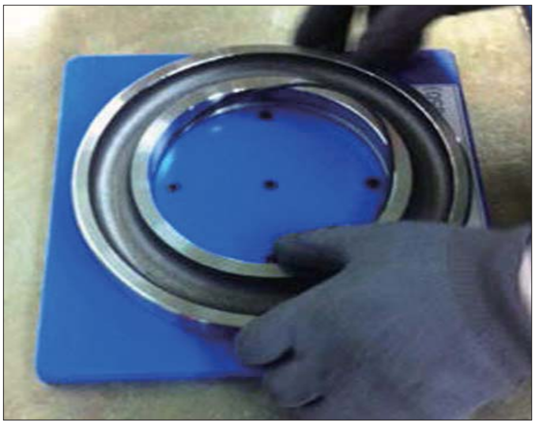
⑤ Use a torque wrench to make sure that assembly fasteners are tightened to specified values.

⑥ When assembling bolt, spread Loctite.

(2) Assemble drive shaft (2).

① After heating sleeve (28) for 5 minutes at 80 ~ 90˚C, assemble O-ring (29).

※ Apply grease to the O-ring (29) to prevent damage.



300L8SR12

② Apply grease to the oil seal (30), placed on the jig and then assemble it to cover (7) by using the press machine.

※ Apply grease to oil seal lip portion.
※ Be careful of damage of oil seal.

300L8SR13

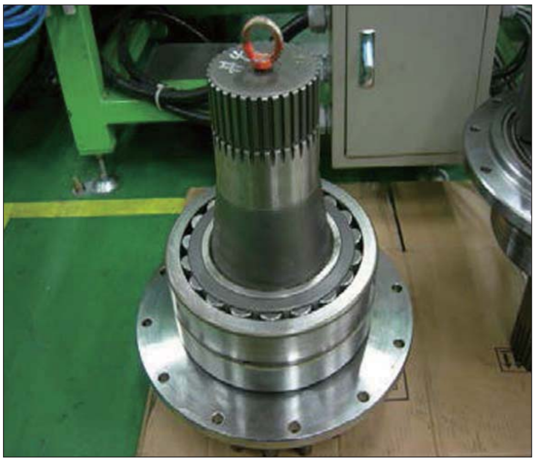
③ Assemble sleeve (28) and cover (7) to drive shaft (2).

※ Be careful of the direction of cover (7), sleeve (28).

※ Be careful of damage of oil seal.

300L8SR14

④ After heating sph. roller bearing (3) for 13 minutes at 80~90˚C and doing demagnetization, then assemble it to drive shaft (2).



300L8SR15

⑤ After assembling O-ring (10) on casing (9), assemble drive shaft sub assy by using a press machine.

300L8SR16

⑥ After spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (8), screw them to fix casing (9) and cover (7).

※ Tightening torque : 8.8±0.9 kgf · m
(63.7±6.51 lbf · ft)

※ Screwing when rust inhibitor is not remove.

300L8SR17

(3) Assemble sph. roller bearing (4).

① Assemble sph. roller bearing (4) to casing (9) by using the press machine.

300L8SR18

② After assembling thrust plate (5), assemble snap ring (6) to assembly groove of drive shaft (2).

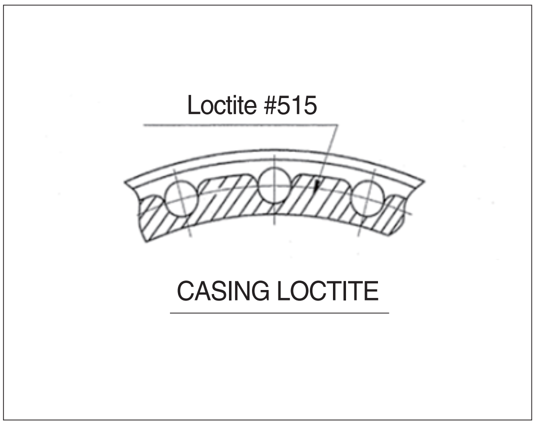
※ Assemble selected thrust plate (5) to make gap (0.1~0.3 mm) between snap ring (6) and sph. roller bearing (4).

300L8SR19

(4) Assemble ring gear (1).

① Spread the loctite #515 on the casing (9) with reference to the right detail view.

※ Loctite should not flow into casing (9).



300L8SR20

② After press-fitting parallel pin (31) with a hammer on the casing (9). Then spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (32), screw them.

※ Tightening torque : 33±3.3 kgf · m
(239±23.9 lbf · ft)

※ Screwing when rust inhibitor is not removed.


300L8SR21

(5) Assemble carrier No.1 assy

① After assembling thrust plate No.1 (27) on carrier No.1 (20), assemble thrust washer No.1 (23), planetary gear No.1 (21), then assemble carrier pin No.1 (24) by using the hammer.

※ Assembly method of carrier No.2 assy is same.

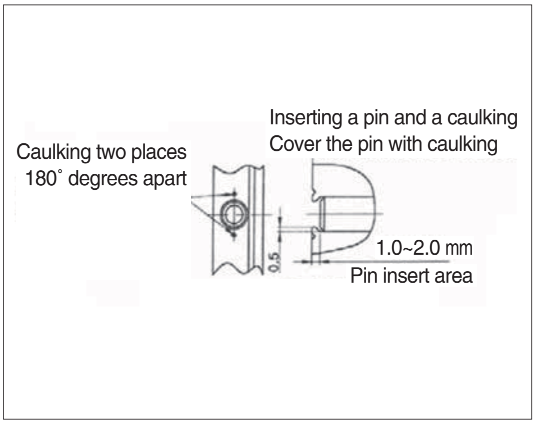

300L8SR22

② Assemble spring pin No.1 (25) to fix carrier No.1 (20) and spring pin No.1 (25) by using the jig.

300L8SR23

③ Caulking is performed on the assembled spring pin unit.

※ To cover pins, implement the caulking in two places that are located direction of 180 degrees around assembled spring pin No.1 (25).



300L8SR24

(6) Assemble carrier No.2 assy

① Lift pre-assembled carrier No.2 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1). Then, press-fit it with polyurethane hammer.

※ Check caulking and rotating state before assembly.

300L8SR25

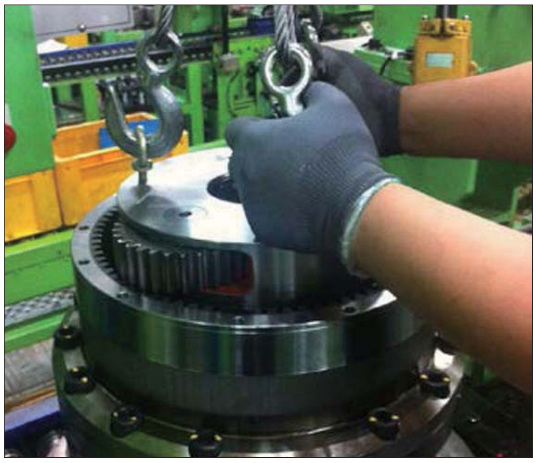
(7) Assemble sun gear No.2 (18).

① Shaking sun gear No.2 (18) from side to side, assemble it to carrier No.2 assy to engage with planetary gear No.2 (13).

300L8SR26

(8) Assemble carrier No.1 assy.
Lift carrier No.1 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1).

※ Check rotating state before assembly.



300L8SR27

(9) Assemble sun gear No.1 (26).

① Shaking sun gear No.1 (26) from side to side, assembleit to engage planetary gear No.1 (21). Then fill with gear oil 11 liter.

300L8SR28

GROUP 6 TRAVEL DEVICE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

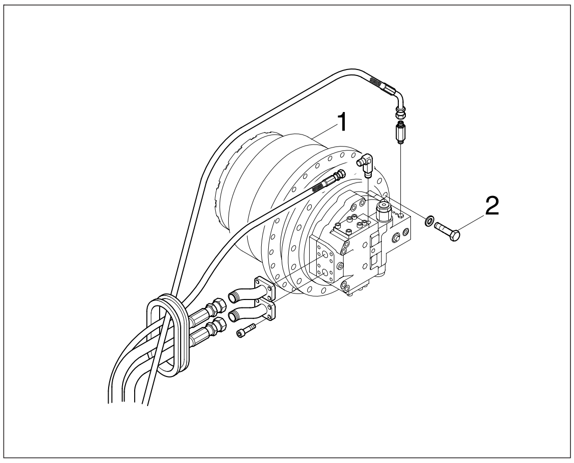
(1) Swing the work equipment 90˚ and lower it completely to the ground.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



(4) Remove the track shoe assembly.
For details, see removal of track shoe assembly.

(5) Remove the cover.

(6) Remove the hose.

※ Fit blind plugs to the disconnected hoses.

(7) Remove the bolts and the sprocket.

(8) Sling travel device assembly (1).

(9) Remove the mounting bolts (2), then remove the travel device assembly.
·Weight : 360 kg (790 lb)

2) INSTALL

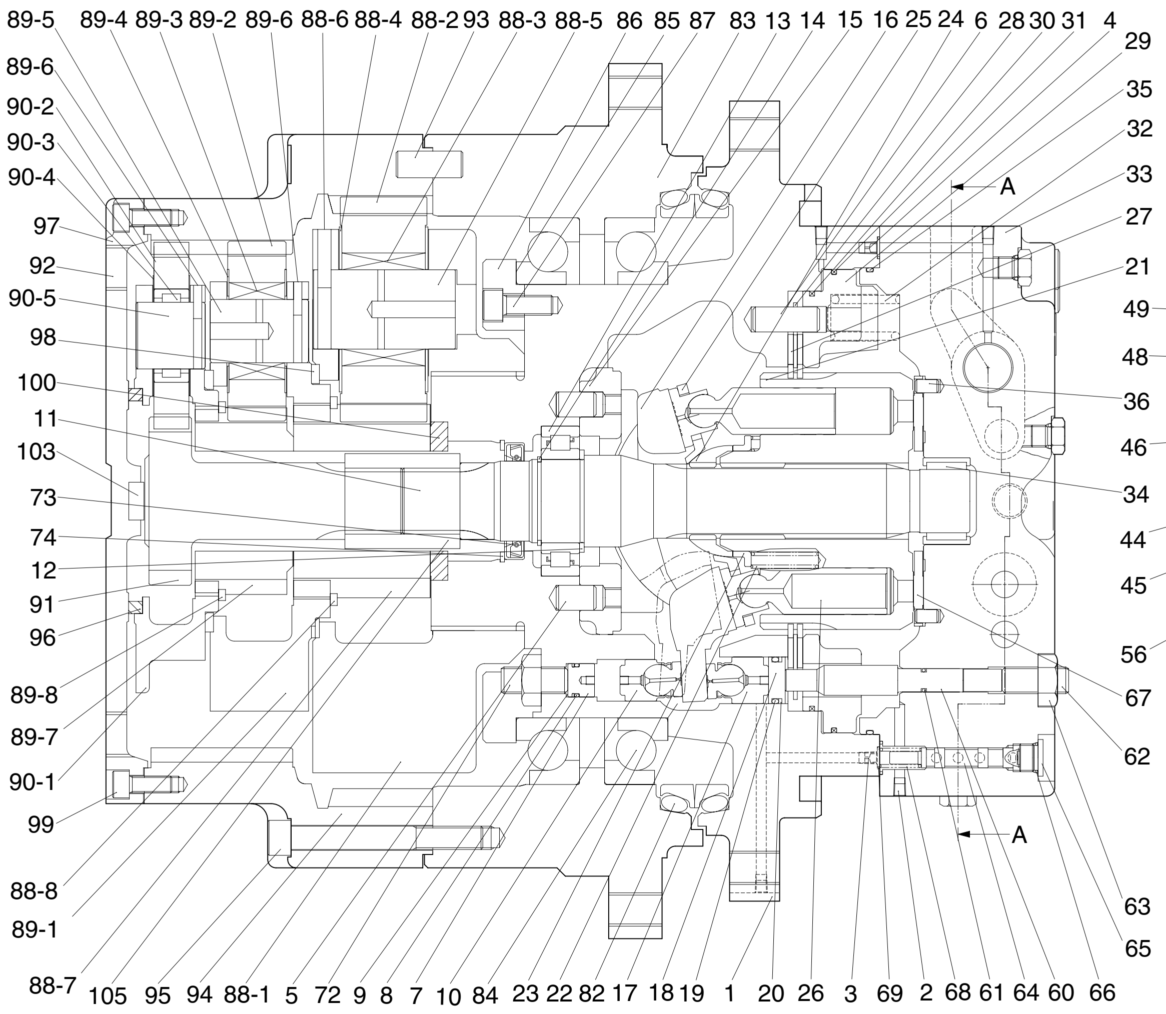
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

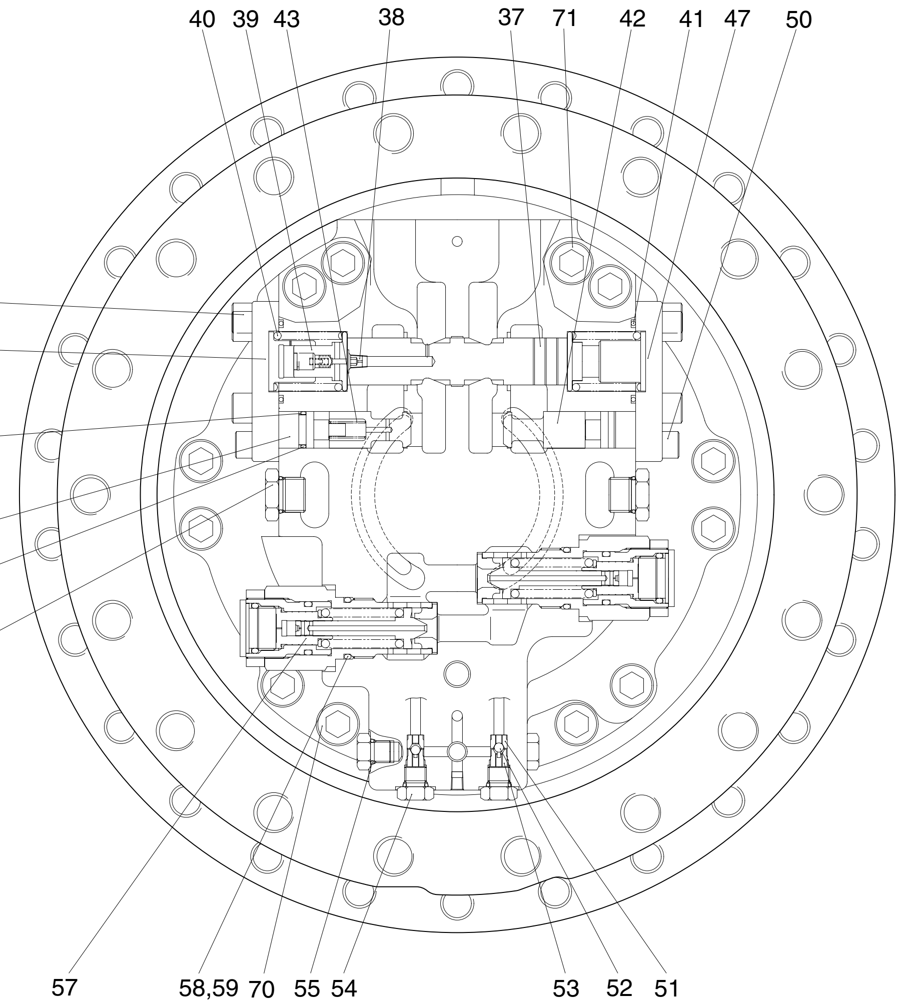
(2) Bleed the air from the travel motor.
① Remove the air vent plug.
② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
③ Tighten plug lightly.
④ Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
⑤ Tighten plug fully.

(3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. TRAVEL MOTOR

1) STRUCTURE





SECTION A-A

1	Casing	16	Plate	31	Ring	46	Back up ring	61	O-ring	83	Housing	89-1	Carrier No.2	92	Plug
2	Plug	17	Piston	32	Spring	47	Cap	62	Lock screw	84	Bearing	89-2	Planetary gear No.2	93	Lock pin
3	Screw	18	Stopper	33	Valve casing	48	Cap	63	Nut	85	Shim	89-3	Needle No.2	94	Ring gear
4	Screw	19	O-ring	34	Needle bearing	49	Socket bolt	64	Spool	86	Retainer	89-4	Thrust washer No.2	95	Bolt
5	Pin	20	Back up ring	35	O-ring	50	Socket bolt	65	Plug	87	Bolt	89-5	Pin No.2	96	Thrust ring No.1
6	Pin	21	Cylinder block	36	Pin	51	Seat	66	O-ring	88	Carrier No.3	89-6	Spring pin No.2	97	Cover
7	Stopper	22	Cylinder spring	37	Spool	52	Steel ball	67	Valve plate	88-1	Carrier No.3	89-7	Sun gear No.2	98	Thrust ring No.2
8	O-ring	23	Spacer	38	Screw	53	Stopper	68	Spring	88-2	Planetary gear No.3	89-8	Snap ring No.2	99	Bolt
9	Back up ring	24	Guide	39	Damping check	54	Plug	69	O-ring	88-3	Needle No.3	90	Carrier No.1	100	Motor ring
10	Piston	25	Plate	40	Spring	55	O-ring	70	Socket bolt	88-4	Thrust washer No.3	90-1	Carrier No.1	101	Thrust ring No.3
11	Shaft	26	Piston & Shoe assy	41	O-ring	56	Plug	71	Socket bolt	88-5	Pin No.3	90-2	Planetary gear No.1	103	Pad
12	Spacer	27	Plate	42	Plunger	57	Relief valve	72	Lock screw	88-6	Spring pin No.3	90-3	Needle bearing No.1	105	Coupling
13	Roller bearing	28	Plate	43	Spring	58	O-ring	73	Oil seal	88-7	Sun gear No.3	90-4	Thrust washer No.1		
14	Stop ring	29	Brake	44	Stopper	59	Back up ring	74	Lock ring	88-8	Snap ring No.3	90-5	Pin No.1		
15	Support	30	Ring	45	O-ring	60	Rod	82	Floating Seal	89	Carrier No.2	91	Sun gear No.1		

2) TOOL AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Name of tools	B-size	Name of part applied
Hexagonal L-Wrench	4	Plug(2), Orifice screw(3, 4, 38)
	8	Hex socket bolt(50), Lock screw(62, 72), Plug(65)
	10	Hex socket bolt(49)
	46	Hex(57)
Socket wrench/ spanner	19	Hp plug(54)
	24	Hex nut(63)
	27	Hp plug(56)
Snap-ring plier(for holes, axis)		Ring stop(14), Ring lock(74)
Solder hammer		Needle bearing(34), Pin(5, 6, 36)
Torque wrench		Size : 500, 3000
Jig for assembling oil seal		Oil seal(73)

(2) Tightening torque

NO.	Part name	Standard	Size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
2	Plug	NPTF 1/16	4	7~11	50.63~79.5
3, 4, 38	Orifice screw	NPTF 1/16	4	7	50.63
49	Hex socket bolt	M12	10	100	723.3
50	Hex socket bolt	M10	8	67	484.6
54	Plug	PF 1/4	19	37	267.6
56	Plug	PF 1/2	27	110	795.6
57	Relief valve	HEX 46	46	170~190	1230~1374
63	Nut	M16	24	240	1736
65	Plug	PF 3/8	8	75	542.4
70, 72	Hex socket bolt	M16	14	240	1736
71	Hex socket bolt	M16	14	240	1736

2. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

(1) Generally, hydraulic equipment is precisely manufactured and clearances between each parts are very narrow. Therefore, disassembling and assembling works should be performed on the clean place where dusts hardly gather. Tools and kerosene to wash parts should also be clean and handled with great care.

(2) When motor is removed from the host machine, wash around the ports sufficiently and put the plugs so that no dust and/or water may invade. Take off these plugs just before the piping works when re-attach it to the host machine.

(3) Before disassembling, review the sectional drawing and prepare the required parts, depending on the purpose and the range of disassembling.
Seals, O-rings, etc., if once disassembled, are not reusable.
There are some parts that should be replaced as a subassembly.
Consult with the parts manual in advance.

(4) The piston can be inserted to whichever cylinder block for the initial assembling.
However, their combination should not be changed if they are once used. To reuse them, put the matching mark on both pistons and cylinder block before disassembling.

⚠ **Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.**

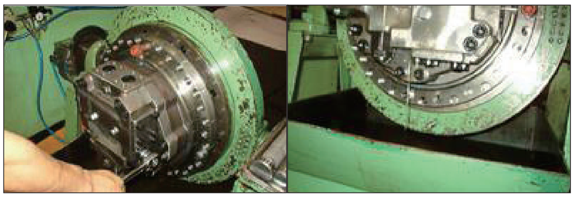
2) DISASSEMBLEING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Fix a hydraulic motor on jig with four pieces of bolts (M16×60L).

※ When rotating jig up to 90˚ in disassembling and assembling, fix a motor making drain plug (56) faced to the bottom.

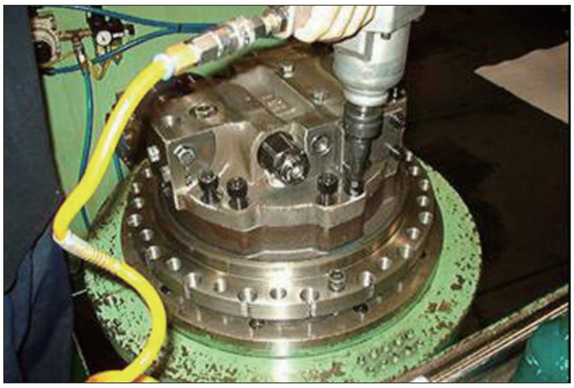
(2) After disassembling drain plug (56), let an oil in a case of a motor discharged.

※ Check whether manufactured chips or metal dust are added in a drain oil.



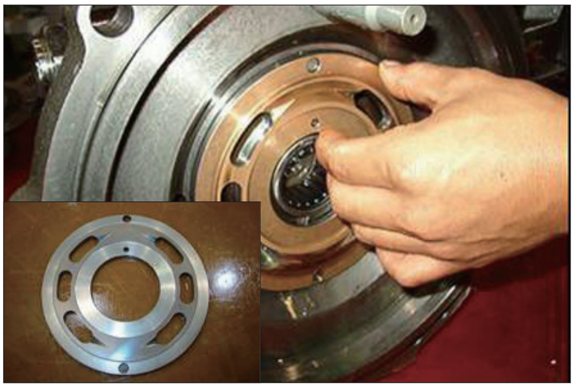
(3) In order to making the out-put axis of a hydraulic motor faced upward, disassemble ring lock (74) with a plier after rotating jig up to 90˚ in disassembling and assembling.

(4) Disassemble hexgon socket bolts (70, 71) holding valve casing.



(5) After detaching valve casing sub, disassemble valve plate (67).

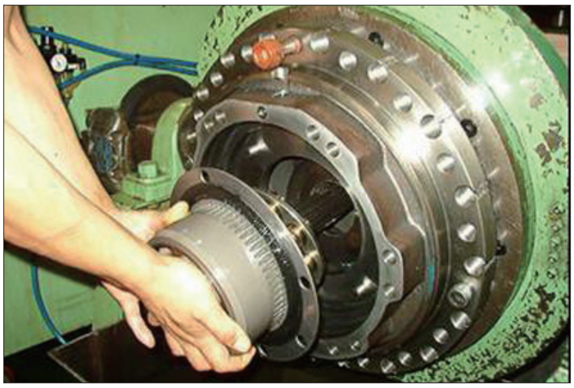
※ In case of serious abrasion of valve plate, exchange it to a new one.



(6) After taking brake spring (32) and then bonding two pieces of M16 bolts to brake piston (29), disassemble it pulling it upward.

※ There are 10 pieces of brake spring.

(7) First, rotate jig in disassembling and assembling up to 90˚, then let a motor faced toward the horizon. then disassemble a cylinder and piston sub.a

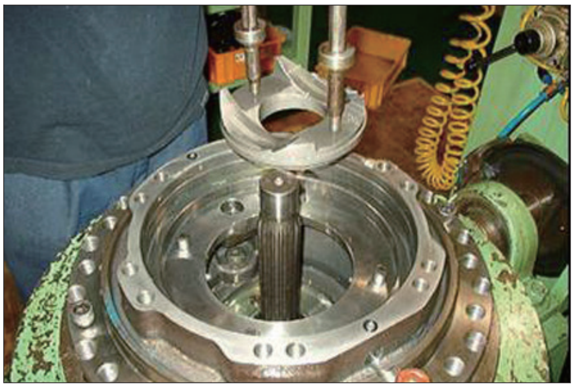


(8) Disassemble stopper L (18) and piston swash (17).

※ Piston swash : Use M5 bolt

(9) Disassemble swash plate (16).

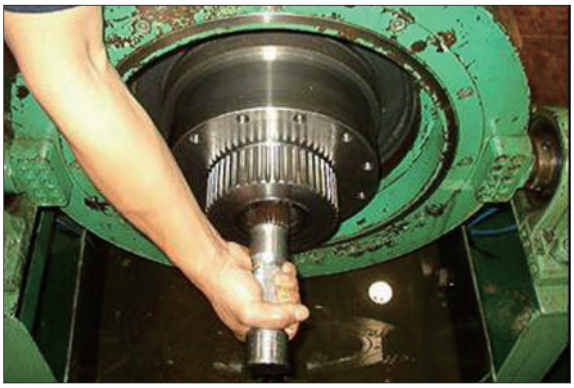
(10) After put M12 into support (15), disassemble support.



(11) Disassemble piston swash (10) and stopper (7).

(12) In order to making the turning axis (11) faced upward, put it way from shaft casing tapping the bottom of the turning axis with hammer, after rotating jig up to 90˚ in disassembling and assembling.

※ Try to deal with roller bearing (13) without any damage.

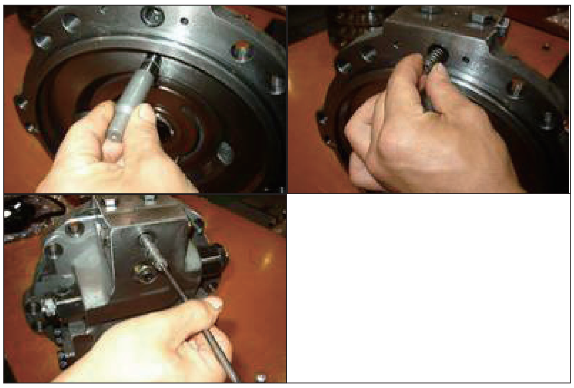


(13) Disassemble valve casing sub.

※ Try to deal with needle bearing (3) without any damage.

① Disassemble plowing road (60), automatic changeover spring (68), and automatic changeover spool (64).

※ Do not touch hexagon nut (63) for controlling the amount of an oil and lock screw (62).
If there is any abnormality on plowing spool and spring, exchange them to new ones.



② After unloading hexagon socket bolts (49, 50) and taking caps (47,48) away, disassemble parts of counter balance valve (37~46).

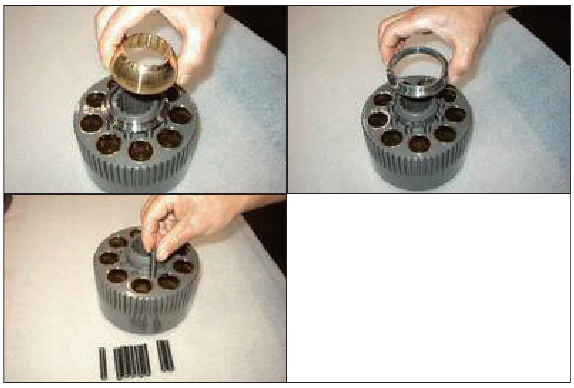
※ In disassembling counter balance valve, be careful of figuring out the directions such as the right or the left of finger.
If there is any abnormality in spool spring check, exchange it to new one.

(14) Disassemble cylinder sub.

① Disassemble set plate (25) and piston (26) sub.

② Disassemble friction plate (27) and lee plate (28) in cylinder block (21).

③ Dismantle ball guide (24), spacer (23), and cylinder spring (22).



3) ASSEMBLING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Assemble the sub of a turning axis.

① After assembling bearing spacer (12) into a turning axis (11), have cylinder roller bearing (13) thermal-reacted.

a. In the thermal reaction of cylinder roller bearing, use and induction heating apparatus and adjust the temperature as about 100˚C.

b. Deal moisturized copper part oil seal in a turning axis without any damage of it.

(2) Assemble ring stop (14) with a plier.

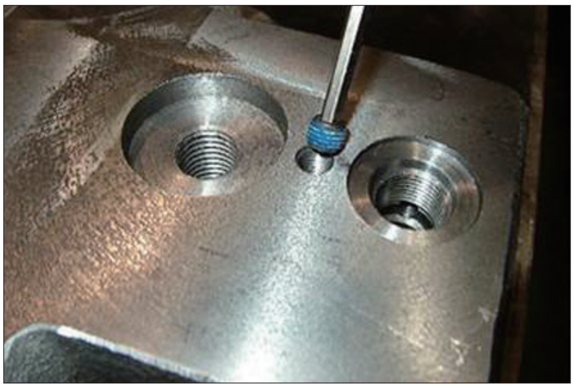
※ Be careful of the direction of ring stop. (The direction of round is the side of bearing)

(3) Assemble valve casing sub.

① Bond seven pieces of plug (2) in valve casing (33) with standard torque.

② After taping plug with seal taper and spread rock tight, assemble it.

· Tightening torque : 7~11 kgf · m (50.63~79.5 lbf · ft)



(4) Compress pin (36) into.

※ Using a hammer, make the height of pin 5 ㎜ from the a contact surface of valve plate.

(5) Assemble needle bearing (34).

(6) Assemble seat (51), ball (52), stopper (53), and hp plug (54) with O-ring (55), respectively.

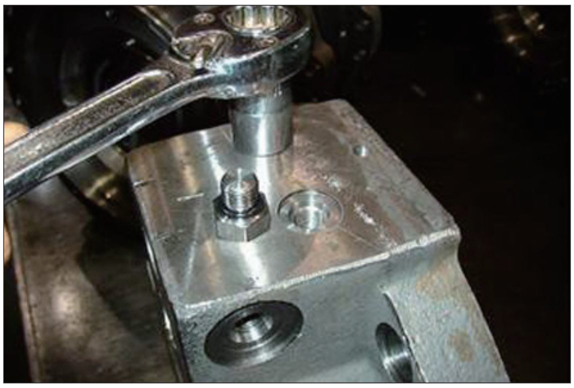
① Be careful of the procedure and direction of assembling seat and stopper.

· Tightening torque : 37 kgf · m (267.6 lbf · ft)

(7) Assemble hp plug (54) set up with O-ring (55).

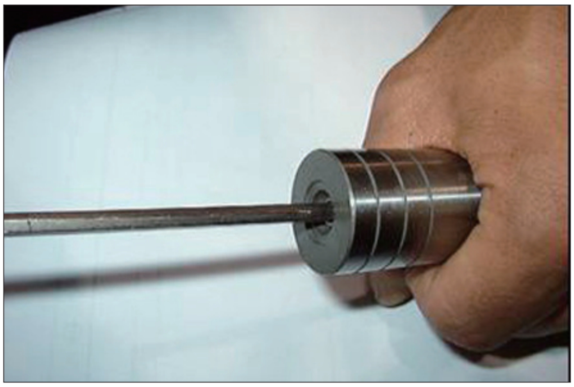
· 5sites

· Tightening torque : 37 kgf · m (267.6 lbf · ft)

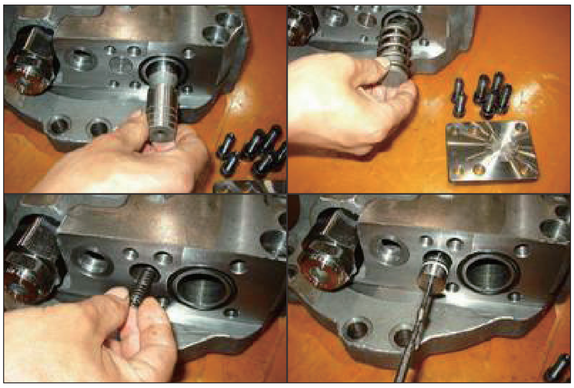


(8) Bond orifice screw (38) on the right and left side of spool c.b (37) with a standard torque.

- Tightening torque : 7 kgf · m (50.63 lbf · ft)

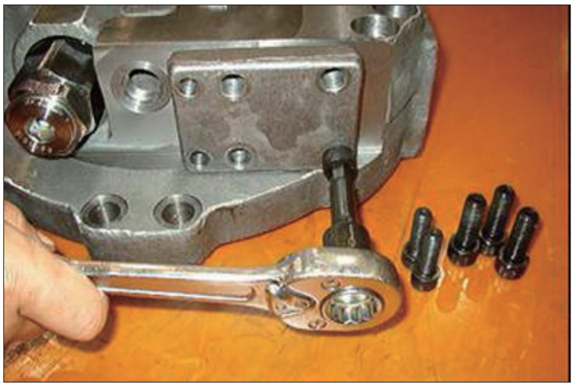


(9) Insert hold spool c.b (37) and damper check (39) into valve casing.



(10) Bond cap R (47) and cap L (48) with hexagon socket bolts (49, 50).

① Remember not to exchange cap R, L each other in assembling.
Tightening torque
- M12 : 100 kgf · m (item 49)
- M10 : 67 kgf · m (item 50)

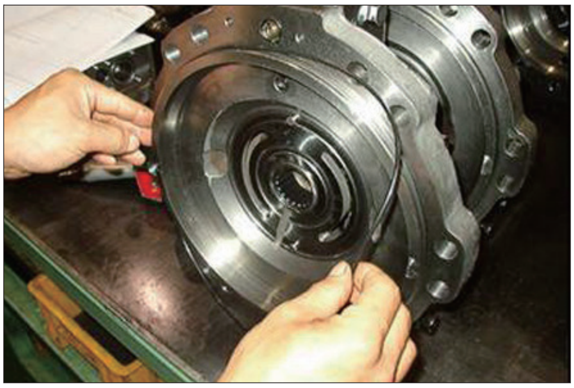


(11) After fastening with torque, insert automatic plowing spool (04), spring (68) and O-ring (69).

- Tightening torque : 75 kgf · m (542.4 lbf · ft)

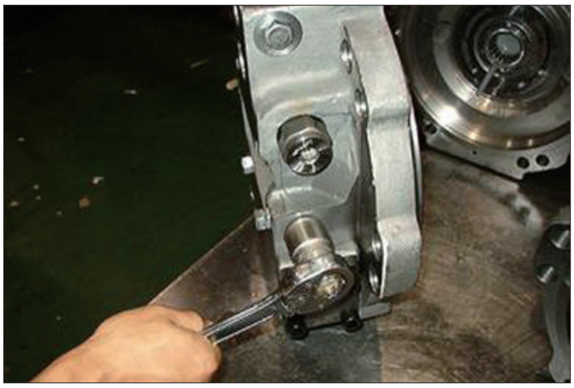
(12)Assemble swash road (60) inserted by O-ring (61).

(13)Insert O-ring (32) into valve casing.



(14)Bond drain plug (30) inserted by O-ring (31) with standard torque.

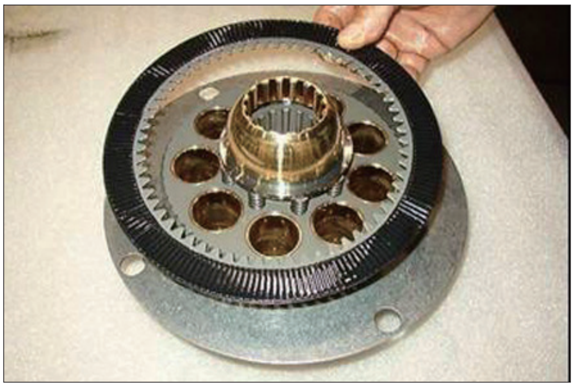
· Tightening torque : 100 kgf · m (723.3 lbf · ft)



(15)Assemble cylinder sub.

① Assemble cylinder spring (22), spacer (23), and spherical surface bush (24) into cylinder (21).
Set the position of spline of spherical surface bush and cylinder.

(16)Assemble friction plate (27) and separated plate (28) into cylinder.



(17)After insert piston shoe (26) into set plate (25), assemble it into cylinder.

(18)Using jig, compress oil seal (73) into shaft casing (01).

(19)Assemble the body of a motor.

① Bond seven piece of plug (02) in shaft casing plug with standard torque.

a. After taping plug with seal taper and spread rock tight, assemble it.

· Tightening torque : 7~11 kgf · m (50.63~79.5 lbf · ft)

(20) Using a hammer and a handle, compress pin (5, 6).

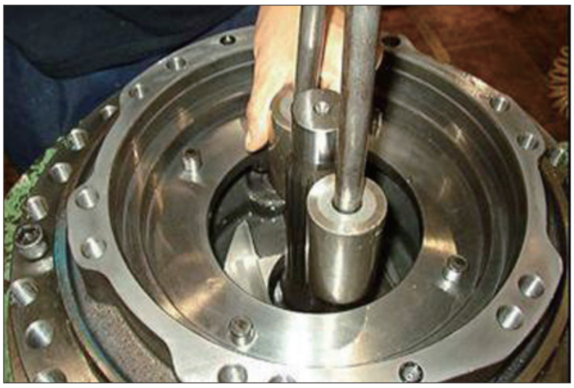
① Pin (5) : Set the height as 10 mm from the contact surface of a plate supporter. - 2pieces.

Pin (6) : Set the height as 19 mm from the manufactured surface of shaft casing. - 4pieces.

(21) Assemble sub of a turning axis.

(22) Assemble plate supporter (15) with M12 bolt.

※ Be careful of the direction of plate supporter driven.

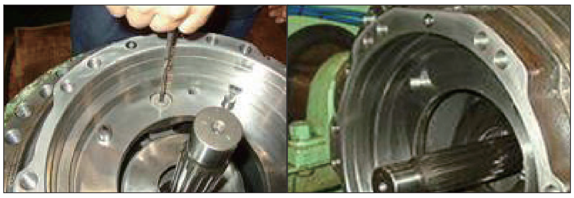


(23) Assemble plate (16) into plate supporter.

① Spread grease in moisturized copper part of plate.

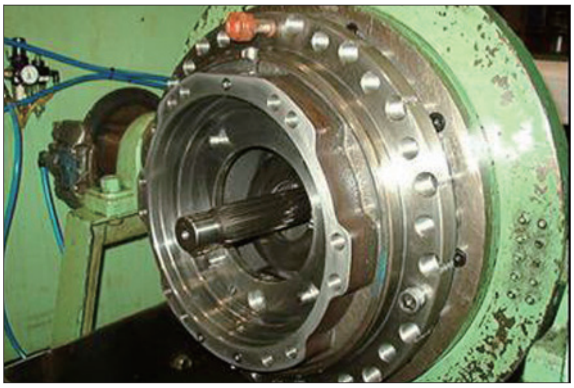
② Confirm the soft movement of plate.

(24) Assemble stopper L (36) combined by plowing piston (35) and O-ring (42).



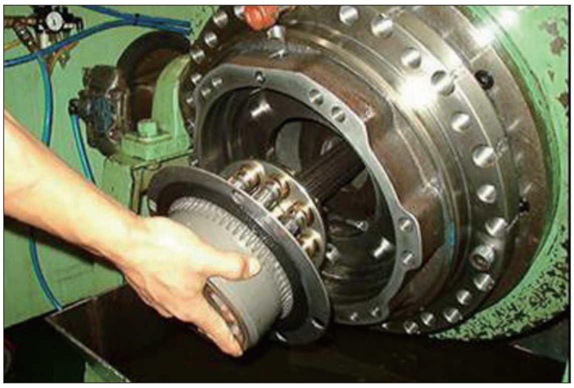
(25) Rotating dismantling and assembling jig up to 90˚ make shaft from perpendicular to horizontal.

※ Be careful that plate is not segregated from plate supporter.

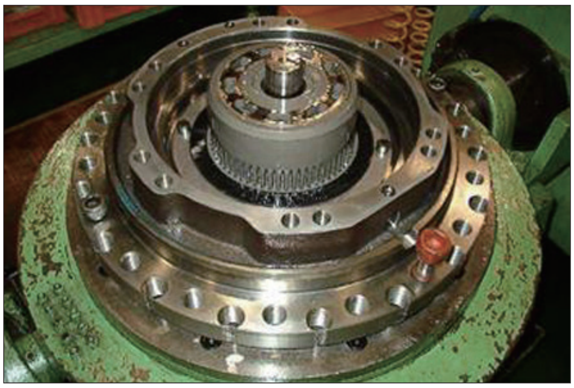


(26) Assemble cylinder sub.

※ Adjusting pin into holes of separated plate, assemble it.



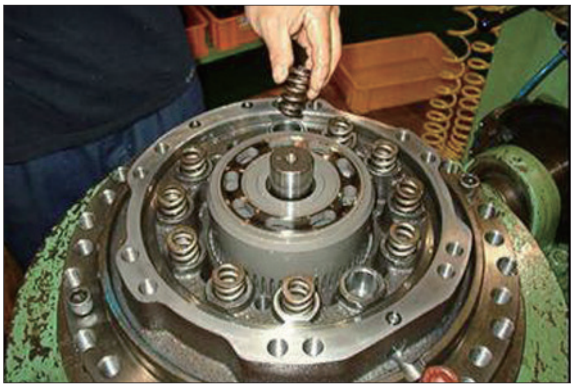
(27) Rotating dismantling and assembling jig up to 90˚, make the direction of shaft from the horizon to the perpendicular.



(28) Assemble piston ring (30), piston ring 252 (30) and 278 (31) into brake piston (29).

(29) Assemble brake piston into shaft casing.
※ Be careful of the direction of assembling brake piston.

(30) Assemble brake spring (32).
※ Quantity : Spring-10pieces, Holes-11pieces
※ Do not assemble on the top of brake piston.



(31) Insert O-ring (69), after fastening orifice screw (4) with standard torque.
· Quantity and size : (4) 2 pieces- ø 1.0
(56)1pieces- ø 1.5
· Tightening torque : 7 kgf · m (50.63 lbf · ft)

(32)After inserting valve plate (67) into valve casing, bond it into shaft casing with hexagon socket bolt (70).

① Spread grease on the back side of valve plate, in order for valve plate to be adhered well.

② Use a crane in assembling it into valve plate shaft casing.

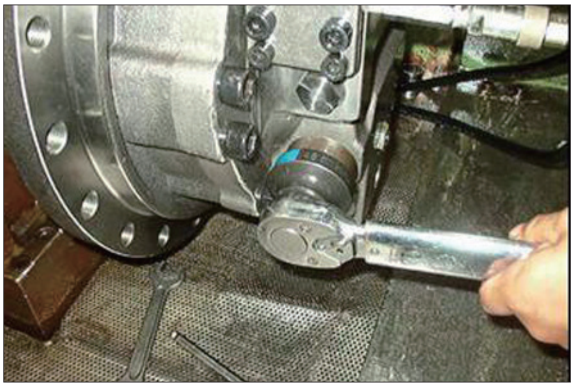
③ Set holes, ø5, of valve plate heading toward the port of the inlet and outlet of valve casing.

④ Spread grease in the side of plowing spool of plowing spring in order that plowing spring can not be detached.

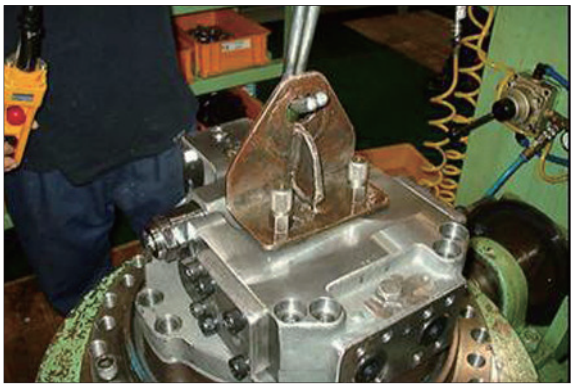
· Tightening torque : 240 kgf · m (1736 lbf · ft)

· Tightening torque : 180±10 kgf · m (1302±72.3 lbf · ft)

(33)Bond relief valve (57) with standard torque.



(34)Unloosen four pieces of bolts (M20×50L) fixing a motor and remove the motor away from jig.



3. DISASSEMBLING REDUCTION UNIT

1) Preparation for disassembling

(1) The reduction units removed from excavator are usually covered with mud. Wash outside of propelling unit and dry it.

(2) Locate reducer in order for drain port to be at the lowest level loosen taper screw plug of drain port, and drain oil from reduction gear.

※ While oil is still hot, inside of the unit may be pressurized.

⚠ Take care of the hot oil gushing out of the unit when loosening the plug.

(3) Mark for mating

Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.

2) Setting reduction unit (or whole propelling unit) on work stand for disassembling

(1) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (M10, 19) at 3 places from cover (17) almost equally each other, and then install eye bolts (M10).

Lift up the unit using them and place it on work stand with cover upward.

※ Take great care not th pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

3) Removing cover

(1) Remove the rest of hexagon socket head bolts(M10, 19) that secure ring gear.

Loosen all the socket bolts and then, disassemble cover.

(2) As the cover(17) is adhered to ring gear (14), dissemble ring gear (14) and cover (17) by lightly hammering slantwise upward using sharpen punch inserted between the cover and ring gear.

4) Removing No.1 carrier sub assy

(1) Remove No.1 sun gear

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.1 sun gear.

(2) Screw three eye bolt (M10, 15) in No.1 carrier and lift up and remove No.1 carrier assy.

5) Removing No. 2 carrier sub assy

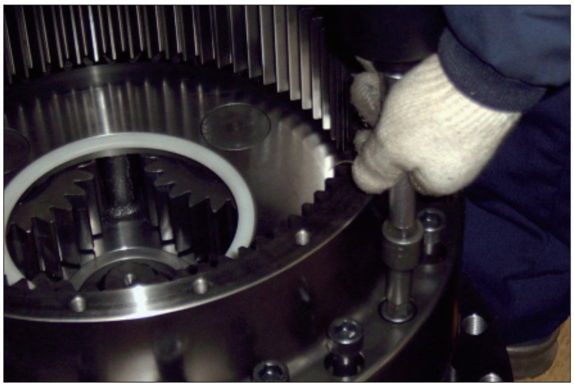
(1) Remove No.2 sun gear

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.2 sun gear.

(2) Screw three M10 eye bolt in No.2 carrier and lift up and remove No.2 carrier assy.

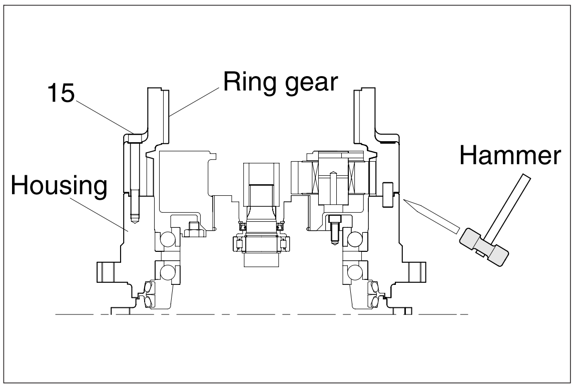
6) Removing ring gear

(1) Remove hexagon socket head bolts(M14, 15) that secure ring gear and housing.

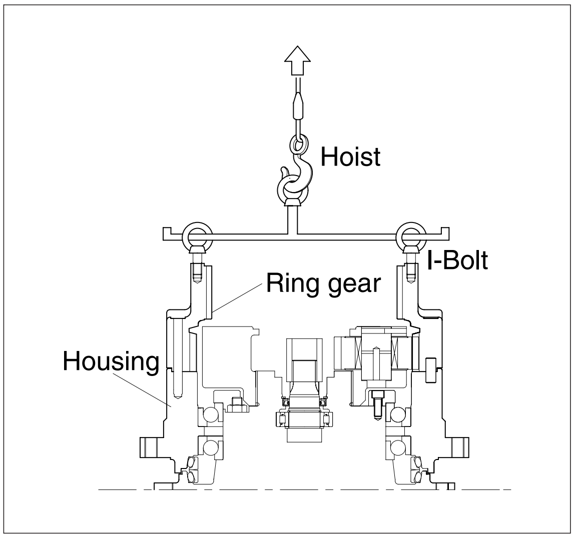


(2) As the ring gear (14) is adhered to housing (3), disassemble ring gear (14) and housing (3) by lightly hammering slantwise upward using sharpen punch inserted between the ring gear and housing.

※ Carefully disassembling ring gear not to make scratch on it.



(3) Screw three eye bolt (M10) in ring gear and lift up and remove it.

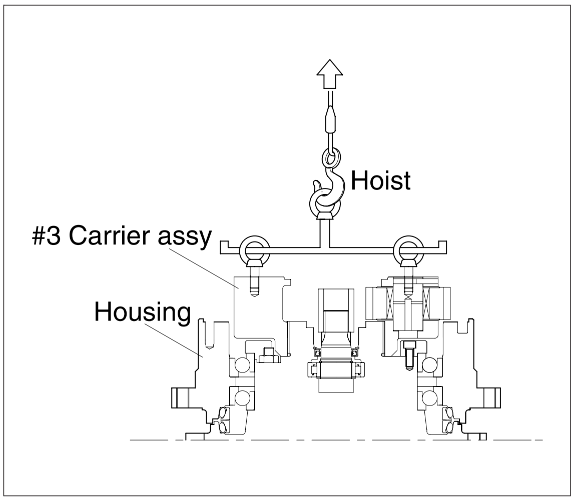


7) Remove No.3 carrier sub assy

(1) Removing No.3 sun gear

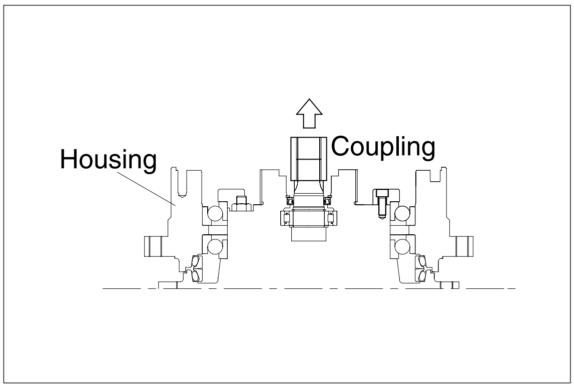
※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when disassembling No.3 sun gear.

(2) Screw three eye bolt (M10) in No.3 carrier and lift up and remove No.3 carrier assy.



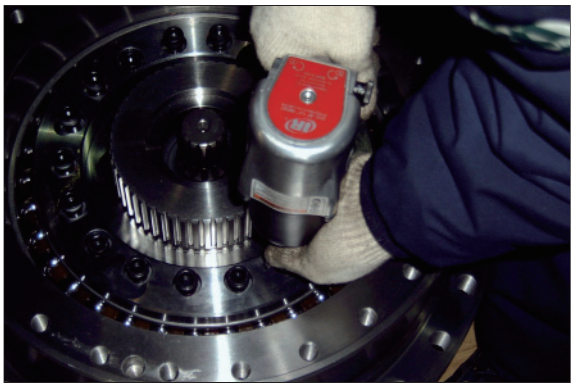
8) Remove coupling

(1) Remove coupling

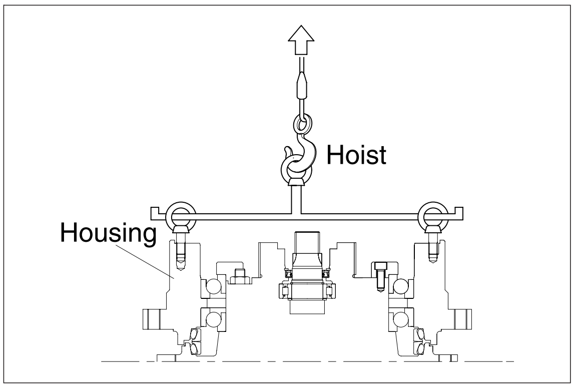


9) Remove motor ring
(1) Remove motor ring using hand.

10) Removing retainer & shim
(1) Remove hexagon socket (M12) head bolts that retainer and motor.
(2) Remove retainer & shim.

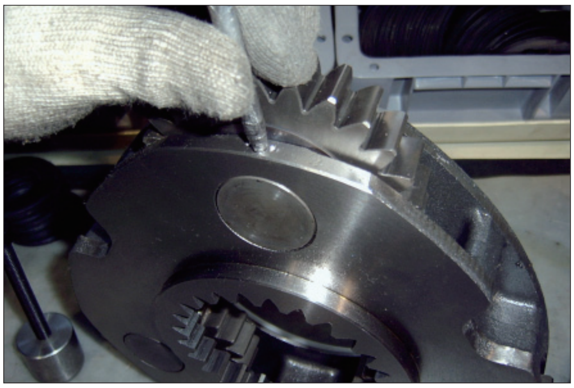


11) Removing housing sub assy
(1) Screw eye bolt (M14) in housing and lift up housing assembly including angular bearing and floating seal.



12) Removing floating seal
(1) Lift up a piece of floating seal of motor side.

13) Dissembling housing assembly
(1) After turning housing, lift up a piece of floating seal from housing and then remove it.
※ Don't disassemble angular bearing.

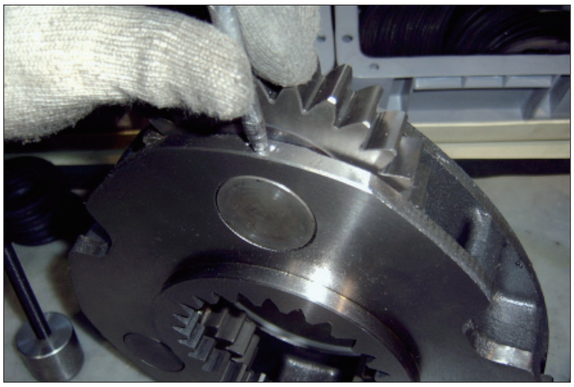


14) Dissembling No.1 carrier

(1) Remove thrust ring (16) from carrier.

(2) Knock spring pin (89-6) fully into No.1 pin (90-5).

(3) Remove planetary, thrust washer, No.1 pin, bearing from carrier.



15) Disassembling No.2,3 carrier

(1) Disassemble (14) carriers, using the same method for No.1 carrier assembly.

6. ASSEMBLING REDUCTION GEAR

- General precautions

  Clean every part by kerosene and dry them by air blow.

  Surfaces to be applied by locktite must be decreased by solvent.

  Check every part for any abnormals.

  Each hexagon socket head bolt should be used with locktite No. 242 applied on its threads.

  Apply gear oil slightly on each part before assembling.

  Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts or tools while assembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

Inspection before reassembling

Thrust washer

· Check if there are seizure, abnormal wear or uneven wear.

· Check if wear is over the allowable limit.

Gears

· Check if there are pitting or seizure on the tooth surface.

· Check if there are cracks on the root of tooth by die check.

Bearings

· Rotate by hand to see if there are something unusual such as noise or uneven rotation.

Floating seal

· Check flaw or score on sliding surface or on O-rings.

1) Assembling No.1 carrier

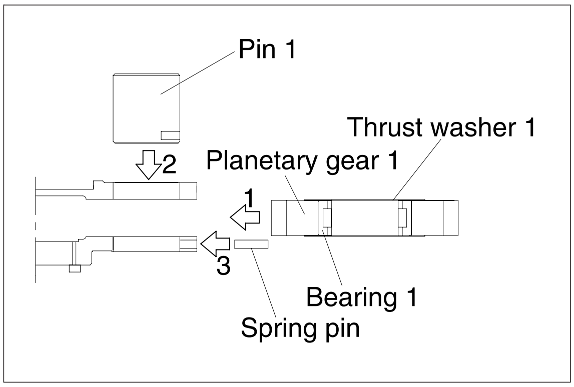
(1) Put No.1 carrier (90-1) on a flat place.

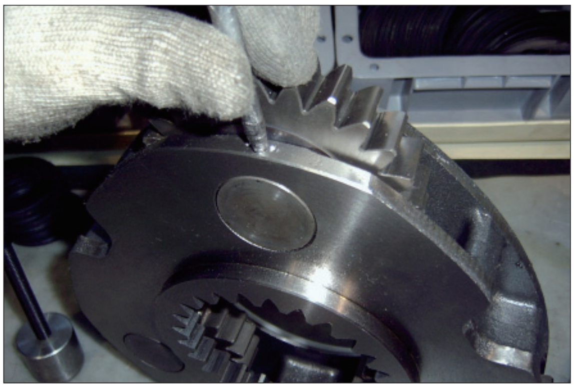
(2) Install No.1 needle bearing (90-3) into No.1 planetary gear (90-2), put 2 ea of No.1 thrust washer (90-4) on both sides of bearing, and then install it into carrier.

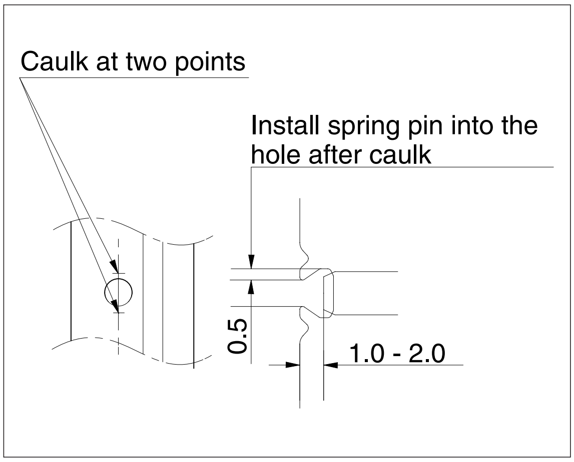
(3) Install No.1 pin (90-5) into No.1 carrier where the holes for No.1 pin (90-5) are to be in line with those of No.1 carrier, and then, install spring pins into the holes.

(4) Caulk carrier holes as shown on the picture.

(5) Assembly ring thrust (96) into carrier.







2) Assembling No.2 carrier

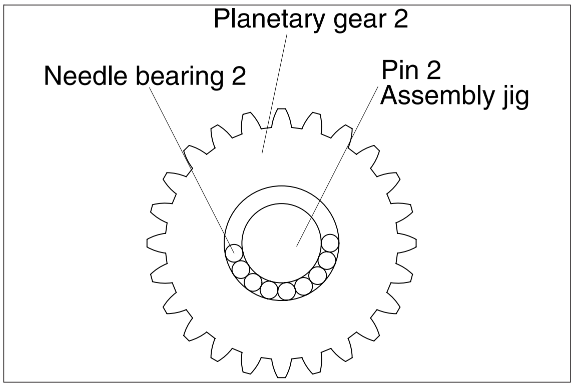
(1) Make No.2 planetary gear (89-2) vertical, assemble 8-9 ea of No.2 needle (89-3), and then, assemble the remaining No.2 needle by use of the assembly jig for No.2 pin (89-5).

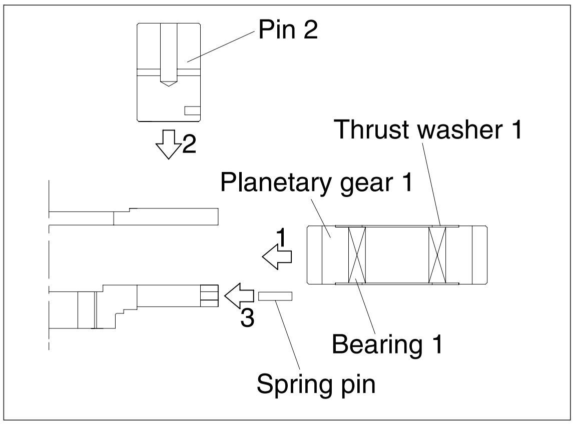
(2) Remove out the assembly jig for No.2 pin and assemble 2 ea of No.2 thrust washer (89-4) into No.2 carrier (89-1).

(3) Insert No.2 pin (89-5) into carrier where the holes of No.2 pin (89-5) are in line with those of carrier.

(4) Hammer spring pin (89-6) to insert into carrier hole and No.2 pin hole, and then, caulk. Assemble 2 sets using the same method.

(5) Assemble ring thrust (98) into carrier.





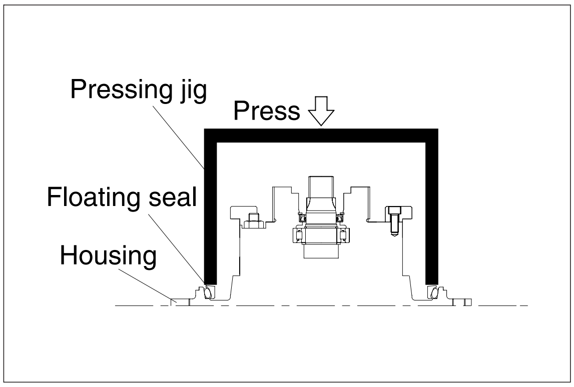
3) Assembling No.3 carrier

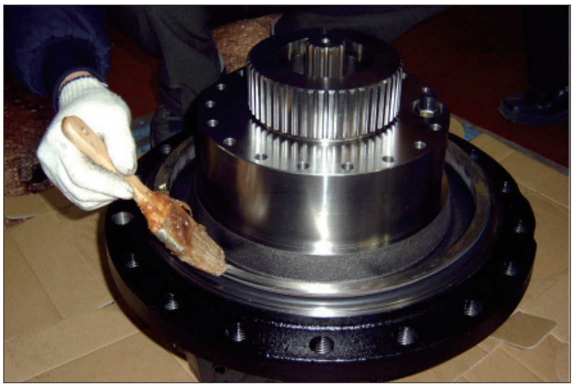
(1) Assemble 4 sets, using the same method for assembly of No.2 carrier.

4) Installing floating seal

(1) Assemble floating seal into motor by use of pressing jig.

(2) Grease the contact parts for floating seal which is assembled into motor.



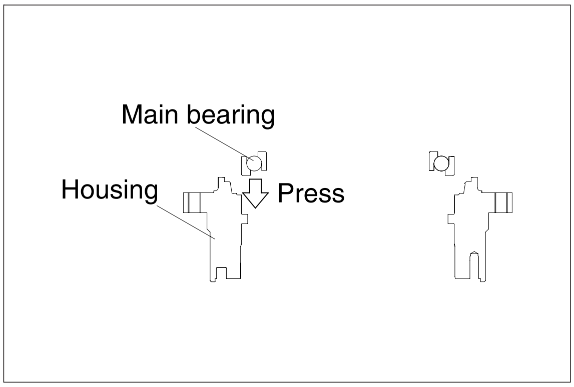


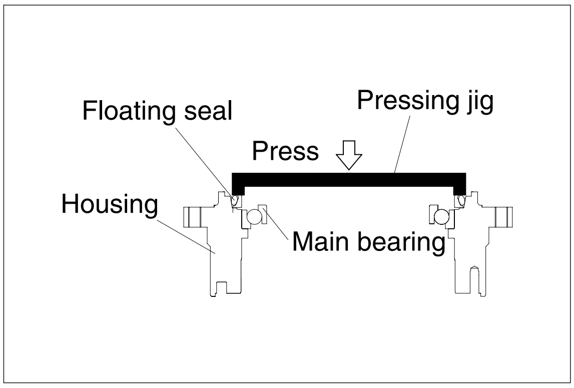
5) Assembling housing

(1) Heat housing at 60~70˚C while clearing it out and then, assemble bearing.

(2) Assemble floating seal into housing by use of pressing jig as shown on the picture.

※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when assembling bearing and floating seal.



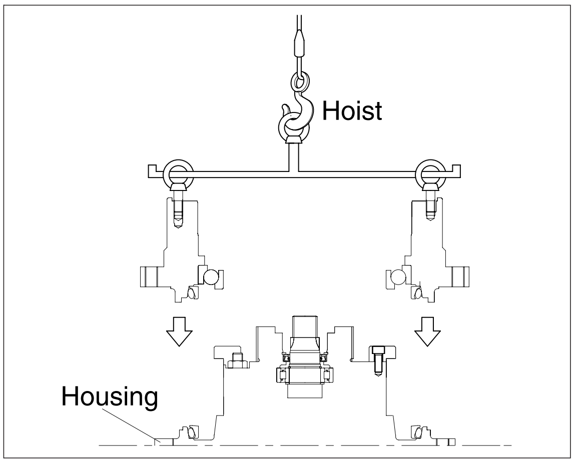


6) Installing housing assembly

(1) Install 2 ea of eye bolt (M14) into housing assembly.

(2) Assemble housing into motor by use of hoist and eye bolt.

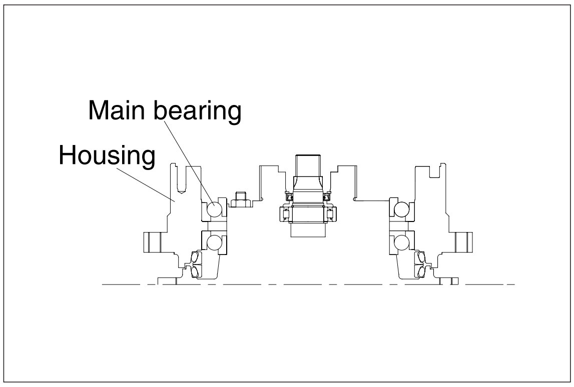
※ Be sure to tighten eye bolt deep enough.



7) Installing main bearing

(1) Heat main bearing at 60~70˚C and then, install.

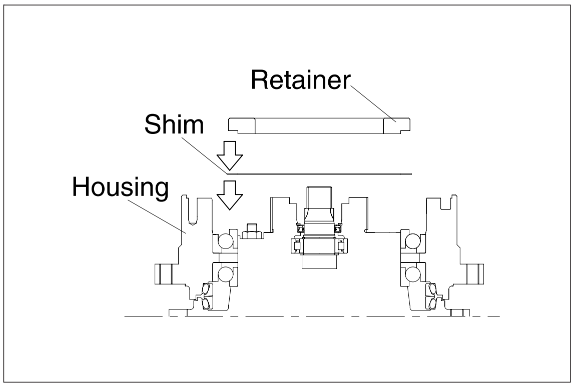
※ Be sure to maintain it vertical with the ground when assembling bearing.

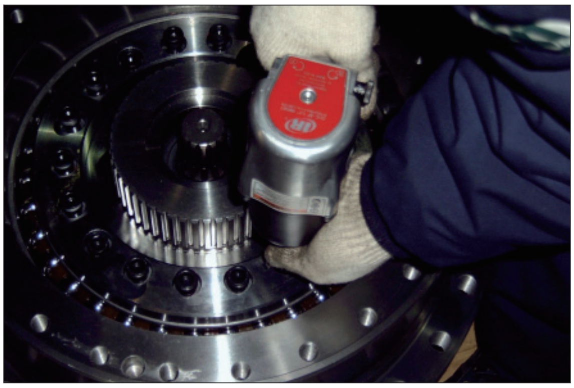


8) Installing retainer (86) and shim (85)

(1) Measure clearance between main bearing and retainer by use of jig to decide the thickness of shim and select and appropriate shim, and then, assemble retainer.

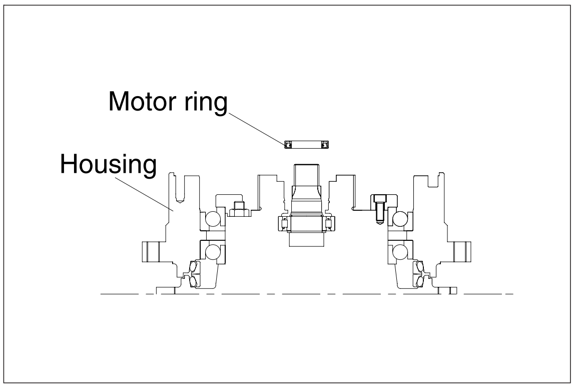
(2) Apply locktite (#242) on hexagon socket head bolt (M12), and then, bolt.





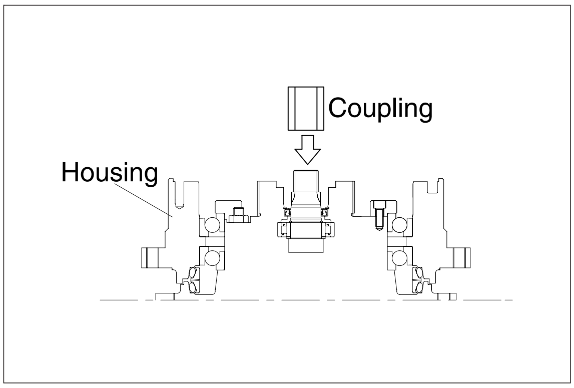
9) Installing motor ring

(1) Insert motor ring into motor to install.



10) Installing coupling

(1) Install coupling on spline of the motor.

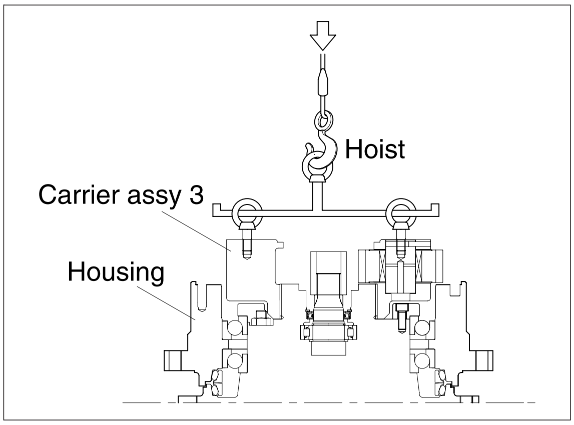


11) Installing No.3 carrier sub assy

(1) Install eye bolt(M10) on No.3 carrier assembly.

(2) Lift No.3 carrier assembly and then, assemble it into reducer.

※ Match it vertical with the spline of the motor and the, slowly lower.



12) Installing ring gear

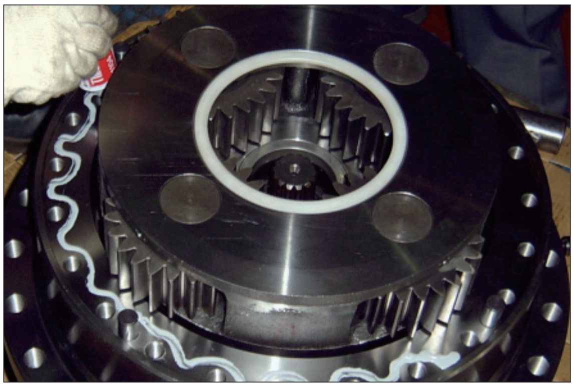
(1) Apply three bond #1104 (Locktite #515) on housing for ring gear without gap.

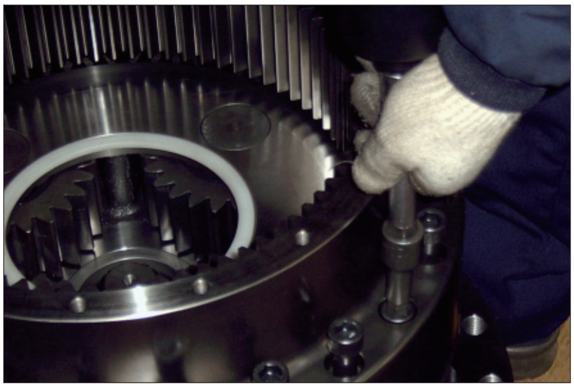
(2) Insert lock pin into housing hole.

(3) Install eye bolt (M12) on the tap for cover of ring gear.

(4) Lift ring gear and then, assemble into housing.

(5) Apply locktite to hexagon socket bolt (M14) and then, bolt, having appropriate torque.

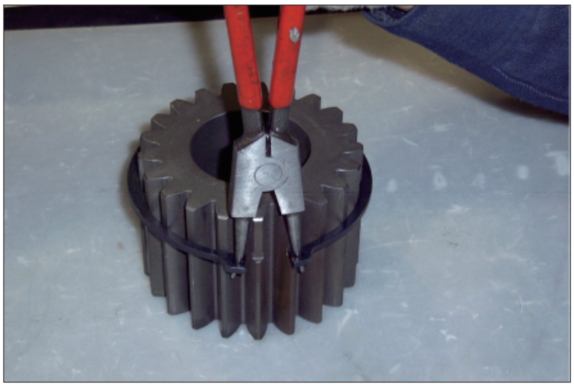




13) Installing No.3 sun gear (88-7)

(1) Install snap ring (88-8) in No.3 sun gear(88-7) by use if snap ring flier.

(2) Install No.3 sun gear on the spline of No.3 carrier, matching teeth of them.



14) Installing No.2 carrier sub assy

(1) Install eye bolt (M10) on No.2 carrier assembly.

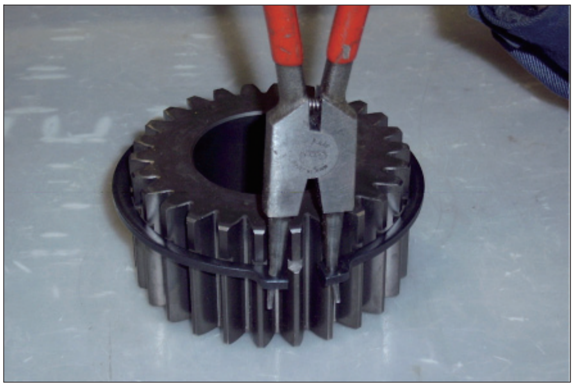
(2) Lift No.2 carrier assembly and then, slowly put it down on ring gear.

(3) Rotate planetary gear by hands and install in ring gear.

15) **Installing No.2 sun gear** (89-7)

(1) Install snap ring (89-8) on No.2 sun gear (89-7) by use of snap ring flier.

(2) Install No.2 sun gear on the spline of No.2 carrier and No.2 planetary gear, matching teeth of them.



16) **Installing No.1 carrier sub assy**

(1) Install eye bolt (M10) on No.1 carrier assembly.

(2) Lift No.1 carrier assembly and then, put it down on ring gear slowly.

(3) Rotate planetary gear by hands to install on ring gear, matching their teeth.

17) **Installing No.1 sun gear (91)**

(1) Put down No.1 sun gear on No.1 carrier, maintaining it vertical with spline of coupling.

(2) Install No.1 sun gear on No.1 planetary gear, matching their teeth.

18) Installing cover (97)

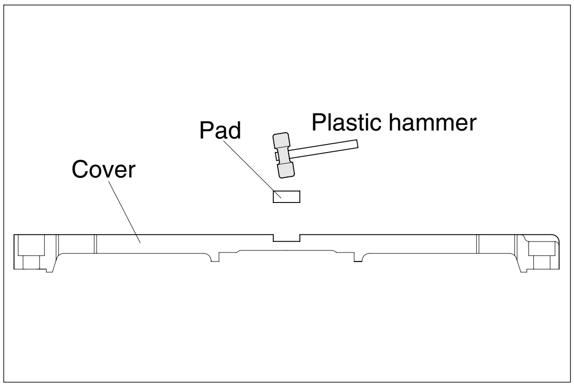
(1) Beat pad with plastic hammer, and press it into the center of cover.

(2) Apply three bond #104 (locktite #515) on the ring gear for without gap.

(3) Put cover on ring gear, apply locktite (#242) in hexagon socket head bolt (M10), and then, bolt.

(4) Fill gear oil (8L) into drain port.

(5) Apply sealing tape (teflon) on PT3/4 plug and then, bolt.



GROUP 7 RCV LEVER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

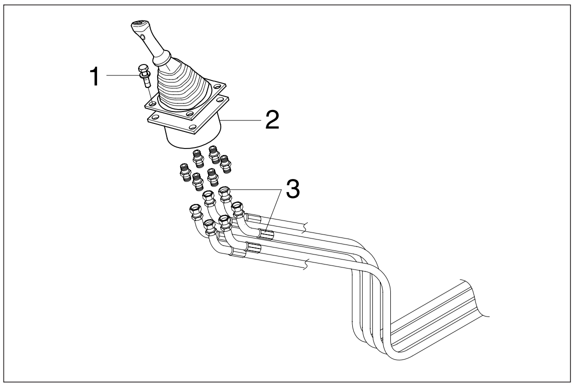
1) REMOVAL

(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.



(4) Loosen the socket bolt (1).

(5) Remove the cover of the console box.

(6) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3).

(7) Remove the pilot valve assembly (2).

※ When removing the pilot valve assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

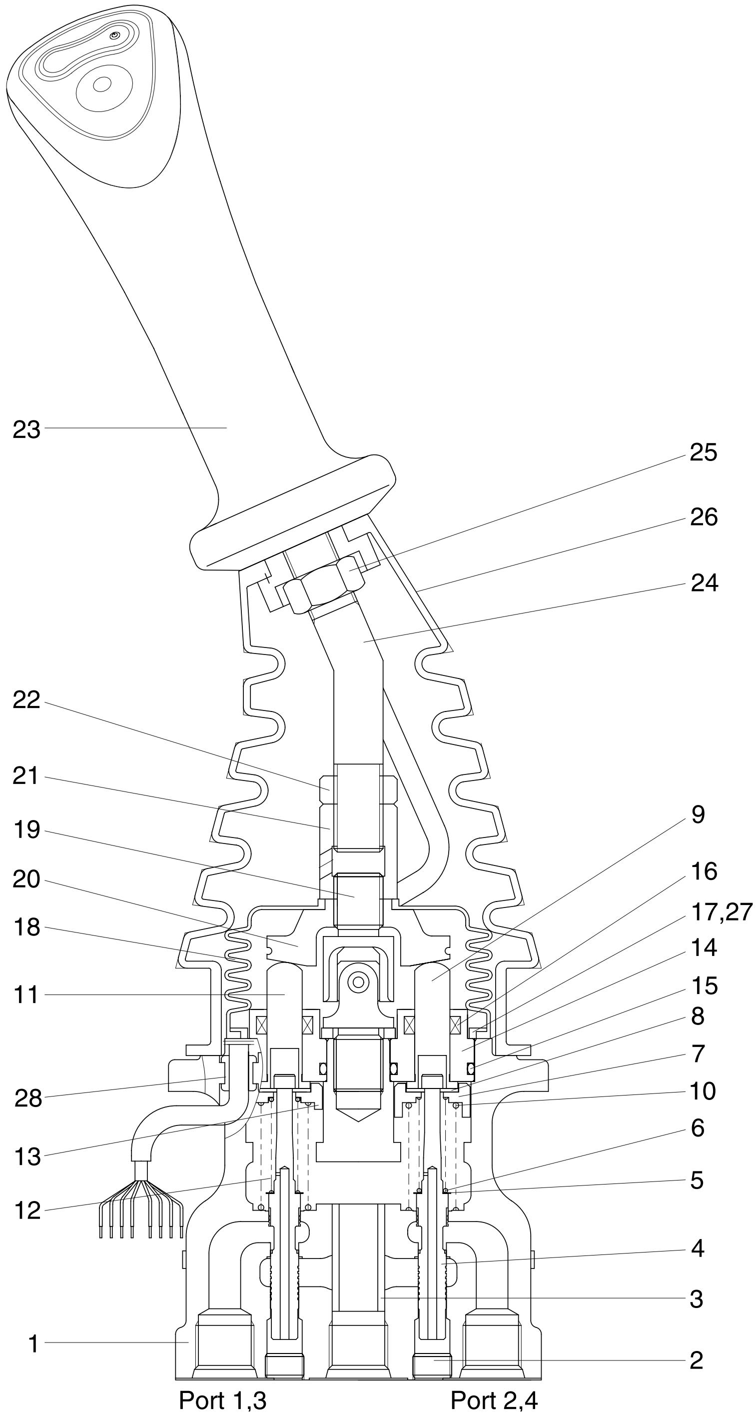
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

(2) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

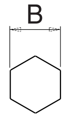
1) STRUCTURE



1	Case	8	Stopper	15	O-ring	22	Lock nut
2	Plug	9	Push rod	16	Rod seal	23	Handle assembly
3	Bushing	10	Spring	17	Plate	24	Handle bar
4	Spool	11	Push rod	18	Boot	25	Nut
5	Shim	12	Spring	19	Joint assembly	26	Boot
6	Spring	13	Spring seat	20	Swash plate	27	Spring pin
7	Spring seat	14	Plug	21	Adjusting nut	28	Bushing

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tool name	Remark	
Allen wrench	6	B 
Spanner	22	
	27	
(+) Driver	Length 150	
(-) Driver	Width 4~5	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

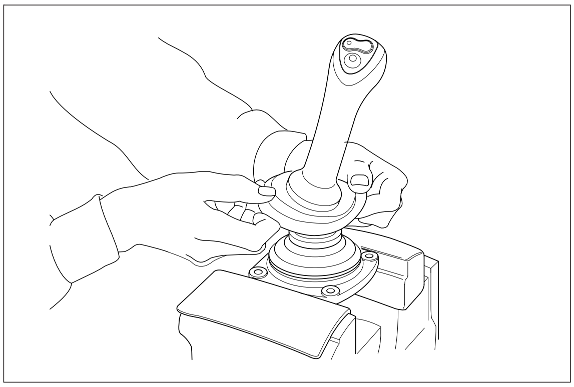
Part name	Item	Size	Torque	
			kgf · m	lbf · ft
Plug	2	PT 1/8	3.0	21.7
Joint	19	M14	3.5	25.3
Swash plate	20	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Adjusting nut	21	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5
Lock nut	22	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5

3) DISASSEMBLY

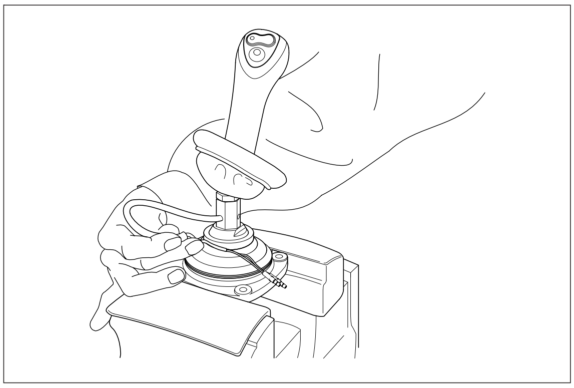
(1) Clean pilot valve with kerosene.
※ Put blind plugs into all ports

(2) Fix pilot valve in a vise with copper (or lead) sheets.

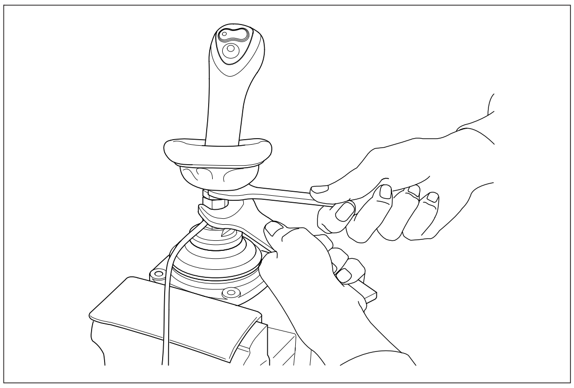
(3) Remove end of boot (26) from case (1) and take it out upwards.



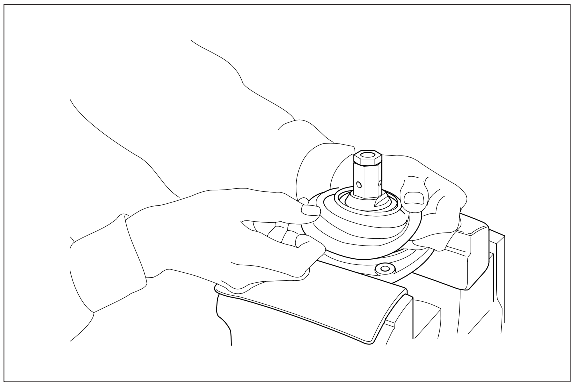
※ For valve with switch, remove cord also through hole of casing.



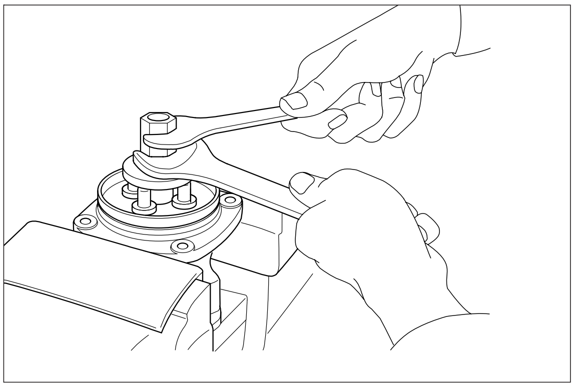
(4) Loosen lock nut (22) and adjusting nut (21) with spanners on them respectively, and take out handle section as one body.

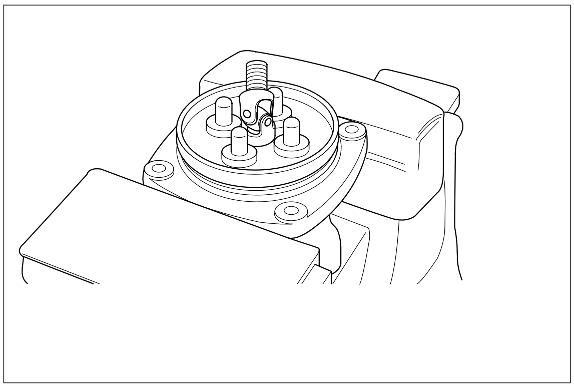


(5) Remove the boot (18).



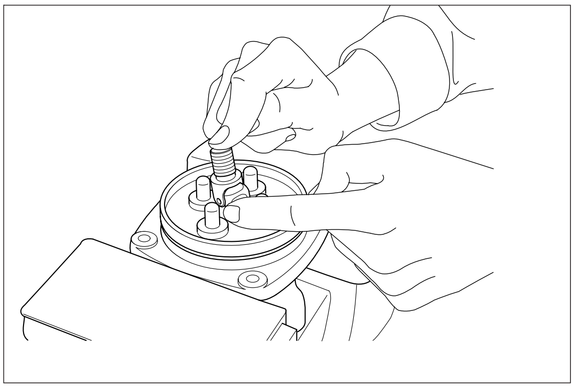
(6) Loosen adjusting nut (21) and swash plate (20) with spanners on them respectively, and remove them.

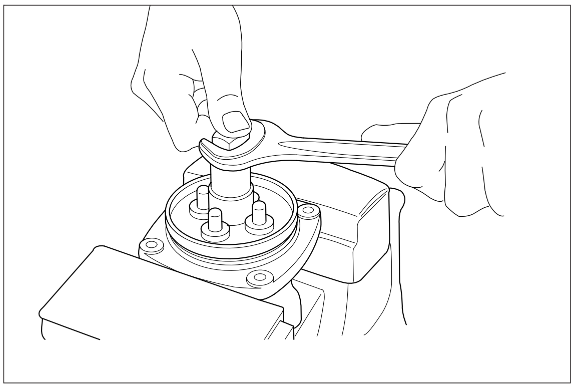




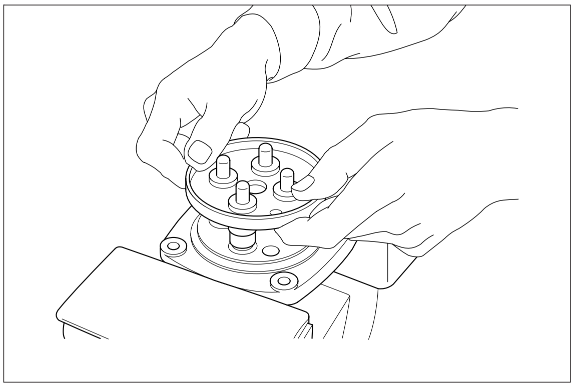
(7) Turn joint anticlockwise to loosen it, utilizing jig (Special tool).

※ When return spring (10) is strong in force, plate (17), plug (14) and push rod (11) will come up on loosening joint.
Pay attention to this.





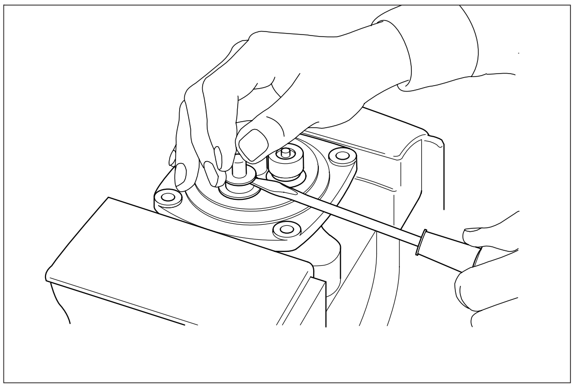
(8) Remove plate (17).



(9) When return spring (10) is weak in force, plug (14) stays in casing because of sliding resistance of O-ring.

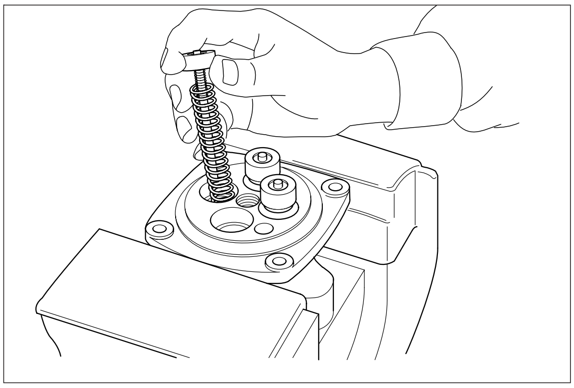
※ Take it out with minus screwdriver.
Take it out, utilizing external periphery groove of plug and paying attention not to damage it by partial loading.

※ During taking out, plug may jump up due to return spring (10) force.
Pay attention to this.

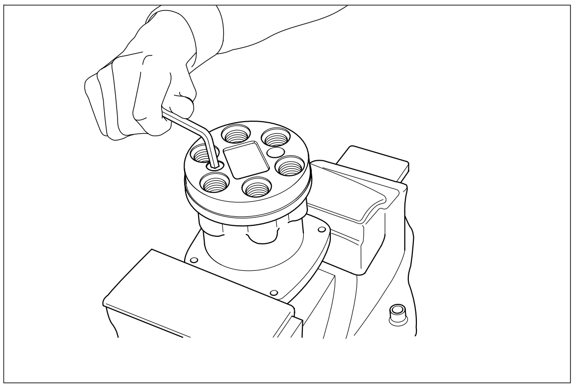


(10) Remove reducing valve subassembly and return spring (10) out of casing.

※ Record relative position of reducing valve subassembly and return springs.



(11) Loosen hexagon socket head plug(2) with hexagon socket screw key.

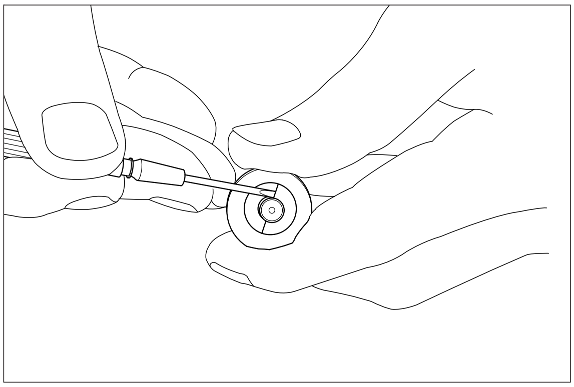


(12) For disassembling reducing valve section, stand it vertically with spool (4) bottom placed on flat workbench. Push down spring seat (7) and remove two pieces of semicircular stopper (8) with tip of small minus screwdriver.

※ Pay attention not to damage spool surface.

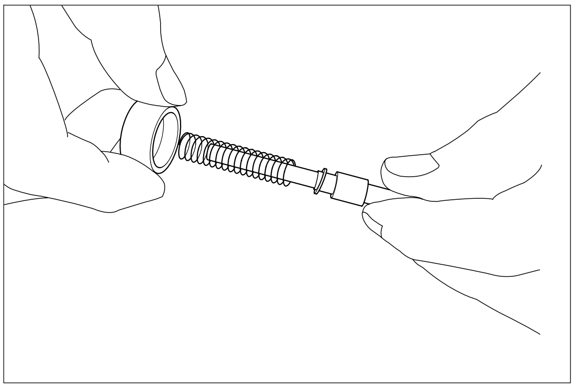
※ Record original position of spring seat (7).

※ Do not push down spring seat more than 6㎜.

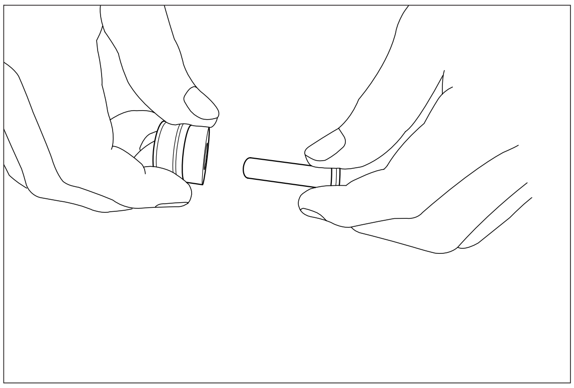


(13) Separate spool (4), spring seat (7), spring (6) and shim (5) individually.

※ Until being assembled, they should be handled as one subassembly group.

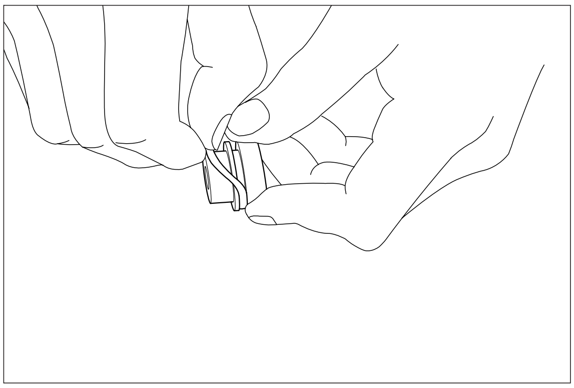


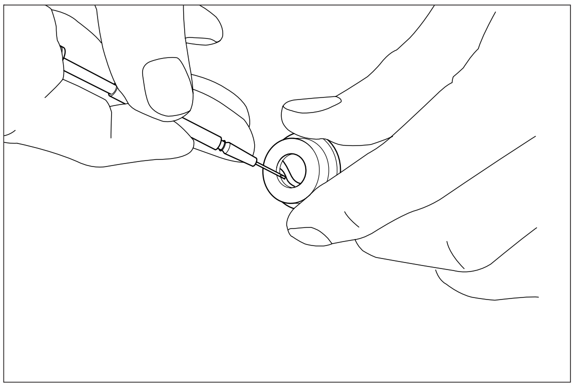
(14) Take push rod (11) out of plug (14).



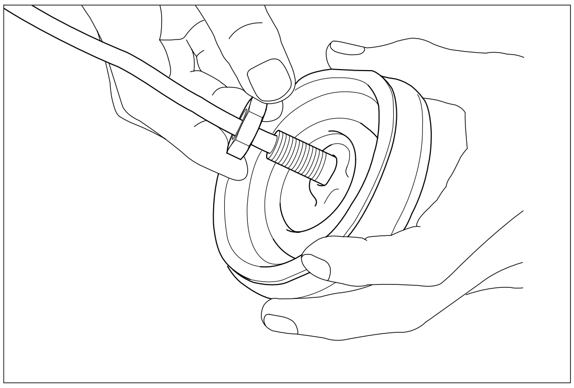
(15) Remove O-ring (15) and seal (16) from plug (14).

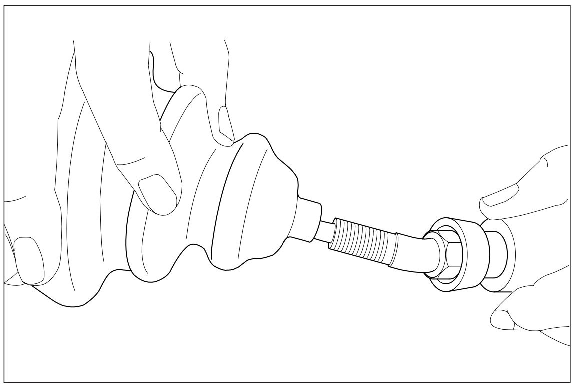
Use small minus screwdriver or so on to remove this seal.





(16) Remove lock nut (22) and then boot (26).





(16) Cleaning of parts

① Put all parts in rough cleaning vessel filled with kerosene and clean them (rough cleaning).

※ If dirty part is cleaned with kerosene just after putting it in vessel, it may be damaged. Leave it in kerosene for a while to loosen dust and dirty oil.

※ If this kerosene is polluted, parts will be damaged and functions of reassembled valve will be degraded.
Therefore, control cleanliness of kerosene fully.

② Put parts in final cleaning vessel filled with kerosene, turning it slowly to clean them even to their insides (finish cleaning).

※ Do not dry parts with compressed air, since they will be damaged and/or rusted by dust and moisture in air.

(17) Rust prevention of parts

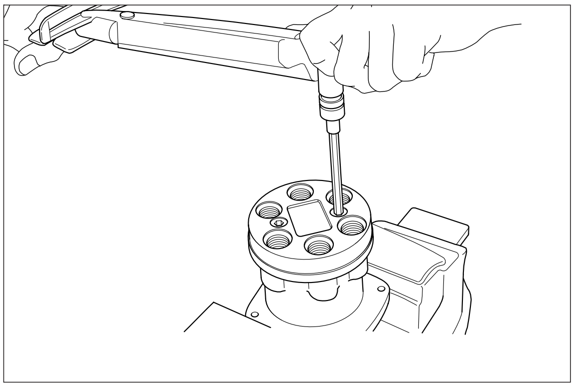
Apply rust-preventives to all parts.

※ If left as they after being cleaned, they will be rusted and will not display their functions fully after being reassembled.

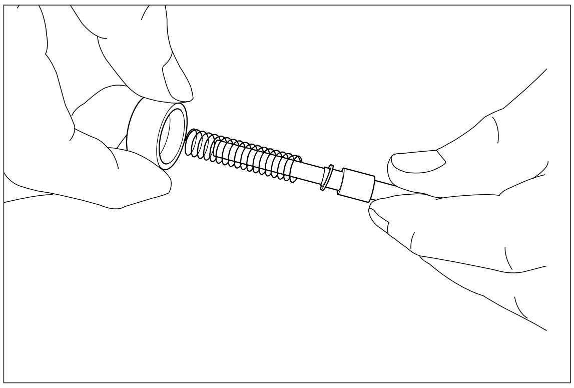
4) ASSEMBLY

(1) Tighten hexagon socket head plug (2) to the specified torque.

※ Tighten two bolts alternately and slowly.

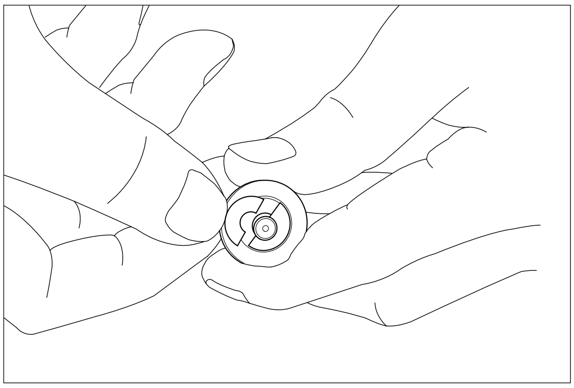


(2) Put shim (5), springs (6) and spring seat (7) onto spool (4) in this order.



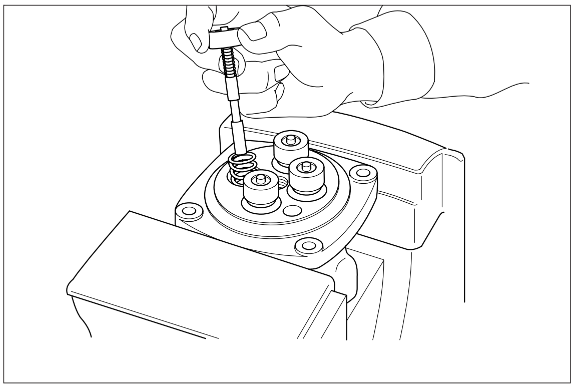
(3) Stand spool vertically with its bottom placed on flat workbench, and with spring seat pushed down, put two pieces of semicircular stopper (8) on spring seat without piling them on.

※ Assemble stopper (8) so that its sharp edge side will be caught by head of spool. Do not push down spring seat more than 6mm.

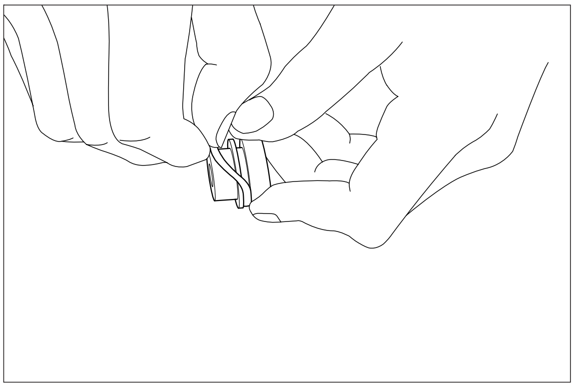


(4) Assemble spring (10) into casing (1). Assemble reducing valve subassembly into casing.

※ Assemble them to their original positions.

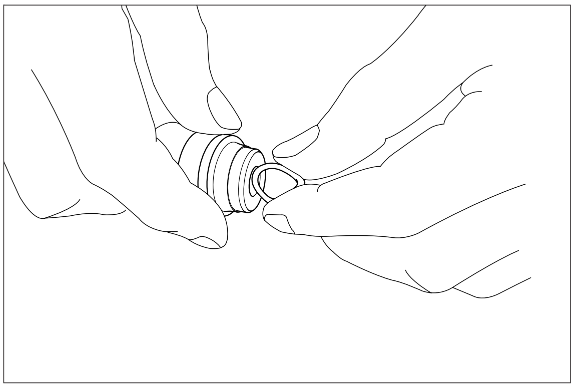


(5) Assemble O-ring (15) onto plug (14).



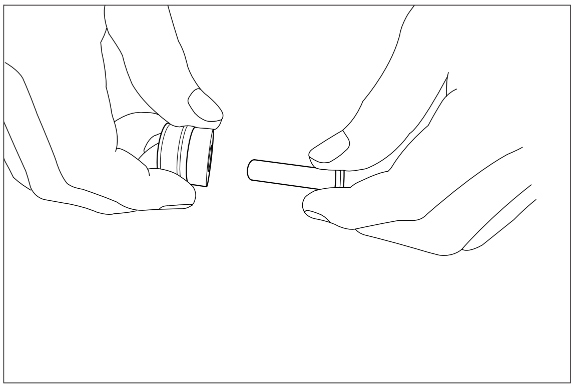
(6) Assemble seal (16) to plug (14).

※ Assemble seal in such lip direction as shown below.



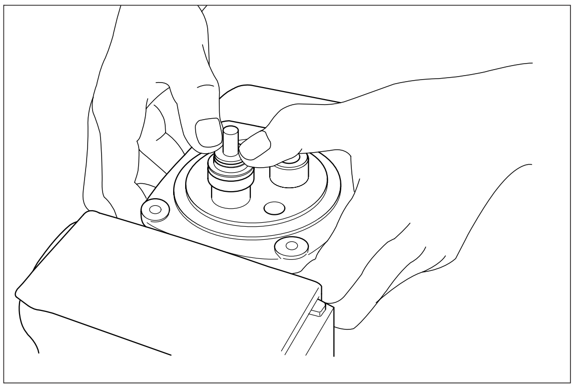
(7) Assemble push rod (11) to plug (14).

※ Apply working oil on push-rod surface.

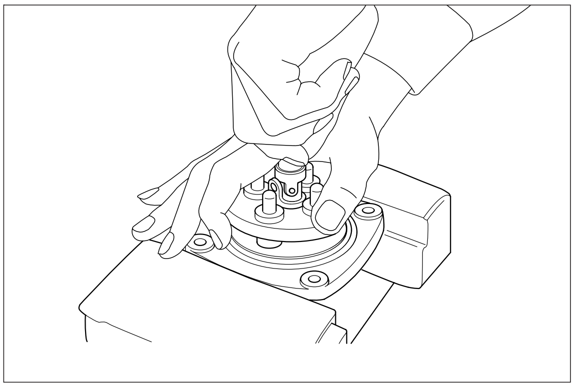


(8) Assemble plug subassembly to casing.

※ When return spring is weak in force, subassembly stops due to resistance of O-ring.

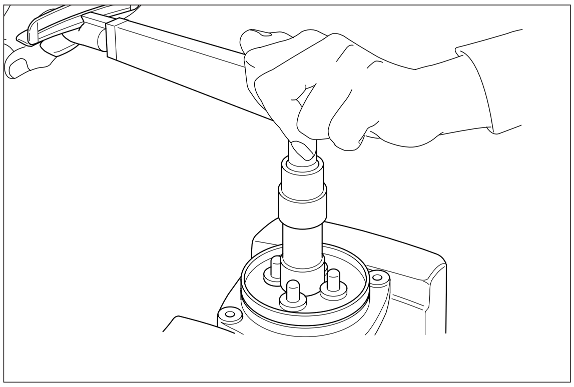


(9) When return spring is strong in force, assemble 4 sets at the same time, utilizing plate (17), and tighten joint (19) temporarily.



(10) Fit plate (17).

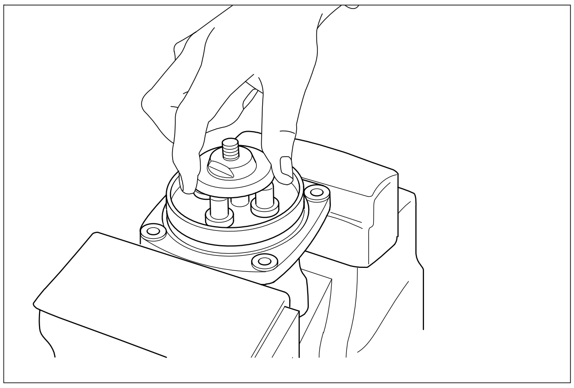
(11) Tighten joint (19) with the specified torque to casing, utilizing jig.



(12) Assemble swash plate (20) to joint (19).

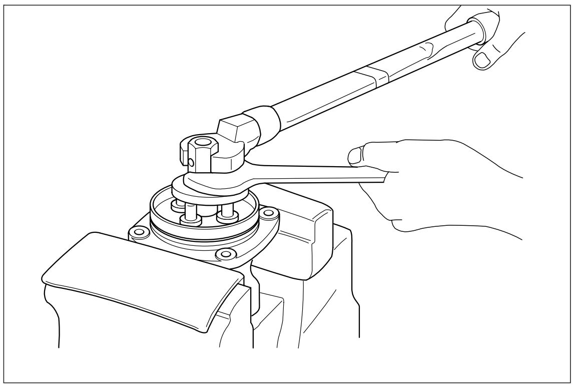
※ Screw it to position that it contacts with 4 push rods evenly.

※ Do not screw it over.

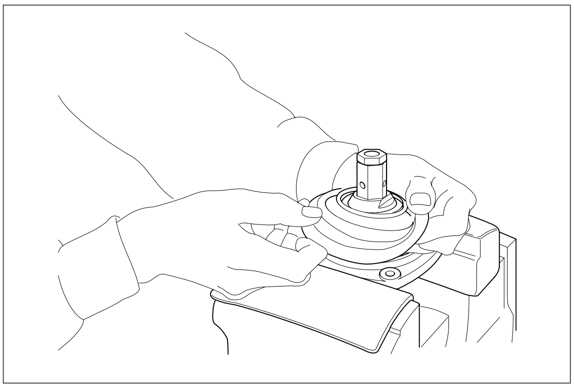


(13) Assemble adjusting nut (21), apply spanner to width across flat of plate (20) to fix it, and tighten adjusting nut to the specified torque.

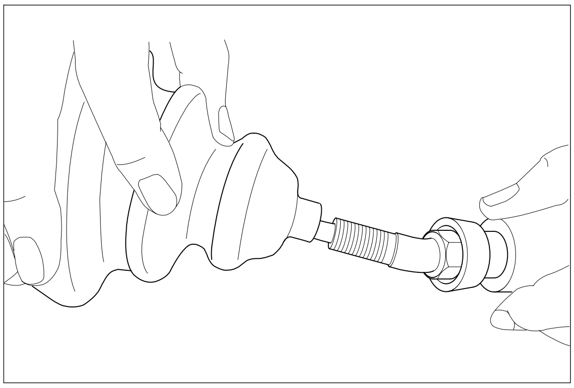
※ During tightening, do not change position of disk.

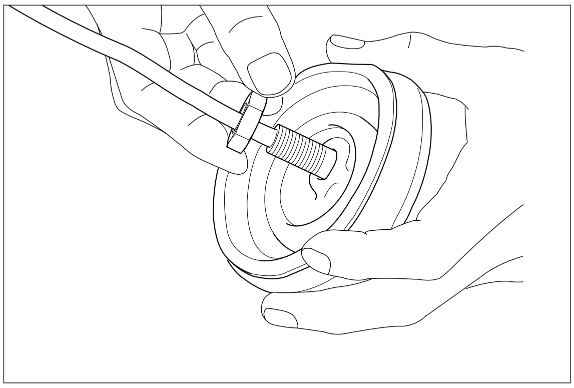


(14) Fit boot (18) to plate.

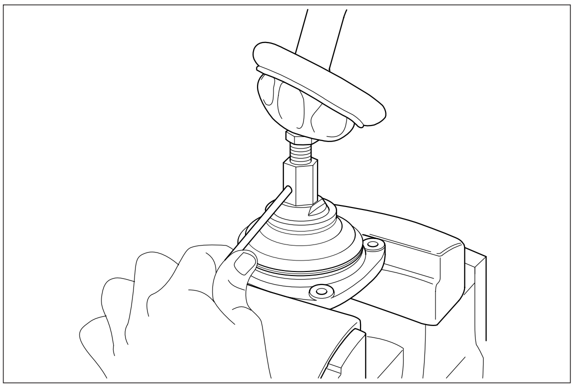


(15) Fit boot (26) and lock nut (22), and handle subassembly is assembled completely.

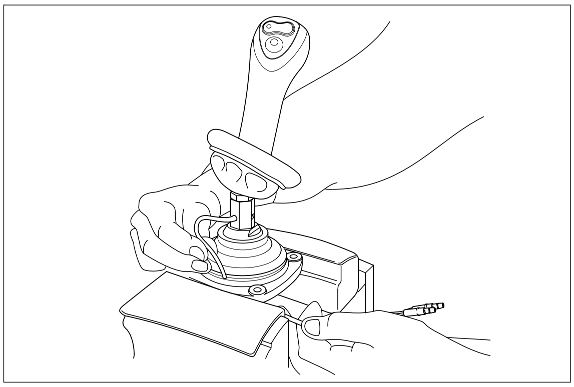




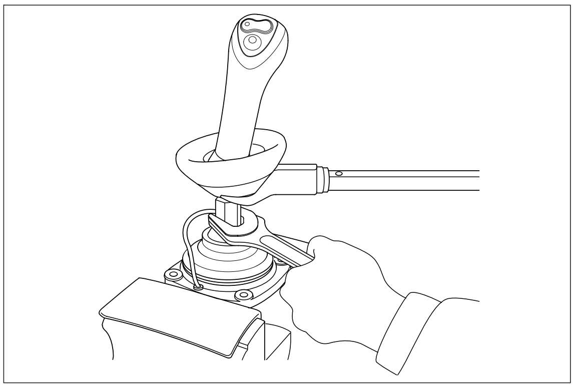
(16) Pull out cord and tube through adjusting nut hole provided in direction 60° to 120° from casing hole.



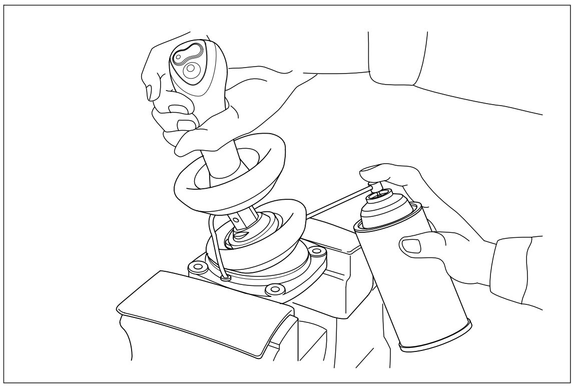
(17) Assemble bushing (27) to plate and pass cord and tube through it.
※ Provide margin necessary to operation.



(18) Determine handle direction, tighten lock nut (22) to specified torque to fix handle.

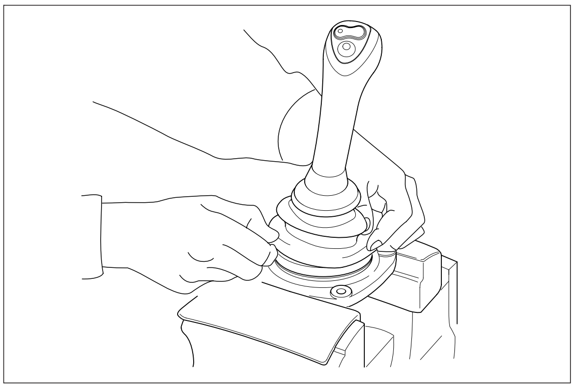


(19) Apply grease to rotating section of joint and contacting faces of disk and push rod.



(20) Assemble lower end of bellows to casing.

(21) Inject volatile rust-preventives through all ports and then put blind plugs in ports.



GROUP 8 TURNING JOINT

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

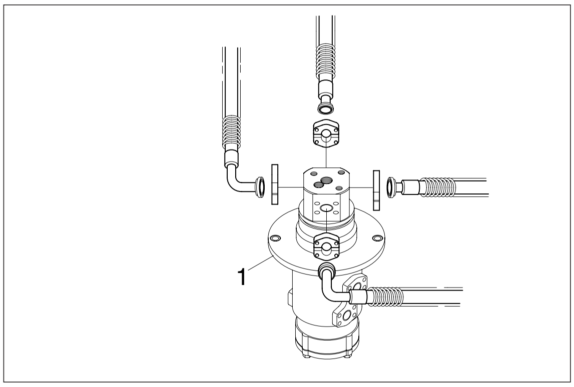
(1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

(2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

(3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.**

※ When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.



(4) Disconnect all hoses.

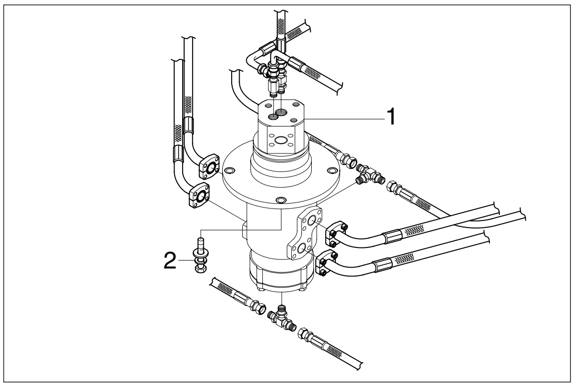
(5) Sling the turning joint assembly (1) and remove the mounting bolt (2).

- Weight : 55 kg (120 lb)
- Tightening torque : 12.3± 1.3 kgf · m (89± 9.4 lbf · ft)

(6) Remove the turning joint assembly.

※ When removing the turning joint, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL



(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

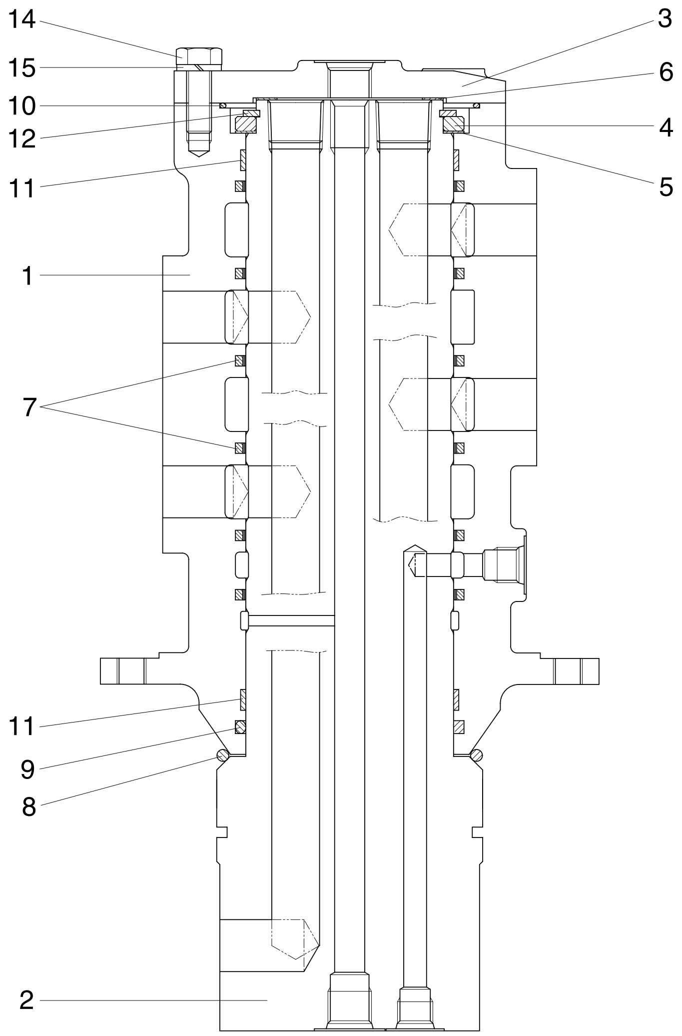
※ Take care of turning joint direction.

※ Assemble hoses to their original positions.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

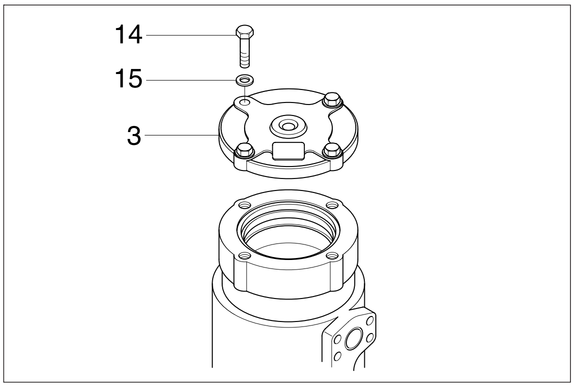


1	Hub	6	Shim	11	Wear ring
2	Shaft	7	Slipper seal	12	Retainer ring
3	Cover	8	O-ring	13	Plug
4	Spacer	9	O-ring	14	Hexagon bolt
5	Shim	10	O-ring	15	Spring washer

2) DISASSEMBLY

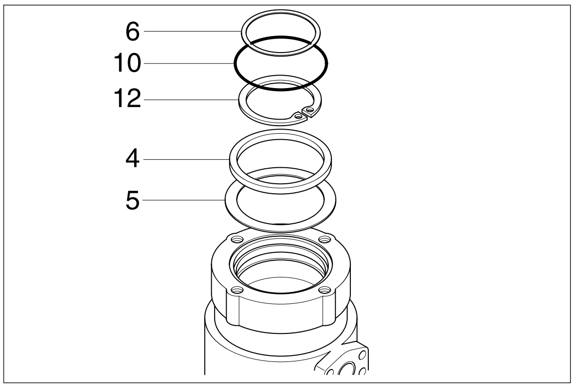
※ Before the disassembly, clean the turning joint.

(1) Remove bolts (14), washer (15) and cover (3).



(2) Remove shim (6) and O-ring (10).

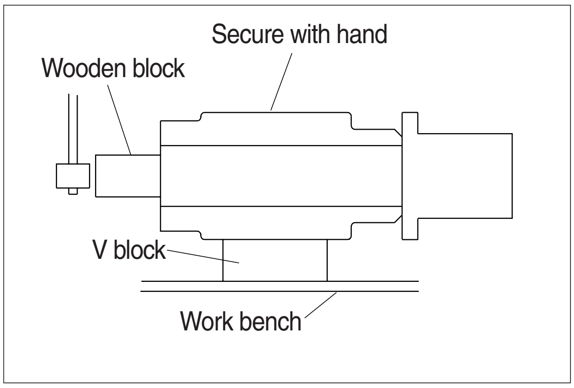
(3) Remove retainer ring (12), spacer (4) and shim (5).



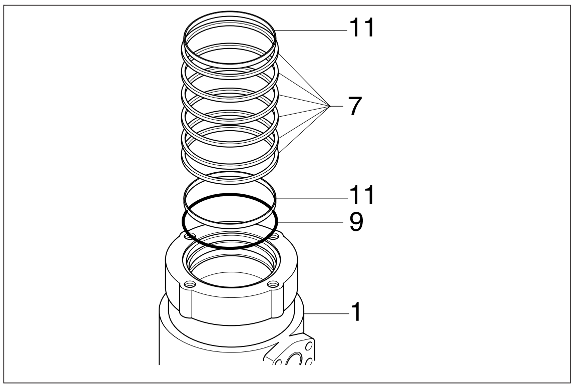
(4) Place hub (1) on a V-block and by using a wood buffer at the shaft end, hit out shaft (2) to about 1/2 from the body with a hammer.

※ Take care not to damage the shaft (2) when remove hub (1) or rest it sideway.

※ Put a fitting mark on hub (1) and shaft (2).



(5) Remove six slipper seals (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) from hub (1).



3) ASSEMBLY

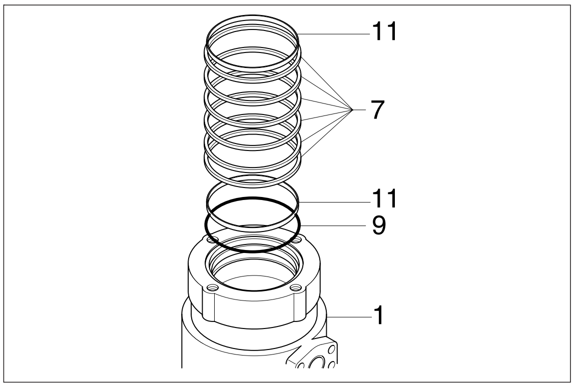
※ Clean all parts.

※ As a general rule, replace oil seals and O-ring.

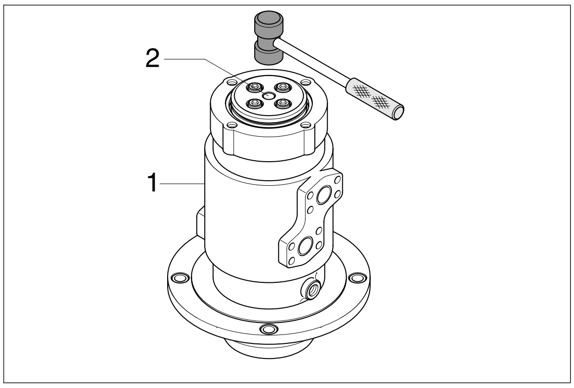
※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with engine oil or grease before installing.

(1) Fix seven slipper seal (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) to hub (1).

(2) Fit O-ring (8) to shaft (2).



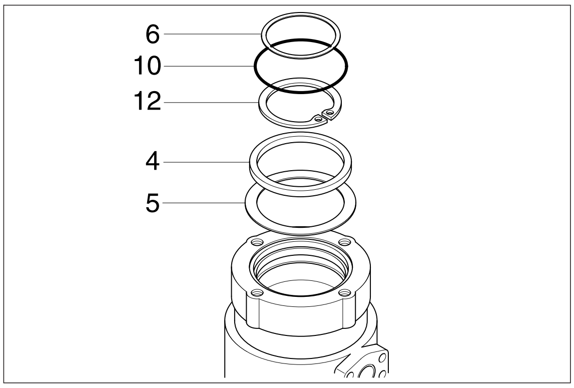
(3) Set shaft (2) on block, tap hub (1) with a plastic hammer to install.



(4) Fit shim (5), spacer (4) and retainer ring (12) to shaft (2).

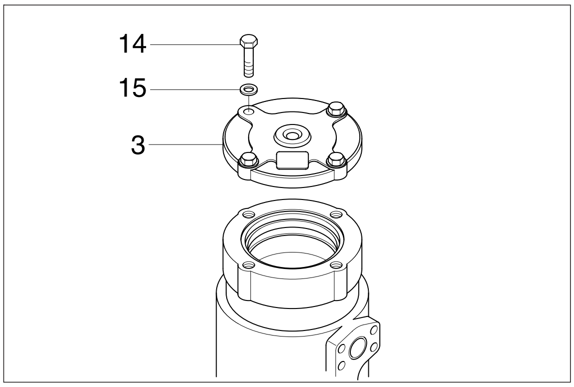
(5) Fit O-ring (10) to hub (1).

(6) Fit shim (6) to shaft (2).



(7) Install cover (3) to body (1) and tighten bolts (14).

· Torque : 10~12.5 kgf · m (72.3~90.4 lbf · ft)



GROUP 9 BOOM, ARM AND BUCKET CYLINDER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) BUCKET CYLINDER

(1) Removal

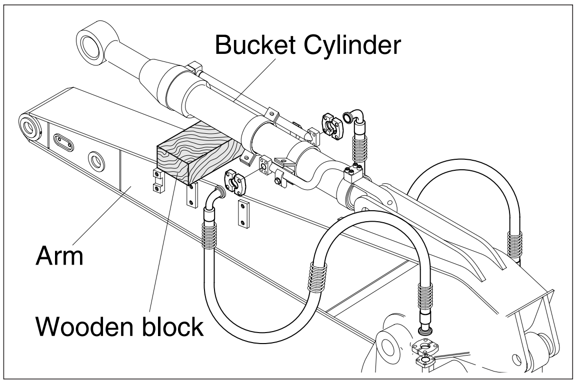
※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

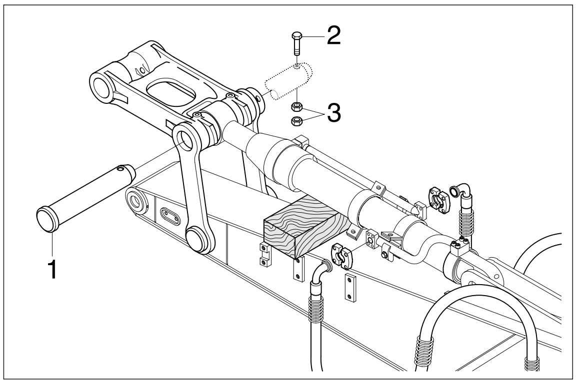
※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

① Set block between bucket cylinder and arm.

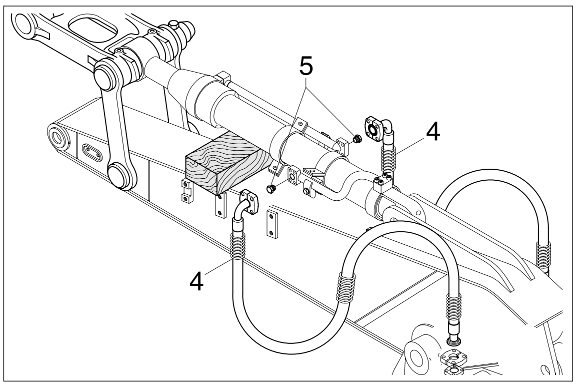


② Remove bolt (2), nut (3) and pull out pin (1).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



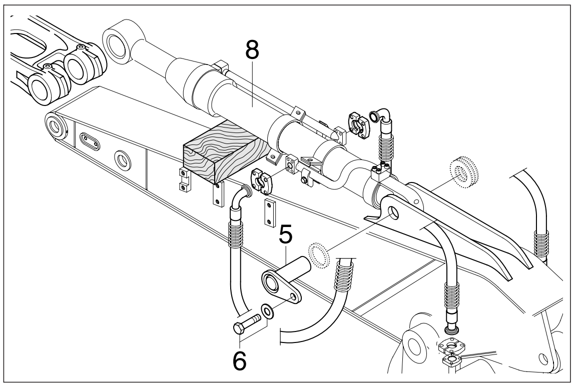
③ Disconnect bucket cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs (5) on cylinder pipe.



④ Sling bucket cylinder assembly (8) and remove bolt (6) then pull out pin (5).

⑤ Remove bucket cylinder assembly (8).

- Weight : 220 ㎏ (485 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

▲ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Bleed the air from the bucket cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2) ARM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

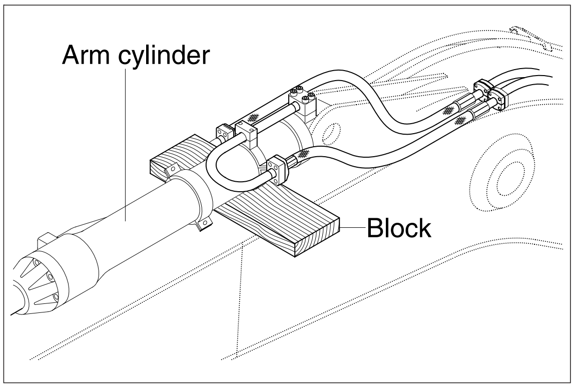
※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

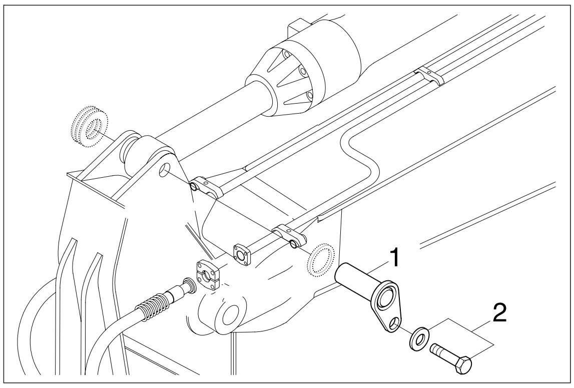
※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

① Set block between arm cylinder and boom.



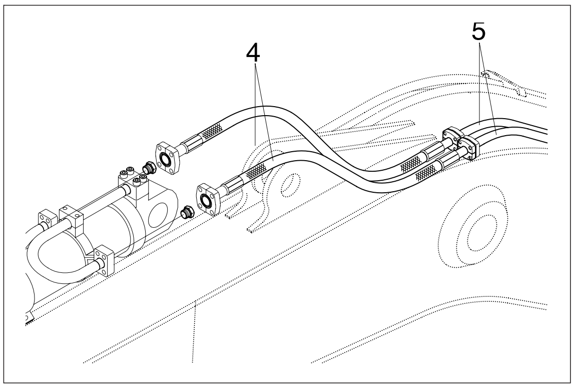
② Remove bolt (2) and pull out pin (1).

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



③ Disconnect arm cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.

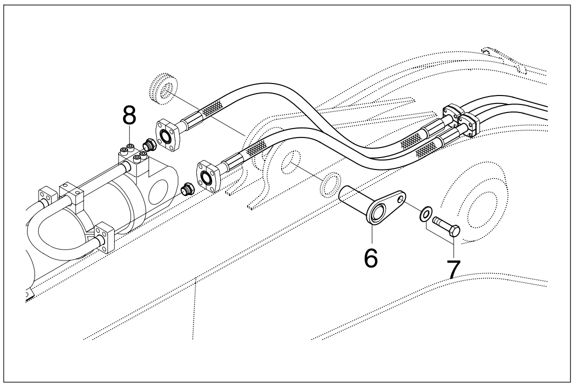
④ Disconnect greasing pipings (5).



⑤ Sling arm assembly (8) and remove bolt (7) then pull out pin (6).

⑥ Remove arm cylinder assembly (8).

· Weight : 360 ㎏ (790 ㏈)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

▲ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.

※ Bleed the air from the arm cylinder.

※ Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

※ Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.

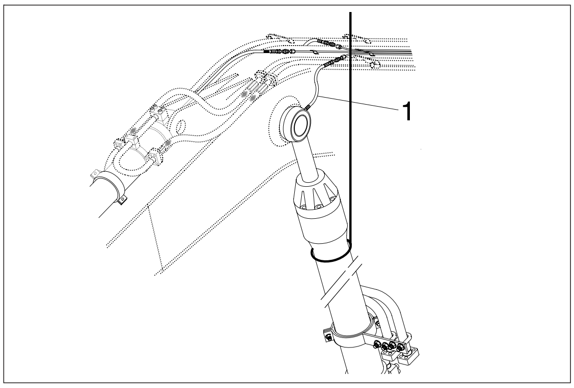
※ Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.

⚠ **Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.**

※ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.

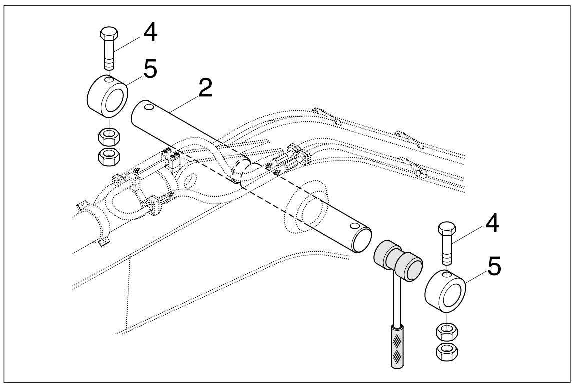
① Disconnect greasing hoses (1).

② Sling boom cylinder assembly.

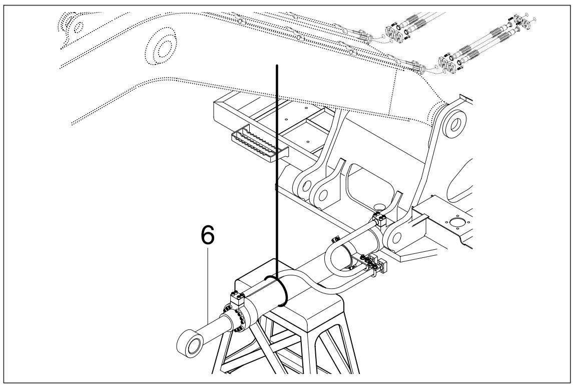


③ Remove bolt (4), pin stopper (5) and pull out pin (2).

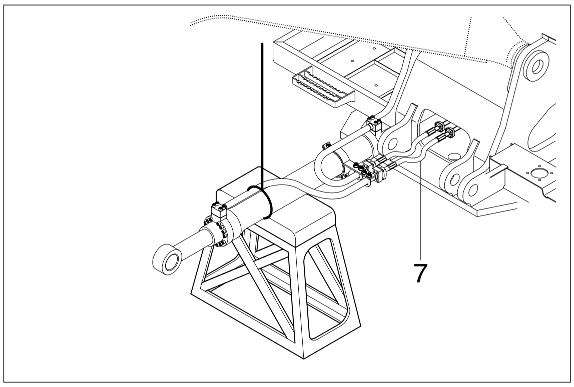
※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



④ Lower the boom cylinder assembly (6) on a stand.



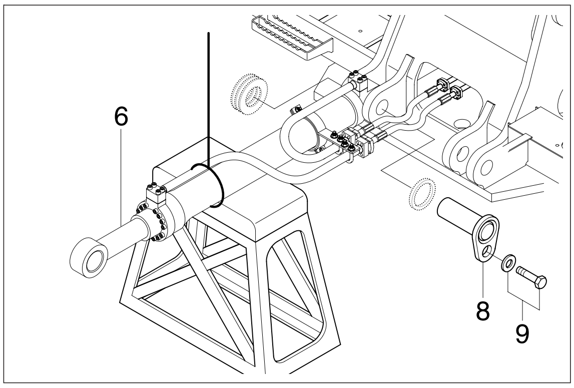
⑤ Disconnect boom cylinder hoses (7) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.



⑥ Remove bolt (9) and pull out pin (8).

⑦ Remove boom cylinder assembly (6).

· Weight : 300 ㎏ (660 ℔)



(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

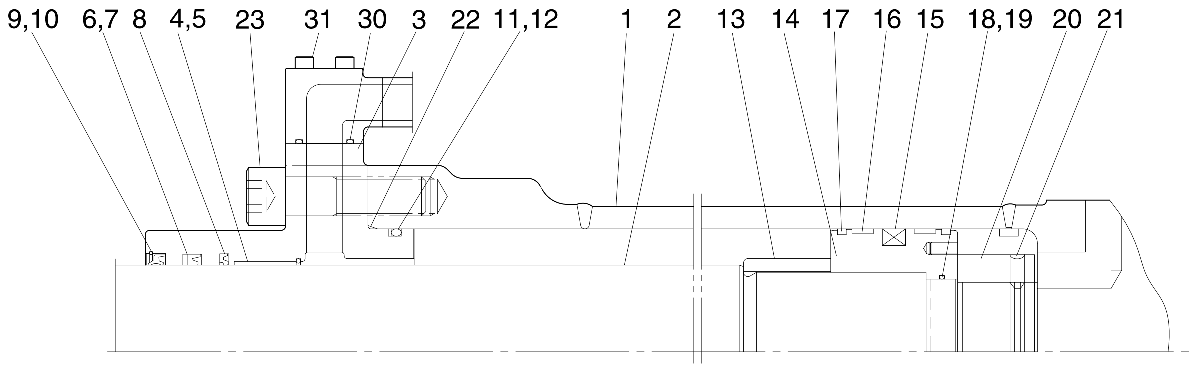
※ Bleed the air from the boom cylinder.

※ Conformed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

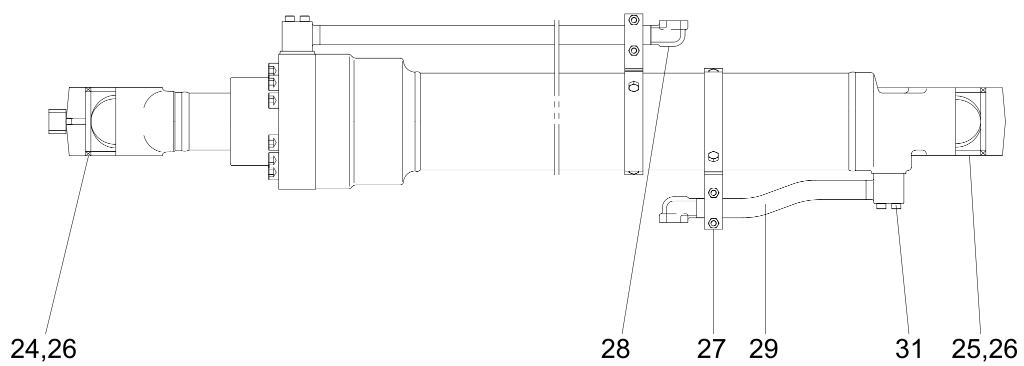
2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

(1) Bucket cylinder

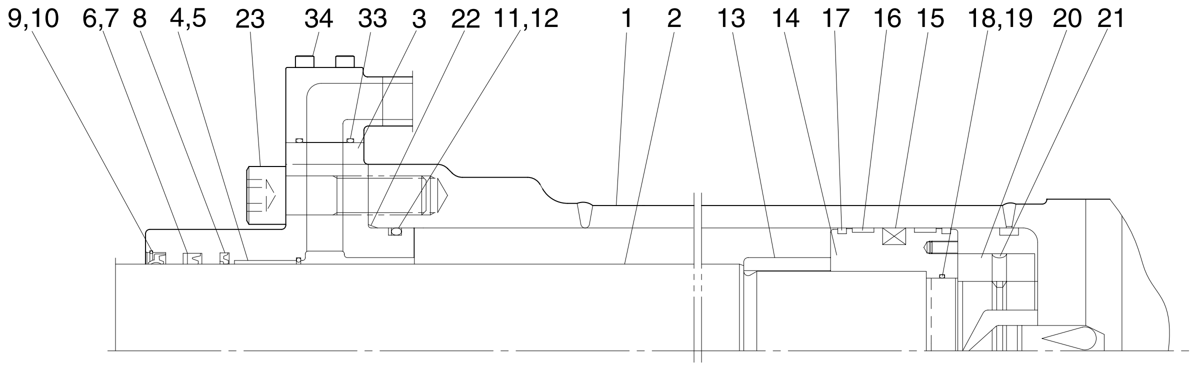


Internal detail

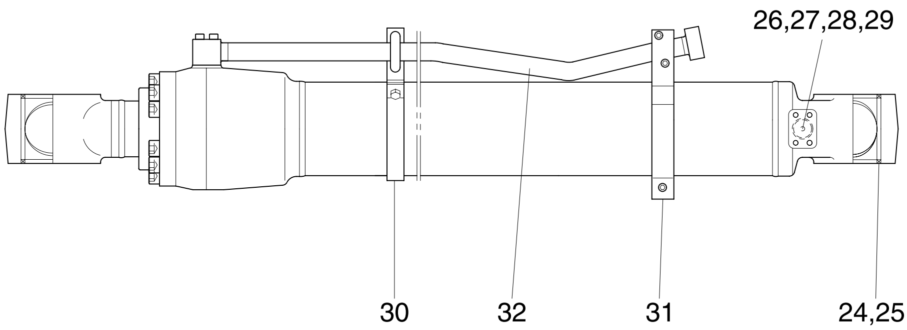


1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bol
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Band assembly
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Pipe assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	O-ring
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	Hexagon socket head bolt
10	Snap ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw		
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

(2) Arm cylinder

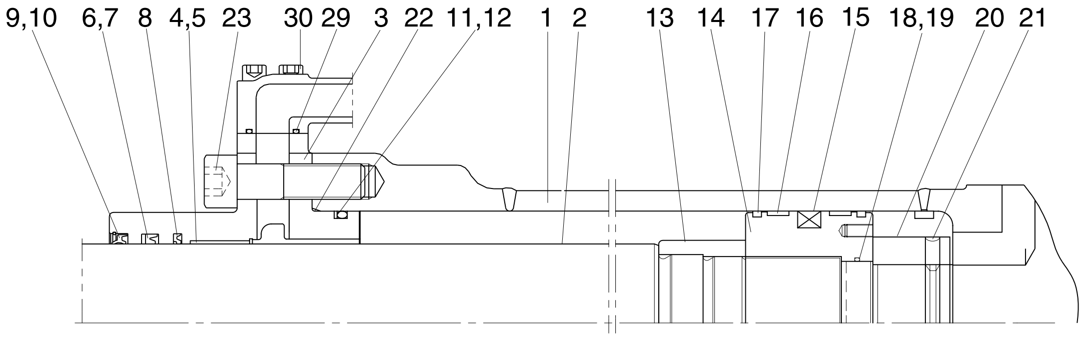


Internal detail

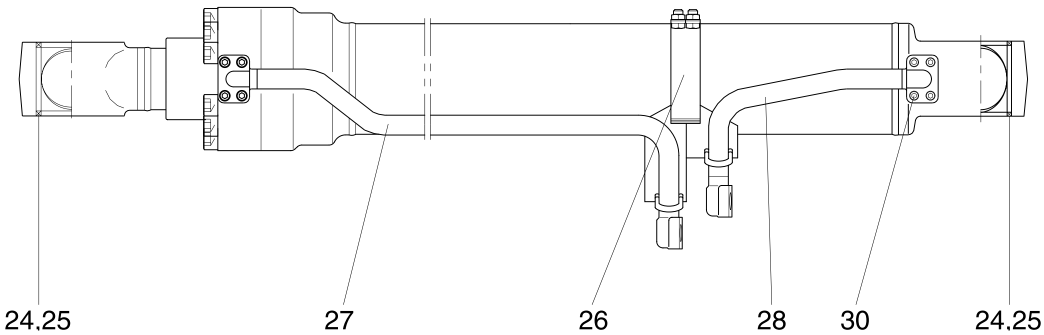


1	Tube assembly	13	Cushion ring	25	Dust seal
2	Rod assembly	14	Piston	26	Check valve
3	Gland	15	Piston seal	27	Coil spring
4	DD2 bushing	16	Wear ring	28	O-ring
5	Snap ring	17	Dust ring	29	Plug
6	Rod seal	18	O-ring	30	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	19	Back up ring	31	Band assembly
8	Buffer ring	20	Lock nut	32	Pipe assembly
9	Dust wiper	21	Hexagon socket set screw	33	O-ring
10	Snap ring	22	O-ring	34	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt		
12	Back up ring	24	Pin bushing		

(3) Boom cylinder



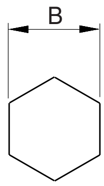
Internal detail



1	Tube assembly	11	O-ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw
2	Rod assembly	12	Back up ring	22	O-ring
3	Gland	13	Cushion ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt
4	DD2 bushing	14	Piston	24	Pin bushing
5	Snap ring	15	Piston seal	25	Dust seal
6	Rod seal	16	Wear ring	26	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	17	Dust ring	27	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	18	O-ring	28	Pipe assembly
9	Dust wiper	19	Back up ring	29	O-ring
10	Snap ring	20	Lock nut	30	Hexagon socket head bolt

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tools	Remark	
Allen wrench	6	
	8	
	14	
	17	
Spanner	7	
	8	
(-) Driver	Small and large sizes	
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques	

(2) Tightening torque

Part name		Item	Size	Torque	
				kgf · m	lbf · ft
Socket head bolt	Bucket cylinder	23	M18	32.0±3.0	232±21.7
	Boom cylinder	23	M12	46.0±5.0	333±7.2
	Arm cylinder	23	M22	63.0±6.0	457±43.4
Socket head bolt	Bucket cylinder	31	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Boom cylinder	30	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Arm cylinder	34	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
Lock nut	Bucket cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
	Boom cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
	Arm cylinder	20	-	150±15.0	1085±108
Piston	Bucket cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
	Boom cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
	Arm cylinder	14	-	200±20.0	1447±145

3) DISASSEMBLY

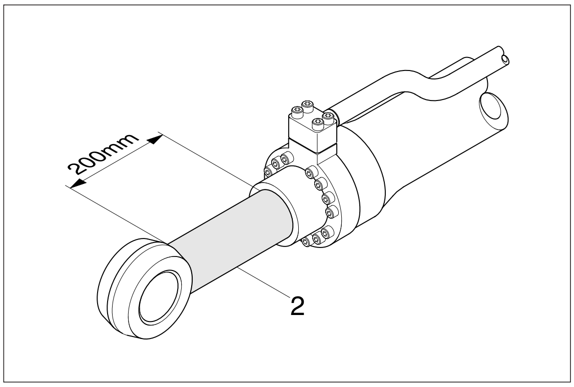
(1) Remove cylinder head and piston rod

※ Procedures are based on the bucket cylinder.

① Hold the clevis section of the tube in a vise.

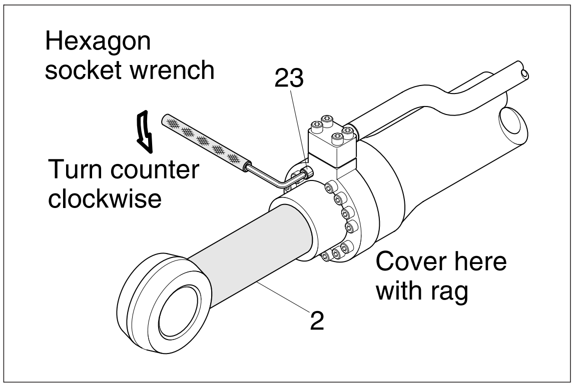
※ Use mouth pieces so as not to damage the machined surface of the cylinder tube. Do not make use of the outside piping as a locking means.

② Pull out rod assembly (2) about 200 mm (7.1 in). Because the rod assembly is rather heavy, finish extending it with air pressure after the oil draining operation.



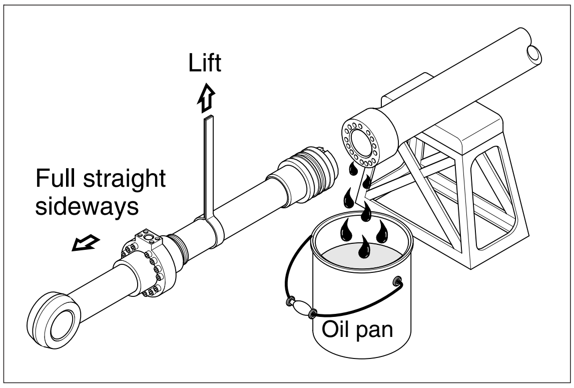
③ Loosen and remove socket bolts (23) of the gland in sequence.

※ Cover the extracted rod assembly (2) with rag to prevent it from being accidentally damaged during operation.



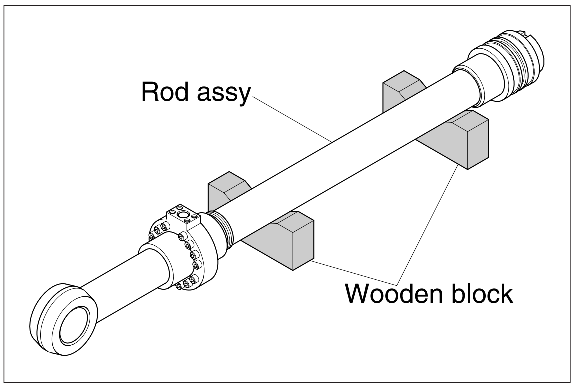
④ Draw out cylinder head and rod assembly together from tube assembly (1).

※ Since the rod assembly is heavy in this case, lift the tip of the rod assembly (2) with a crane or some means and draw it out. However, when rod assembly (2) has been drawn out to approximately two thirds of its length, lift it in its center to draw it completely.

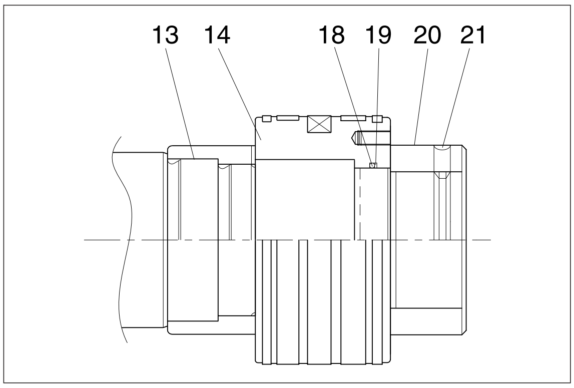


Note that the plated surface of rod assembly (2) is to be lifted. For this reason, do not use a wire sling and others that may damage it, but use a strong cloth belt or a rope.

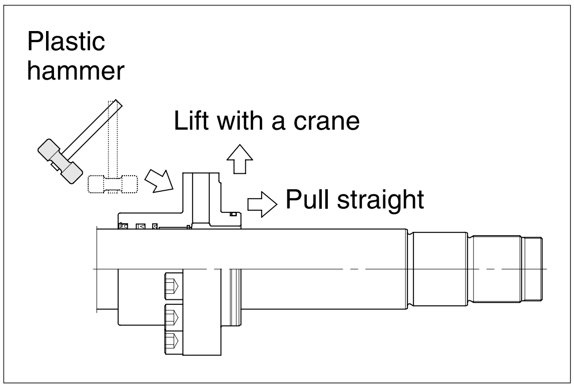
⑤ Place the removed rod assembly on a wooden V-block that is set level.
※ Cover a V-block with soft rag.



(2) Remove piston and cylinder head
① Loosen sochet set screw (21) and remove lock nut (20).
※ Since lock nut (20) is tightened to a high torque, use a hydraulic and power wrench that utilizers a hydraulic cylinder, to remove the lock nut (20).
② Remove piston assembly (14), back up ring (19), and O-ring (18).



③ Remove the cylinder head assembly from rod assembly (2).
※ If it is too heavy to move, move it by striking the flanged part of cylinder head with a plastic hammer.
※ Pull it straight with cylinder head assembly lifted with a crane.
Exercise care so as not to damage the lip of rod bushing (4) and packing (5,6,7,8,9,10) by the threads of rod assembly (2).

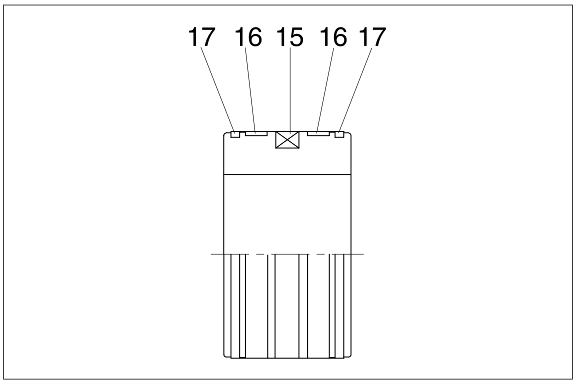


(3) Disassemble the piston assembly

① Remove wear ring (16).

② Remove dust ring (17) and piston seal (15).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.



(4) Disassemble cylinder head assembly

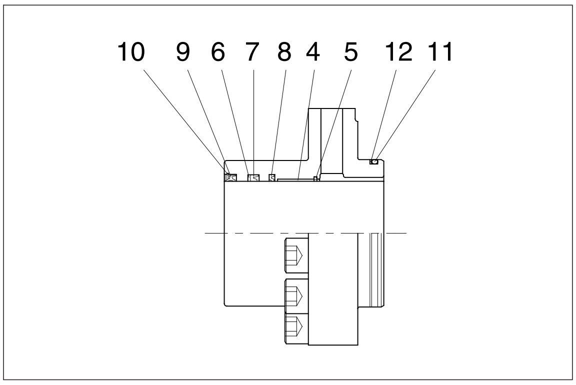
① Remove back up ring (12) and O-ring (11).

② Remove snap ring (10), dust wiper (9).

③ Remove back up ring (7), rod seal (6), buffer ring (8) and snap sing (5).

※ Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.

※ Do not remove seal and ring, if does not damaged.

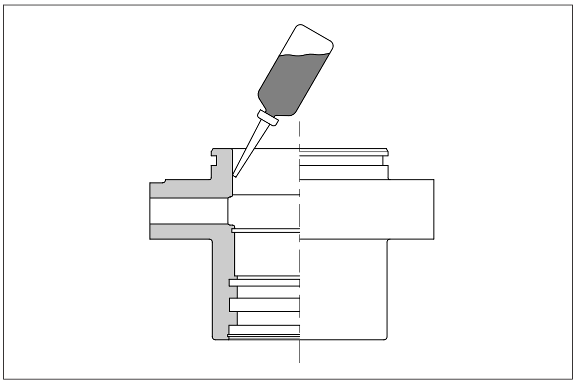


3) ASSEMBLY

(1) Assemble cylinder head assembly

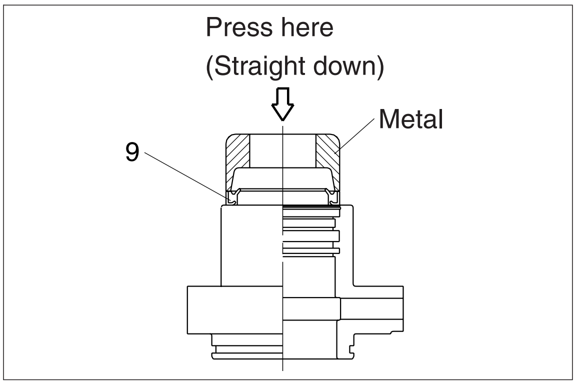
※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces if found smooth with an oil stone.

① Coat the inner face of gland (3) with hydraulic oil.



② Coat dust wiper (9) with grease and fit dust wiper (9) to the bottom of the hole of dust seal.
At this time, press a pad metal to the metal ring of dust seal.

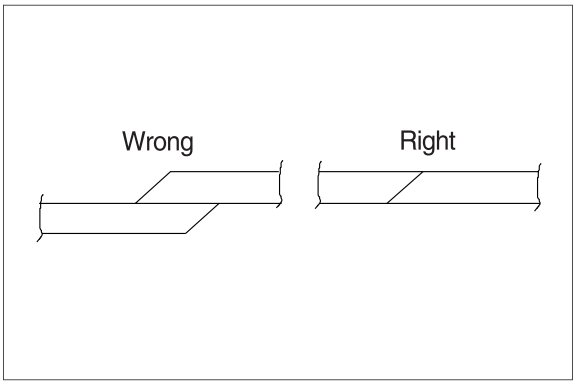
③ Fit snap ring (10) to the stop face.



④ Fit back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8) to corresponding grooves, in that order.

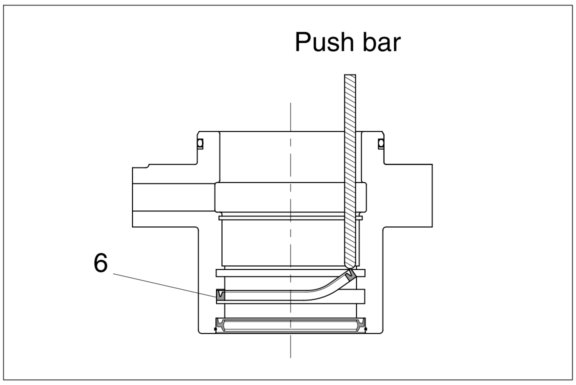
※ Coat each packing with hydraulic oil before fitting it.

※ Insert the backup ring until one side of it is inserted into groove.



※ Rod seal (6) has its own fitting direction. Therefore, confirm it before fitting them.

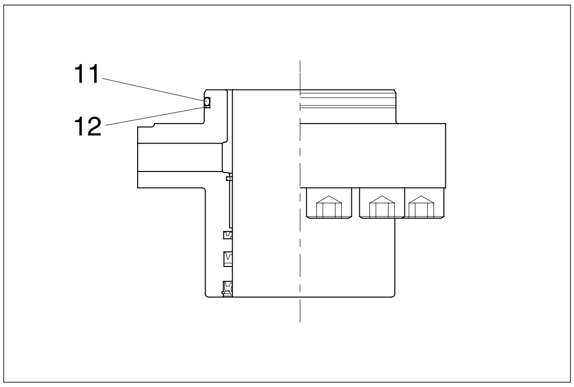
※ Fitting rod seal (6) upside down may damage its lip. Therefore check the correct direction that is shown in fig.



⑤ Fit back up ring (12) to gland (3).

※ Put the backup ring in the warm water of 30~50˚C.

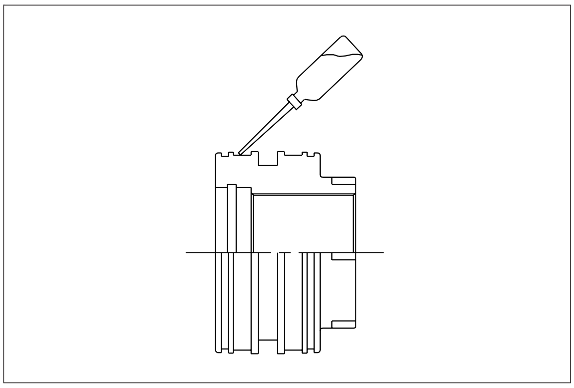
⑥ Fit O-ring (11) to gland (3).



(2) Assemble piston assembly

※ Check for scratches or rough surfaces. If found smooth with an oil stone.

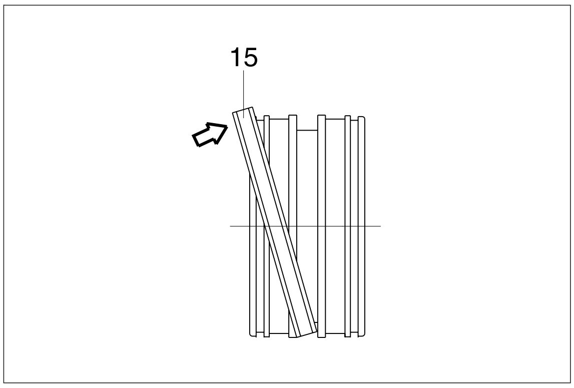
① Coat the outer face of piston (14) with hydraulic oil.



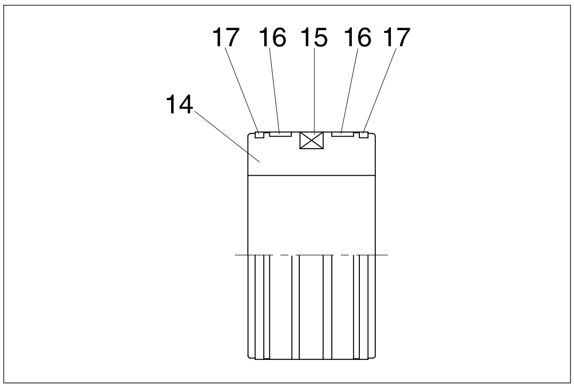
② Fit piston seal (15) to piston.

※ Put the piston seal in the warm water of 60~100˚C for more than 5 minutes.

※ After assembling the piston seal, press its outer diameter to fit in.



③ Fit wear ring (16) and dust ring (17) to piston (14).

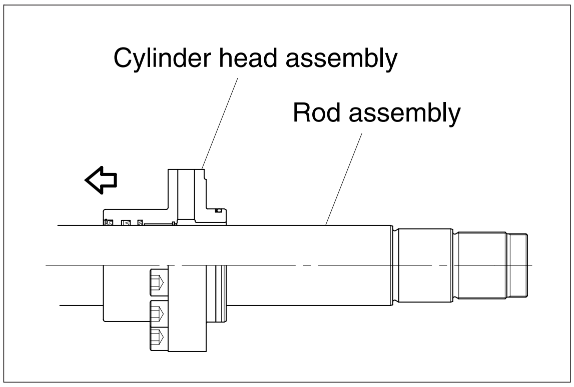


(3) Install piston and cylinder head

① Fix the rod assembly to the work bench.

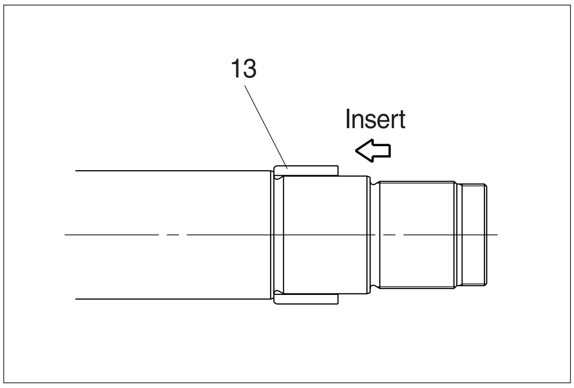
② Apply hydraulic oil to the outer surface of rod assembly (2), the inner surface of piston and cylinder head.

③ Insert cylinder head assembly to rod assembly.



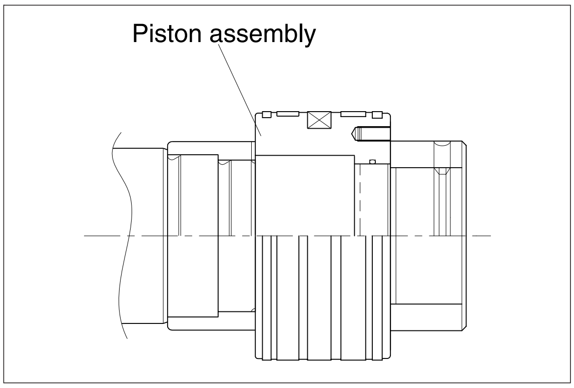
④ Insert cushion ring (13) to rod assembly.

※ Note that cushion ring (13) has a direction in which it should be fitted.



⑤ Fit piston assembly to rod assembly.

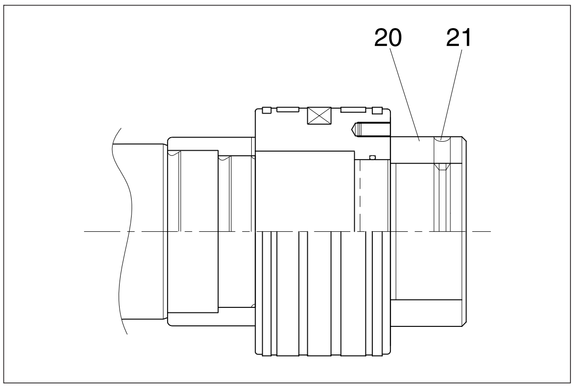
· Tightening torque : 100±10.0 kgf · m (723±72.3 lbf · ft)



⑥ Fit lock nut (20) and tighten the set screw (21).

· Tightening torque :

Item		kgf · m	lbf · ft
Bucket Boom	20	100±10	723.3±72.3
	21	5.4±0.5	391±3.6
Arm	21	150±15	1085±108
	22	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6



(3) Overall assemble

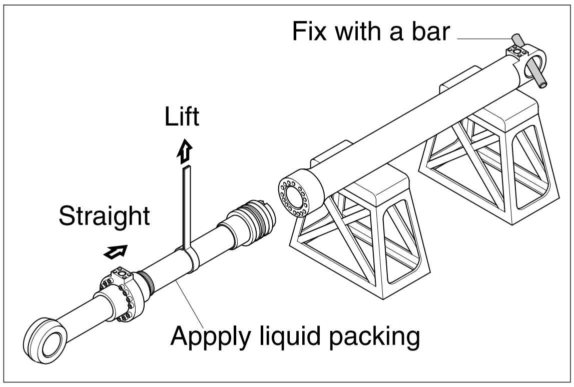
① Place a V-block on a rigid work bench. Mount the tube assembly (1) on it and fix the assembly by passing a bar through the clevis pin hole to lock the assembly.

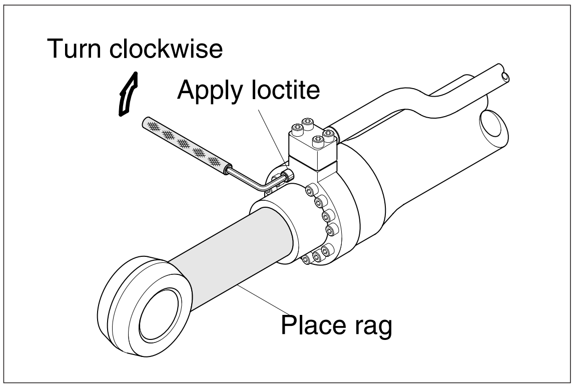
② Insert the rod assembly in to the tube assembly, while lifting and moving the rod assembly with a crane.

※ Be careful not to damage piston seal by thread of tube assembly.

③ Match the bolt holes in the cylinder head flange to the tapped holes in the tube assembly and tighten socket bolts to a specified torque.

※ Refer to the table of tightening torque.





GROUP 10 UNDERCARRIAGE

1. TRACK LINK

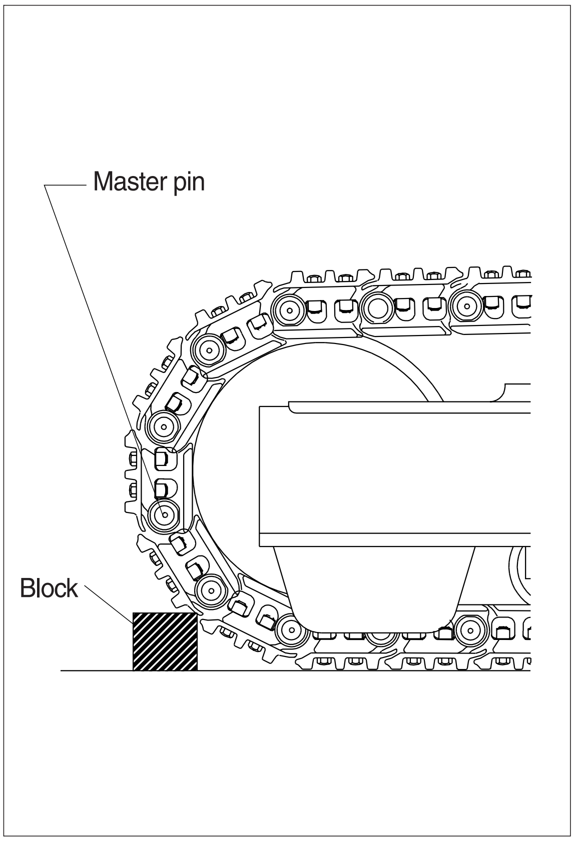
1) REMOVAL

(1) Move track link until master pin is over front idler in the position put wooden block as shown.

(2) Loosen tension of the track link.

※ If track tension is not relieved when the grease valve is loosened, move the machine backwards and forwards.

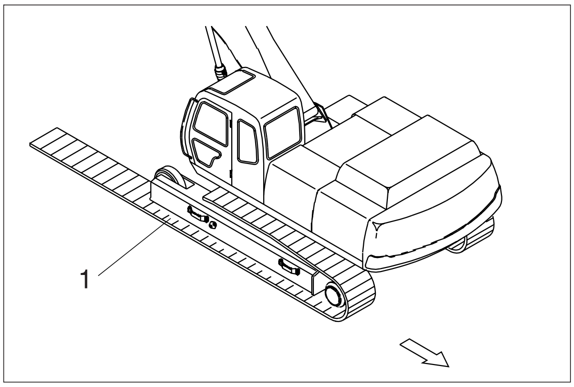
(3) Push out master pin by using a suitable tool.



(4) Move the machine slowly in reverse, and lay out track link assembly (1).

※ Jack up the machine and put wooden block under the machine.

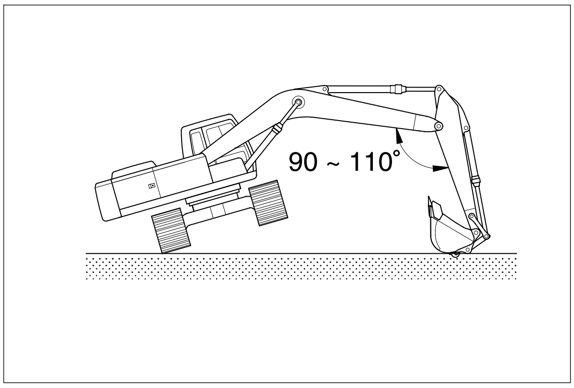
※ Don't get close to the sprocket side as the track shoe plate may fall down on your feet.



2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

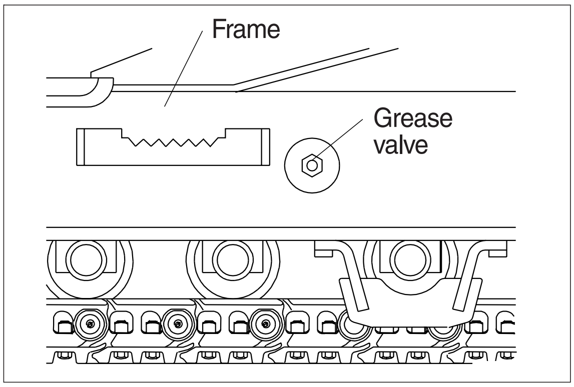
※ Adjust the tension of the track link.



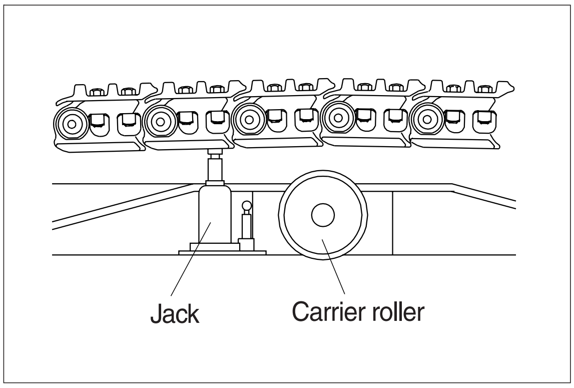
2. CARRIER ROLLER

1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.

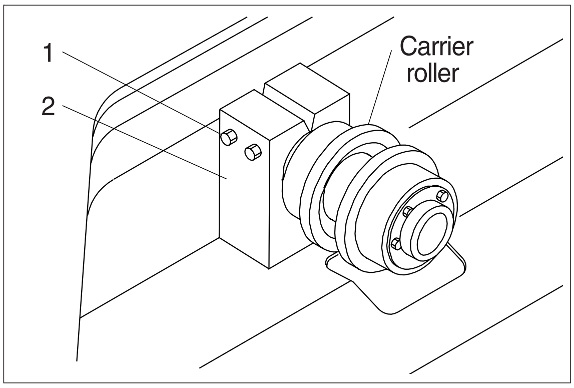


(2) Jack up the track link height enough to permit carrier roller removal.



(3) Loosen the lock nut (1).

(4) Open bracket (2) with a screwdriver, push out from inside, and remove carrier roller assembly.
- · Weight : 48 kg (88 lb)



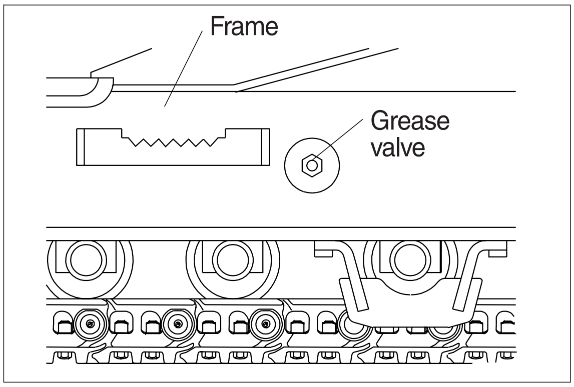
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

3. TRACK ROLLER

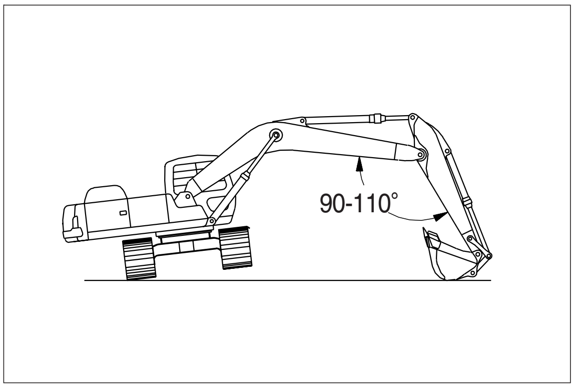
1) REMOVAL

(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



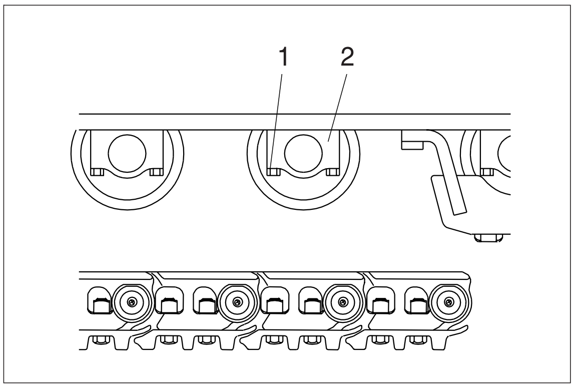
(2) Using the work equipment, push up track frame on side which is to be removed.

※ After jack up the machine, set a block under the unit.



(3) Remove the mounting bolt (1) and draw out the track roller (2).

· Weight : 54 kg (119lb)



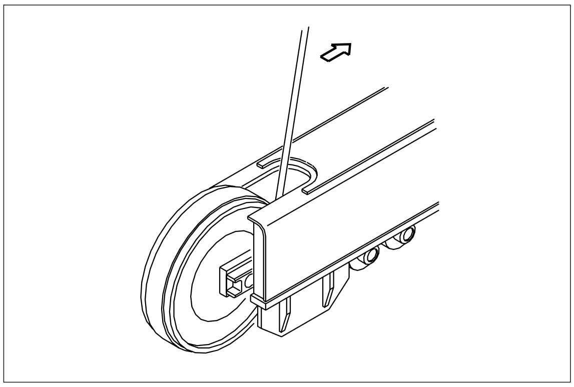
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

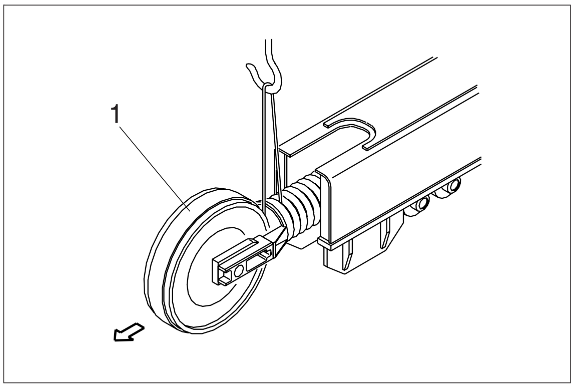
4. IDLER AND RECOIL SPRING

1) REMOVAL

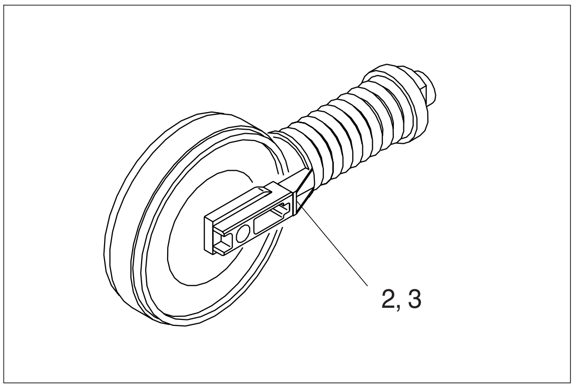
(1) Remove the track link.
For detail, see removal of track link.



(2) Sling the recoil spring (1) and pull out idler and recoil spring assembly from track frame, using a pry.
· Weight : 457 kg (1010 lb)



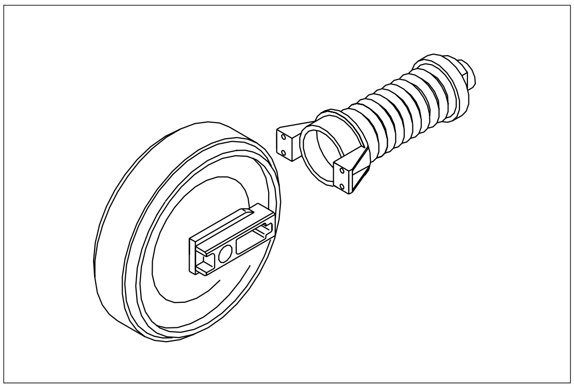
(3) Remove the bolts (2), washers (3) and separate idler from recoil spring.



2) INSTALL

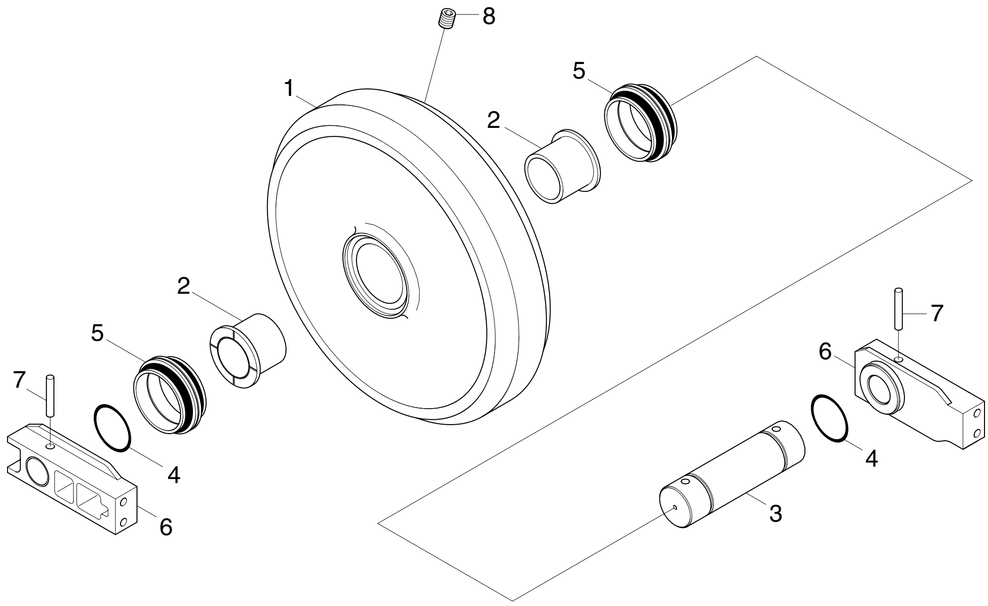
(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

※ Make sure that the boss on the end face of the recoil cylinder rod is in the hole of the track frame.



3) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF IDLER

(1) Structure

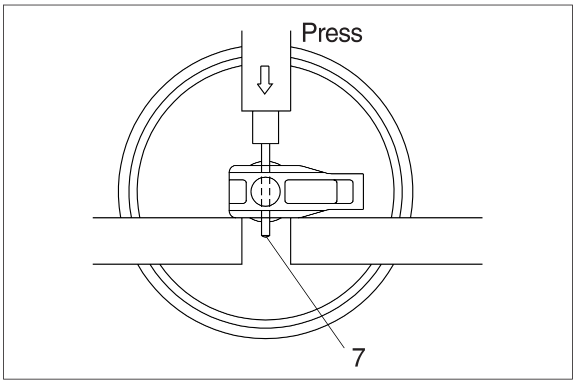


1	Shell	4	O-ring	7	Spring pin
2	Bushing	5	Seal assembly	8	Plug
3	Shaft	6	Bracket		

(2) Disassembly

① Remove plug and drain oil.

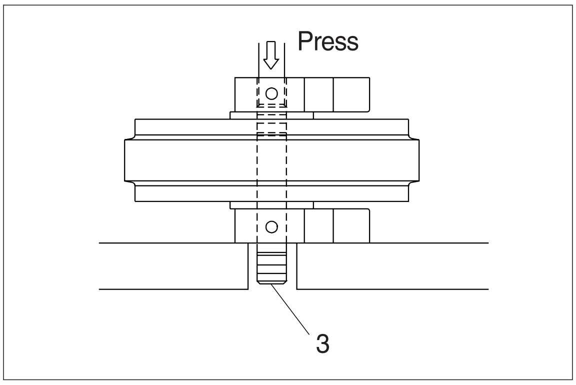
② Draw out the spring pin (7), using a press.



③ Pull out the shaft (2) with a press.

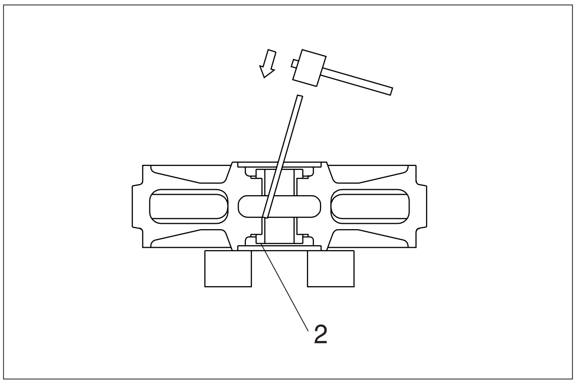
④ Remove seal (5) from shell (1) and bracket (6).

⑤ Remove O-ring (4) from shaft.



⑥ Remove the bushing (2) from idler, using a special tool.

※ Only remove bushing if replacement is necessity.

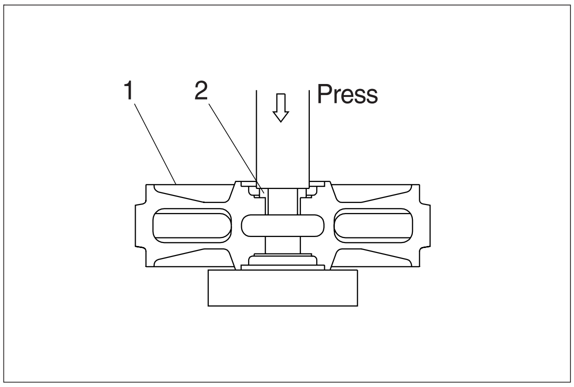


(3) Assembly

※ Before assembly, clean the parts.

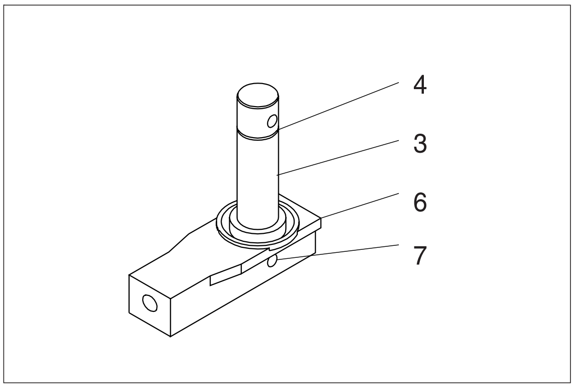
※ Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with oil.

① Cool up bushing (2) fully by some dry ice and press it into shell (1).
Do not press it at the normal temperature, or not knock in with a hammer even after the cooling.

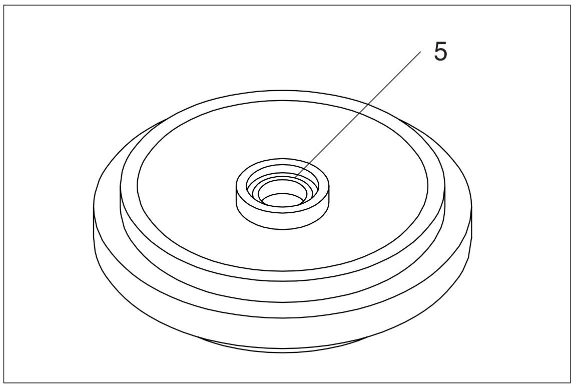


② Coat O-ring (4) with grease thinly, and install it to shaft (3).

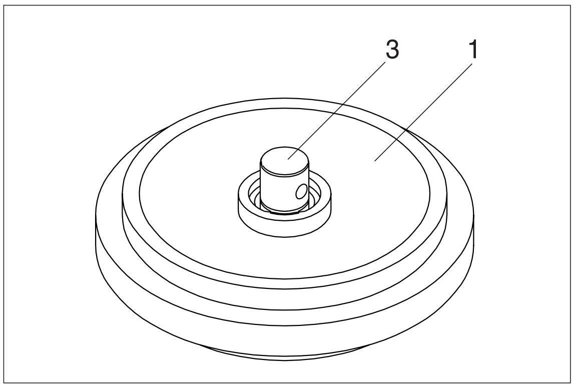
③ Insert shaft (3) into bracket (6) and drive in the spring pin (7).



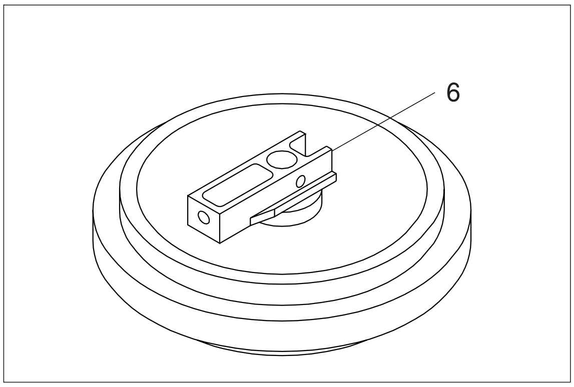
④ Install seal (5) to shell (1) and bracket (6).



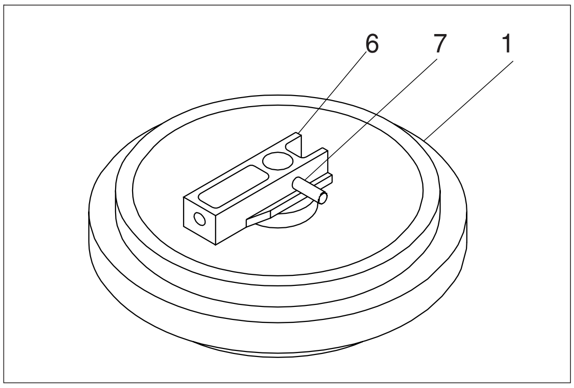
⑤ Install shaft (3) to shell (1).



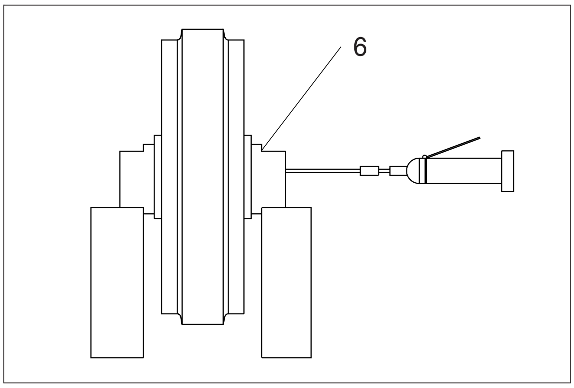
⑥ Install bracket (6) attached with seal (5).



⑦ Knock in the spring pin (7) with a hammer.

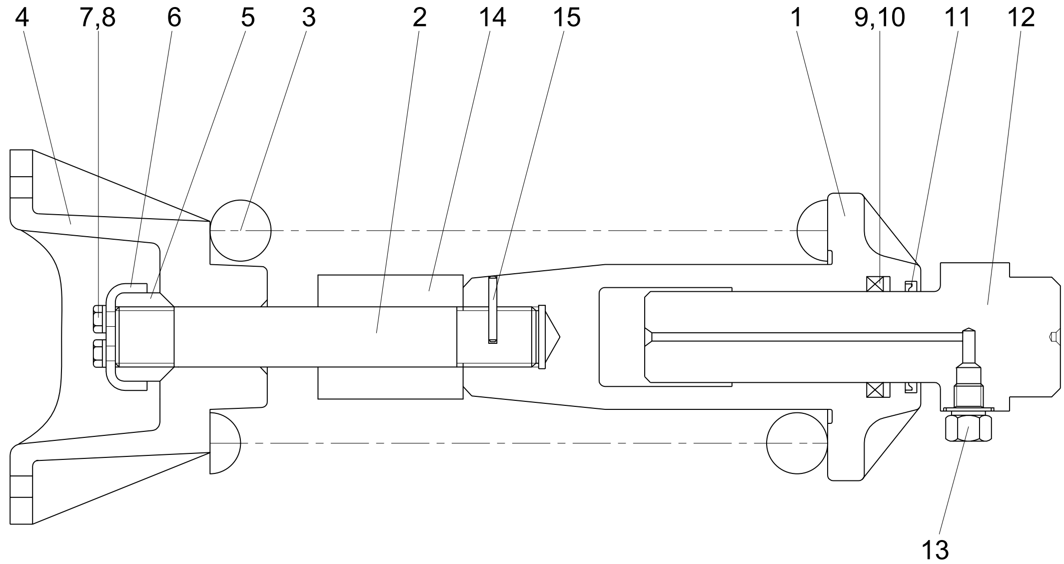


⑧ Lay bracket (6) on its side.
Supply engine oil to the specified level, and tighten plug.



4) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF RECOIL SPRING

(1) Structure



1	Body	6	Lock plate	11	Dust seal
2	Tie bar	7	Bolt	12	Rod assembly
3	Spring	8	Spring washer	13	Grease valve
4	Bracket	9	Rod seal	14	Stopper tube
5	Lock nut	10	Back up ring	15	Spring pin

(2) Disassembly

① Apply pressure on spring (3) with a press.

※ The spring is under a large installed load. This is dangerous, so be sure to set properly.

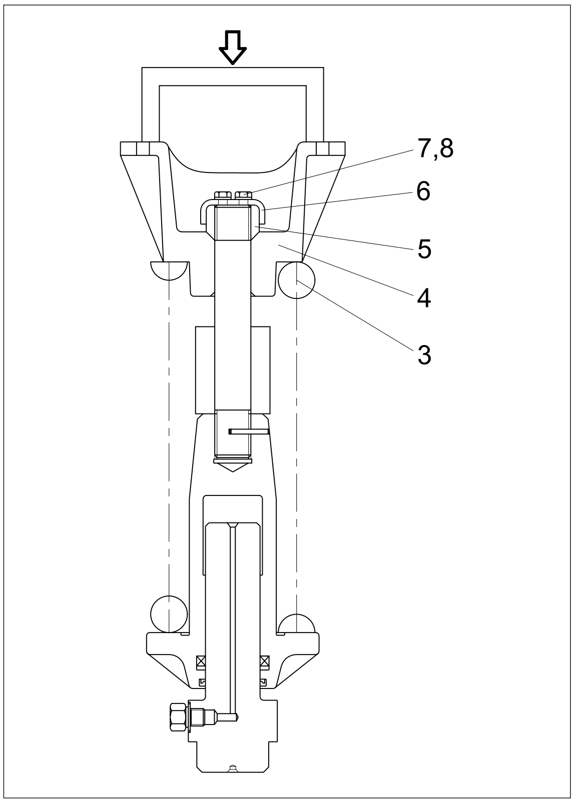
·Spring set load : 19012 ㎏ (41826 ℔)

② Remove bolt (7), spring washer (8) and lock plate (6).

③ Remove lock nut (5).

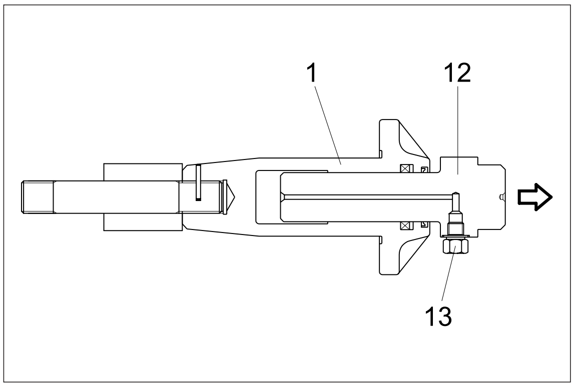
Take enough notice so that the press which pushes down the spring, should not be slipped out in its operation.

④ Lighten the press load slowly and remove bracket (4) and spring (3).

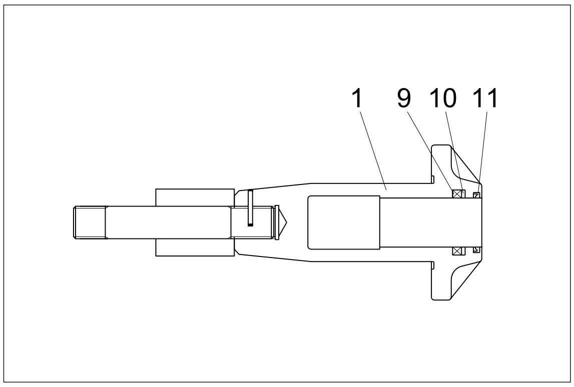


⑤ Remove rod (12) from body (1).

⑥ Remove grease valve (13) from rod (12).



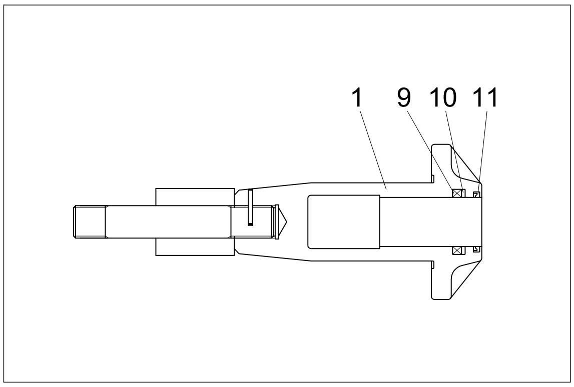
⑦ Remove rod seal (9), back up ring (10) and dust seal (11).



(3) Assembly

① Install dust seal (11), back up ring (10) and rod seal (9) to body (1).

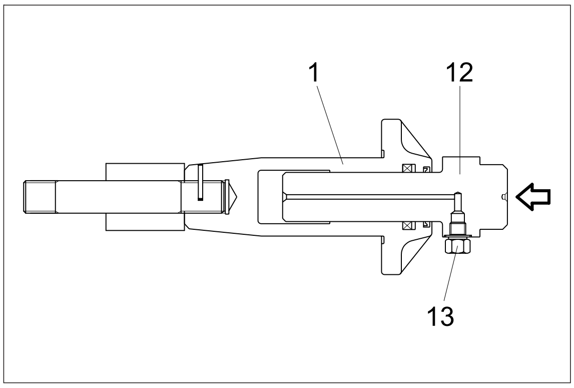
※ When installing dust seal (11) and rod seal (9), take full care so as not to damage the lip.



② Pour grease into body (1), then push in rod (12) by hand.
After take grease out of grease valve mounting hole, let air out.

※ If air letting is not sufficient, it may be difficult to adjust the tension of crawler.

③ Fit grease valve (13) to rod (12).
·Tightening torque : 13.0±1.0 kgf · m
(94±7.2 lbf · ft)

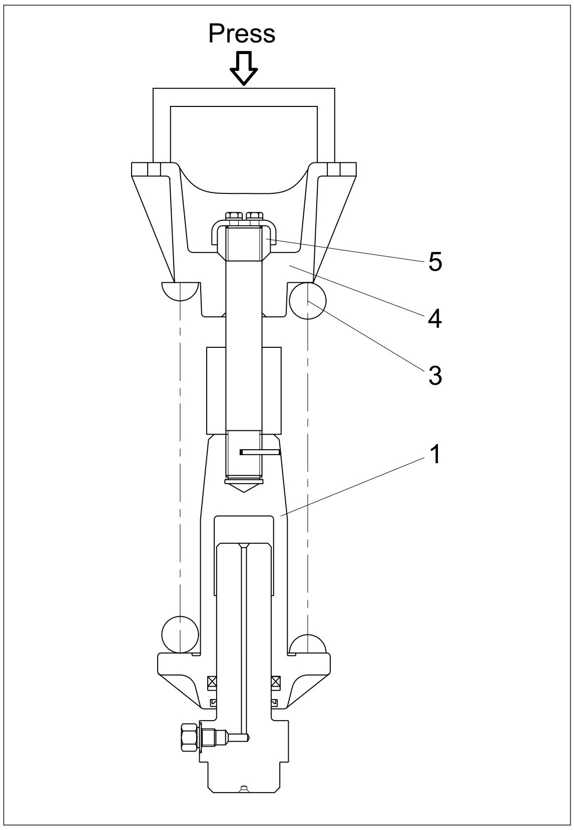


④ Install spring (3) and bracket (4) to body (1).

⑤ Apply pressure to spring (3) with a press and tighten lock nut (5).

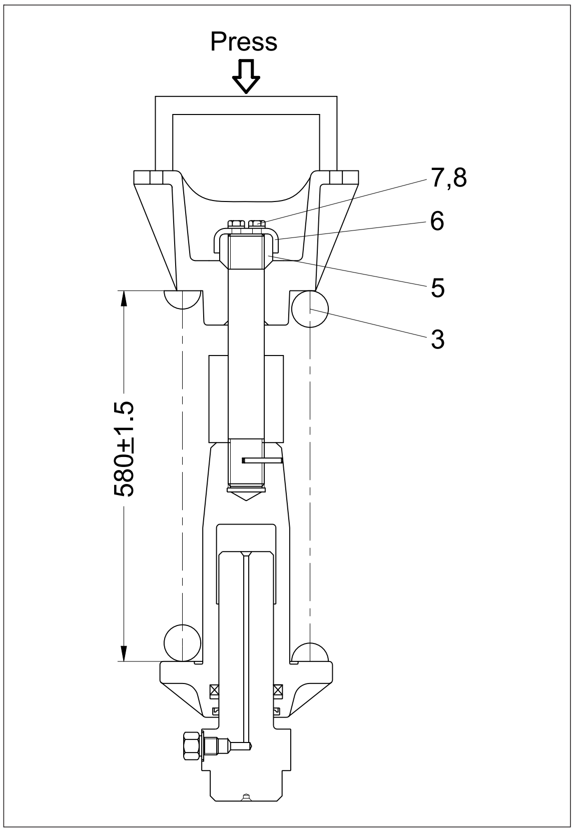
※ Apply sealant before assembling.

※ During the operation, pay attention specially to prevent the press from slipping out.



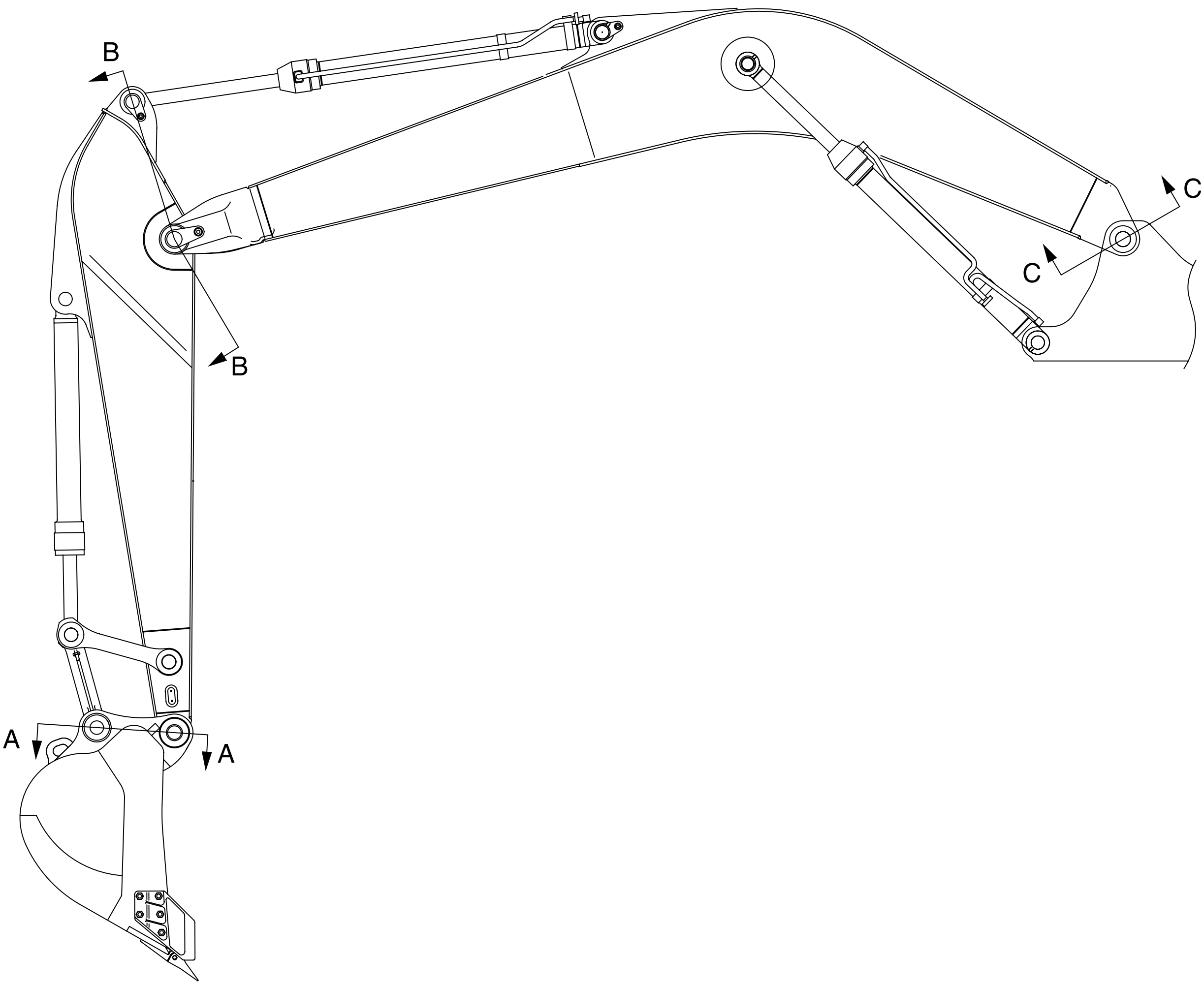
⑥ Lighten the press load and confirm the set length of spring (3).

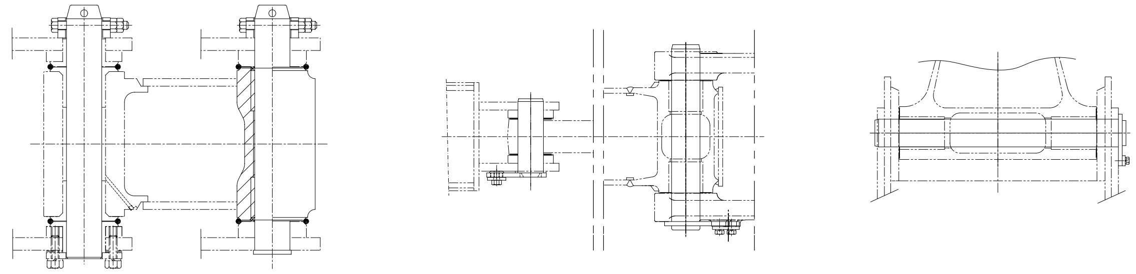
⑦ After the setting of spring (3), install lock plate (6), spring washer (8) and bolt (7).



GROUP 11 WORK EQUIPMENT

1. STRUCTURE





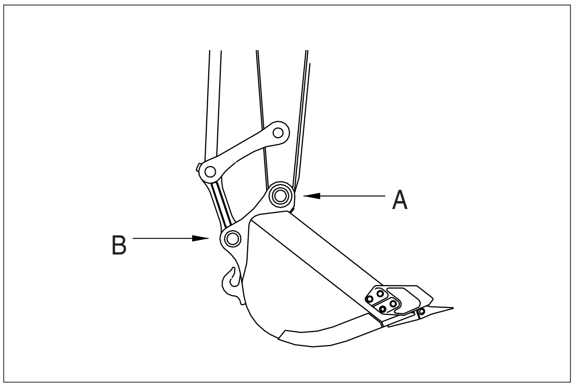
SECTION A SECTION B SECTION C

2. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

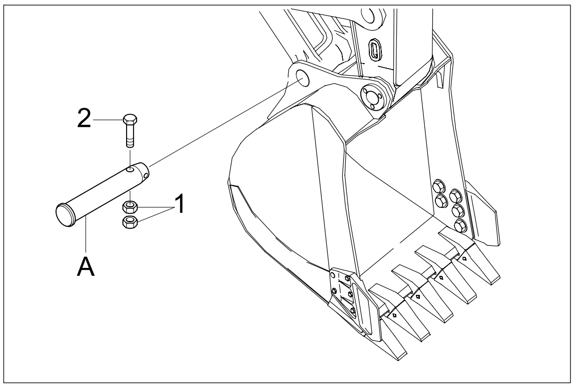
1) BUCKET ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

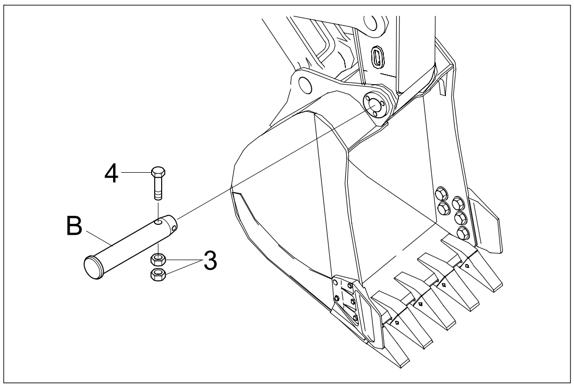
① Lower the work equipment completely to ground with back of bucket facing down.



② Remove nut (1), bolt (2) and draw out the pin (A).



③ Remove nut (3), bolt (4) and draw out the pin (B).

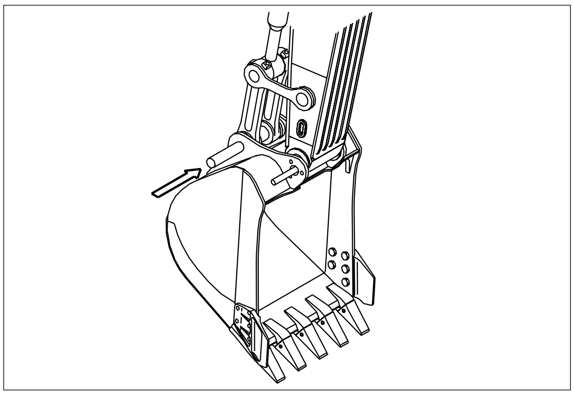


(2) Install

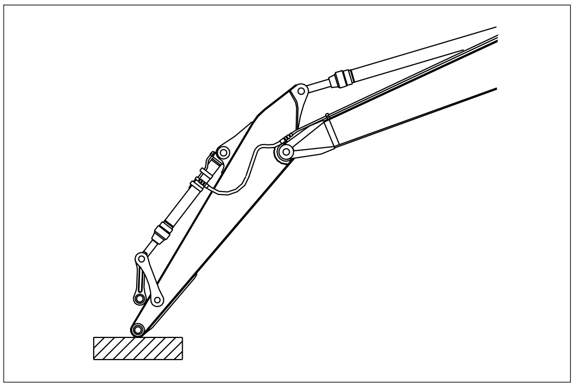
① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.**

※ Adjust the bucket clearance.
For detail, see **operation manual.**



2) ARM ASSEMBLY



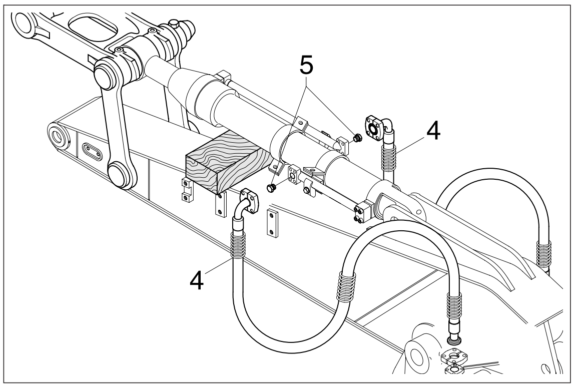
(1) Removal

※ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

⚠ **Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrated the skin causing serious injury.**

① Remove bucket assembly.
For details, see **removal of bucket assembly.**

② Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (1).



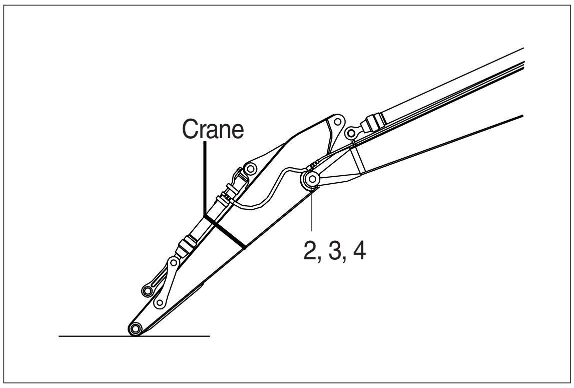
⚠ **Fit blind plugs in the piping at the chassis end securely to prevent oil from spurting out when the engine is started.**

③ Sling arm cylinder assembly, remove spring, pin stopper and pull out pin.

※ Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.

④ For details, see **removal of arm cylinder assembly.**
Place a wooden block under the cylinder and bring the cylinder down to it.

⑤ Remove bolt (2), plate (3) and pull out the pin (4) then remove the arm assembly.
· Weight : 1160 ㎏ (2560 ℔)



※ When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.

(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

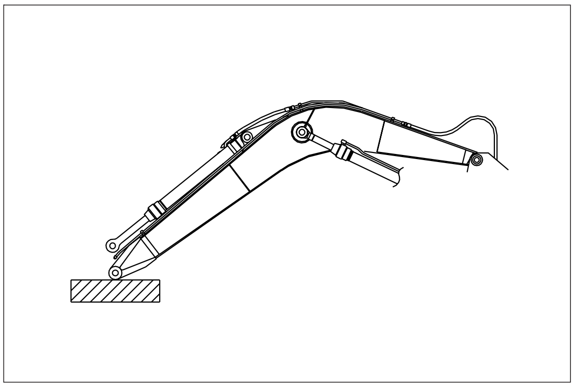
※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

(1) Removal

① Remove arm and bucket assembly.
For details, see **removal of arm and bucket assembly.**

② Remove boom cylinder assembly from boom.
For details, see **removal of arm cylinder assembly.**

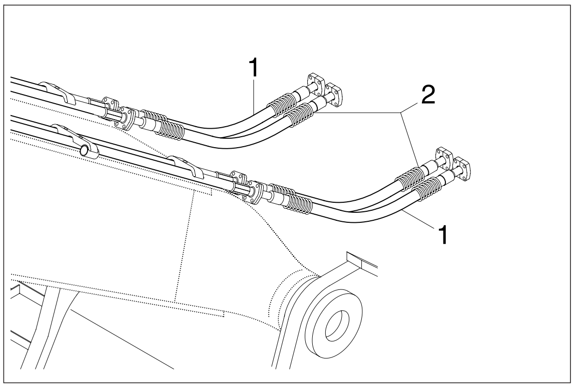


③ Disconnect head lamp wiring.

④ Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (2) and arm cylinder hose (1).

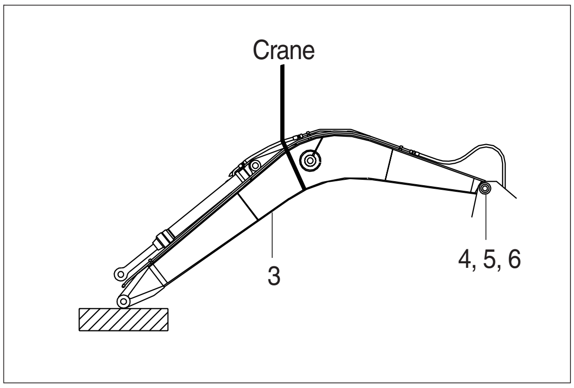
※ When the hose are disconnected, oil may spurt out.

⑤ Sling boom assembly (3).



⑥ Remove bolt (4), plate (5) and pull out the pin (6) then remove boom assembly.
· Weight : 2540 ㎏ (5600 ㏈)

※ When lifting the boom assembly always lift the center of gravity.

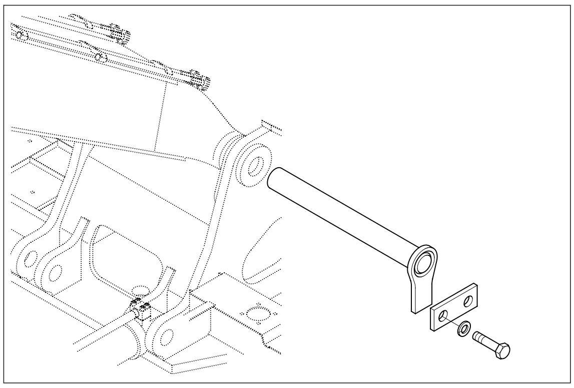


(2) Install

① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

⚠ **When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.**

※ Bleed the air from the cylinder.

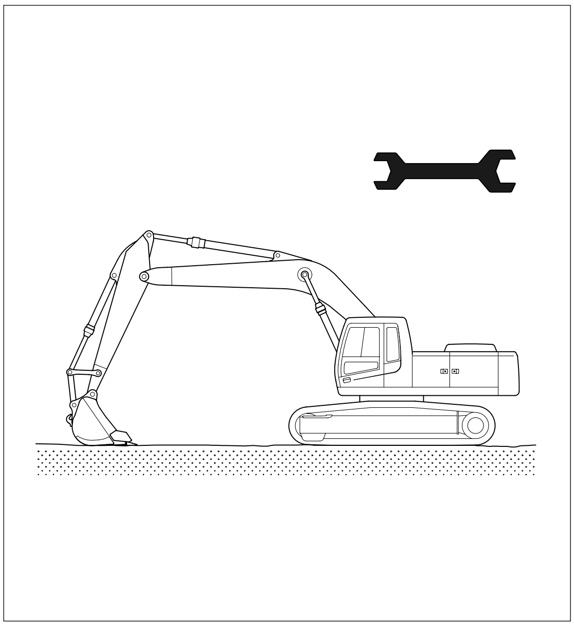


SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

GROUP 1 INTRODUCTION GUIDE

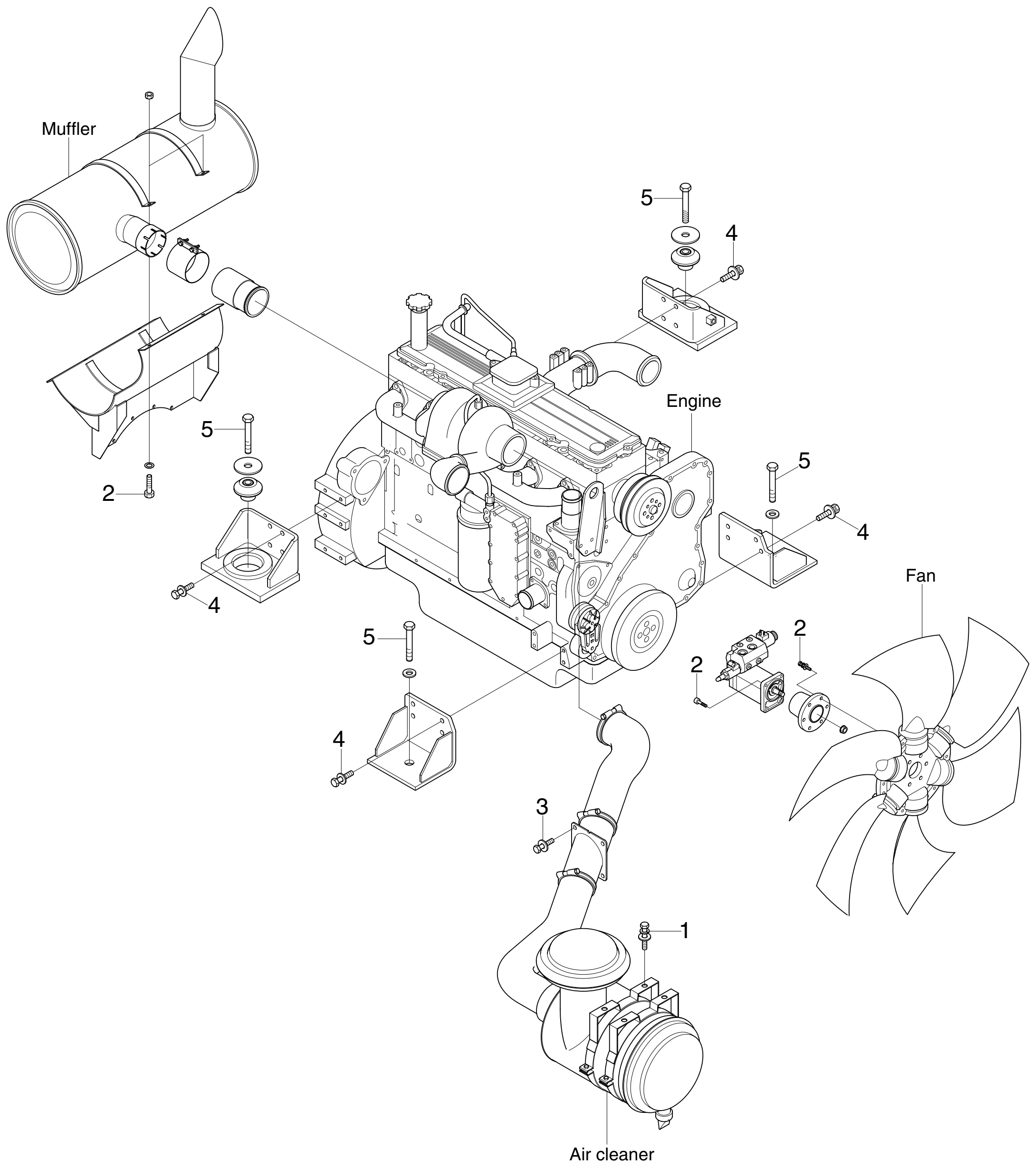
1. This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.
2. Use genuine Hyundai spare parts.
   We expressly point out that Hyundai will not accept any responsibility for defects resulted from non-genuine parts.
   In such cases Hyundai cannot assume liability for any damage.

※ Only metric fasteners can be used and incorrect fasteners may result in machine damage or malfunction.
※ Before installation, clean all the components with a non-corrosive cleaner. Bolts and threads must not be worn or damaged.



GROUP 2 ENGINE SYSTEM

ENGINE AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING

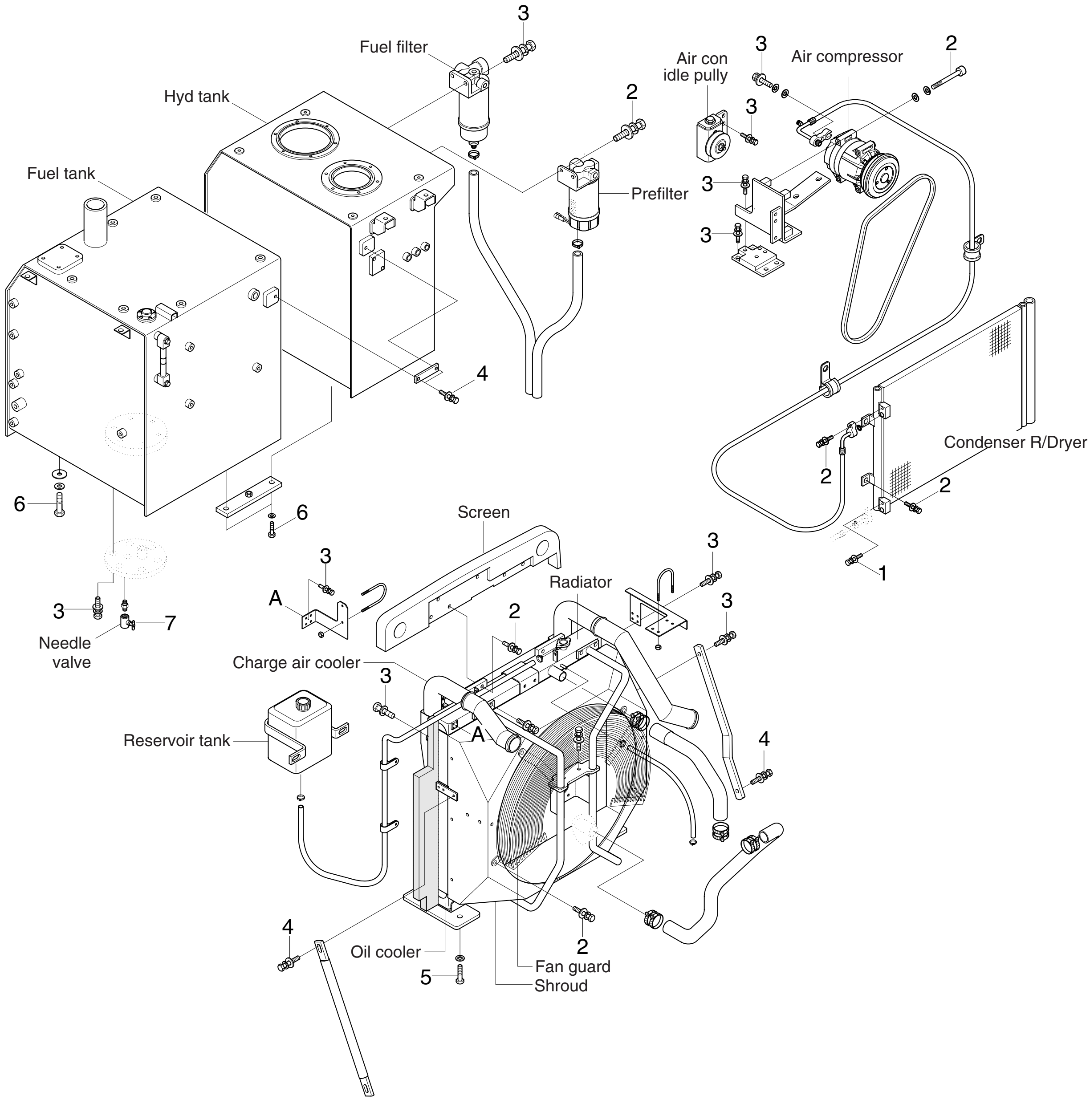


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
3	M12×1.75	10.0±2.0	72.3±14.5

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
5	M24×3.0	90±7.0	651±51
-	-	-	-

COOLING SYSTEM AND FUEL TANK MOUNTING



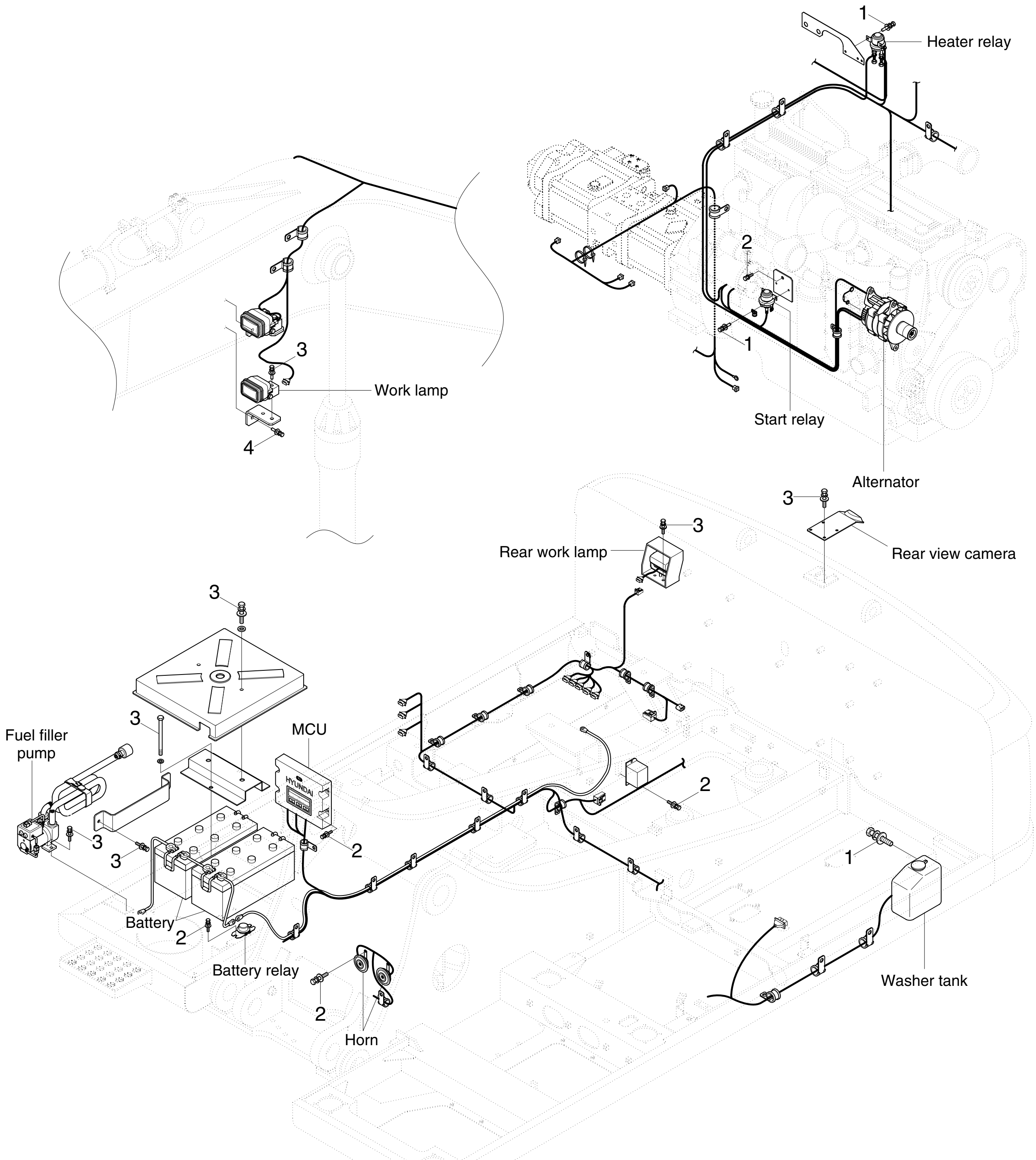
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	0.5±0.2	3.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M10×1.25	6.9±1.4	49.4±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
5	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
6	M20×2.5	46±5.1	333±36.9
7	-	2.3±0.6	16.6±4.3
-	-	-	-

GROUP 3 ELECTRIC SYSTEM

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1

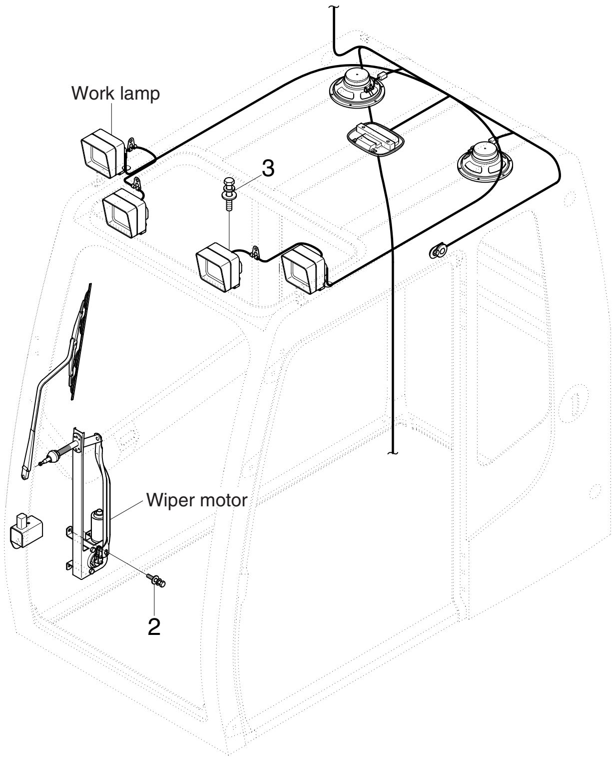


· Tightening torque

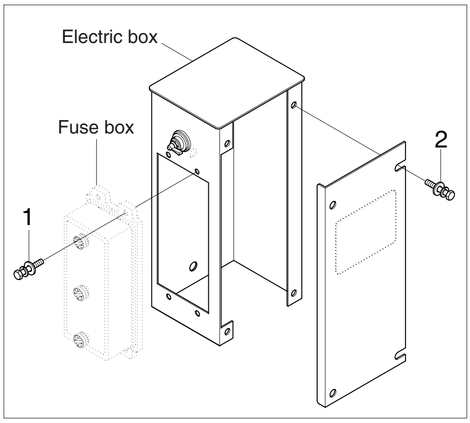
Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

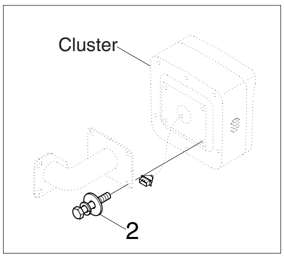
Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2

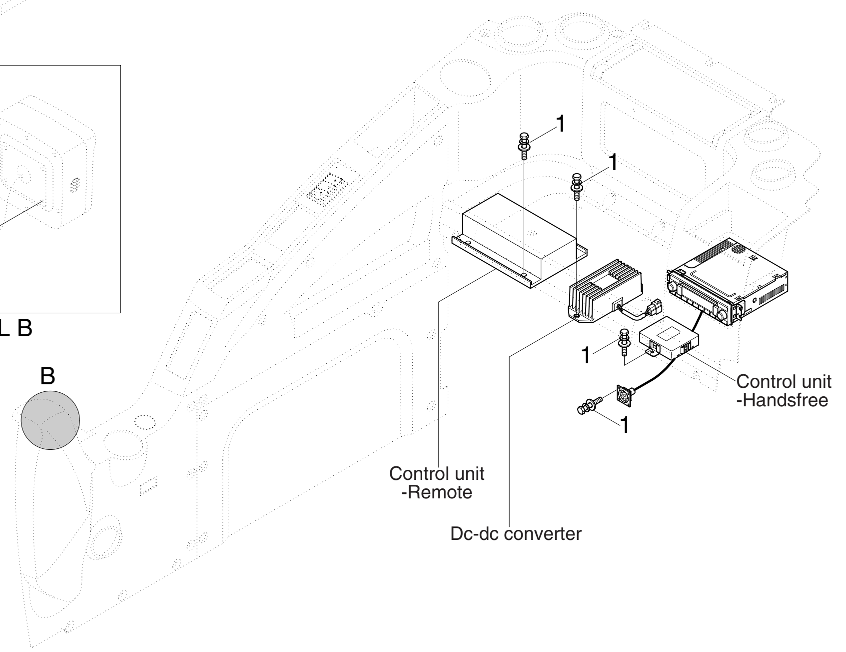


VIEW A





DETAIL B



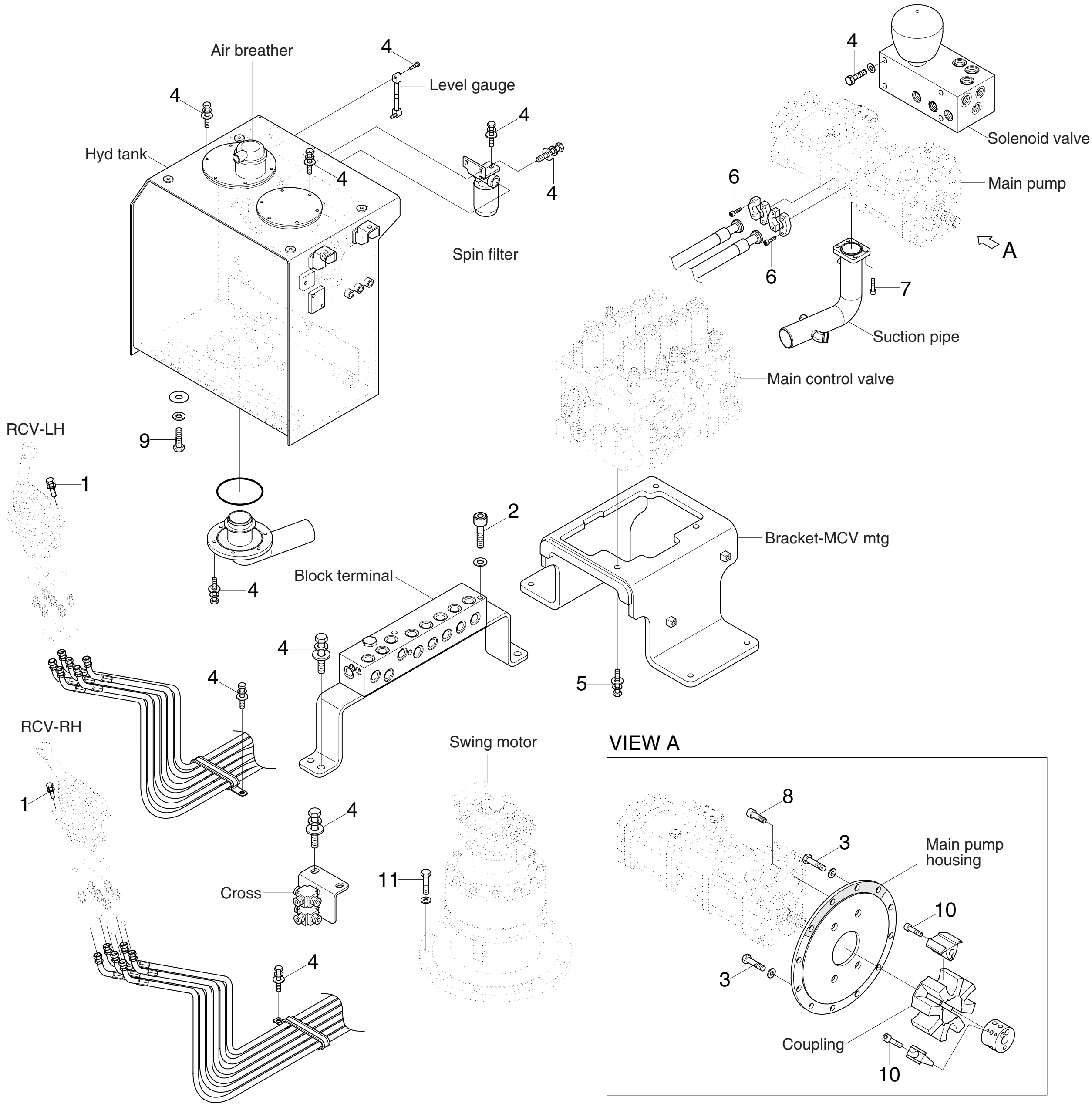
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
-	-	-	-

GROUP 4 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1

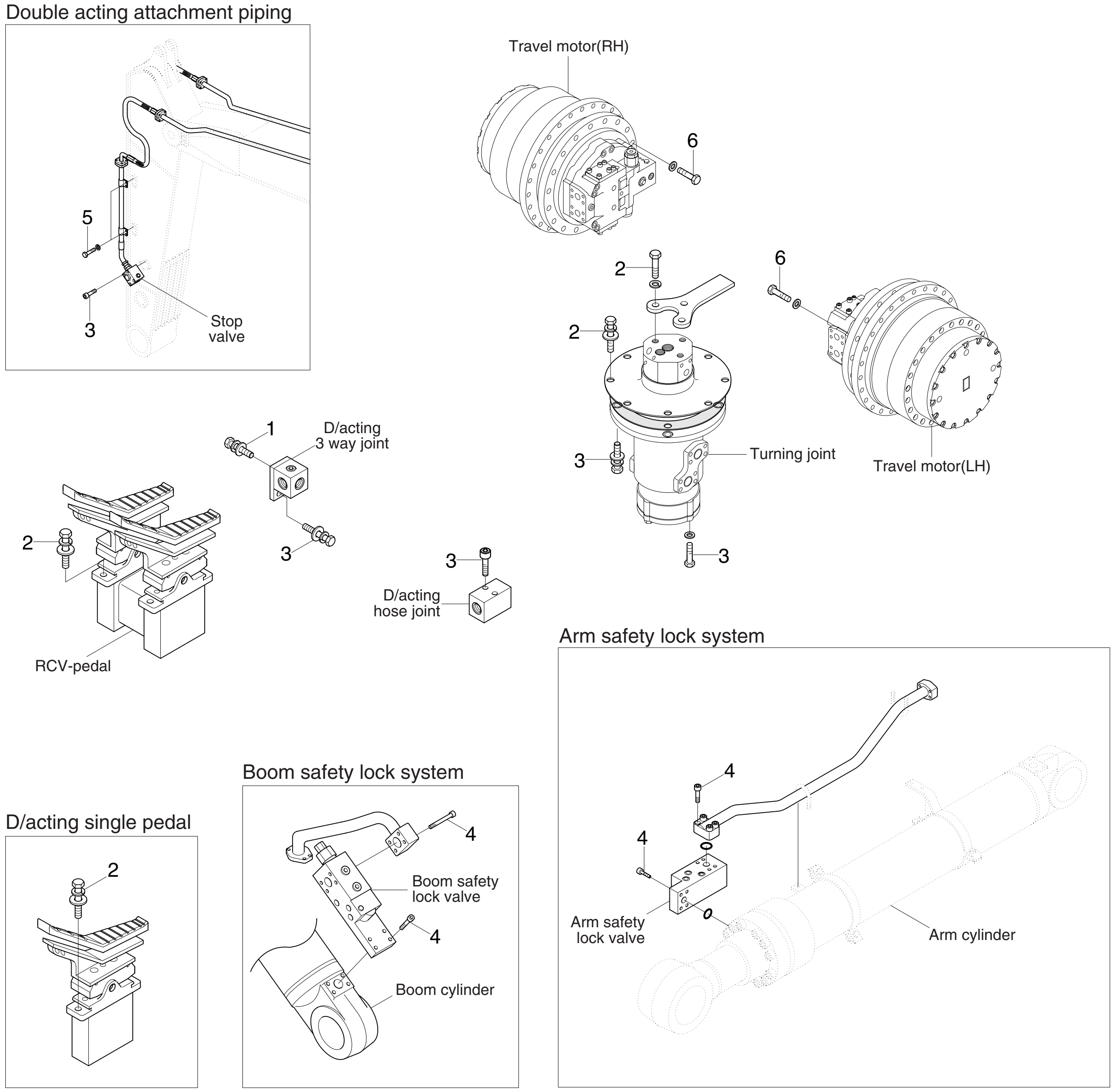


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M10×1.5	5.3±0.5	38.3±3.6
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M12×1.75	12.3±1.3	88.9±9.4
6	M12×1.75	12.3±1.3	92.5±21.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
7	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
8	M20×2.5	42±4.5	304±32.5
9	M20×2.5	46±5.1	333±36.9
10	M20×2.5	46.5±2.5	336±18.1
11	M20×2.5	58.4±6.4	422±46.2
-	-	-	-

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2

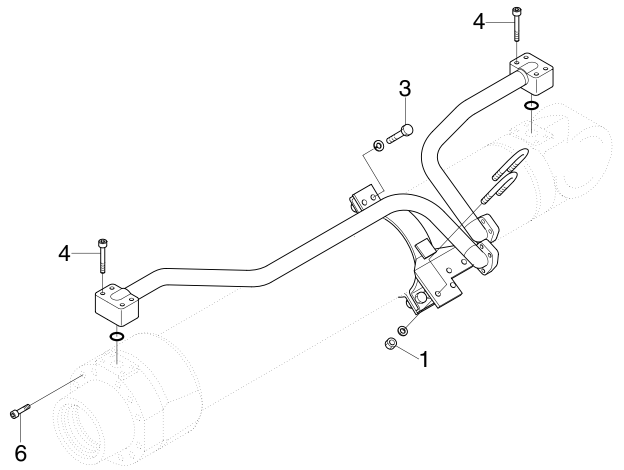


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
3	M12×1.75	12.3±1.3	88.9±9.4

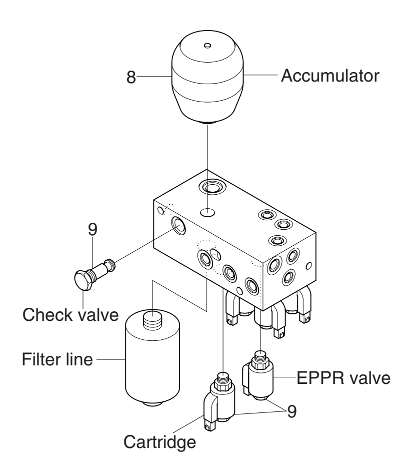
Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
5	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
6	M24×3.0	84±8.0	608±32.5

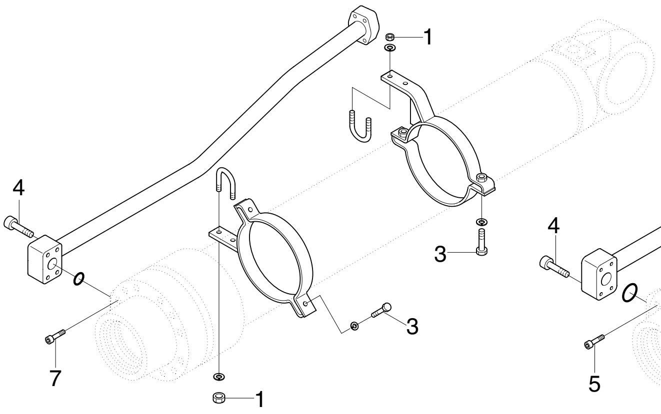
HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 3



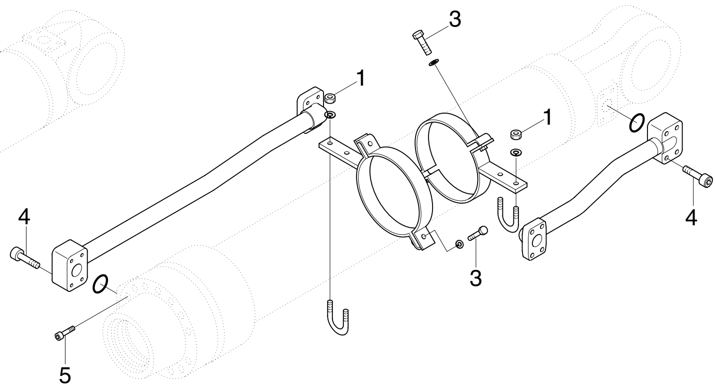
BOOM CYLINDER

Solenoid valve





ARM CYLINDER



BUCKET CYLINDER

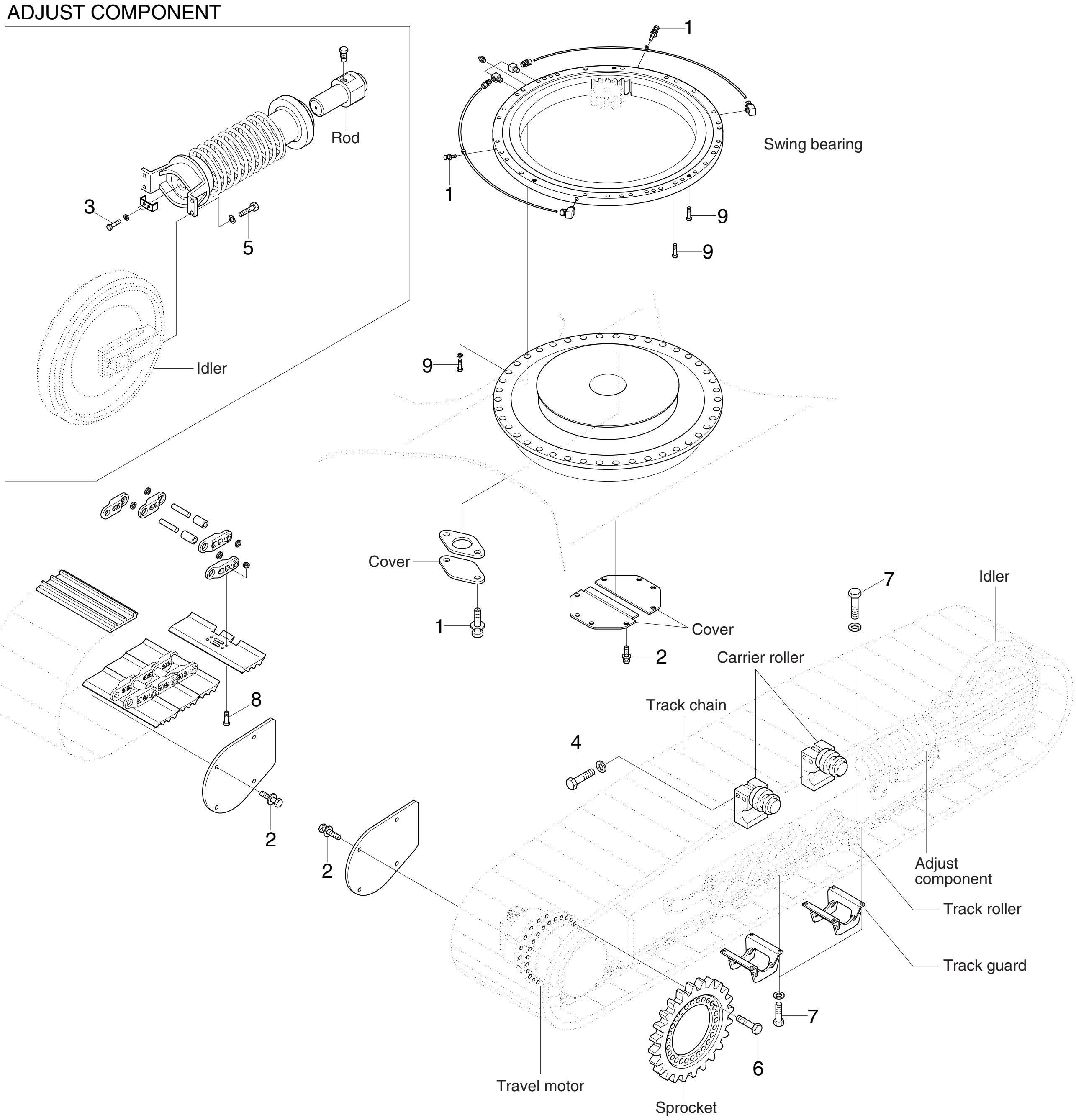
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	3.2±0.3	23.1±2.2
2	M10×1.5	5.4±0.5	29.1±3.6
3	M12×1.75	5.5±0.6	39.8±4.3
4	M12×1.75	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
5	M18×2.5	32±3.0	232±21.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
6	M20×2.5	46±5.0	333±36.2
7	M22×2.5	63±6.0	456±43.4
8	M22×2.5	4.1	29.6
9	M27×3.0	5.1	36.9
-	-	-	-

GROUP 5 UNDERCARRIAGE

UNDERCARRIAGE MOUNTING



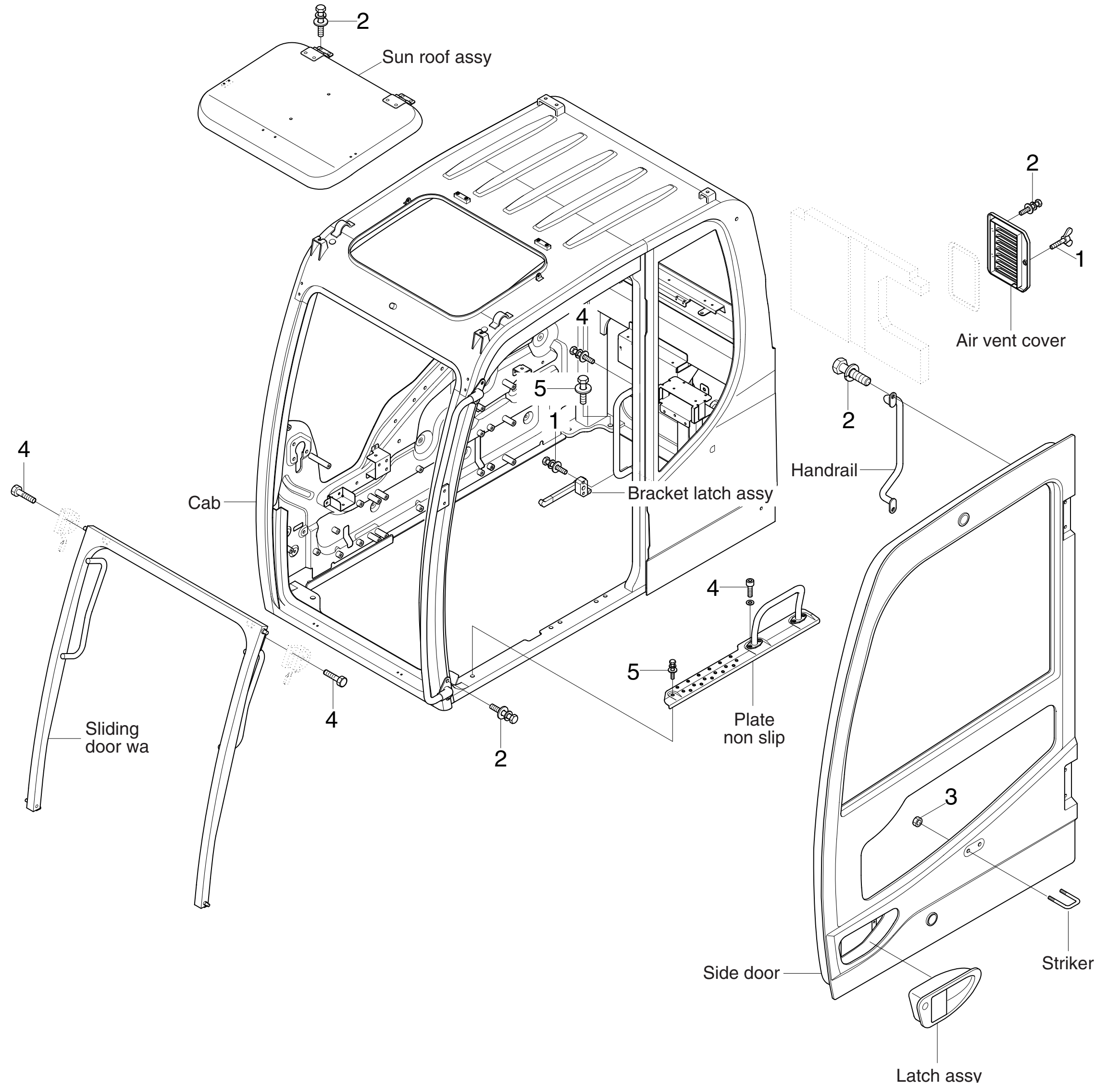
· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
2	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
3	M12×1.75	15±0.5	108±3.6
4	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
5	M16×1.5	31.3±4.7	226±34

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
6	M20×2.5	57±6.0	412±43.3
7	M20×2.5	57.9±8.6	419±62.2
8	M22×1.5	115±5.0	831±36
9	M24×3.0	97.8±10	707±72.3
-	-	-	-

GROUP 6 STRUCTURE

CAB AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING

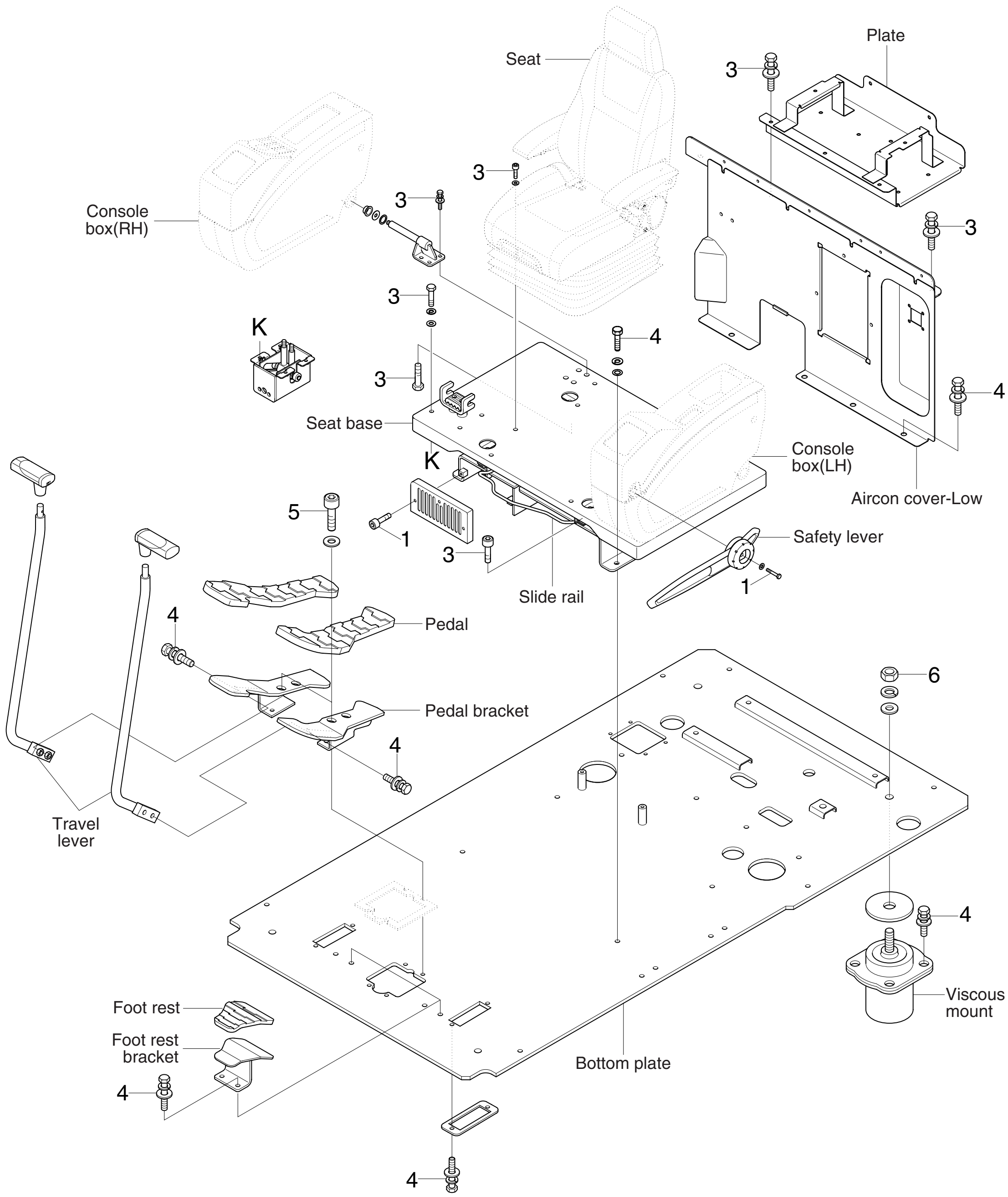


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	0.49±0.1	3.5±0.7
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M10×1.5	4.7±0.9	34±6.5

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
-	-	-	-

CAB INTERIOR MOUNTING

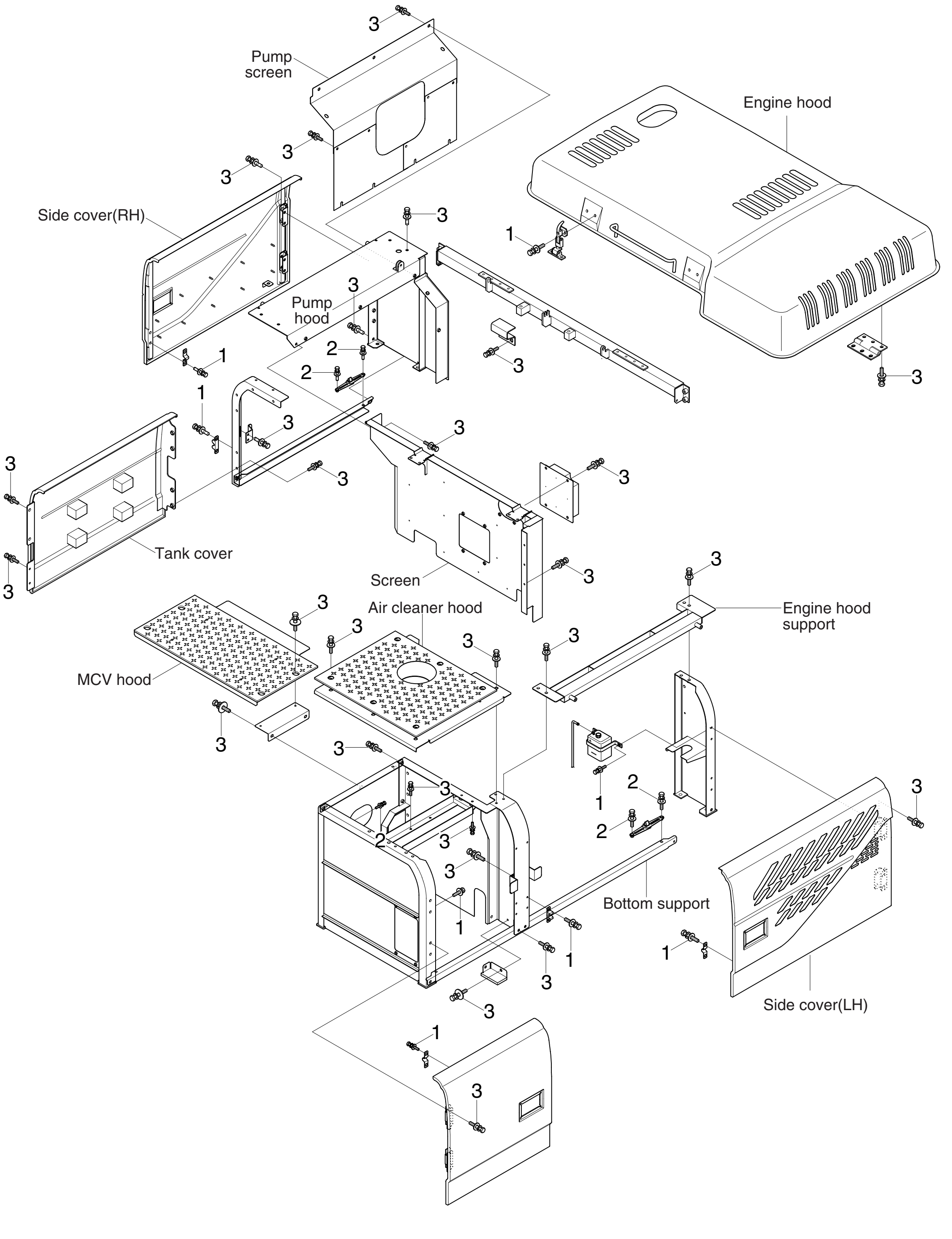


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	0.49±0.1	3.5±0.7
2	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
3	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M10×1.5	8.27±1.7	59.8±12.3
6	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5

COWLING MOUNTING

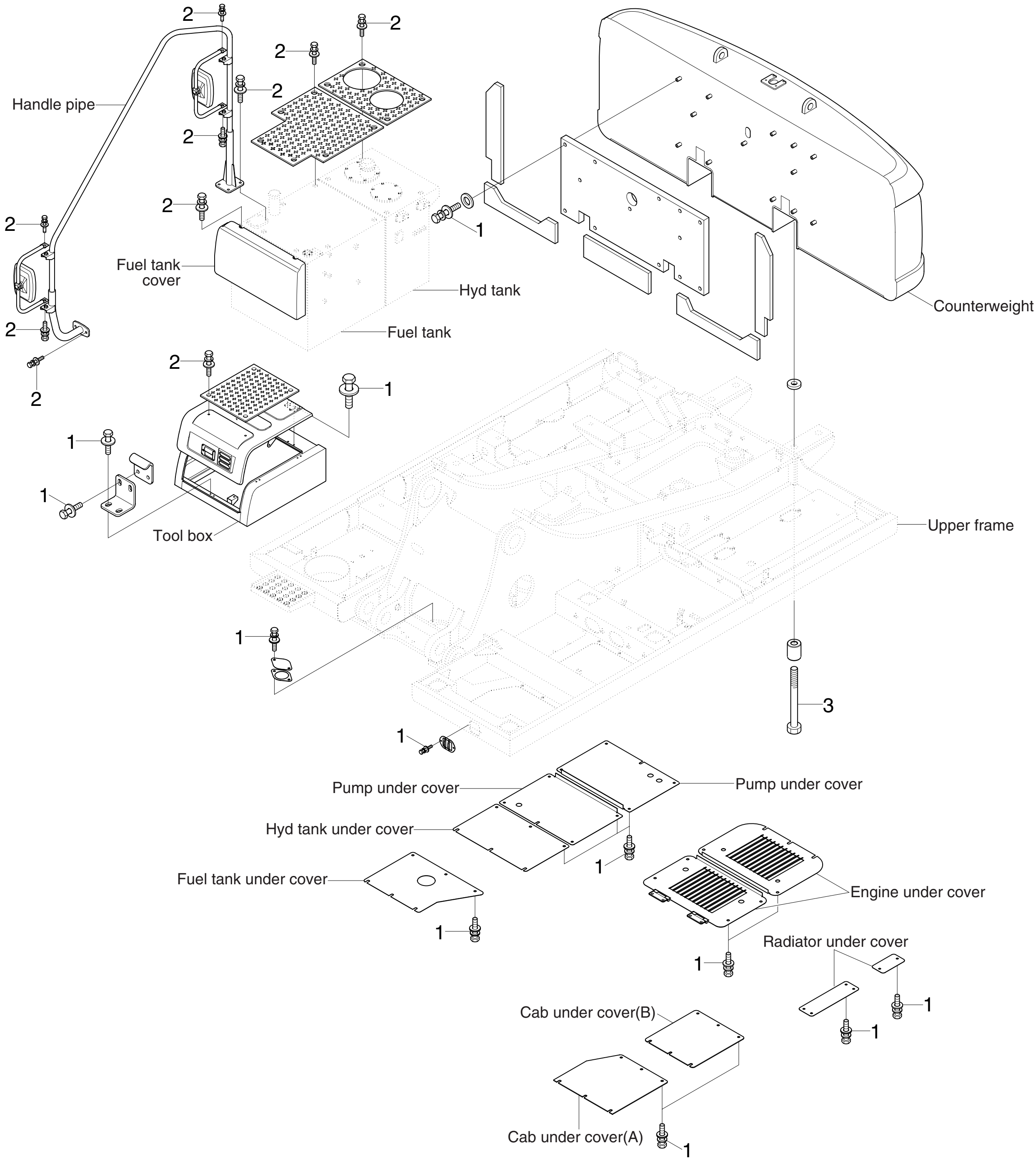


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
4	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5

COUNTERWEIGHT AND COVERS MOUNTING

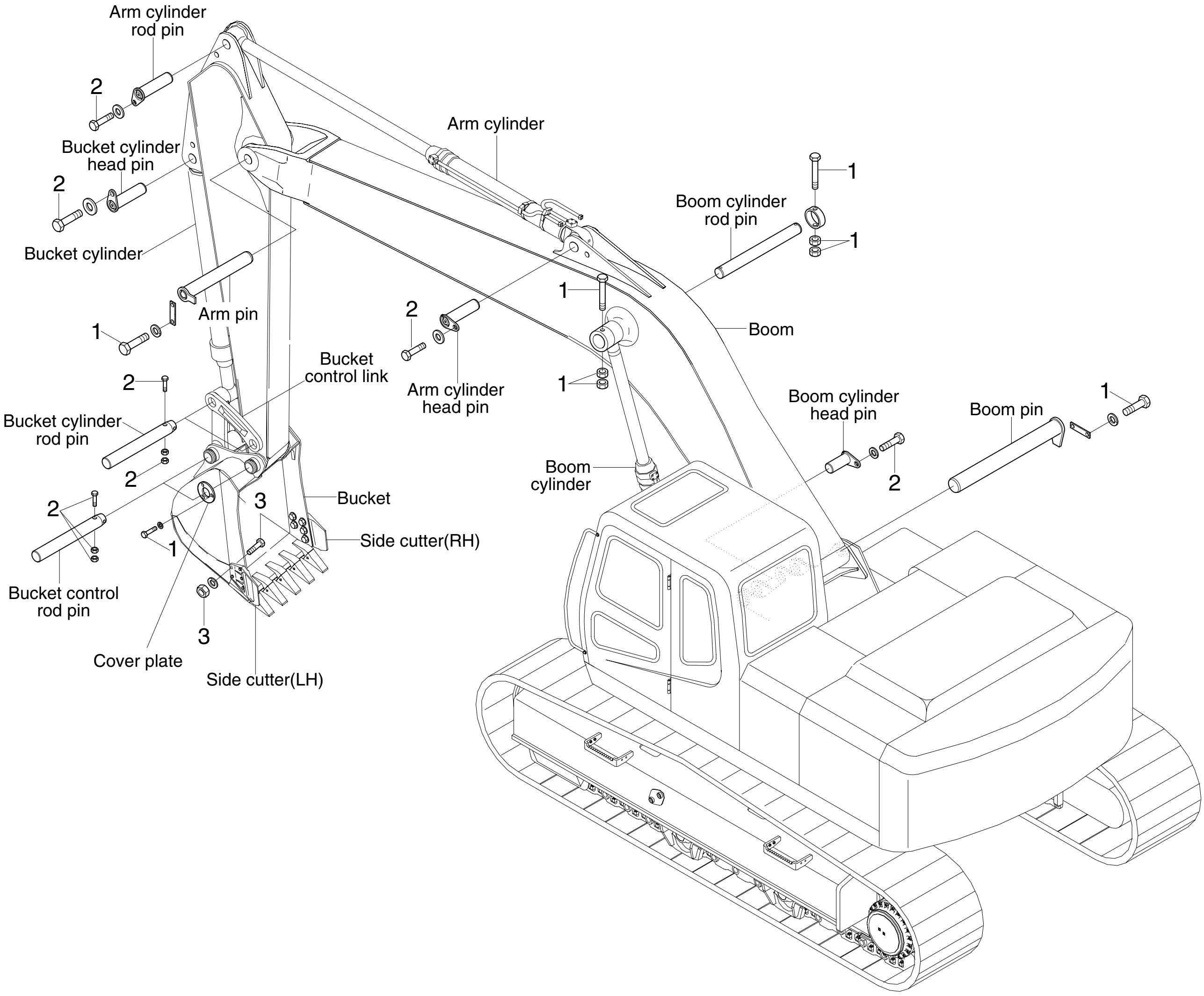


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
2	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M36×3.0	308±46	2228±333
-	-	-	-

GROUP 7 WORK EQUIPMENT



· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
2	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M22×2.5	81.9±16.1	592±116
-	-	-	-